

**VOLUME II – The Historical Books.**  
**By**  
**Dr. Stanley A. Ellisen Th. D.**

**ISBN-13: 978-1511841702**  
**ISBN-10: 1511841702**

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

<b>VOLUME II – The Historical Books.....</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS.....</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>THE BOOK OF JOSHUA .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Introduction .....	2
Figure 01. Israel – The Tribal Land Layout.....	<b>5</b>
Figure 02. Israel – The Battles Against King Of Hazor. ....	<b>6</b>
Figure 03. Israel – The Central An Southern Campaigns. ....	<b>7</b>
Outline of Joshua .....	7
Figure 04. A Map Showing The Levitical cities And The 6 Cities Of Refuge.....	<b>42</b>
Questions On The Book Of Joshua.....	49
<b>THE BOOKS OF JUDGES AND RUTH.....</b>	<b>51</b>
Introduction.....	52
<b>THE BOOK OF JUDGES.....</b>	<b>55</b>
An Outline of Judges .....	55
Figure 01. The Battles Of The Judges Period. ....	<b>56</b>
Figure 02. The Judges Of Israel. ....	<b>57</b>
The Shibolths And Siboleths Of Judges 12:6 .....	<b>58</b>
The Book Of Ruth.....	97
Questions On The Books Of Judges And Ruth .....	106
<b>THE BOOKS OF SAMUEL .....</b>	<b>109</b>
Introduction .....	110
An Outline Of 1 Samuel .....	112
Figure 01. The Land Allotments Of Ephraim, Benjamin And The Western Half Of Manasseh.....	<b>113</b>
Table 01. A Chronology Of The Kings Listed In The Books Of The 4 Books Of Kings. ....	114
<b>THE BOOK OF II SAMUEL.....</b>	<b>169</b>
An Outline Of II Samuel .....	170
<b>QUESTIONS ON THE BOOKS OF SAMUEL.....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>THE BOOKS OF KINGS.....</b>	<b>215</b>
Introduction .....	216
An Outline Of The Books Of Kings.....	217
Table 01. A Chronology Of The Kings Listed In The Books Of The 4 Books Of Kings .....	218
Figure 01. Solomon’s Expansion - North, South And East, With Possible Queen Of Sheba Origin .....	<b>220</b>
Figure 02 An Alternative Origin For The Queen Of Sheba – Ethiopia. ....	<b>221</b>
Figure 01. The Route Of The Exodus and Elijah’s Journey To Jabal Al Lawz –Mt. Horeb.....	<b>262</b>
Questions On The Books Of Kings .....	320
<b>THE BOOKS OF CHRONICLES.....</b>	<b>325</b>
Introduction.....	326
An Outline Of The Books Of Chronicles.....	327
Questions On Chronicles.....	414
<b>ENDNOTES .....</b>	<b>416</b>

---



**THE BOOK OF JOSHUA**  
**INTRODUCTION**  
**PRINCIPLES**  
**TEXT**  
**OUTLINE**  
**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley A. Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible**  
**And Interpretation**  
**At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## Introduction

### I. Authorship.

- A- The book is called "Joshua" by both Jews and Christians, the title being taken from the principal figure rather than from the author, (Joshua means "Jehovah saves.") Note: This book the LXX named IHΣΟΥΣ.
- B- The book is anonymous. It was possibly written by Eleazar or "one of the elders that outlived Joshua"--Keil. Internal evidence suggests that Joshua furnished much of the material and could have written much of it himself. Note the first person as used in 5:1, 6.
- C- This book is the first of the group called by the Hebrews the "former prophets" (Joshua, Judges, Samuel, and Kings). They were thought to have been written by men with the prophetic gift and office.

### II. Historical Setting.

#### A- The person of Joshua.

- 1- His time of birth is not given, but he is assumed to have been about the same age as Caleb who was 40 years old at the time of spying and thus about 79 at the time of the invasion. He was of the tribe of Ephraim.
- 2- Joshua distinguished himself early as a lieutenant of Moses on the way out of Egypt (Exodus 17:9ff.). He served as Moses' servant at the giving of the law (Exodus 24:33).
- 3- He, with Caleb, was one of the spies who had faith in God to overcome the great odds in Canaan. They were thus the only two adults of that generation to enter Canaan. Note also the two sons of Aaron, Eleazar and Ithamar.
- 4- Following a special commissioning by the Lord, he was a fearless warrior and general, superintending a whirlwind campaign of invasion of Canaan.
- 5- He died at the age of 110 (Joshua 24:29).

#### B- The date.

- 1- The events of the book cover c. 25/30 years. The initial campaigns took about seven years (Joshua 14:7, 10). If Joshua was 79 at the time of the invasion and 110 at death, the total time covered is c. 31 years.
- 2- Judging from the date of the fall of Jericho (c. 1400 by the Tel-el-amarna letters) and the time span given in 1 Kings 6:1, the time covered is c. 1402-1375.
- 3- The crossing of Jordan took place in the spring at the time of the barley harvest (2:6; 3:15; 4:19). The Jordan overflowed its banks at this time with the melting snows of Mt. Hermon (a most difficult time to cross).

#### C- The state of Israel.

- 1- Moses had died c. 30 days before (Deuteronomy 34:8; Joshua 4:19).

- 2- Two and one-half tribes had settled east of Jordan; 40,000 of their men, however, were to participate in the invasion of the west.
- 3- The entire population of Israel numbered upwards of two million, all of whom were still being fed on manna. (600,000 fighting men)
- 4- They were in high spirits after their conquest of the east and were all behind Joshua 100% (1:15-18).

#### **D- The condition of Canaan.**

- 1- Canaan designated the entire western strip from Sidon in the north to Gaza and Sodom in the south (Genesis 10:19). Its original meaning was "land of purple," from its manufacturing of purple dyes. The Greeks later named it Phoenicia from the Greek word "purple."
- 2- Canaanite civilization was located largely in the lowlands rather than in the hills. Important hill cities were Kirjath-arba (Hebron), Jebus (Jerusalem), Luz (Bethel), and Shechem. The valley cities were more invulnerable, being equipped with chariots of iron (Judges 1:19).
- 3- Canaan had been dominated by Egypt but was also ruled by its local governors, under a feudal, city-state system.
- 4- Canaan was populated by a mixed group. There were the Hittites, the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, the Jebusites, and the Gergasites (Joshua 9:1). The Canaanites and Jebusites were the original groups. The Hittites were from Asia Minor in the north. The Amorites were from the Arabian Desert area; the Hivites were probably from the mountains of Seir (Genesis 36:20), and originally from Mesopotamia. Of the Perizzites nothing is known.
- 5- The cities of Canaan were well fortified. Jericho was surrounded by two brick walls, one twelve feet thick and the other six feet thick.
- 6- The religions of Canaan were of base idolatry. El was the chief god; Baal was his chief son who was the paramour of Ashtoreth. Baal was the god of rain, sun, and vegetation, and Ashtoreth was the personification of love and fertility. These deities had no moral character and their worship carried with it the most demoralizing practices in existence. It fostered brutality and base immorality. The culture was due for extinction (Leviticus 18:21-30; Deuteronomy 12:30-32).

### **III. The Purpose and Theme of Joshua.**

**The purpose of this book is to give a history of the initial conquest of Canaan and the division of the land among the tribes. This history demonstrates the faithfulness of God, showing Him as a covenant-keeping God (Joshua 1:26). The theme is the venture and victory of faith. Victory and advance are the prevailing notes, accomplished not by the arm of the flesh but by the hand of the Lord. A twofold emphasis is made in (1) the destruction of the idolatrous people and (2) the victory and progress of faith in the one true God.**





Figure 01. Israel – The Tribal Land Layout.

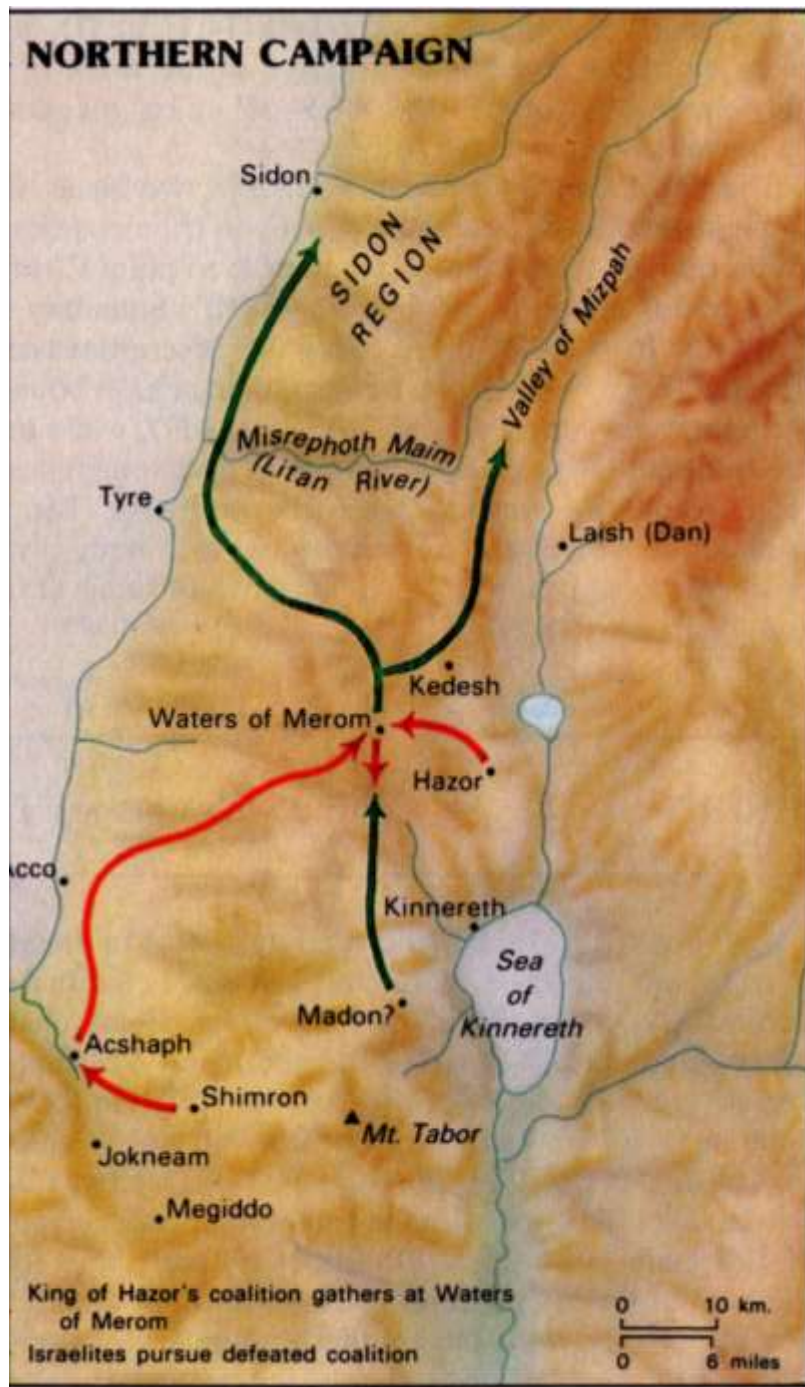


Figure 02. Israel – The Battles Against King Of Hazor.

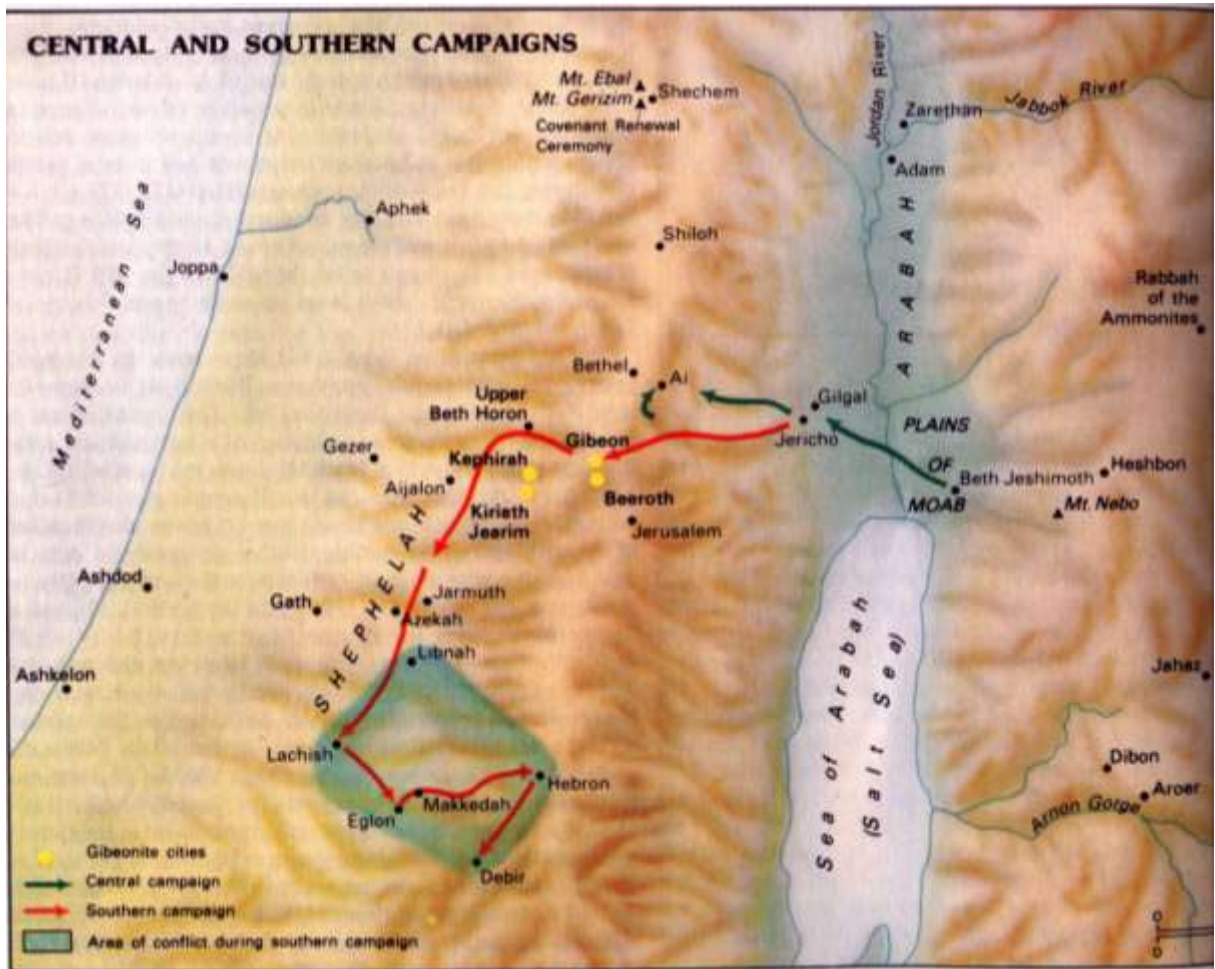


Figure 03. Israel – The Central An Southern Campaigns.

## Outline of Joshua

I. The Conquest of Canaan. (1.-12.)

II. The Division of Canaan. (13.-24.)

**Joshua 1**

- 1 ¶ Now it came to pass after the death of Moses the servant of Jehovah, that Jehovah spake unto Joshua the son of Nun, Moses' minister, saying,
- 2 Moses my servant is dead; now therefore arise, go over this Jordan, thou, and all this people, unto the land which I do give to them, even to the children of Israel.
- 3 Every place that the sole of your foot shall tread upon, to you have I given it, as I spake unto Moses.
- 4 From the wilderness, and this Lebanon, even unto the great river, the river Euphrates, all the land of the Hittites, and unto the great sea toward the going down of the sun, shall be your border.
- 5 There shall not any man be able to stand before thee all the days of thy life: as I was with Moses, so I will be with thee; I will not fail thee, nor forsake thee.
- 6 Be strong and of good courage; for thou shalt cause this people to inherit the land which I sware unto their fathers to give them.
- 7 Only be strong and very courageous, to observe to do according to all the law, which Moses my servant commanded thee: turn not from it to the right hand or to the left, that thou mayest *{1}* have good success whithersoever thou goest. *{1} Or deal wisely}*
- 8 This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth, but thou shalt meditate thereon day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt *{1}* have good success. *{1} Or deal wisely}*
- 9 Have not I commanded thee? Be strong and of good courage; be not affrighted, neither be thou dismayed: for Jehovah thy God is with thee whithersoever thou goest.
- 10 ¶ Then Joshua commanded the officers of the people, saying,
- 11 Pass through the midst of the camp, and command the people, saying, Prepare you victuals; for within three days ye are to pass over this Jordan, to go in to possess the land, which Jehovah your God giveth you to possess it.
- 12 And to the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and to the half-tribe of Manasseh, spake Joshua, saying,
- 13 Remember the word which Moses the servant of Jehovah commanded you, saying, Jehovah your God giveth you rest, and will give you this land.
- 14 Your wives, your little ones, and your cattle, shall abide in the land which Moses gave you beyond the Jordan; but ye shall pass over before your brethren armed, all the mighty men of valor, and shall help them;
- 15 until Jehovah have given your brethren rest, as *he hath given* you, and they also have possessed the land which Jehovah your God giveth them: then ye shall return unto the land of your possession, and possess it, which Moses the servant of Jehovah gave you beyond the Jordan toward the sunrising.
- 16 ¶ And they answered Joshua, saying, All that thou hast commanded us we will do, and whithersoever thou sendest us we will go.
- 17 According as we hearkened unto Moses in all things, so will we hearken unto thee: only Jehovah thy God be with thee, as he was with Moses.
- 18 Whosoever he be that shall rebel against thy commandment, and shall not hearken unto thy words in all that thou commandest him, he shall be put to death: only be strong and of good courage.

- I. THE Conquest of Canaan. (1. - 12.)
- A- The entrance into Canaan. (1. - 5.)
  - 1- Joshua is commissioned (1.)
    - a- The command to Joshua (1:1-9)
      - 1) Possess the land. vs 2-3
      - 2) The scope of territory given.  
Wilderness to Lebanon and from Euphrates to the great sea/
      - 3) The promise. "No man will stand before you."
      - 4) The charge 'Restoration of courage.' vs. 6-9
    - b- Joshua's command to Israel (10-15)
      - 1) Prepare for invasion.-'Pack your lunch'
      - 2) East Jordan tribes to send armies also. 40,000.
    - c- Israel's response to Joshua (16-18)
      - 1) Wholehearted response.

**Joshua 2**

- 1 ¶ And Joshua the son of Nun sent out of Shittim two men as spies secretly, saying, Go, view the land, and Jericho. And they went and came into the house of a harlot whose name was Rahab, and lay there.
- 2 And it was told the king of Jericho, saying, Behold, there came men in hither to-night of the children of Israel to search out the land.
- 3 And the king of Jericho sent unto Rahab, saying, Bring forth the men that are come to thee, that are entered into thy house; for they are come to search out all the land.
- 4 And the woman took the two men, and hid them; and she said, Yea, the men came unto me, but I knew not whence they were:
- 5 and it came to pass about the time of the shutting of the gate, when it was dark, that the men went out; whither the men went I know not: pursue after them quickly; for ye will overtake them.
- 6 But she had brought them up to the roof, and hid them with the stalks of flax, which she had laid in order upon the roof.
- 7 And the men pursued after them the way to the Jordan unto the fords: and as soon as they that pursued after them were gone out, they shut the gate.
- 8 ¶ And before they were laid down, she came up unto them upon the roof;
- 9 and she said unto the men, I know that Jehovah hath given you the land, and that the fear of you is fallen upon us, and that all the inhabitants of the land melt away before you.
- 10 For we have heard how Jehovah dried up the water of the Red Sea before you, when ye came out of Egypt; and what ye did unto the two kings of the Amorites, that were beyond the Jordan, unto Sihon and to Og, whom ye *{1}* utterly destroyed. *{1} Heb devoted*
- 11 And as soon as we had heard it, our hearts did melt, neither did there remain any more spirit in any man, because of you: for Jehovah your God, he is God in heaven above, and on earth beneath.
- 12 Now therefore, I pray you, swear unto me by Jehovah, since I have dealt kindly with you, that ye also will deal kindly with my father's house, and give me a true token;
- 13 and that ye will save alive my father, and my mother, and my brethren, and my sisters, and all that they have, and will deliver our lives from death.
- 14 And the men said unto her, Our life *{1}* for yours, if ye utter not this our business; and it shall be, when Jehovah giveth us the land, that we will deal kindly and truly with thee. *{1} Heb instead of you to die*
- 15 Then she let them down by a cord through the window: for her house was upon the side of the wall, and she dwelt upon the wall.
- 16 And she said unto them, Get you to the mountain, lest the pursuers light upon you; and hide yourselves there three days, until the pursuers be returned: and afterward may ye go your way.
- 17 And the men said unto her, We will be guiltless of this thine oath which thou hast made us to swear.
- 18 Behold, when we come into the land, thou shalt bind this line of scarlet thread in the window which thou didst let us down by: and thou shalt gather unto thee into the house thy father, and thy mother, and thy brethren, and all thy father's household.
- 19 And it shall be, that whosoever shall go out of the doors of thy house into the street, his blood shall be upon his head, and we shall be guiltless: and whosoever shall be with thee in the house, his blood shall be on our head, if any hand be upon him.
- 20 But if thou utter this our business, then we shall be guiltless of thine oath which thou hast made us to swear.
- 21 And she said, According unto your words, so be it. And she sent them away, and they departed: and she bound the scarlet line in the window.
- 22 ¶ And they went, and came unto the mountain, and abode there three days, until the pursuers were returned: and the pursuers sought them throughout all the way, but found them not.
- 23 Then the two men returned, and descended from the mountain, and passed over, and came to Joshua the son of Nun; and they told him all that had befallen them.
- 24 And they said unto Joshua, Truly Jehovah hath delivered into our hands all the land; and moreover all the inhabitants of the land do melt away before us.

## 2- Jericho is spied.

(2.)

- a- The spies protected by Rahab 2:1-7
  - 1) The daring of the two spies.
  - 2) Deceit and faith of Rahab.  
Was this ethical? Ref Mat 1:5 and Mrk 12:17.
- b- The covenant with Rahab (8-21)
  - 1) The fame and fear of Israel.
  - 2) The recognition of Jehovah's greatness. vs. 11
  - 3) The provision of salvation for Rahab's house.
- c- The spies return and report (22-24)
  - 1) The inhabitants of Jericho are fainting before Israel.
  - 2) The Lord has worked a 'softening up' operation.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 3 & 4 are backed up.

**Joshua 3**

- 1 ¶ And Joshua rose up early in the morning; and they removed from Shittim, and came to the Jordan, he and all the children of Israel; and they lodged there before they passed over.
- 2 And it came to pass after three days, that the officers went through the midst of the camp;
- 3 and they commanded the people, saying, When ye see the ark of the covenant of Jehovah your God, and the priests the Levites bearing it, then ye shall remove from your place, and go after it.
- 4 Yet there shall be a space between you and it, about two thousand cubits by measure: come not near unto it, that ye may know the way by which ye must go; for ye have not passed this way heretofore.
- 5 And Joshua said unto the people, Sanctify yourselves; for to-morrow Jehovah will do wonders among you.
- 6 And Joshua spake unto the priests, saying, Take up the ark of the covenant, and pass over before the people. And they took up the ark of the covenant, and went before the people.
- 7 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Joshua, This day will I begin to magnify thee in the sight of all Israel, that they may know that, as I was with Moses, so I will be with thee.
- 8 And thou shalt command the priests that bear the ark of the covenant, saying, When ye are come to the brink of the waters of the Jordan, ye shall stand still in the Jordan.
- 9 And Joshua said unto the children of Israel, Come hither, and hear the words of Jehovah your God.
- 10 And Joshua said, Hereby ye shall know that the living God is among you, and that he will without fail drive out from before you the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Hivite, and the Perizzite, and the Girgashite, and the Amorite, and the Jebusite.
- 11 Behold, the ark of the covenant of the Lord of all the earth passeth over before you into the Jordan.
- 12 Now therefore take you twelve men out of the tribes of Israel, for every tribe a man.
- 13 And it shall come to pass, when the soles of the feet of the priests that bear the ark of Jehovah, the Lord of all the earth, shall rest in the waters of the Jordan, that the waters of the Jordan shall be cut off, even the waters that come down from above; and they shall stand in one heap.
- 14 ¶ And it came to pass, when the people removed from their tents, to pass over the Jordan, the priests that bare the ark of the covenant being before the people;
- 15 and when they that bare the ark were come unto the Jordan, and the feet of the priests that bare the ark were dipped in the brink of the water (for the Jordan overfloweth all its banks all the time of harvest,)
- 16 that the waters which came down from above stood, and rose up in one heap, a great way *{1}* off, at Adam, the city that is beside Zarethan; and those that went down toward the sea of the Arabah, even the Salt Sea, were wholly cut off: and the people passed over right against Jericho. *{1} Another reading is off rom}*

17 And the priests that bare the ark of the covenant of Jehovah stood firm on dry ground in the midst of the Jordan; and all Israel passed over on dry ground, until all the nation were passed clean over the Jordan.

## Joshua 4

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when all the nation were clean passed over the Jordan, that Jehovah spake unto Joshua, saying,
- 2 Take you twelve men out of the people, out of every tribe a man,
- 3 and command ye them, saying, Take you hence out of the midst of the Jordan, out of the place where the priests' feet stood firm, twelve stones, and carry them over with you, and lay them down in the lodging-place, where ye shall lodge this night.
- 4 Then Joshua called the twelve men, whom he had prepared of the children of Israel, out of every tribe a man:
- 5 and Joshua said unto them, Pass over before the ark of Jehovah your God into the midst of the Jordan, and take you up every man of you a stone upon his shoulder, according unto the number of the tribes of the children of Israel;
- 6 that this may be a sign among you, that, when your children ask in time to come, saying, What mean ye by these stones?
- 7 then ye shall say unto them, Because the waters of the Jordan were cut off before the ark of the covenant of Jehovah; when it passed over the Jordan, the waters of the Jordan were cut off: and these stones shall be for a memorial unto the children of Israel for ever.
- 8 And the children of Israel did so as Joshua commanded, and took up twelve stones out of the midst of the Jordan, as Jehovah spake unto Joshua, according to the number of the tribes of the children of Israel; and they carried them over with them unto the place where they lodged, and laid them down there.
- 9 And Joshua set up twelve stones in the midst of the Jordan, in the place where the feet of the priests that bare the ark of the covenant stood: and they are there unto this day.
- 10 ¶ For the priests that bare the ark stood in the midst of the Jordan, until everything was finished that Jehovah commanded Joshua to speak unto the people, according to all that Moses commanded Joshua: and the people hastened and passed over.
- 11 And it came to pass, when all the people were clean passed over, that the ark of Jehovah passed over, and the priests, in the presence of the people.
- 12 And the children of Reuben, and the children of Gad, and the half-tribe of Manasseh, passed over armed before the children of Israel, as Moses spake unto them:
- 13 about forty thousand ready armed for war passed over before Jehovah unto battle, to the plains of Jericho.
- 14 On that day Jehovah magnified Joshua in the sight of all Israel; and they feared him, as they feared Moses, all the days of his life.
- 15 And Jehovah spake unto Joshua, saying,
- 16 Command the priests that bear the ark of the testimony, that they come up out of the Jordan.
- 17 Joshua therefore commanded the priests, saying, Come ye up out of the Jordan.
- 18 And it came to pass, when the priests that bare the ark of the covenant of Jehovah were come up out of the midst of the Jordan, and the soles of the priests' feet were lifted up unto the dry ground, that the waters of the Jordan returned unto their place, and went over all its banks, as aforetime.
- 19 And the people came up out of the Jordan on the tenth day of the first month, and encamped in Gilgal, on the east border of Jericho.
- 20 ¶ And those twelve stones, which they took out of the Jordan, did Joshua set up in Gilgal.
- 21 And he spake unto the children of Israel, saying, When your children shall ask their fathers in time to come, saying, What mean these stones?
- 22 Then ye shall let your children know, saying, Israel came over this Jordan on dry land.
- 23 For Jehovah your God dried up the waters of the Jordan from before you, until ye were passed over, as Jehovah your God did to the Red Sea, which he dried up from before us, until we were passed over;
- 24 that all the peoples of the earth may know the hand of Jehovah, that it is mighty; that ye may fear Jehovah your God for ever.



- 3- The Jordan is crossed (3.)
- a- The preparation of sanctification (1-5)  
*Priests to bare the Arc*
  - b- Final instructions to follow the ark (6-13)  
*Water is to part when "the Priests feet touch the water".*
  - c- The miraculous crossing.
- 4- The memorial stones are placed. (4.)
- a- Twelve stones placed in Jordan (9)  
Suggests the death of the 12 tribes.
  - b- Twelve stones placed at Gilgal (20)  
Suggests the new life in the land of Canaan.
  - c- The encampment at Gilgal (19-24)  
Headquarters for whole campaign
  - d- The principle taught.  
*Teach the progeny the power of Jehovah in battling the enemy.*  
*'IT IS GOOD TO REMEMBER GOD'S POWER IN FORMER DAYS.'*

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 5 & 6 are backed up.

## Joshua 5

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when all the kings of the Amorites, that were beyond the Jordan westward, and all the kings of the Canaanites, that were by the sea, heard how that Jehovah had dried up the waters of the Jordan from before the children of Israel, until {1} we were passed over, that their heart melted, neither was there spirit in them any more, because of the children of Israel. {1} *Another reading is they }*
- 2 At that time Jehovah said unto Joshua, Make thee knives of flint, and circumcise again the children of Israel the second time.
- 3 And Joshua made him knives of flint, and circumcised the children of Israel at {1} the hill of the foreskins. {1} *Or Gibeath-haaraloth }*
- 4 And this is the cause why Joshua did circumcise: all the people that came forth out of Egypt, that were males, even all the men of war, died in the wilderness by the way, after they came forth out of Egypt.
- 5 For all the people that came out were circumcised; but all the people that were born in the wilderness by the way as they came forth out of Egypt, they had not circumcised.
- 6 For the children of Israel walked forty years in the wilderness, till all the nation, even the men of war that came forth out of Egypt, were consumed, because they hearkened not unto the voice of Jehovah: unto whom Jehovah sware that he would not let them see the land which Jehovah sware unto their fathers that he would give us, a land flowing with milk and honey.
- 7 And their children, whom he raised up in their stead, them did Joshua circumcise: for they were uncircumcised, because they had not circumcised them by the way.
- 8 And it came to pass, when they had done circumcising all the nation, that they abode in their places in the camp, till they were whole.
- 9 And Jehovah said unto Joshua, This day have I rolled away the reproach of Egypt from off you. Wherefore the name of that place was called {1} Gilgal, unto this day. {1} *That is Rolling }*
- 10 ¶ And the children of Israel encamped in Gilgal; and they kept the passover on the fourteenth day of the month at even in the plains of Jericho.
- 11 And they did eat of the produce of the land on the morrow after the passover, unleavened cakes and parched grain, in the selfsame day.
- 12 And the manna ceased on the morrow, after they had eaten of the produce of the land; neither had the children of

Israel manna any more; but they did eat of the fruit of the land of Canaan that year.

- 13 ¶ And it came to pass, when Joshua was by Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked, and, behold, there stood a man over against him with his sword drawn in his hand: and Joshua went unto him, and said unto him, Art thou for us, or for our adversaries?
- 14 And he said, Nay; but *as* prince of the host of Jehovah am I now come. And Joshua fell on his face to the earth, and did worship, and said unto him, What saith my lord unto his servant?
- 15 And the prince of Jehovah's host said unto Joshua, Put off thy shoe from off thy foot; for the place whereon thou standest is holy. And Joshua did so.

## Joshua 6

- 1 ¶ Now Jericho *{1}* was straitly shut up because of the children of Israel: none went out, and none came in. *{1}* *Heb shut the gates and was shut in}*
- 2 And Jehovah said unto Joshua, See, I have given into thy hand Jericho, and the king thereof, and the mighty men of valor.
- 3 And ye shall compass the city, all the men of war, going about the city once. Thus shalt thou do six days.
- 4 And seven priests shall bear seven *{1}* trumpets of rams' horns before the ark: and the seventh day ye shall compass the city seven times, and the priests shall blow the trumpets. *{1}* *Or jubilee trumpets}*
- 5 And it shall be, that, when they make a long blast with the ram's horn, and when ye hear the sound of the trumpet, all the people shall shout with a great shout; and the wall of the city shall fall down *{1}* flat, and the people shall go up every man straight before him. *{1}* *Heb in its place}*
- 6 ¶ And Joshua the son of Nun called the priests, and said unto them, Take up the ark of the covenant, and let seven priests bear seven trumpets of rams' horns before the ark of Jehovah.
- 7 And *{1}* they said unto the people, Pass on, and compass the city, and let the armed men pass on before the ark of Jehovah. *{1}* *Another reading is he}*
- 8 And it was so, that, when Joshua had spoken unto the people, the seven priests bearing the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Jehovah passed on, and blew the trumpets: and the ark of the covenant of Jehovah followed them.
- 9 And the armed men went before the priests that blew the trumpets, and the rearward went after the ark, *the priests* blowing the trumpets as they went.
- 10 And Joshua commanded the people, saying, Ye shall not shout, nor let your voice be heard, neither shall any word proceed out of your mouth, until the day I bid you shout; then shall ye shout.
- 11 So he caused the ark of Jehovah to compass the city, going about it once: and they came into the camp, and lodged in the camp.
- 12 And Joshua rose early in the morning, and the priests took up the ark of Jehovah.
- 13 And the seven priests bearing the seven trumpets of rams' horns before the ark of Jehovah went on continually, and blew the trumpets: and the armed men went before them; and the rearward came after the ark of Jehovah, *the priests* blowing the trumpets as they went.
- 14 And the second day they compassed the city once, and returned into the camp: so they did six days.
- 15 And it came to pass on the seventh day, that they rose early at the dawning of the day, and compassed the city after the same manner seven times: only on that day they compassed the city seven times.
- 16 And it came to pass at the seventh time, when the priests blew the trumpets, Joshua said unto the people, Shout; for Jehovah hath given you the city.
- 17 ¶ And the city shall be devoted, even it and all that is therein, to Jehovah: only Rahab the harlot shall live, she and all that are with her in the house, because she hid the messengers that we sent.
- 18 But as for you, only keep yourselves from the devoted thing, lest when ye have devoted it, ye take of the devoted thing; so would ye make the camp of Israel *{1}* accursed, and trouble it. *{1}* *Heb devoted}*
- 19 But all the silver, and gold, and vessels of brass and iron, are holy unto Jehovah: they shall come into the treasury of Jehovah.
- 20 So the people shouted, and *the priests* blew the trumpets; and it came to pass, when the people heard the sound of the trumpet, that the people shouted with a great shout, and the wall fell down *{1}* flat, so that the people went up into the city, every man straight before him, and they took the city. *{1}* *Heb in its place}*
- 21 And they *{1}* utterly destroyed all that was in the city, both man and woman, both young and old, and ox, and sheep, and ass, with the edge of the sword. *{1}* *Heb devoted }*
- 22 And Joshua said unto the two men that had spied out the land, Go into the harlot's house, and bring out thence the woman, and all that she hath, as ye sware unto her.
- 23 And the young men the spies went in, and brought out Rahab, and her father, and her mother, and her brethren, and all that she had; all her *{1}* kindred also they brought out; and they set them without the camp of Israel. *{1}* *Heb families}*
- 24 And they burnt the city with fire, and all that was therein; only the silver, and the gold, and the vessels of brass and of iron, they put into the treasury of the house of Jehovah.
- 25 But Rahab the harlot, and her father's household, and all that she had, did Joshua save alive; and she dwelt in the midst of Israel unto this day, because she hid the messengers, whom Joshua sent to spy out Jericho.

- 26 And Joshua charged them with an oath at that time, saying, Cursed be the man before Jehovah, that riseth up and buildeth this city Jericho: with the loss of his first-born shall he lay the foundation thereof, and with the loss of his youngest son shall he set up the gates of it.
- 27 So Jehovah was with Joshua; and his fame was in all the land.
- 

5- Israel purified and Joshua challenged. (5.)

- a- The circumcision rite is renewed. vs. 1-9
- b- Passover kept at Gilgal. vs. 10
- c- The manna ceases after Passover.
- d- Joshua's-historic meeting with the Lord. vs. 13-15
- e- The principles taught.
  - 1) To serve successfully, One must have a proper relationship with the Lord.  
"Sanctified flesh".
  - 2) One must recognize Christ as Captain

B- The Central Campaign. (6.-9.)

- 1- The fall of Jericho. (6.)
  - a- Description of Jericho. 5 miles west of Jordan, small city, 8 acres, Approx. 1500 population.
  - b- The Lord's command. vs. 1-5  
Circle the city once each day for 6 days; they were to make no noise.
  - c- The Lord's strategy. vs. 6-14  
Once around for 6 days and seven times on the seventh day. On finishing the seventh time around, seven priests shall blow a long blast on seven ram's horns and all the people shall shout. Does this sound like a plan???
  - d- The strategic victory. vs. 15-21
  - e- Grace to the faithful. Those in the household of Rahab. vs. 22-27
  - f- The principles taught.
    - 1) God gives victory after complete obedience.
    - 2) They were to obey God for small things before they will trust Him for larger items.
    - 3) God always provides a way of escape for those who believe. 2:25-26

**Joshua 7**

- 1 ¶ But the children of Israel committed a trespass in the devoted thing; for Achan, the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, took of the devoted thing: and the anger of Jehovah was kindled against the children of Israel.
- 2 And Joshua sent men from Jericho to Ai, which is beside Beth-aven, on the east side of Beth-el, and spake unto them, saying, Go up and spy out the land. And the men went up and spied out Ai.
- 3 And they returned to Joshua, and said unto him, Let not all the people go up; but let about two or three thousand men go up and smite Ai; make not all the people to toil thither; for they are but few.
- 4 So there went up thither of the people about three thousand men: and they fled before the men of Ai.
- 5 And the men of Ai smote of them about thirty and six men; and they chased them *from* before the gate even unto *{1}* Shebarim, and smote them at the descent; and the hearts of the people melted, and became as water. *{1} Or the quarries*
- 6 ¶ And Joshua rent his clothes, and fell to the earth upon his face before the ark of Jehovah until the evening, he and the elders of Israel; and they put dust upon their heads.
- 7 And Joshua said, Alas, O Lord Jehovah, wherefore hast thou at all brought this people over the Jordan, to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites, to cause us to perish? would that we had been content and dwelt beyond the Jordan!
- 8 Oh, Lord, what shall I say, after that Israel hath turned their backs before their enemies!
- 9 For the Canaanites and all the inhabitants of the land will hear of it, and will compass us round, and cut off our name from the earth: and what wilt thou do for thy great name?
- 10 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Joshua, Get thee up; wherefore art thou thus fallen upon thy face?
- 11 Israel hath sinned; yea, they have even transgressed my covenant which I commanded them: yea, they have even taken of the devoted thing, and have also stolen, and dissembled also; and they have even put it among their own stuff.
- 12 Therefore the children of Israel cannot stand before their enemies; they turn their backs before their enemies, because they are become accursed: I will not be with you any more, except ye destroy the devoted thing from among you.
- 13 Up, sanctify the people, and say, Sanctify yourselves against to-morrow: for thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, There is a devoted thing in the midst of thee, O Israel; thou canst not stand before thine enemies, until ye take away the devoted thing from among you.
- 14 In the morning therefore ye shall be brought near by your tribes: and it shall be, that the tribe which Jehovah taketh shall come near by families; and the family which Jehovah shall take shall come near by households; and the household which Jehovah shall take shall come near man by man.
- 15 And it shall be, that he that is taken with the devoted thing shall be burnt with fire, he and all that he hath; because he hath transgressed the covenant of Jehovah, and because he hath wrought folly in Israel.
- 16 ¶ So Joshua rose up early in the morning, and brought Israel near by their tribes; and the tribe of Judah was taken:
- 17 and he brought near the family of Judah; and he took the family of the Zerahites: and he brought near the family of the Zerahites man by man; and Zabdi was taken:
- 18 and he brought near his household man by man; and Achan, the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, was taken.
- 19 And Joshua said unto Achan, My son, give, I pray thee, glory to Jehovah, the God of Israel, and *{1}* make confession unto him; and tell me now what thou hast done; hide it not from me. *{1} Or give praise*
- 20 And Achan answered Joshua, and said, Of a truth I have sinned against Jehovah, the God of Israel, and thus and thus have I done:
- 21 when I saw among the spoil a goodly *{1}* Babylonish mantle, and two hundred shekels of silver, and a wedge of gold of fifty shekels weight, then I coveted them, and took them; and, behold, they are hid in the earth in the midst of my tent, and the silver under it. *{1} Heb mantle of Shinar*
- 22 So Joshua sent messengers, and they ran unto the tent; and, behold, it was hid in his tent, and the silver under it.
- 23 And they took them from the midst of the tent, and brought them unto Joshua, and unto all the children of Israel; and they laid them down before Jehovah.
- 24 And Joshua, and all Israel with him, took Achan the son of Zerah, and the silver, and the mantle, and the wedge of gold, and his sons, and his daughters, and his oxen, and his asses, and his sheep, and his

- tent, and all that he had: and they brought them up unto the valley of Achor.
- 25 And Joshua said, Why hast thou troubled us? Jehovah shall trouble thee this day. And all Israel stoned him with stones; and they burned them with fire, and stoned them with stones.
- 26 And they raised over him a great heap of stones, unto this day; and Jehovah turned from the fierceness of his anger. Wherefore the name of that place was called, The valley of *{1}* Achor, unto this day. *{1}*  
*That is Troubling}*
- 

- 2- The sin of Achan. (7.)
- a- The attack on Ai. vs. 1-4  
 12,000 people, 3200 feet higher than Jerico. 13 miles to West of Jerico.  
 They had no command from the Lord!
  - b- Israel's defeat at Ai. vs. 5
  - c- Joshua's despair and the Lord's rebuke. vs. 6-12  
 He despaired of the wrong obstacle. vs. 9  
 The Lord's response: 'Get thee up, Sin is in the camp.'
  - d- The key to the trouble. vs. 13  
 Achan stole from the Lord. - The firstfruits.
  - e- The sanctifying procedure. vs. 14-26  
 Achan and his family were stoned and burned with fire! (Deu 24:16)  
 No offerings allowed - this was a sin unto death.
  - f- The principles taught.
    - 1) God demands the first fruits.  
 One of the most poignant passages on giving in the Bible.
    - 2) No victories when shortchanging God.
    - 3) Defeat in Christian service is often because of sin within the camp.

**Joshua 8**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Joshua, Fear not, neither be thou dismayed: take all the people of war with thee, and arise, go up to Ai; see, I have given into thy hand the king of Ai, and his people, and his city, and his land;
- 2 And thou shalt do to Ai and her king as thou didst unto Jericho and her king: only the spoil thereof, and the cattle thereof, shall ye take for a prey unto yourselves: set thee an ambush for the city behind it.
- 3 ¶ So Joshua arose, and all the people of war, to go up to Ai: and Joshua chose out thirty thousand men, the mighty men of valor, and sent them forth by night.
- 4 And he commanded them, saying, Behold, ye shall lie in ambush against the city, behind the city; go not very far from the city, but be ye all ready:
- 5 and I, and all the people that are with me, will approach unto the city. And it shall come to pass, when they come out against us, as at the first, that we will flee before them;
- 6 and they will come out after us, till we have drawn them away from the city; for they will say, They flee before us, as at the first: so we will flee before them;
- 7 and ye shall rise up from the ambush, and take possession of the city: for Jehovah your God will deliver it into your hand.
- 8 And it shall be, when ye have seized upon the city, that ye shall set the city on fire; according to the word of Jehovah shall ye do: see, I have commanded you.
- 9 And Joshua sent them forth; and they went to the ambushment, and abode between Beth-el and Ai, on the west side of Ai: but Joshua lodged that night among the people.
- 10 And Joshua arose up early in the morning, and mustered the people, and went up, he and the elders of Israel, before the people to Ai.
- 11 And all the people, *even the men of war* that were with him, went up, and drew nigh, and came before the city, and encamped on the north side of Ai: now there was a valley between him and Ai.
- 12 And he took about five thousand men, and set them in ambush between Beth-el and Ai, on the west side of *{1}* the city. *{1} Another reading is Ai*
- 13 *{1}* So they set the people, even all the host that was on the north of the city, and their liers-in-wait that were on the west of the city; and Joshua *{2}* went that night into the midst of the valley. *{1} Or So the people set all etc 2) Some MSS read lodged that night in*
- 14 And it came to pass, when the king of Ai saw it, that they hastened and rose up early, and the men of the city went out against Israel to battle, he and all his people, *{1}* at the time appointed, before the Arabah; but he knew not that there was an ambush against him behind the city. *{1} Or to the place appointed*
- 15 And Joshua and all Israel made as if they were beaten before them, and fled by the way of the wilderness.
- 16 And all the people that were in *{1}* the city were called together to pursue after them: and they pursued after Joshua, and were drawn away from the city. *{1} Another reading is Ai*
- 17 And there was not a man left in Ai or Beth-el, that went not out after Israel: and they left the city open, and pursued after Israel.
- 18 And Jehovah said unto Joshua, Stretch out the javelin that is in thy hand toward Ai; for I will give it into thy hand. And Joshua stretched out the javelin that was in his hand toward the city.
- 19 And the ambush arose quickly out of their place, and they ran as soon as he had stretched out his hand, and entered into the city, and took it; and they hastened and set the city on fire.
- 20 And when the men of Ai looked behind them, they saw, and, behold, the smoke of the city ascended up to heaven, and they had no *{1}* power to flee this way or that way: and the people that fled to the wilderness turned back upon the pursuers. *{1} Heb hands*
- 21 And when Joshua and all Israel saw that the ambush had taken the city, and that the smoke of the city ascended, then they turned again, and slew the men of Ai.
- 22 And the others came forth out of the city against them; so they were in the midst of Israel, some on this side, and some on that side: and they smote them, so that they let none of them remain or escape.
- 23 ¶ And the king of Ai they took alive, and brought him to Joshua.
- 24 And it came to pass, when Israel had made an end of slaying all the inhabitants of Ai in the field, in the wilderness wherein they pursued them, and they were all fallen by the edge of the sword, until they were consumed, that all Israel returned unto Ai, and smote it with the edge of the sword.
- 25 And all that fell that day, both of men and women, were twelve thousand, even all the men of Ai.
- 26 For Joshua drew not back his hand, wherewith he stretched out the javelin, until he had *{1}* utterly destroyed all the inhabitants of Ai. *{1} Heb devoted*

- 27 Only the cattle and the spoil of that city Israel took for prey unto themselves, according unto the word of Jehovah which he commanded Joshua.
- 28 So Joshua burnt Ai, and made it a *{1}* heap for ever, even a desolation, unto this day. *{1}* Or mound; Heb tel}
- 29 And the king of Ai he hanged on a tree until the eventide: and at the going down of the sun Joshua commanded, and they took his body down from the tree, and cast it at the entrance of the gate of the city, and raised thereon a great heap of stones, unto this day.
- 30 ¶ Then Joshua built an altar unto Jehovah, the God of Israel, in mount Ebal,
- 31 as Moses the servant of Jehovah commanded the children of Israel, as it is written in the book of the law of Moses, an altar of *{1}* unhewn stones, upon which no man had lifted up any iron: and they offered thereon burnt-offerings unto Jehovah, and sacrificed peace-offerings. *{1}* Heb whole}
- 32 And he wrote there upon the stones a copy of the law of Moses, *{1}* which he wrote, in the presence of the children of Israel. *{1}* Or which he wrote in etc}
- 33 And all Israel, and their elders and officers, and their judges, stood on this side of the ark and on that side before the priests the Levites, that bare the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, as well the sojourner as the homeborn; half of them in front of mount Gerizim, and half of them in front of mount Ebal; as Moses the servant of Jehovah had *{1}* commanded at the first, that they should bless the people of Israel. *{1}* Or commanded that they should bless the people of Israel first of all}
- 34 And afterward he read all the words of the law, the blessing and the curse, according to all that is written in the book of the law.
- 35 There was not a word of all that Moses commanded, which Joshua read not before all the assembly of Israel, and the women, and the little ones, and the sojourners that *{1}* were among them. *{1}* Heb walked}

- 3- The capture of Ai and Bethel. (8.)
- a- Joshua is instructed by the Lord. vs. 1-2
- b- The spoil is given to Israel. vs. 2,27
- ‘Help yourself Israel.’
- c- Victory through obedience and out-stretched spear. vs. 3-26
- d- The principle taught. Trust and obey!
- e- Israel’s pilgrimage to Mt. Ebal and Gerazim. vs. 30-35
- .

**Joshua 9**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when all the kings that were beyond the Jordan, in the hill-country, and in the lowland, and on all the shore of the great sea in front of Lebanon, the Hittite, and the Amorite, the Canaanite, the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite, heard thereof;
- 2 that they gathered themselves together, to fight with Joshua and with Israel, with one accord.
- 3 ¶ But when the inhabitants of Gibeon heard what Joshua had done unto Jericho and to Ai,
- 4 they also did work wilily, and went and *{1}* made as if they had been ambassadors, and took old sacks upon their asses, and wine-skins, old and rent and bound up, *{1}* *According to Sept. Vulg. and Syr took provisions; See Jos 9:12*
- 5 and old and patched shoes upon their feet, and old garments upon them; and all the bread of their provision was dry and was become mouldy.
- 6 And they went to Joshua unto the camp at Gilgal, and said unto him, and to the men of Israel, We are come from a far country: now therefore make ye a covenant with us.
- 7 And the men of Israel said unto the Hivites, Peradventure ye dwell among us; and how shall we make a covenant with you?
- 8 And they said unto Joshua, We are thy servants. And Joshua said unto them, Who are ye? and from whence come ye?
- 9 And they said unto him, From a very far country thy servants are come because of the name of Jehovah thy God: for we have heard the fame of him, and all that he did in Egypt,
- 10 and all that he did to the two kings of the Amorites, that were beyond the Jordan, to Sihon king of Heshbon, and to Og king of Bashan, who was at Ashtaroth.
- 11 And our elders and all the inhabitants of our country spake to us, saying, Take provision in your hand for the journey, and go to meet them, and say unto them, We are your servants: and now make ye a covenant with us.
- 12 This our bread we took hot for our provision out of our houses on the day we came forth to go unto you; but now, behold, it is dry, and is become mouldy:
- 13 and these wine-skins, which we filled, were new; and, behold, they are rent: and these our garments and our shoes are become old by reason of the very long journey.
- 14 And the men took of their provision, and asked not counsel at the mouth of Jehovah.
- 15 ¶ And Joshua made peace with them, and made a covenant with them, to let them live: and the princes of the congregation swore unto them.
- 16 And it came to pass at the end of three days after they had made a covenant with them, that they heard that they were their neighbors, and that they dwelt among them.
- 17 And the children of Israel journeyed, and came unto their cities on the third day. Now their cities were Gibeon, and Chephirah, and Beeroth, and Kiriath-jearim.
- 18 And the children of Israel smote them not, because the princes of the congregation had sworn unto them by Jehovah, the God of Israel. And all the congregation murmured against the princes.
- 19 But all the princes said unto all the congregation, We have sworn unto them by Jehovah, the God of Israel: now therefore we may not touch them.
- 20 This we will do to them, and let them live; lest wrath be upon us, because of the oath which we swore unto them.
- 21 And the princes said unto them, Let them live: so they became hewers of wood and drawers of water unto all the congregation, as the princes had spoken unto them.
- 22 ¶ And Joshua called for them, and he spake unto them, saying, Wherefore have ye beguiled us, saying, We are very far from you; when ye dwell among us?
- 23 Now therefore ye are cursed, and there *{1}* shall never fail to be of you bondmen, both hewers of wood and drawers of water for the house of my God. *{1}* *Heb shall not be cut off from you*
- 24 And they answered Joshua, and said, Because it was certainly told thy servants, how that Jehovah thy God commanded his servant Moses to give you all the land, and to destroy all the inhabitants of the land from before you; therefore we were sore afraid for our lives because of you, and have done this thing.
- 25 And now, behold, we are in thy hand: as it seemeth good and right unto thee to do unto us, do.
- 26 And so did he unto them, and delivered them out of the hand of the children of Israel, that they slew them not.
- 27 And Joshua made them that day hewers of wood and drawers of water for the congregation, and for the altar of Jehovah, unto this day, in the place which he should choose.



- 4 The treaty with Gibeon (9.)
  - a- The significance of Gibeon.
    - A royal city of Egypt. Very strategic.
  - b- The Deceit of the Gibeonites. vs. 1-5
  - c- The league made with Gibeon. vs. 6-15
  - d- The curse on Gibeon. vs. 16-27
    - Made servants of Israel.
  - e- The principles taught.
    - 1) Counsel must first be asked of the Lord.
    - 2) Action taken without the Lord's counsel can become a thorn in the side.

**Joshua 10**

- 1 ¶ Now it came to pass, when Adoni-zedek king of Jerusalem heard how Joshua had taken Ai, and had *{1}* utterly destroyed it (as he had done to Jericho and her king, so he had done to Ai and her king), and how the inhabitants of Gibeon had made peace with Israel, and were among them; *{1}* *Heb devoted*
- 2 that they feared greatly, because Gibeon was a great city, as one of the royal cities, and because it was greater than Ai, and all the men thereof were mighty.
- 3 Wherefore Adoni-zedek king of Jerusalem sent unto Hoham king of Hebron, and unto Piram king of Jarmuth, and unto Japhia king of Lachish, and unto Debir king of Eglon, saying,
- 4 Come up unto me, and help me, and let us smite Gibeon; for it hath made peace with Joshua and with the children of Israel.
- 5 Therefore the five kings of the Amorites, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, the king of Eglon, gathered themselves together, and went up, they and all their hosts, and encamped against Gibeon, and made war against it.
- 6 And the men of Gibeon sent unto Joshua to the camp to Gilgal, saying, Slack not thy hand from thy servants; come up to us quickly, and save us, and help us: for all the kings of the Amorites that dwell in the hill-country are gathered together against us.
- 7 ¶ So Joshua went up from Gilgal, he, and all the people of war with him, and all the mighty men of valor.
- 8 And Jehovah said unto Joshua, Fear them not: for I have delivered them into thy hands; there shall not a man of them stand before thee.
- 9 Joshua therefore came upon them suddenly; *for* he went up from Gilgal all the night.
- 10 And Jehovah discomfited them before Israel, and he slew them with a great slaughter at Gibeon, and chased them by the way of the ascent of Beth-horon, and smote them to Azekah, and unto Makkedah.
- 11 And it came to pass, as they fled from before Israel, while they were at the descent of Beth-horon, that Jehovah cast down great stones from heaven upon them unto Azekah, and they died: they were more who died with the hailstones than they whom the children of Israel slew with the sword.
- 12 Then spake Joshua to Jehovah in the day when Jehovah delivered up the Amorites before the children of Israel; and he said in the sight of Israel, Sun, *{1}* stand thou still upon Gibeon; And thou, Moon, in the valley of Aijalon. *{1}* *Heb be silent*
- 13 And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed, Until the nation had avenged themselves of their enemies. Is not this written in the book of *{1}* Jashar? And the sun stayed in the midst of heaven, and hastened not to go down about a whole day. *{1}* *Or The Upright*
- 14 And there was no day like that before it or after it, that Jehovah hearkened unto the voice of a man: for Jehovah fought for Israel.
- 15 ¶ And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, unto the camp to Gilgal.
- 16 And these five kings fled, and hid themselves in the cave at Makkedah.
- 17 And it was told Joshua, saying, The five kings are found, hidden in the cave at Makkedah.
- 18 And Joshua said, Roll great stones unto the mouth of the cave, and set men by it to keep them:
- 19 but stay not ye; pursue after your enemies, and smite the hindmost of them; suffer them not to enter into their cities: for Jehovah your God hath delivered them into your hand.
- 20 And it came to pass, when Joshua and the children of Israel had made an end of slaying them with a very great slaughter, till they were consumed, and the remnant which remained of them had entered into the fortified cities,
- 21 that all the people returned to the camp to Joshua at Makkedah in peace: none *{1}* moved his tongue against any of the children of Israel. *{1}* *Heb whetted*
- 22 Then said Joshua, Open the mouth of the cave, and bring forth those five kings unto me out of the cave.
- 23 And they did so, and brought forth those five kings unto him out of the cave, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, the king of Eglon.
- 24 And it came to pass, when they brought forth those kings unto Joshua, that Joshua called for all the men of Israel, and said unto the chiefs of the men of war that went with him, Come near, put your feet upon the necks of these kings. And they came near, and put their feet upon the necks of them.
- 25 And Joshua said unto them, Fear not, nor be dismayed; be strong and of good courage: for thus shall Jehovah do to all your enemies against whom ye fight.
- 26 And afterward Joshua smote them, and put them to death, and hanged them on five trees: and they

- were hanging upon the trees until the evening.
- 27 And it came to pass at the time of the going down of the sun, that Joshua commanded, and they took them down off the trees, and cast them into the cave wherein they had hidden themselves, and laid great stones on the mouth of the cave, unto this very day.
- 28 ¶ And Joshua took Makkedah on that day, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and the king thereof: he *{1}* utterly destroyed them and all the souls that were therein; he left none remaining; and he did to the king of Makkedah as he had done unto the king of Jericho. *{1}* *Heb devoted*
- 29 And Joshua passed from Makkedah, and all Israel with him, unto Libnah, and fought against Libnah: and Jehovah delivered it also, and the king thereof, into the hand of Israel; and he smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the souls that were therein; he left none remaining in it; and he did unto the king thereof as he had done unto the king of Jericho.
- 31 And Joshua passed from Libnah, and all Israel with him, unto Lachish, and encamped against it, and fought against it:
- 32 and Jehovah delivered Lachish into the hand of Israel; and he took it on the second day, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the souls that were therein, according to all that he had done to Libnah.
- 33 Then Horam king of Gezer came up to help Lachish; and Joshua smote him and his people, until he had left him none remaining.
- 34 And Joshua passed from Lachish, and all Israel with him, unto Eglon; and they encamped against it, and fought against it;
- 35 and they took it on that day, and smote it with the edge of the sword; and all the souls that were therein he *{1}* utterly destroyed that day, according to all that he had done to Lachish. *{1}* *Heb devoted*
- 36 And Joshua went up from Eglon, and all Israel with him, unto Hebron; and they fought against it:
- 37 and they took it, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and the king thereof, and all the cities thereof, and all the souls that were therein; he left none remaining, according to all that he had done to Eglon; but he *{1}* utterly destroyed it, and all the souls that were therein. *{1}* *Heb devoted*
- 38 And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, to Debir, and fought against it:
- 39 and he took it, and the king thereof, and all the cities thereof; and they smote them with the edge of the sword, and *{1}* utterly destroyed all the souls that were therein; he left none remaining: as he had done to Hebron, so he did to Debir, and to the king thereof; as he had done also to Libnah, and to the king thereof. *{1}* *Heb devoted*
- 40 So Joshua smote all the land, the hill-country, and the South, and the lowland, and the slopes, and all their kings: he left none remaining, but he *{1}* utterly destroyed all that breathed, as Jehovah, the God of Israel, commanded. *{1}* *Heb devoted*
- 41 And Joshua smote them from Kadesh-barnea even unto Gaza, and all the country of Goshen, even unto Gibeon.
- 42 And all these kings and their land did Joshua take at one time, because Jehovah, the God of Israel, fought for Israel.
- 43 And Joshua returned, and all Israel with him, unto the camp to Gilgal.

### C- The Southern campaign

(10.)

Precipitated because of Gibeon.

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 1- The Amorite league attacks Gibeon.          | vs. 1-5   |
| 2- Joshua's attack by night.                   | vs. 6-12  |
| 3- Joshua's miraculous aid.                    | vs. 13-14 |
| Commanded the sun and the moon to stand still. |           |
| Supernatural intervention.                     |           |
| 4- Five kings slain by Joshua.                 | vs. 15-27 |
| 5- The Southern cities destroyed.              | vs. 28-43 |

**Joshua 11**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when Jabin king of Hazor heard thereof, that he sent to Jobab king of Madon, and to the king of Shimron, and to the king of Achshaph,
- 2 and to the kings that were on the north, in the hill-country, and in the Arabah south of Chinneroth, and in the lowland, and in <sup>{1}</sup> the heights of Dor on the west, <sup>{1}</sup> Or *Naphoth-dor*
- 3 to the Canaanite on the east and on the west, and the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Jebusite in the hill-country, and the Hivite under Hermon in the land of Mizpah.
- 4 And they went out, they and all their hosts with them, much people, even as the sand that is upon the sea-shore in multitude, with horses and chariots very many.
- 5 And all these kings met together; and they came and encamped together at the waters of Merom, to fight with Israel.
- 6 And Jehovah said unto Joshua, Be not afraid because of them; for to-morrow at this time will I deliver them up all slain before Israel: thou shalt hock their horses, and burn their chariots with fire.
- 7 So Joshua came, and all the people of war with him, against them by the waters of Merom suddenly, and fell upon them.
- 8 And Jehovah delivered them into the hand of Israel, and they smote them, and chased them unto great Sidon, and unto Misrephoth-maim, and unto the valley of Mizpeh eastward; and they smote them, until they left them none remaining.
- 9 And Joshua did unto them as Jehovah bade him: he hocked their horses, and burnt their chariots with fire.
- 10 ¶ And Joshua turned back at that time, and took Hazor, and smote the king thereof with the sword: for Hazor beforetime was the head of all those kingdoms.
- 11 And they smote all the souls that were therein with the edge of the sword, <sup>{1}</sup> utterly destroying them; there was none left that breathed: and he burnt Hazor with fire. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb *devoting*
- 12 And all the cities of those kings, and all the kings of them, did Joshua take, and he smote them with the edge of the sword, and <sup>{1}</sup> utterly destroyed them; as Moses the servant of Jehovah commanded. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb *devoted*
- 13 But as for the cities that stood on their mounds, Israel burned none of them, save Hazor only; that did Joshua burn.
- 14 And all the spoil of these cities, and the cattle, the children of Israel took for a prey unto themselves; but every man they smote with the edge of the sword, until they had destroyed them, neither left they any that breathed.
- 15 ¶ As Jehovah commanded Moses his servant, so did Moses command Joshua: and so did Joshua; <sup>{1}</sup> he left nothing undone of all that Jehovah commanded Moses. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb *he removed nothing*
- 16 So Joshua took all that land, the hill-country, and all the South, and all the land of Goshen, and the lowland, and the Arabah, and the hill-country of Israel, and the lowland of the same;
- 17 from <sup>{1}</sup> mount Halak, that goeth up to Seir, even unto Baal-gad in the valley of Lebanon under mount Hermon: and all their kings he took, and smote them, and put them to death. <sup>{1}</sup> Or *the bare mountain*
- 18 Joshua made war a long time with all those kings.
- 19 There was not a city that made peace with the children of Israel, save the Hivites the inhabitants of Gibeon: they took all in battle.
- 20 For it was of Jehovah to <sup>{1}</sup> harden their hearts, to come against Israel in battle, that he might <sup>{2}</sup> utterly destroy them, that they <sup>{3}</sup> might have no favor, but that he might destroy them, as Jehovah commanded Moses. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb *make strong* 2) Heb *devote* 3) Or *might not sue for favor*
- 21 And Joshua came at that time, and cut off the Anakim from the hill-country, from Hebron, from Debir, from Anab, and from all the hill-country of Judah, and from all the hill-country of Israel: Joshua <sup>{1}</sup> utterly destroyed them with their cities. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb *devoted*
- 22 There was none of the Anakim left in the land of the children of Israel: only in Gaza, in Gath, and in Ashdod, did some remain.
- 23 So Joshua took the whole land, according to all that Jehovah spake unto Moses; and Joshua gave it for an inheritance unto Israel according to their divisions by their tribes. And the land had rest from war.

D- The Northern campaign.

(11.)

Precipitated because of a 'northern league of nations' gathered to war against Israel.

- 1- The Northern coalition prepares to attack Israel. vs. 1-5
- 2- Joshua, on orders, attacks swiftly. vs. 6-10
- 3- The inhabitants destroyed. vs. 11-12
- 4- Summary of Joshua's conquests. vs. 16-23
- 5- Principles taught.
  - a- Israel always attacked first
  - b- When God orders the battle, the size of the enemy is not important.

**Joshua 12**

- 1 ¶ Now these are the kings of the land, whom the children of Israel smote, and possessed their land beyond the Jordan toward the sunrising, from the valley of the Arnon unto mount Hermon, and all the Arabah eastward:
- 2 Sihon king of the Amorites, who dwelt in Heshbon, and ruled from Aroer, which is on the edge of the valley of the Arnon, and *the city that is in* the middle of the valley, and half Gilead, even unto the river Jabbok, the border of the children of Ammon;
- 3 and the Arabah unto the sea of Chinneroth, eastward, and unto the sea of the Arabah, even the Salt Sea, eastward, the way to Beth-jeshimoth; and on the south, under the slopes of Pisgah:
- 4 and the border of Og king of Bashan, of the remnant of the Rephaim, who dwelt at Ashtaroth and at Edrei,
- 5 and ruled in mount Hermon, and in Salecah, and in all Bashan, unto the border of the Geshurites and the Maacathites, and half Gilead, the border of Sihon king of Heshbon.
- 6 Moses the servant of Jehovah and the children of Israel smote them: and Moses the servant of Jehovah gave it for a possession unto the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh.
- 7 ¶ And these are the kings of the land whom Joshua and the children of Israel smote beyond the Jordan westward, from Baal-gad in the valley of Lebanon even unto mount Halak, that goeth up to Seir; and Joshua gave it unto the tribes of Israel for a possession according to their divisions;
- 8 in the hill-country, and in the lowland, and in the Arabah, and in the slopes, and in the wilderness, and in the South; the Hittite, the Amorite, and the Canaanite, the Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite:
- 9 the king of Jericho, one; the king of Ai, which is beside Beth-el, one;
- 10 the king of Jerusalem, one; the king of Hebron, one;
- 11 the king of Jarmuth, one; the king of Lachish, one;
- 12 the king of Eglon, one; the king of Gezer, one;
- 13 the king of Debir, one; the king of Geder, one;
- 14 the king of Hormah, one; the king of Arad, one;
- 15 the king of Libnah, one; the king of Adullam, one;
- 16 the king of Makkedah, one; the king of Beth-el, one;
- 17 the king of Tappuah, one; the king of Hopher, one;
- 18 the king of Aphek, one; the king of Lasharon, one;
- 19 the king of Madon, one; the king of Hazor, one;
- 20 the king of Shimron-meron, one; the king of Achshaph, one;
- 21 the king of Taanach, one; the king of Megiddo, one;
- 22 the king of Kedesh, one; the king of Jokneam in Carmel, one;
- 23 the king of Dor in {1} the height of Dor, one; the king of {2} Goyim in Gilgal, one; {1} Or Naphath-dor 2) Or nations }
- 24 the king of Tirzah, one: all the kings thirty and one.

- D- The whole conquest recapitulated. (12.)
  - 1- The campaign East of Jordan. vs. 1-6
    - a- Territory of Sihon. vs. 1-3
    - b- Territory of Og. vs. 4-6
  - 2- The campaign West of Jordan. vs. 7-14
    - a- From Lebonon to Mt. Seir.
    - b- 31 Kings slain.
    - c- Total time of the campaign is 7 years.

**Joshua 13**

- 1 ¶ Now Joshua was old and well stricken in years; and Jehovah said unto him, Thou art old and well stricken in years, and there remaineth yet very much land to be possessed.
- 2 This is the land that yet remaineth: all the regions of the Philistines, and all the Geshurites;
- 3 from *{1}* the Shihor, which is before Egypt, even unto the border of Ekron northward, *which* is reckoned to the Canaanites; the five lords of the Philistines; the Gazites, and the Ashdodites, the Ashkelonites, the Gittites, and the Ekronites; *{2}* also the Avvim, *{1}* *Commonly called the brook of Egypt; See Nu 34:5. 2) Or also the Avvim; from the south, all etc }*
- 4 on the south; all the land of the Canaanites, and Mearah that belongeth to the Sidonians, unto Aphek, to the border of the Amorites;
- 5 and the land of the Gebalites, and all Lebanon, toward the sunrising, from Baal-gad under mount Hermon unto the entrance of Hamath;
- 6 all the inhabitants of the hill-country from Lebanon unto Misrephoth-maim, even all the Sidonians; them will I drive out from before the children of Israel: only allot thou it unto Israel for an inheritance, as I have commanded thee.
- 7 ¶ Now therefore divide this land for an inheritance unto the nine tribes, and the half-tribe of Manasseh.
- 8 With him the Reubenites and the Gadites received their inheritance, which Moses gave them, beyond the Jordan eastward, even as Moses the servant of Jehovah gave them:
- 9 from Aroer, that is on the edge of the valley of the Arnon, and the city that is in the middle of the valley, and all the *{1}* plain of Medeba unto Dibon; *{1}* *Or table-land }*
- 10 and all the cities of Sihon king of the Amorites, who reigned in Heshbon, unto the border of the children of Ammon;
- 11 and Gilead, and the border of the Geshurites and Maacathites, and all mount Hermon, and all Bashan unto Salecah;
- 12 all the kingdom of Og in Bashan, who reigned in Ashtaroth and in Edrei (the same was left of the remnant of the Rephaim); for these did Moses smite, and drove them out.
- 13 Nevertheless the children of Israel drove not out the Geshurites, nor the Maacathites: but Geshur and Maacath dwell in the midst of Israel unto this day.
- 14 Only unto the tribe of Levi he gave no inheritance; the offerings of Jehovah, the God of Israel, made by fire are his inheritance, as he spake unto him.
- 15 And Moses gave unto the tribe of the children of Reuben according to their families.
- 16 And their border was from Aroer, that is on the edge of the valley of the Arnon, and the city that is in the middle of the valley, and all the *{1}* plain by Medeba; *{1}* *Or table-land }*
- 17 Heshbon, and all its cities that are in the *{1}* plain; Dibon, and Bamoth-baal, and Beth-baal-meon, *{1}* *Or table-land }*
- 18 and Jahaz, and Kedemoth, and Mephaath,
- 19 and Kiriathaim, and Sibmah, and Zereth-shahar in the mount of the valley,
- 20 and Beth-peor, and the *{1}* slopes of Pisgah, and Beth-jeshimoth, *{1}* *Or springs }*
- 21 and all the cities of the *{1}* plain, and all the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites, who reigned in Heshbon, whom Moses smote with the chiefs of Midian, Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, the princes of Sihon, that dwelt in the land. *{1}* *Or table-land }*
- 22 Balaam also the son of Beor, the soothsayer, did the children of Israel slay with the sword among the rest of their slain.
- 23 And the border of the children of Reuben was the Jordan, and the border *thereof*. This was the inheritance of the children of Reuben according to their families, the cities and the villages thereof.
- 24 And Moses gave unto the tribe of Gad, unto the children of Gad, according to their families.
- 25 And their border was Jazer, and all the cities of Gilead, and half the land of the children of Ammon, unto Aroer that is before Rabbah;
- 26 and from Heshbon unto Ramath-mizpeh, and Betonim; and from Mahanaim unto the border of *{1}* *Debir; {1} Or Lidebir }*
- 27 and in the valley, Beth-haram, and Beth-nimrah, and Succoth, and Zaphon, the rest of the kingdom of Sihon king of Heshbon, *{1}* the Jordan and the border *thereof*, unto the uttermost part of the sea of Chinnereth beyond the Jordan eastward. *{1}* *Or having the Jordan for a border }*
- 28 This is the inheritance of the children of Gad according to their families, the cities and the villages thereof.
- 29 And Moses gave *inheritance* unto the half-tribe of Manasseh: and it was for the half-tribe of the



- children of Manasseh according to their families.
- 30 And their border was from Mahanaim, all Bashan, all the kingdom of Og king of Bashan, and all the towns of Jair, which are in Bashan, threescore cities:
- 31 and half Gilead, and Ashtaroth, and Edrei, the cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan, were for the children of Machir the son of Manasseh, even for the half of the children of Machir according to their families.
- 32 These are the inheritances which Moses distributed in the plains of Moab, beyond the Jordan at Jericho, eastward.
- 33 But unto the tribe of Levi Moses gave no inheritance: Jehovah, the God of Israel, is their inheritance, as he spake unto them.
- 

## **II. The Division of Canaan.**

**(13.-24.)**

### **A- Distribution of the land.**

**(13.-21.)**

1- Israel's unpossessed possessions.

vs. 13:1-6

2- Recount of the East Jordan divisions.

vs. 7-33

**Joshua 14**

- 1 ¶ And these are the inheritances which the children of Israel took in the land of Canaan, which Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers' *houses* of the tribes of the children of Israel, distributed unto them,
- 2 by the lot of their inheritance, as Jehovah commanded by Moses, for the nine tribes, and for the half-tribe.
- 3 For Moses had given the inheritance of the two tribes and the half-tribe beyond the Jordan: but unto the Levites he gave no inheritance among them.
- 4 For the children of Joseph were two tribes, Manasseh and Ephraim: and they gave no portion unto the Levites in the land, save cities to dwell in, with the *{1}* suburbs thereof for their cattle and for their substance. *{1} Or pasture lands*
- 5 As Jehovah commanded Moses, so the children of Israel did; and they divided the land.
- 6 ¶ Then the children of Judah drew nigh unto Joshua in Gilgal: and Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite said unto him, Thou knowest the thing that Jehovah spake unto Moses the man of God concerning me and concerning thee in Kadesh-barnea.
- 7 Forty years old was I when Moses the servant of Jehovah sent me from Kadesh-barnea to spy out the land; and I brought him word again as it was in my heart.
- 8 Nevertheless my brethren that went up with me made the heart of the people melt; but I wholly followed Jehovah my God.
- 9 And Moses sware on that day, saying, Surely the land whereon thy foot hath trodden shall be an inheritance to thee and to thy children for ever, because thou hast wholly followed Jehovah my God.
- 10 And now, behold, Jehovah hath kept me alive, as he spake, these forty and five years, from the time that Jehovah spake this word unto Moses, while Israel walked in the wilderness: and now, lo, I am this day fourscore and five years old.
- 11 As yet I am as strong this day as I as in the day that Moses sent me: as my strength was then, even so is my strength now, for war, and to go out and to come in.
- 12 Now therefore give me this hill-country, whereof Jehovah spake in that day; for thou heardest in that day how the Anakim were there, and cities great and fortified: it may be that Jehovah will be with me, and I shall drive them out, as Jehovah spake.
- 13 And Joshua blessed him; and he gave Hebron unto Caleb the son of Jephunneh for an inheritance.
- 14 Therefore Hebron became the inheritance of Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite unto this day; because that he wholly followed Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 15 Now the name of Hebron beforetime was *{1}* Kiriath-arba; *which Arba was* the greatest man among the Anakim. And the land had rest from war. *{1} That is The city of Arba*

3- Caleb's special portion. The hill country of Hebron.

(14,.)

**Joshua 15**

- 1 ¶ And the lot for the tribe of the children of Judah according to their families was unto the border of Edom, even to the wilderness of Zin southward, at the uttermost part of the south.
- 2 And their south border was from the uttermost part of the Salt Sea, from the *{1}* bay that looketh southward; *{1}* *Heb tongue*;
- 3 and it went out southward of the ascent of Akkrabbim, and passed along to Zin, and went up by the south of Kadesh-barnea, and passed along by Hezron, and went up to Addar, and turned about to Karka;
- 4 and it passed along to Azmon, and went out at the brook of Egypt; and the goings out of the border were at the sea: this shall be your south border.
- 5 And the east border was the Salt Sea, even unto the end of the Jordan. And the border of the north quarter was from the *{1}* bay of the sea at the end of the Jordan; *{1}* *Heb tongue*;
- 6 and the border went up to Beth-hoglah, and passed along by the north of Beth-arabah; and the border went up to the stone of Bohan the son of Reuben;
- 7 and the border went up to Debir from the valley of Achor, and so northward, looking toward Gilgal, that is over against the ascent of Adummim, which is on the south side of the river; and the border passed along to the waters of En-shemesh, and the goings out thereof were at En-rogel;
- 8 and the border went up by the valley of the son of Hinnom unto the *{1}* side of the Jebusite southward (the same is Jerusalem); and the border went up to the top of the mountain that lieth before the valley of Hinnom westward, which is at the uttermost part of the vale of Rephaim northward; *{1}* *Heb shoulder*;
- 9 and the border extended from the top of the mountain unto the fountain of the waters of Nephtoah, and went out to the cities of mount Ephron; and the border extended to Baalah (the same is Kiriath-jearim);
- 10 and the border turned about from Baalah westward unto mount Seir, and passed along unto the side of mount Jearim on the north (the same is Chesalon), and went down to Beth-shemesh, and passed along by Timnah;
- 11 and the border went out unto the side of Ekron northward; and the border extended to Shikkeron, and passed along to mount Baalah, and went out at Jabneel; and the goings out of the border were at the sea.
- 12 And the west border was to the great sea, and the border *thereof*. This is the border of the children of Judah round about according to their families.
- 13 ¶ And unto Caleb the son of Jephunneh he gave a portion among the children of Judah, according to the commandment of Jehovah at Joshua, even *{1}* Kiriath-arba, *which Arba* was the father of Anak (the same is Hebron). *{1}* *That is The city of Arba*;
- 14 And Caleb drove out thence the three sons of Anak: Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmai, the children of Anak.
- 15 And he went up thence against the inhabitants of Debir: now the name of Debir beforetime was Kiriath-sepher.
- 16 And Caleb said, He that smiteth Kiriath-sepher, and taketh it, to him will I give Achsah my daughter to wife.
- 17 And Othniel the son of Kenaz, the brother of Caleb, took it: and he gave him Achsah his daughter to wife.
- 18 And it came to pass, when she came *unto him*, that she moved him to ask of her father a field: and she alighted from off her ass; and Caleb said, What wouldest thou?
- 19 And she said, Give me a *{1}* blessing; for that thou hast *{2}* set me in the land of the South, give me also springs of water. And he gave her the upper springs and the nether springs. *{1}* *Or present* 2) *Or given me the land of the South*;
- 20 ¶ This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Judah according to their families.
- 21 And the uttermost cities of the tribe of the children of Judah toward the border of Edom in the South were Kabzeel, and Eder, and Jagur,
- 22 and Kinah, and Dimonah, and Adadah,
- 23 and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Ithnan,
- 24 Ziph, and Telem, and Bealoth,
- 25 and Hazor-hadattah, and Kerioth-hezron (the same is Hazor),
- 26 Amam, and Shema, and Moladah,
- 27 and Hazar-gaddah, and Heshmon, and Beth-pelet,
- 28 and Hazar-shual, and Beer-sheba, and Biziothiah,

29 Baalah, and Iim, and Ezem,  
 30 and Eltolad, and Chesil, and Hormah,  
 31 and Ziklag, and Madmannah, and Sansannah,  
 32 and Lebaoth, and Shilhim, and Ain, and Rimmon: all the cities are twenty and nine, with their villages.  
 33 In the lowland, Eshtaol, and Zorah, and Ashnah,  
 34 and Zanoah, and En-gannim, Tappuah, and Enam,  
 35 Jarmuth, and Adullam, Socoh, and Azekah,  
 36 and Shaaraim, and Adithaim, and Gederah, and Gederothaim; fourteen cities with their villages.  
 37 Zenan, and Hadashah, and Migdal-gad,  
 38 and Dilean, and Mizpeh, and Joktheel,  
 39 Lachish, and Bozkath, and Eglon,  
 40 and Cabbon, and *{1}* Lahmam, and Chitlish, *{1}* Or Lahmas}  
 41 and Gederoth, Beth-dagon, and Naamah, and Makkedah; sixteen cities with their villages.  
 42 Libnah, and Ether, and Ashan,  
 43 and Iphtah, and Ashnah, and Nezib,  
 44 and Keilah, and Achzib, and Mareshah; nine cities with their villages.  
 45 Ekron, with its *{1}* towns and its villages; *{1}* Heb daughters}  
 46 from Ekron even unto the sea, all that were by the side of Ashdod, with their villages.  
 47 Ashdod, its towns and its villages; Gaza, its towns and its villages; unto the brook of Egypt, and the  
 great sea, and the border *thereof*.  
 48 And in the hill-country, Shamir, and Jattir, and Socoh,  
 49 and Dannah, and Kiriath-sannah (the same is Debir),  
 50 and Anab, and Eshtemoh, and Anim,  
 51 and Goshen, and Holon, and Giloh; eleven cities with their villages.  
 52 Arab, and Dumah, and Eshan,  
 53 and Janim, and Beth-tappuah, and Aphekah,  
 54 and Humtah, and Kiriath-arba (the same is Hebron), and Zior; nine cities with their villages.  
 55 Maon, Carmel, and Ziph, and Jutah,  
 56 and Jezreel, and Jokdeam, and Zanoah,  
 57 Kain, Gibeah, and Timnah; ten cities with their villages.  
 58 Halhul, Beth-zur, and Gedor,  
 59 and Maarath, and Beth-anoth, and Eltekon; six cities with their villages.  
 60 Kiriath-baal (the same is Kiriath-jeirim), and Rabbah; two cities with their villages.  
 61 In the wilderness, Beth-arabah, Middin, and Secacah,  
 62 and Nibshan, and the City of Salt, and En-gedi; six cities with their villages.  
 63 And as for the Jebusites, the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the children of Judah could not drive them out:  
 but the Jebusites dwell with the children of Judah at Jerusalem unto this day.

---

4- West Jordan divided among 9 and ½ tribes.  
 a- Judah.

(15.-19.)  
 (15.)

**Joshua 16**

- 1 ¶ And the lot came out for the children of Joseph from the Jordan at Jericho, at the waters of Jericho on the east, even the wilderness, going up from Jericho through the hill-country to Beth-el;
- 2 and it went out from Beth-el to Luz, and passed along unto the border of the Archites to Ataroth;
- 3 and it went down westward to the border of the Japhletites, unto the border of Beth-horon the nether, even unto Gezer; and the goings out thereof were at the sea.
- 4 And the children of Joseph, Manasseh and Ephraim, took their inheritance.
- 5 ¶ And the border of the children of Ephraim according to their families was *thus*: the border of their inheritance eastward was Ataroth-addar, unto Beth-horon the upper;
- 6 and the border went out westward at Michmethath on the north; and the border turned about eastward unto Taanath-shiloh, and passed along it on the east of Janoah;
- 7 and it went down from Janoah to Ataroth, and to Naarah, and reached unto Jericho, and went out at the Jordan.
- 8 From Tappuah the border went along westward to the brook of Kanah; and the goings out thereof were at the sea. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Ephraim according to their families;
- 9 together with the cities which were set apart for the children of Ephraim in the midst of the inheritance of the children of Manasseh, all the cities with their villages.
- 10 And they drove not out the Canaanites that dwelt in Gezer: but the Canaanites dwell in the midst of Ephraim unto this day, and are become servants to do taskwork.

**Joshua 17**

- 1 ¶ And *this* was the lot for the tribe of Manasseh; for he was the first-born of Joseph. As for Machir the first-born of Manasseh, the father of Gilead, because he was a man of war, therefore he had Gilead and Bashan.
- 2 So *the lot* was for the rest of the children of Manasseh according to their families: for the children of Abiezer, and for the children of Helek, and for the children of Asriel, and for the children of Shechem, and for the children of Hopher, and for the children of Shemida: these were the male children of Manasseh the son of Joseph according to their families.
- 3 But Zelophehad, the son of Hopher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, had no sons, but daughters: and these are the names of his daughters: Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah.
- 4 And they came near before Eleazar the priest, and before Joshua the son of Nun, and before the princes, saying, Jehovah commanded Moses to give us an inheritance among our brethren: therefore according to the commandment of Jehovah he gave them an inheritance among the brethren of their father.
- 5 And there fell ten {1} parts to Manasseh, besides the land of Gilead and Bashan, which is beyond the Jordan; {1} *Heb lines*
- 6 because the daughters of Manasseh had an inheritance among his sons. And the land of Gilead belonged unto the rest of the sons of Manasseh.
- 7 ¶ And the border of Manasseh was from Asher to Michmethath, which is before Shechem; and the border went along to the right hand, unto the inhabitants of En-tappuah.
- 8 The land of Tappuah belonged to Manasseh; but Tappuah on the border of Manasseh belonged to the children of Ephraim.
- 9 And the border went down unto the brook of Kanah, southward of the brook: these cities belonged to Ephraim among the cities of Manasseh: and the border of Manasseh was on the north side of the brook, and the goings out thereof were at the sea:
- 10 southward it was Ephraim's, and northward it was Manasseh's, and the sea was his border; and they reached to Asher on the north, and to Issachar on the east.
- 11 And Manasseh had in Issachar and in Asher Beth-shean and its {1} towns, and Ibleam and its towns, and the inhabitants of Dor and its towns, and the inhabitants of En-dor and its towns, and the inhabitants of Taanach and its towns, and the inhabitants of Megiddo and its towns, even the three heights. {1} *Heb daughters*
- 12 Yet the children of Manasseh could not drive out *the inhabitants of* those cities; but the Canaanites would dwell in that land.
- 13 And it came to pass, when the children of Israel were waxed strong, that they put the Canaanites to taskwork, and did not utterly drive them out.
- 14 ¶ And the children of Joseph spake unto Joshua, saying, Why hast thou given me but one lot and one {1}

- part for an inheritance, seeing I am a great people, forasmuch as hitherto Jehovah hath blessed me? *{1}*  
*Heb line}*
- 15 And Joshua said unto them, If thou be a great people, get thee up to the forest, and cut down for thyself there in the land of the Perizzites and of the Rephaim; since the hill-country of Ephraim is too narrow for thee.
- 16 And the children of Joseph said, The hill-country *{1}* is not enough for us: and all the Canaanites that dwell in the land of the valley have chariots of iron, both they who are in Beth-shean and its towns, and they who are in the valley of Jezreel. *{1}* *Heb is not found for us}*
- 17 And Joshua spake unto the house of Joseph, even to Ephraim and to Manasseh, saying, Thou art a great people, and hast great power; thou shalt not have one lot only:
- 18 but the hill-country shall be thine; for though it is a forest, thou shalt cut it down, and the goings out thereof shall be thine; for thou shalt drive out the Canaanites, though they have chariots of iron, and though they are strong.
- 

- b- Ephraim. (16.)  
c- Manasseh. (17.)

**Joshua 18**

- 1 ¶ And the whole congregation of the children of Israel assembled themselves together at Shiloh, and set up the tent of meeting there: and the land was subdued before them.
- 2 ¶ And there remained among the children of Israel seven tribes, which had not yet divided their inheritance.
- 3 And Joshua said unto the children of Israel, How long are ye slack to go in to possess the land, which Jehovah, the God of your fathers, hath given you?
- 4 Appoint for you three men of each tribe: and I will send them, and they shall arise, and walk through the land, and describe it according to their inheritance; and they shall come unto me.
- 5 And they shall divide it into seven portions: Judah shall abide in his border on the south, and the house of Joseph shall abide in their border on the north.
- 6 And ye shall describe the land into seven portions, and bring *the description* hither to me; and I will cast lots for you here before Jehovah our God.
- 7 For the Levites have no portion among you; for the priesthood of Jehovah is their inheritance: and Gad and Reuben and the half-tribe of Manasseh have received their inheritance beyond the Jordan eastward, which Moses the servant of Jehovah gave them.
- 8 And the men arose, and went: and Joshua charged them that went to describe the land, saying, Go and walk through the land, and describe it, and come again to me; and I will cast lots for you here before Jehovah in Shiloh.
- 9 And the men went and passed through the land, and described it by cities into seven portions in a book; and they came to Joshua unto the camp at Shiloh.
- 10 And Joshua cast lots for them in Shiloh before Jehovah: and there Joshua divided the land unto the children of Israel according to their divisions.
- 11 ¶ And the lot of the tribe of the children of Benjamin came up according to their families: and the border of their lot went out between the children of Judah and the children of Joseph.
- 12 And their border on the north quarter was from the Jordan; and the border went up to the *{1}* side of Jericho on the north, and went up through the hill-country westward; and the goings out thereof were at the wilderness of Beth-aven. *{1} Heb shoulder}*
- 13 And the border passed along from thence to Luz, to the *{1}* side of Luz (the same is Beth-el), southward; and the border went down to Ataroth-addar, by the mountain that lieth on the south of Beth-horon the nether. *{1} Heb shoulder}*
- 14 And the border extended *thence*, and turned about on the west quarter southward, from the mountain that lieth before Beth-horon southward; and the goings out thereof were at Kiriath-baal (the same is Kiriath-jearim), a city of the children of Judah: this was the west quarter.
- 15 And the south quarter was from the uttermost part of Kiriath-jearim; and the border went out westward, and went out to the fountain of the waters of Nephtoah;
- 16 and the border went down to the uttermost part of the mountain that lieth before the valley of the son of Hinnom, which is in the vale of Rephaim northward; and it went down to the valley of Hinnom, to the side of the Jebusite southward, and went down to En-rogel;
- 17 and it extended northward, and went out at En-shemesh, and went out to Geliloth, which is over against the ascent of Adummim; and it went down to the stone of Bohan the son of Reuben;
- 18 and it passed along to the side over against the Arabah northward, and went down unto the Arabah;
- 19 and the border passed along to the side of Beth-hoglah northward; and the goings out of the border were at the north *{1}* bay of the Salt Sea, at the south end of the Jordan: this was the south border. *{1} Heb tongue}*
- 20 And the Jordan was the border of it on the east quarter. This was the inheritance of the children of Benjamin, by the borders thereof round about, according to their families.
- 21 Now the cities of the tribe of the children of Benjamin according to their families were Jericho, and Beth-hoglah, and Emek-keziz,
- 22 and Beth-arabah, and Zemaraim, and Beth-el,
- 23 and Avvim, and Parah, and Ophrah,
- 24 and Chephar-ammoni, and Ophni, and Geba; twelve cities with their villages:
- 25 Gibeon, and Ramah, and Beeroth,
- 26 and Mizpeh, and Chephirah, and Mozah,
- 27 and Rekem, and Irpeel, and Taralah,
- 28 and Zelah, Eleph, and the Jebusite (the same is Jerusalem), Gibeath, *and* Kiriath; fourteen cities with



their villages. This is the inheritance of the children of Benjamin according to their families.

---

- d- The Tabernacle is established at Shiloh of Ephraim. 18:1
- e- The remainder surveyed. vs. 2-10
- f- Benjamin. vs. 11-28

**Joshua 19**

- 1 ¶ And the second lot came out for Simeon, even for the tribe of the children of Simeon according to their families: and their inheritance was in the midst of the inheritance of the children of Judah.
- 2 And they had for their inheritance Beer-sheba, or Sheba, and Moladah,
- 3 and Hazar-shual, and Balah, and Ezem,
- 4 and Eltolad, and Bethul, and Hormah,
- 5 and Ziklag, and Beth-marcaboth, and Hazar-susah,
- 6 and Beth-lebaoth, and Sharuhem; thirteen cities with their villages:
- 7 Ain, Rimmon, and Ether, and Ashan; four cities with their villages:
- 8 and all the villages that were round about these cities to Baalath-beer, Ramah of the South. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Simeon according to their families.
- 9 Out of the *{1}* part of the children of Judah was the inheritance of the children of Simeon; for the portion of the children of Judah was too much for them: therefore the children of Simeon had inheritance in the midst of their inheritance. *{1} Heb line}*
- 10 ¶ And the third lot came up for the children of Zebulun according to their families; and the border of their inheritance was unto Sarid;
- 11 and their border went up westward, even to Maralah, and reached to Dabbesheth; and it reached to the brook that is before Jokneam;
- 12 and it turned from Sarid eastward toward the sunrising unto the border of Chisloth-tabor; and it went out to Daberath, and went up to Japhia;
- 13 and from thence it passed along eastward to Gath-hepher, to Eth-kazin; and it went out at Rimmon which stretcheth unto Neah;
- 14 and the border turned about it on the north to Hannathon; and the goings out thereof were at the valley of Iphtah-el;
- 15 and Kattath, and Nahalal, and Shimron, and Idalah, and Bethlehem: twelve cities with their villages.
- 16 This is the inheritance of the children of Zebulun according to their families, these cities with their villages.
- 17 ¶ The fourth lot came out for Issachar, even for the children of Issachar according to their families.
- 18 And their border was unto Jezreel, and Chesulloth, and Shunem,
- 19 and Hapharaim, and Shion, and Anaharath,
- 20 and Rabbith, and Kishion, and Ebez,
- 21 and Remeth, and Engannim, and En-haddah, and Beth-pazzez,
- 22 and the border reached to Tabor, and Shahazumah, and Beth-shemesh; and the goings out of their border were at the Jordan: sixteen cities with their villages.
- 23 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Issachar according to their families, the cities with their villages.
- 24 ¶ And the fifth lot came out for the tribe of the children of Asher according to their families.
- 25 And their border was Helkath, and Hali, and Beten, and Achshaph,
- 26 and Allammelech, and Amad, and Mishal; and it reached to Carmel westward, and to Shihor-libnath;
- 27 and it turned toward the sunrising to Beth-dagon, and reached to Zebulun, and to the valley of Iphtah-el northward to Beth-emek and Neiel; and it went out to Cabul on the left hand,
- 28 and Ebron, and Rehob, and Hammon, and Kanah, even unto great Sidon;
- 29 and the border turned to Ramah, and to *{1}* the fortified city of Tyre; and the border turned to Hosah; and the goings out thereof were at the sea *{2}* by the region of Achzib; *{1} Or the city of Mibzar-zor, that is, the fortress of Tyre 2} Or from Hebel to Achzib}*
- 30 Ummah also, and Aphek, and Rehob: twenty and two cities with their villages.
- 31 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Asher according to their families, these cities with their villages.
- 32 ¶ The sixth lot came out for the children of Naphtali, even for the children of Naphtali according to their families.
- 33 And their border was from Heleph, from the *{1}* oak in Zaanannim, and Adami-nekeb, and Jabneel, unto Lakkum; and the goings out thereof were at the Jordan; *{1} Or oak (or terebinth) of Bezaananim}*
- 34 and the border turned westward to Aznoth-tabor, and went out from thence to Hukkok; and it reached to Zebulun on the south, and reached to Asher on the west, and to Judah at the Jordan toward the sunrising.
- 35 And the fortified cities were Ziddim, Zer, and Hammath, Rakkath, and Chinnereth,

- 36 and Adamah, and Ramah, and Hazor,  
 37 and Kedesh, and Edrei, and En-hazor,  
 38 And Iron, and Migdal-el, Horem, and Beth-anath, and Beth-shemesh; nineteen cities with their villages.  
 39 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Naphtali according to their families, the cities with their villages.  
 40 ¶ The seventh lot came out for the tribe of the children of Dan according to their families.  
 41 And the border of their inheritance was Zorah, and Eshtaol, and Ir-shemesh,  
 42 and Shaalabbin, and Aijalon, and Ithlah,  
 43 and Elon, and Timnah, and Ekron,  
 44 and Eltekeh, and Gibbethon, and Baalath,  
 45 and Jehud, and Bene-berak, and Gath-rimmon,  
 46 and Me-jarkon, and Rakkon, with the border over against <sup>{1}</sup> Joppa. <sup>{1}</sup> *Heb Japho*  
 47 And the border of the children of Dan went out <sup>{1}</sup> beyond them; for the children of Dan went up and fought against <sup>{2}</sup> Leshem, and took it, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and possessed it, and dwelt therein, and called Leshem, Dan, after the name of Dan their father. <sup>{1}</sup> *Or from them; and etc 2* In Jud 18:29 *Laish*  
 48 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the children of Dan according to their families, these cities with their villages.  
 49 ¶ So they made an end of distributing the land for inheritance by the borders thereof; and the children of Israel gave an inheritance to Joshua the son of Nun in the midst of them:  
 50 according to the commandment of Jehovah they gave him the city which he asked, even Timnath-serah in the hill-country of Ephraim; and he built the city, and dwelt therein.  
 51 These are the inheritances, which Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers' *houses* of the tribes of the children of Israel, distributed for inheritance by lot in Shiloh before Jehovah, at the door of the tent of meeting. So they made an end of dividing the land.

g-	Simeon.	19:1-9
h-	Zebulun.	vs. 10-16
i-	Issachar.	vs. 17-23
j-	Asher.	vs. 24-31
k-	Naphtali.	vs. 32-39
l-	Dan.	vs. 40-48
m-	Joshua's portion.	vs. 49-51
n-	Arrangement of the tribes.	
	1) Two in the South - Judah, Simeon.	
	2) Four in the Central portion - Manasseh, Ephraim, Dan, Benjamin.	
	3) Four in the North - Asher, Naphtali, Zebulun, Issachar	

**Joshua 20**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah spake unto Joshua, saying,
- 2 Speak to the children of Israel, saying, Assign you the cities of refuge, whereof I spake unto you by Moses,
- 3 that the manslayer that killeth any person *{1}* unwittingly *and* unawares may flee thither: and they shall be unto you for a refuge from the avenger of blood. *{1}* Or *through error*;
- 4 And he shall flee unto one of those cities, and shall stand at the entrance of the gate of the city, and declare his cause in the ears of the elders of that city; and they shall *{1}* take him into the city unto them, and give him a place, that he may dwell among them. *{1}* Heb *gather*;
- 5 And if the avenger of blood pursue after him, then they shall not deliver up the manslayer into his hand; because he smote his neighbor unawares, and hated him not beforetime.
- 6 And he shall dwell in that city, until he stand before the congregation for judgment, until the death of the high priest that shall be in those days: then shall the manslayer return, and come unto his own city, and unto his own house, unto the city from whence he fled.
- 7 ¶ And they *{1}* set apart Kedesh in *{2}* Galilee in the hill-country of Naphtali, and Shechem in the hill-country of Ephraim, and Kiriath-arba (the same is Hebron) in the hill-country of Judah. *{1}* Heb *sanctified* *2)* Heb *Galil*;
- 8 And beyond the Jordan at Jericho eastward, they assigned Bezer in the wilderness in the *{1}* plain out of the tribe of Reuben, and Ramoth in Gilead out of the tribe of Gad, and Golan in Bashan out of the tribe of Manasseh. *{1}* Or *table-land*;
- 9 These were the appointed cities for all the children of Israel, and for the stranger that sojourneth among them, that whosoever killeth any person *{1}* unwittingly might flee thither, and not die by the hand of the avenger of blood, until he stood before the congregation. *{1}* Or *through error*;

**Joshua 21**

- 1 ¶ Then came near the heads of fathers' *houses* of the Levites unto Eleazar the priest, and unto Joshua the son of Nun, and unto the heads of fathers' *houses* of the tribes of the children of Israel;
- 2 and they spake unto them at Shiloh in the land of Canaan, saying, Jehovah commanded Moses to give us cities to dwell in, with the *{1}* suburbs thereof for our cattle. *{1}* Or *pasture lands*;
- 3 And the children of Israel gave unto the Levites out of their inheritance, according to the commandment of Jehovah, these cities with their suburbs.
- 4 And the lot came out for the families of the Kohathites: and the children of Aaron the priest, who were of the Levites, had by lot out of the tribe of Judah, and out of the tribe of the Simeonites, and out of the tribe of Benjamin, thirteen cities.
- 5 And the rest of the children of Kohath had by lot out of the families of the tribe of Ephraim, and out of the tribe of Dan, and out of the half-tribe of Manasseh, ten cities.
- 6 And the children of Gershon had by lot out of the families of the tribe of Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher, and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and out of the half-tribe of Manasseh in Bashan, thirteen cities.
- 7 The children of Merari according to their families had out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.
- 8 And the children of Israel gave by lot unto the Levites these cities with their suburbs, as Jehovah commanded by Moses.
- 9 ¶ And they gave out of the tribe of the children of Judah, and out of the tribe of the children of Simeon, these cities which are *here* mentioned by name:
- 10 and they were for the children of Aaron, of the families of the Kohathites, who were of the children of Levi; for theirs was the first lot.
- 11 And they gave them Kiriath-arba, *which Arba was* the father of *{1}* Anak (the same is Hebron), in the hill-country of Judah, with the suburbs thereof round about it. *{1}* Heb *Anok*;
- 12 But the fields of the city, and the villages thereof, gave they to Caleb the son of Jephunneh for his possession.
- 13 And unto the children of Aaron the priest they gave Hebron with its suburbs, the city of refuge for the manslayer, and Libnah with its suburbs,
- 14 and Jattir with its suburbs, and Eshtemoa with its suburbs,
- 15 and Holon with its suburbs, and Debir with its suburbs,
- 16 and Ain with its suburbs, and Juttah with its suburbs, *and* Beth-shemesh with its suburbs; nine cities

- out of those two tribes.
- 17 And out of the tribe of Benjamin, Gibeon with its suburbs, Geba with its suburbs,  
 18 Anathoth with its suburbs, and Almon with its suburbs; four cities.  
 19 All the cities of the children of Aaron, the priests, were thirteen cities with their suburbs.  
 20 And the families of the children of Kohath, the Levites, even the rest of the children of Kohath, they  
 had the cities of their lot out of the tribe of Ephraim.  
 21 And they gave them Shechem with its suburbs in the hill-country of Ephraim, the city of refuge for the  
 manslayer, and Gezer with its suburbs,  
 22 and Kibzaim with its suburbs, and Beth-horon with its suburbs; four cities.  
 23 And out of the tribe of Dan, Elteke with its suburbs, Gibbethon with its suburbs,  
 24 Aijalon with its suburbs, Gath-rimmon with its suburbs; four cities.  
 25 And out of the half-tribe of Manasseh, Taanach with its suburbs, and Gath-rimmon with its suburbs;  
 two cities.  
 26 All the cities of the families of the rest of the children of Kohath were ten with their suburbs.  
 27 And unto the children of Gershon, of the families of the Levites, out of the half-tribe of Manasseh *they*  
 gave Golan in Bashan with its suburbs, the city of refuge for the manslayer, and Be-eshterah with its  
 suburbs; two cities.  
 28 And out of the tribe of Issachar, Kishion with its suburbs, Daberath with its suburbs,  
 29 Jarmuth with its suburbs, En-gannim with its suburbs; four cities.  
 30 And out of the tribe of Asher, Mishal with its suburbs, Abdon with its suburbs,  
 31 Helkath with its suburbs, and Rehob with its suburbs; four cities.  
 32 And out of the tribe of Naphtali, Kedesh in Galilee with its suburbs, the city of refuge for the  
 manslayer, and Hammoth-dor with its suburbs, and Kartan with its suburbs; three cities.  
 33 All the cities of the Gershonites according to their families were thirteen cities with their suburbs.  
 34 And unto the families of the children of Merari, the rest of the Levites, out of the tribe of Zebulun,  
 Jokneam with its suburbs, and Kartah with its suburbs,  
 35 Dimnah with its suburbs, Nahalal with its suburbs; four cities.  
 36 And out of the tribe of Reuben, Bezer with its suburbs, and Jahaz with its suburbs,  
 37 Kedemoth with its suburbs, and Mephaath with its suburbs; four cities.  
 38 And out of the tribe of Gad, Ramoth in Gilead with its suburbs, the city of refuge for the manslayer,  
 and Mahanaim with its suburbs,  
 39 Heshbon with its suburbs, Jazer with its suburbs; four cities in all.  
 40 All *these were* the cities of the children of Merari according to their families, even the rest of the  
 families of the Levites; and their lot was twelve cities.  
 41 All the cities of the Levites in the midst of the possession of the children of Israel were forty and eight  
 cities with their suburbs.  
 42 These cities were every one with their suburbs round about them: thus it was with all these cities.  
 43 ¶ So Jehovah gave unto Israel all the land which he sware to give unto their fathers; and they possessed  
 it, and dwelt therein.  
 44 And Jehovah gave them rest round about, according to all that he sware unto their fathers: and there  
 stood not a man of all their enemies before them; Jehovah delivered all their enemies into their hand.  
 45 There failed not aught of any good thing which Jehovah had spoken unto the house of Israel; all came  
 to pass.

- 5- The cities of refuge. (20.)  
 a- Their purpose. To provide a refuge for accidental slayers.  
 b- Their Location. 3 on each side of Jordan. All within 1 days journey by any slayer  
 in Israel.
- 6- The Levitical cities. (21.)  
 a- 48 cities with suburbs.  
 b- 13 for the Priests.  
 c- 36 for the Levites.

See Figure 04., below.



Figure 04. A Map Showing The Levitical cities And The 6 Cities Of Refuge.

See description/names of cities of refuge in Num 35.

The cities were these: **Kedesh** in Galilee in Naphtali; **Shechem** in Mount Ephraim; **Hebron** in Judah; **Bezer** in the desert plateau, for the Reubenites; **Ramoth** in Gilead, for the Gadites; and **Golan** in Bashan, for the Manassites.



**Joshua 22**

- 1 ¶ Then Joshua called the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh,  
2 and said unto them, Ye have kept all that Moses the servant of Jehovah commanded you, and have hearkened unto my voice in all that I commanded you:  
3 ye have not left your brethren these many days unto this day, but have kept the charge of the commandment of Jehovah your God.  
4 And now Jehovah your God hath given rest unto your brethren, as he spake unto them: therefore now turn ye, and get you unto your tents, unto the land of your possession, which Moses the servant of Jehovah gave you beyond the Jordan.  
5 Only take diligent heed to do the commandment and the law which Moses the servant of Jehovah commanded you, to love Jehovah your God, and to walk in all his ways, and to keep his commandments, and to cleave unto him, and to serve him with all your heart and with all your soul.  
6 So Joshua blessed them, and sent them away; and they went unto their tents.  
7 Now to the one half-tribe of Manasseh Moses had given *inheritance* in Bashan; but unto the other half gave Joshua among their brethren beyond the Jordan westward; moreover when Joshua sent them away unto their tents, he blessed them,  
8 and spake unto them, saying, Return with much wealth unto your tents, and with very much cattle, with silver, and with gold, and with brass, and with iron, and with very much raiment: divide the spoil of your enemies with your brethren.  
9 And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half-tribe of Manasseh returned, and departed from the children of Israel out of Shiloh, which is in the land of Canaan, to go unto the land of Gilead, to the land of their possession, whereof they were possessed, according to the commandment of Jehovah by Moses.  
10 ¶ And when they came unto the region about the Jordan, that is in the land of Canaan, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half-tribe of Manasseh built there an altar by the Jordan, a great altar to look upon.  
11 And the children of Israel heard say, Behold, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half-tribe of Manasseh have built an altar in the forefront of the land of Canaan, in the region about the Jordan, on the side that pertaineth to the children of Israel.  
12 And when the children of Israel heard of it, the whole congregation of the children of Israel gathered themselves together at Shiloh, to go up against them to war.  
13 And the children of Israel sent unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the half-tribe of Manasseh, into the land of Gilead, Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest,  
14 and with him ten princes, one prince of a fathers' house for each of the tribes of Israel; and they were every one of them head of their fathers' houses among the *{1}* thousands of Israel. *{1} Or families*  
15 And they came unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the half-tribe of Manasseh, unto the land of Gilead, and they spake with them, saying,  
16 Thus saith the whole congregation of Jehovah, What trespass is this that ye have committed against the God of Israel, to turn away this day from following Jehovah, in that ye have builded you an altar, to rebel this day against Jehovah?  
17 Is the iniquity of Peor too little for us, from which we have not cleansed ourselves unto this day, although there came a plague upon the congregation of Jehovah,  
18 that ye must turn away this day from following Jehovah? and it will be, seeing ye rebel to-day against Jehovah, that to-morrow he will be wroth with the whole congregation of Israel.  
19 Howbeit, if the land of your possession be unclean, then pass ye over unto the land of the possession of Jehovah, wherein Jehovah's tabernacle dwelleth, and take possession among us: but rebel not against Jehovah, nor rebel against us, in building you an altar besides the altar of Jehovah our God.  
20 Did not Achan the son of Zerah commit a trespass in the devoted thing, and wrath fell upon all the congregation of Israel? and that man perished not alone in his iniquity.  
21 ¶ Then the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half-tribe of Manasseh answered, and spake unto the heads of the *{1}* thousands of Israel, *{1} Or families* }  
22 The Mighty One, God, Jehovah, the Mighty One, God, Jehovah, he knoweth; and Israel he shall know: if it be in rebellion, or if in trespass against Jehovah (save thou us not this day,)  
23 that we have built us an altar to turn away from following Jehovah; or if to offer thereon burnt-offering or meal-offering, or if to offer sacrifices of peace-offerings thereon, let Jehovah himself require it;  
24 and if we have not *rather* out of carefulness done this, *and* of purpose, saying, In time to come your



- children might speak unto our children, saying, What have ye to do with Jehovah, the God of Israel?
- 25 for Jehovah hath made the Jordan a border between us and you, ye children of Reuben and children of Gad; ye have no portion in Jehovah: so might your children make our children cease from fearing Jehovah.
- 26 Therefore we said, Let us now prepare to build us an altar, not for burnt-offering, nor for sacrifice:
- 27 but it shall be a witness between us and you, and between our generations after us, that we may do the service of Jehovah before him with our burnt-offerings, and with our sacrifices, and with our peace-offerings; that your children may not say to our children in time to come, Ye have no portion in Jehovah.
- 28 Therefore said we, It shall be, when they so say to us or to our generations in time to come, that we shall say, Behold the pattern of the altar of Jehovah, which our fathers made, not for burnt-offering, nor for sacrifice; but it is a witness between us and you.
- 29 Far be it from us that we should rebel against Jehovah, and turn away this day from following Jehovah, to build an altar for burnt-offering, for meal-offering, or for sacrifice, besides the altar of Jehovah our God that is before his tabernacle.
- 30 ¶ And when Phinehas the priest, and the princes of the congregation, even the heads of the thousands of Israel that were with him, heard the words that the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the children of Manasseh spake, it pleased them well.
- 31 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest said unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, and to the children of Manasseh, This day we know that Jehovah is in the midst of us, because ye have not committed this trespass against Jehovah: now have ye delivered the children of Israel out of the hand of Jehovah.
- 32 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest, and the princes, returned from the children of Reuben, and from the children of Gad, out of the land of Gilead, unto the land of Canaan, to the children of Israel, and brought them word again.
- 33 And the thing pleased the children of Israel; and the children of Israel blessed God, and spake no more of going up against them to war, to destroy the land wherein the children of Reuben and the children of Gad dwelt.
- 34 And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad called the altar *{1}* Ed: For, *said they*, it is a witness between us that Jehovah is God. *{1}* That is, *Witness*

## B- Dispute with the East Jordan tribes.

(22.)

- 1- Liberation of the East Jordan Army
- 2- Erection of an altar by army going back.
- 3- Indignation by West Jordan tribes
- 4- Explanation: Altar not an altar of sacrifice but one of witness  
Intention was to unify the people on both sides.
- 5- Reconciliation - Altar was named: 'Ed; Heb **עֵד** *witness*.

**Joshua 23**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after many days, when Jehovah had given rest unto Israel from all their enemies round about, and Joshua was old and well stricken in years;
- 2 that Joshua called for all Israel, for their elders and for their heads, and for their judges and for their officers, and said unto them, I am old and well stricken in years:
- 3 and ye have seen all that Jehovah your God hath done unto all these nations because of you; for Jehovah your God, he it is that hath fought for you.
- 4 Behold, I have allotted unto you these nations that remain, to be an inheritance for your tribes, from the Jordan, with all the nations that I have cut off, even unto the great sea toward the going down of the sun.
- 5 And Jehovah your God, he will thrust them out from before you, and drive them from out of your sight; and ye shall possess their land, as Jehovah your God spake unto you.
- 6 Therefore be ye very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the law of Moses, that ye turn not aside therefrom to the right hand or to the left;
- 7 that ye come not among these nations, these that remain among you; neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear *by them*, neither serve them, nor bow down yourselves unto them;
- 8 but cleave unto Jehovah your God, as ye have done unto this day.
- 9 For Jehovah hath driven out from before you great nations and strong: but as for you, no man hath stood before you unto this day.
- 10 One man of you *{1}* shall chase a thousand; for Jehovah your God, he it is that fighteth for you, as he spake unto you. *{1} Or hath chased}*
- 11 ¶ Take good heed therefore unto yourselves, that ye love Jehovah your God.
- 12 Else if ye do at all go back, and cleave unto the remnant of these nations, even these that remain among you, and make marriages with them, and go in unto them, and they to you;
- 13 know for a certainty that Jehovah your God will no more drive these nations from out of your sight; but they shall be a snare and a trap unto you, and a scourge in your sides, and thorns in your eyes, until ye perish from off this good land which Jehovah your God hath given you.
- 14 And, behold, this day I am going the way of all the earth: and ye know in all your hearts and in all your souls, that not one thing hath failed of all the good things which Jehovah your God spake concerning you; all are come to pass unto you, not one thing hath failed thereof.
- 15 And it shall come to pass, that as all the good things are come upon you of which Jehovah your God spake unto you, so will Jehovah bring upon you all the evil things, until he have destroyed you from off this good land which Jehovah your God hath given you.
- 16 When ye transgress the covenant of Jehovah your God, which he commanded you, and go and serve other gods, and bow down yourselves to them; then will the anger of Jehovah be kindled against you, and ye shall perish quickly from off the good land which he hath given unto you.

**Joshua 24**

- 1 ¶ And Joshua gathered all the tribes of Israel to Shechem, and called for the elders of Israel, and for their heads, and for their judges, and for their officers; and they presented themselves before God.
- 2 And Joshua said unto all the people, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, Your fathers dwelt of old time beyond the River, even Terah, the father of Abraham, and the father of Nahor: and they served other gods.
- 3 And I took your father Abraham from beyond the River, and led him throughout all the land of Canaan, and multiplied his seed, and gave him Isaac.
- 4 And I gave unto Isaac Jacob and Esau: and I gave unto Esau mount Seir, to possess it: and Jacob and his children went down into Egypt.
- 5 And I sent Moses and Aaron, and I plagued Egypt, according to that which I did in the midst thereof: and afterward I brought you out.
- 6 And I brought your fathers out of Egypt: and ye came unto the sea; and the Egyptians pursued after your fathers with chariots and with horsemen unto the Red Sea.
- 7 And when they cried out unto Jehovah, he put darkness between you and the Egyptians, and brought the sea upon them, and covered them; and your eyes saw what I did in Egypt: and ye dwelt in the wilderness many days.
- 8 And I brought you into the land of the Amorites, that dwelt beyond the Jordan: and they fought with you; and I gave them into your hand, and ye possessed their land; and I destroyed them from before you.
- 9 Then Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab, arose and fought against Israel: and he sent and called Balaam the son of Beor to curse you;
- 10 but I would not hearken unto Balaam; therefore he blessed you still: so I delivered you out of his hand.
- 11 And ye went over the Jordan, and came unto Jericho: and the men of Jericho fought against you, the Amorite, and the Perizzite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Girgashite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite; and I delivered them into your hand.
- 12 And I sent the hornet before you, which drove them out from before you, even the two kings of the Amorites; not with thy sword, nor with thy bow.
- 13 And I gave you a land whereon thou hadst not labored, and cities which ye built not, and ye dwell therein; of

- vineyards and oliveyards which ye planted not do ye eat.
- 14 Now therefore fear Jehovah, and serve him in sincerity and in truth; and put away the gods which your fathers served beyond the River, and in Egypt; and serve ye Jehovah.
- 15 ¶ And if it seem evil unto you to serve Jehovah, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were beyond the River, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve Jehovah.
- 16 And the people answered and said, Far be it from us that we should forsake Jehovah, to serve other gods;
- 17 for Jehovah our God, he it is that brought us and our fathers up out of the land of Egypt, from the house of *{I}* bondage, and that did those great signs in our sight, and preserved us in all the way wherein we went, and among all the peoples through the midst of whom we passed; *{I}* *Heb bondmen*
- 18 and Jehovah drove out from before us all the peoples, even the Amorites that dwelt in the land: therefore we also will serve Jehovah; for he is our God.
- 19 And Joshua said unto the people, Ye cannot serve Jehovah; for he is a holy God; he is a jealous God; he will not forgive your transgression nor your sins.
- 20 If ye forsake Jehovah, and serve foreign gods, then he will turn and do you evil, and consume you, after that he hath done you good.
- 21 And the people said unto Joshua, Nay; but we will serve Jehovah.
- 22 And Joshua said unto the people, Ye are witnesses against yourselves that ye have chosen you Jehovah, to serve him. And they said, We are witnesses.
- 23 Now therefore put away, *said he*, the foreign gods which are among you, and incline your heart unto Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 24 And the people said unto Joshua, Jehovah our God will we serve, and unto his voice will we hearken.
- 25 So Joshua made a covenant with the people that day, and set them a statute and an ordinance in Shechem.
- 26 And Joshua wrote these words in the book of the law of God; and he took a great stone, and set it up there under the oak that was *{I}* by the sanctuary of Jehovah. *{I}* *Or in*
- 27 And Joshua said unto all the people, Behold, this stone shall be a witness against us; for it hath heard all the words of Jehovah which he spake unto us: it shall be therefore a witness against you, lest ye deny your God.
- 28 So Joshua sent the people away, every man unto his inheritance.
- 29 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, that Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of Jehovah, died, being a hundred and ten years old.
- 30 And they buried him in the border of his inheritance in Timnathserah, which is in the hill-country of Ephraim, on the north of the mountain of Gaash.
- 31 And Israel served Jehovah all the days of Joshua, and all the days of the elders that outlived Joshua, and had known all the work of Jehovah, that he had wrought for Israel.
- 32 And the bones of Joseph, which the children of Israel brought up out of Egypt, buried they in Shechem, in the parcel of ground which Jacob bought of the sons of Hamor the father of Shechem for a hundred pieces of money: and they became the inheritance of the children of Joseph.
- 33 And Eleazar the son of Aaron died; and they buried him in *{I}* the hill of Phinehas his son, which was given him in the hill-country of Ephraim. *{I}* *Or Gibeah of Phinehas* }

- C- Discourses and death of Joshua. . . (23.-24.)
- 1- First discourse. (23.)  
 Joshua admonishes them to cling to the Lord and if they do, 1 would chase 1000.  
 23:10.
- 2- Second discourse. "Choose you this day . . ." (24.)
- a- Abraham came out of a house of idolatry. vs. 2
- b- Note the Lord's Airforce. vs 12
- c- He challenges people to serve the Lord. vs. 14
- 3- The death of Joshua. vs. 29
- 4- The death of Eleazar. vs. 33



## Questions On The Book Of Joshua

1. What promise was made to Joshua in chapter 17?
2. What principle of the Lord was demonstrated in the spying of Jericho and the story of Rehab?
3. What twofold purpose was served in the miracle of the Jordan crossing?
4. What principle was memorialized by the memorial stones at Gilgal?
5. What significant lesson was taught Joshua in the meeting with the Lord near Jericho?
6. Why was the fall of Jericho, significant?
7. What specifically was the sin of Achan?
8. Why was the treaty with Gibeon wrong?
9. What did the treaty with Gibeon precipitate?
10. What was outstanding about the Southern campaign?
11. What was Israel's headquarters during these campaigns?
12. Name five cities destroyed in the Southern campaign?
13. What city was the center of the Northern opposition?
14. What cities, generally, were not touched in this drive?

15. How long did these campaigns take, altogether?

16. Which tribes received the greatest shares in the division of the land?

17. Where was the Ark of the Covenant relocated after Gilgal?

18. Name the two tribes located in the middle portion. "1

19. Name the four tribes located in the south.

20. Name the four tribes located in the north.

21. Name two cities of refuge in West Jordan.

22. How many cities were the Levites given?

23. What misunderstanding nearly led to civil war?

24. What was Joshua's final challenge and warning?

State the twofold purpose in the Lord's allowing Israel to occupy Palestine.

**THE BOOKS OF JUDGES AND RUTH**  
**INTRODUCTION**  
**PRINCIPLES**  
**TEXT**  
**OUTLINE**  
**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley A. Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible**  
**And Interpretation**  
**At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## Introduction

### I. Authorship.

- A- The author is anonymous. The context seems to point to Samuel. He was a writer and an educator (1 Samue1 10:25). It evidently was written about the time of Saul.
- B- The title "Judges" is taken from the charismatic military leaders ruling Israel during this period. The name "Judge" meant two things: 1) to deliver the people from the oppressors; and 2) to settle disputes and maintain justice.

### II. Historical

#### Setting.

##### A- Date of the writing.

These two books seem to have been written by Samuel before Jerusalem had been taken by David (still called Jebus, and the Jebusites still there, Judges 1:21), and after David had been chosen (Ruth 4:22).

##### B- Date of the period involved.

Note an approximate chronology from the exodus to Solomon:<sup>a-</sup>

Exodus			1445 B.C.
Wilderness wanderings	40		
Under Joshua and elders to Othniel	25		
Othniel to Jephthah Judges 11:26	275		1105
(Mesopotamia and Othniel	48		
Moab and Ehud	98		
Canaan and Deborah	60		
Midian, Gideon and Abimelech,	50		
Peaceful Judges Tola (23), Jair (23)	48		
Ammon and Jephthah)	24 (328)		
Jephthah to Saul		82	1023
Peaceful Judgeships Ibzan (7), Elon (10), Abdon	22		
Philistines and Samson	40		
Samuel	20 (82)	63	1023
Saul to Solomon's Building Temple			970 B.C.

Note: Overlaps are to be recognized in the judgeships, since none ruled over all Israel till the time of Samuel.

##### C- Conditions during the period.

---

<sup>a</sup> The late date for the exodus is pretty well destroyed by the internal evidence of Judges 11:26.



Following the time of Joshua, Israel was without a national leader. Every man or clan was a law to himself or itself. The land was beset by internal as well as external strife. Anarchy and idolatry were prevalent. They failed to cleanse the land of the heathen with their idols, and they were continually being dominated by them. From without, they were being harassed by enemies on all sides. Politically, Palestine was under the ostensible domination of Egypt during this period. Most of the time they were somewhat apathetic, as long as their trade routes were kept open. Garstang has noted a remarkable synchronization between the periods of Egypt's strength and Israel's times of peace. The two dominant world powers of the times were Egypt and the Hittite empire of Asia Minor and Mesopotamia.

#### IV. The purposes of the books of Judges and Ruth.

##### A- Judges.

The purpose of the book of Judges was to describe the character of the time in which Israel was without a king and to show the need for such rule. While fulfilling this purpose, it also gives an accurate chronology of the times of the book.

The recurrent theme throughout the book is that apostasy and idolotry are inevitably followed by judgment from the Lord. This is portrayed by seven cycles of relapse, ruin, repentance, restoration, and rest.

##### B- Ruth.

**The purpose of the book of Ruth is to portray a pastoral love scene, an oasis of fidelity, in a barren time of sin, idolatry, and infidelity (and that involving a woman from Moab).**

{Note One of the Mat 1, Gospel According to 5 women. vs. 1-5. Tamar, Gen 38:6; Rahab, Jos 2:1; Bethsheba, 2 Sam 11:3; Ruth, Ruth; and finally Mary The Mother of Jesus The Messiah. NEC}

**A further purpose is to indicate a Gentile strain in David's genealogy. It illustrates the Gentiles' capacity to turn to Jehovah.**

**Note: A main comparison between Joshua and Judges may be listed as: Joshua teaches that Victory comes by obedience to the Lord. Judges teaches that disobedience (continued disobedience) brings defeat.**



## THE BOOK OF JUDGES

---

### An Outline of Judges

- 
- |      |   |            |
|------|---|------------|
| I.   | The Initiating Causes of Israel's Apostasy. | (1.-3:7.)  |
| II.  | The Interminable Cycles of Apostasy.        | (3:8.-16.) |
| III. | The Inevitable Accompaniments of Apostasy.  | (16.-21.)  |
-

# Battles of the Judges Period

OPPONENT	KING	ISRAEL'S DELIVERER	VICTOR	LOCATION OF BATTLE	SCRIPTURE (ALL IN JUDGES)
Bezek	Adoni-bezek	—	Judah	Bezek	1:4-7
Kiriath-Arba (Hebron)	Sheshai, Ahiman, Talmai	Caleb	Judah	Hebron	1:10
Kiriath-Sepher (Debir)	—	Othniel	Judah	Debir	1:12-13
Various cities	—	—	Judah	Various cities	1:17-18
Luz (Bethel)	—	—	Manasseh, Ephraim	Bethel	1:22-25
Laish	—	—	Dan	Laish	18:27-29
Civil: Israel vs. Benjaminites	—	—	Israel	Gibeah	20:1-48
Mesopotamia	Cushan-rishathaim	Othniel	Israel	—	3:10
Moab	Eglon	Ehud	Israel	Jericho	3:15-30
Hazor	Jabin	Deborah	Israel	Esdraelon	4:4-16
Midianites	Zeeb, Zebah, Oreb, Zalmunna	Gideon	Israel	Hill of Moreh	7:7-8:25
Civil: Abimelech vs. Shechem	Abimelech	Gaal	Abimelech	Shechem	9:34-41
Civil: Abimelech vs. Thebez	Abimelech	—	Israel	Thebez	9:50-57
Ammonites	—	Jephthah	Israel	Transjordan	11:29-33
Civil: Gileadites vs. Ephraimites	—	Jephthah	Gilead	Zaphon	12:1-6

Figure 01. The Battles Of The Judges Period.



Figure 02. The Judges Of Israel.

# THE SHIBOLTHS AND SIBOLETHS OF JUDGES 12:6

OR

“What a difference a dot makes!”

שִׁבְלֶת Shiboleth : a stream

The Ephramites were thinking “a stream”<sup>a</sup> but they pronounced it שִׁבְלֶת which is not a valid Hebrew word. They were asked to say “a stream”, but they responded with סִבְלֶת “an ear of grain”!

סִבְלֶת Siboleth : an ear of grain

---

<sup>a</sup> After all, they were at the fords of Jordan, so that “stream” would be the first thing on their minds.



**Judges 1**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after the death of Joshua, that the children of Israel asked of Jehovah, saying, Who shall go up for us first against the Canaanites, to fight against them?
- 2 And Jehovah said, Judah shall go up: behold, I have delivered the land into his hand.
- 3 And Judah said unto Simeon his brother, Come up with me into my lot, that we may fight against the Canaanites; and I likewise will go with thee into thy lot. So Simeon went with him.
- 4 And Judah went up; and Jehovah delivered the Canaanites and the Perizzites into their hand: and they smote of them in Bezek ten thousand men.
- 5 And they found Adoni-bezek in Bezek; and they fought against him, and they smote the Canaanites and the Perizzites.
- 6 But Adoni-bezek fled; and they pursued after him, and caught him, and cut off his thumbs and his great toes.
- 7 And Adoni-bezek said, Threescore and ten kings, having their thumbs and their great toes cut off, gathered *their food* under my table: as I have done, so God hath required me. And they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died there.
- 8 And the children of Judah fought against Jerusalem, and took it, and smote it with the edge of the sword, and set the city on fire.
- 9 ¶ And afterward the children of Judah went down to fight against the Canaanites that dwelt in the hill-country, and in the South, and in the lowland.
- 10 And Judah went against the Canaanites that dwelt in Hebron (now the name of Hebron beforetime was Kiriath-arba); and they smote Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmai.
- 11 And from thence he went against the inhabitants of Debir. (Now the name of Debir beforetime was Kiriath-sepher.)
- 12 And Caleb said, He that smiteth Kiriath-sepher, and taketh it, to him will I give Achsah my daughter to wife.
- 13 And Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother, took it: and he gave him Achsah his daughter to wife.
- 14 And it came to pass, when she came *unto him*, that she moved him to ask of her father a field: and she alighted from off her ass; and Caleb said unto her, What wouldest thou?
- 15 And she said unto him, Give me a *{1}* blessing; for that thou hast *{2}* set me in the land of the South, give me also springs of water. And Caleb gave her the upper springs and the nether springs. *{1} Or present 2} Or given me the land of the South}*
- 16 And the children of the Kenite, Moses' *{1}* brother-in-law, went up out of the city of palm-trees with the children of Judah into the wilderness of Judah, which is in the south of Arad; and they went and dwelt with the people. *{1} Or father-in-law}*
- 17 And Judah went with Simeon his brother, and they smote the Canaanites that inhabited Zephath, and *{1}* utterly destroyed it. And the name of the city was called Hormah. *{1} Heb devoted}*
- 18 Also Judah took Gaza with the border thereof, and Ashkelon with the border thereof, and Ekron with the border thereof.
- 19 And Jehovah was with Judah; and drove out *the inhabitants of* the hill-country; for he could not drive out the inhabitants of the valley, because they had chariots of iron.
- 20 And they gave Hebron unto Caleb, as Moses had spoken: and he drove out thence the three sons of Anak.
- 21 ¶ And the children of Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites that inhabited Jerusalem; but the Jebusites dwell with the children of Benjamin in Jerusalem unto this day.
- 22 And the house of Joseph, they also went up against Beth-el; and Jehovah was with them.
- 23 And the house of Joseph sent to spy out Beth-el. (Now the name of the city beforetime was Luz.)
- 24 And the watchers saw a man come forth out of the city, and they said unto him, Show us, we pray thee, the entrance into the city, and we will deal kindly with thee.
- 25 And he showed them the entrance into the city; and they smote the city with the edge of the sword; but they let the man go and all his family.
- 26 And the man went into the land of the Hittites, and built a city, and called the name thereof Luz, which is the name thereof unto this day.
- 27 And Manasseh did not drive out *the inhabitants of* Beth-shean and its *{1}* towns, nor of Taanach and its



- towns, nor the inhabitants of Dor and its towns, nor the inhabitants of Ibleam and its towns, nor the inhabitants of Megiddo and its towns; but the Canaanites would dwell in that land. *{1} Heb daughters}*
- 28 And it came to pass, when Israel was waxed strong, that they put the Canaanites to taskwork, and did not utterly drive them out.
- 29 And Ephraim drove not out the Canaanites that dwelt in Gezer; but the Canaanites dwelt in Gezer among them.
- 30 Zebulun drove not out the inhabitants of Kitron, nor the inhabitants of Nahalol; but the Canaanites dwelt among them, and became subject to taskwork.
- 31 Asher drove not out the inhabitants of Acco, nor the inhabitants of Sidon, nor of Ahlab, nor of Achzib, nor of Helbah, nor of Aphik, nor of Rehob;
- 32 but the Asherites dwelt among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land; for they did not drive them out.
- 33 Naphtali drove not out the inhabitants of Beth-shemesh, nor the inhabitants of Beth-anath; but he dwelt among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land: nevertheless the inhabitants of Beth-shemesh and of Beth-anath became subject to taskwork.
- 34 And the Amorites forced the children of Dan into the hill-country; for they would not suffer them to come down to the valley;
- 35 but the Amorites would dwell in mount Heres, in Aijalon, and in Shaalbim: yet the hand of the house of Joseph prevailed, so that they became subject to taskwork.
- 36 And the border of the Amorites was from the ascent of Akrabbim, from *{1}* the rock, and upward. *{1} Or Sela}*
- 

## **I. THE INITIATING CAUSES OF ISRAEL'S APOSTASY. (1.-3:7.)**

### **A- Military failures and incomplete conquest. (1.)**

- 1- Judah's incomplete conquest vs. 1-20  
Judah and Simeon are allied to drive out the Canaanites.
- 2- Benjamin's incomplete conquest vs. 21  
Failed to drive out the Jebusites.
- 3- Manasseh's incomplete conquest vs. 22-28  
Failed to drive out the Canaanites.
- 4- Ephraim's incomplete conquest vs. 29  
Failed to drive out the Canaanites.
- 5- Zebulun, Asher, and Naphtali vs. 30-33  
Failed to drive out the Canaanites.
- 6- Dan is driven to the mountains vs. 34-36  
Failed to drive out the Amorites.  
NO ONE TRIBE DROVE OUT THE INHABITANTS.
- 7- Principles Taught.
  - a- Failure to maintain separation results in degeneration.
  - b- Incomplete obedience leaves the seeds for disaster.

**Judges 2**

- 1 ¶ And {1} the angel of Jehovah came up from Gilgal to Bochim. And he said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swear unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you: {1} *Or a messenger*
- 2 and ye shall make no covenant with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall break down their altars. But ye have not hearkened unto my voice: why have ye done this?
- 3 Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be *as thorns* in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you.
- 4 And it came to pass, when the angel of Jehovah spake these words unto all the children of Israel, that the people lifted up their voice, and wept.
- 5 And they called the name of that place {1} Bochim: and they sacrificed there unto Jehovah. {1} *That is Weepers*
- 6 ¶ Now when Joshua had sent the people away, the children of Israel went every man unto his inheritance to possess the land.
- 7 And the people served Jehovah all the days of Joshua, and all the days of the elders that outlived Joshua, who had seen all the great work of Jehovah that he had wrought for Israel.
- 8 And Joshua the son of Nun, the servant of Jehovah, died, being a hundred and ten years old.
- 9 And they buried him in the border of his inheritance in Timnath-heres, in the hill-country of Ephraim, on the north of the mountain of Gaash.
- 10 And also all that generation were gathered unto their fathers: and there arose another generation after them, that knew not Jehovah, nor yet the work which he had wrought for Israel.
- 11 And the children of Israel did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and served the Baalim;
- 12 and they forsook Jehovah, the God of their fathers, who brought them out of the land of Egypt, and followed other gods, of the gods of the peoples that were round about them, and bowed themselves down unto them: and they provoked Jehovah to anger.
- 13 And they forsook Jehovah, and served Baal and the Ashtaroth.
- 14 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel, and he delivered them into the hands of spoilers that despoiled them; and he sold them into the hands of their enemies round about, so that they could not any longer stand before their enemies.
- 15 Whithersoever they went out, the hand of Jehovah was against them for evil, as Jehovah had spoken, and as Jehovah had sworn unto them: and they were sore distressed.
- 16 And Jehovah raised up judges, who saved them out of the hand of those that despoiled them.
- 17 And yet they hearkened not unto their judges; for they played the harlot after other gods, and bowed themselves down unto them: they turned aside quickly out of the way wherein their fathers walked, obeying the commandments of Jehovah; *but* they did not so.
- 18 And when Jehovah raised them up judges, then Jehovah was with the judge, and saved them out of the hand of their enemies all the days of the judge: for it repented Jehovah because of their groaning by reason of them that oppressed them and vexed them.
- 19 But it came to pass, when the judge was dead, that they turned back, and dealt more corruptly than their fathers, in following other gods to serve them, and to bow down unto them; {1} they ceased not from their doings, nor from their stubborn way. {1} *Heb they let nothing fall of their doings*
- 20 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel; and he said, Because this nation have transgressed my covenant which I commanded their fathers, and have not hearkened unto my voice;
- 21 I also will not henceforth drive out any from before them of the nations that Joshua left when he died;
- 22 that by them I may prove Israel, whether they will keep the way of Jehovah to walk therein, as their fathers did keep it, or not.
- 23 So Jehovah left those nations, without driving them out hastily; neither delivered he them into the hand of Joshua.

**Judges 3**

- 1 ¶ Now these are the nations which Jehovah left, to prove Israel by them, even as many *of Israel* as had not known all the wars of Canaan;
- 2 only that the generations of the children of Israel might know, to teach them war, at the least such as beforetime knew nothing thereof:

- 3 *namely*, the five lords of the Philistines, and all the Canaanites, and the Sidonians, and the Hivites that dwelt in mount Lebanon, from mount Baal-hermon unto the entrance of Hamath.
- 4 And they were *left*, to prove Israel by them, to know whether they would hearken unto the commandments of Jehovah, which he commanded their fathers by Moses.
- 5 And the children of Israel dwelt among the Canaanites, the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites:
- 6 and they took their daughters to be their wives, and gave their own daughters to their sons and served their gods.
- 7 And the children of Israel did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and forgat Jehovah their God, and served the Baalim and the Asheroth.
- 

## **B- Military failures explained.**

**2:1-9**

- 1- First generation rebuked by an angel vs. 1-5  
     Came from Gilgal.
- a- Failure to destroy heathen altars. vs. 2
- b- Intermingling vs. 2
- c- The result of military defeat.  
         The Lord left enemies as thorns in their sides.
- 2- Parenthesis on Joshua's final days vs.6-9  
     Repeated from Joshua's' final days - Chapter 24.

## **C- Religious failures.**

**2:10 - 3:7**

These generate a circle of results.

- 1- The rise of a new generation of idolaters. vs. 10-13  
     Failure to instruct their children. Ref. Deu 6:6-11, 20-25; 31:12-13.
- 2- The resultant bondage and incapacity. vs. 14  
     Couldn't stand before their enemies.
- 3- The recurring intensified corruption. vs. 15-19  
     After the Judge died, each successive relapse becomes more corrupt.
- 4- The resultant military failures. vs 20-3:4  
     The Lord leaves the heathen in the land to prove Israel.
- 5- The consequent integration and idolatry. vs 5-7
- 6- Principles taught.
- a- Spiritual Apostasy brings defeat to all parts of life.
- b- Corruption tends to increase with each cycle.

**Judges 3 (cont.)**

- 8 ¶ Therefore the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel, and he sold them into the hand of Cushan-rishathaim king of *{1}* Mesopotamia: and the children of Israel served Cushan-rishathaim eight years. *{1} Heb Aram-naharaim}*
- 9 And when the children of Israel cried unto Jehovah, Jehovah raised up a saviour to the children of Israel, who saved them, even Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother.
- 10 And the Spirit of Jehovah came upon him, and he judged Israel; and he went out to war, and Jehovah delivered Cushan-rishathaim king of *{1}* Mesopotamia into his hand: and his hand prevailed against Cushan-rishathaim. *{1} Heb Aram}*
- 11 And the land had rest forty years. And Othniel the son of Kenaz died.
- 12 ¶ And the children of Israel again did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah: and Jehovah strengthened Eglon the king of Moab against Israel, because they had done that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah.
- 13 And he gathered unto him the children of Ammon and Amalek; and he went and smote Israel, and they possessed the city of palm-trees.
- 14 And the children of Israel served Eglon the king of Moab eighteen years.
- 15 But when the children of Israel cried unto Jehovah, Jehovah raised them up a saviour, Ehud the son of Gera, the Benjamite, a man left-handed. And the children of Israel sent tribute by him unto Eglon the king of Moab.
- 16 And Ehud made him a sword which had two edges, a cubit in length; and he girded it under his raiment upon his right thigh.
- 17 And he offered the tribute unto Eglon king of Moab: now Eglon was a very fat man.
- 18 And when he had made an end of offering the tribute, he sent away the people that bare the tribute.
- 19 But he himself turned back from the *{1}* quarries that were by Gilgal, and said, I have a secret errand unto thee, O king. And he said, Keep silence. And all that stood by him went out from him. *{1} Or graven images}*
- 20 And Ehud came unto him; and he was sitting by himself alone in the cool upper room. And Ehud said, I have a message from God unto thee. And he arose out of his seat.
- 21 And Ehud put forth his left hand, and took the sword from his right thigh, and thrust it into his body:
- 22 and the haft also went in after the blade; and the fat closed upon the blade, for he drew not the sword out of his body; and *{1}*; it came out behind. *{1} Or he went out into the antechamber}*
- 23 Then Ehud went forth into the porch, and shut the doors of the upper room upon him, and locked them.
- 24 Now when he was gone out, his servants came; and they saw, and, behold, the doors of the upper room were locked; and they said, Surely he is covering his feet in the upper chamber.
- 25 And they tarried till they were ashamed; and, behold, he opened not the doors of the upper room: therefore they took the key, and opened *them*, and, behold, their lord was fallen down dead on the earth.
- 26 And Ehud escaped while they tarried, and passed beyond the *{1}* quarries, and escaped unto Seirah. *{1} Or graven images}*
- 27 And it came to pass, when he was come, that he blew a trumpet in the hill-country of Ephraim; and the children of Israel went down with him from the hill-country, and he before them.
- 28 And he said unto them, Follow after me; for Jehovah hath delivered your enemies the Moabites into your hand. And they went down after him, and took the fords of the Jordan *{1}* against the Moabites, and suffered not a man to pass over. *{1} Or toward Moab}*
- 29 And they smote of Moab at that time about ten thousand men, every lusty man, and every man of valor; and there escaped not a man.
- 30 So Moab was subdued that day under the hand of Israel. And the land had rest fourscore years.
- 31 ¶ And after him was Shamgar the son of Anath, who smote of the Philistines six hundred men with an ox-goad: and he also saved Israel.

## II. THE INTERMINABLE CYCLES OF SPIRITUAL APOSTASY.

(3:8.-16:31.)

### A- Servitude to Mesopotamia. vs. 3:8-11

- |                  |                                     |        |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|--------|
| 1- Relapse.      | They served Baal!                   | vs. 7  |
| 2- Ruin.         | Subject to Mesopotamia for 8 years. | vs. 8  |
| 3- Repentance.   | Cried to the Lord.                  | vs. 9  |
| 4- Restoration.  | the Lord raised up Othniel          | vs. 10 |
| 5- Rest. vs. 11. | 40 years.                           |        |

### B- Servitude to Moab. vs.12-30

- |  |  |           |
|--|--|-----------|
| 1- Relapse.  | They served Baal!  |           |
|  | vs. 12   |           |
| 2- Ruin. Eglon took Jericho and made subject to Moab for 18 years. |  |           |
|  | vs. 13   |           |
| 3- Repentance.   | Cried to the Lord.   | vs. 15    |
| 4- Restoration. The Lord raised up Ehud,                           |  | vs. 16-29 |
|  | a left-handed dagger thruster, trumpet player, Who called Israel to the fords of Jordan where they killed about 10,000 Moabites. |           |
| 5- Rest.   | 80 years.  | vs. 30    |

### C- Servitude to Phillistines. vs. 31

Deliverance by Shamgar.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 4 & 5 are backed up.

### Judges 4

- 1 ¶ And the children of Israel again did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, when Ehud was dead.
- 2 And Jehovah sold them into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan, that reigned in Hazor; the captain of whose host was Sisera, who dwelt in Harosheth of the {1} Gentiles. {1} Or nations}
- 3 And the children of Israel cried unto Jehovah: for he had nine hundred chariots of iron; and twenty years he mightily oppressed the children of Israel.
- 4 ¶ Now Deborah, a prophetess, the wife of Lappidoth, she judged Israel at that time.
- 5 And she {1} dwelt under the palm-tree of Deborah between Ramah and Beth-el in the hill-country of Ephraim: and the children of Israel came up to her for judgment. {1} Or sat}
- 6 And she sent and called Barak the son of Abinoam out of Kedesh-naphtali, and said unto him, Hath not Jehovah, the God of Israel, commanded, saying, Go and draw unto mount Tabor, and take with thee ten thousand men of the children of Naphtali and of the children of Zebulun?
- 7 And I will draw unto thee, to the river Kishon, Sisera, the captain of Jabin's army, with his chariots and his multitude; and I will deliver him into thy hand.
- 8 And Barak said unto her, If thou wilt go with me, then I will go; but if thou wilt not go with me, I will not go.
- 9 And she said, I will surely go with thee: notwithstanding, the journey that thou takest shall not be for thine honor; for Jehovah will sell Sisera into the hand of a woman. And Deborah arose, and went with Barak to Kedesh.

- 10 ¶ And Barak called Zebulun and Naphtali together to Kedesh; and there went up ten thousand men at his feet: and Deborah went up with him.
- 11 Now Heber *{1}* the Kenite had separated himself from the Kenites, even from the children of Hobab the *{2}* brother-in-law of Moses, and had pitched his tent as far as the *{3}* oak in Zaanannim, which is by Kedesh. *{1}* *Heb Kain*; See Nu 24:22. 2) Or *father-in-law* 3) Or *terebinth*}
- 12 And they told Sisera that Barak the son of Abinoam was gone up to mount Tabor.
- 13 And Sisera gathered together all his chariots, even nine hundred chariots of iron, and all the people that were with him, from Harosheth of the *{1}* Gentiles, unto the river Kishon. *{1}* Or *nations*}
- 14 And Deborah said unto Barak, Up; for this is the day in which Jehovah hath delivered Sisera into thy hand; is not Jehovah gone out before thee? So Barak went down from mount Tabor, and ten thousand men after him.
- 15 And Jehovah discomfited Sisera, and all his chariots, and all his host, with the edge of the sword before Barak; and Sisera alighted from his chariot, and fled away on his feet.
- 16 But Barak pursued after the chariots, and after the host, unto Harosheth of the *{1}* Gentiles: and all the host of Sisera fell by the edge of the sword; there was not a man left. *{1}* Or *nations*}
- 17 ¶ Howbeit Sisera fled away on his feet to the tent of Jael the wife of Heber the Kenite; for there was peace between Jabin the king of Hazor and the house of Heber the Kenite.
- 18 And Jael went out to meet Sisera, and said unto him, Turn in, my lord, turn in to me; fear not. And he turned in unto her into the tent, and she covered him with a rug.
- 19 And he said unto her, Give me, I pray thee, a little water to drink; for I am thirsty. And she opened a bottle of milk, and gave him drink, and covered him.
- 20 And he said unto her, Stand in the door of the tent, and it shall be, when any man doth come and inquire of thee, and say, Is there any man here? that thou shalt say, No.
- 21 Then Jael Heber's wife took a tent-pin, and took a hammer in her hand, and went softly unto him, and smote the pin into his temples, and it pierced through into the ground; for he was *{1}* in a deep sleep; so he swooned and died. *{1}* Or *in a deep sleep and weary; so he died*}
- 22 And, behold, as Barak pursued Sisera, Jael came out to meet him, and said unto him, Come, and I will show thee the man whom thou seekest. And he came unto her; and, behold, Sisera lay dead, and the tent-pin was in his temples.
- 23 So God subdued on that day Jabin the king of Canaan before the children of Israel.
- 24 And the hand of the children of Israel prevailed more and more against Jabin the king of Canaan, until they had destroyed Jabin king of Canaan.

## Judges 5

- 1 ¶ Then sang Deborah and Barak the son of Abinoam on that day, saying,
- 2 For that the leaders took the lead in Israel, For that the people offered themselves willingly, Bless ye Jehovah.
- 3 Hear, O ye kings; give ear, O ye princes; I, *even* I, will sing unto Jehovah; I will sing praise to Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 4 Jehovah, when thou wentest forth out of Seir, When thou marchedst out of the field of Edom, The earth trembled, the heavens also dropped, Yea, the clouds dropped water.
- 5 The mountains *{1}* quaked at the presence of Jehovah, Even yon Sinai at the presence of Jehovah, the God of Israel. *{1}* Or *flowed down*}
- 6 ¶ In the days of Shamgar the son of Anath, In the days of Jael, *{1}* the highways were unoccupied, And the travellers walked through *{2}* byways. *{1}* Or *the caravans ceased* 2) *Heb crooked ways*}
- 7 *{1}* The rulers ceased in Israel, they ceased, Until that I Deborah arose, That I arose a mother in Israel. *{1}* Or *The villages were unoccupied*}
- 8 They chose new gods; Then was war in the gates: Was there a shield or spear seen Among forty thousand in Israel?
- 9 My heart is toward the governors of Israel, *{1}* That offered themselves willingly among the people: Bless ye Jehovah. *{1}* Or *Ye that offered yourselves willingly among the people, bless etc*}
- 10 Tell of it, ye that ride on white asses, Ye that sit on rich carpets, And ye that walk by the way.
- 11 *{1}* Far from the noise of archers, in the places of drawing water, There shall they rehearse the righteous acts of Jehovah, *Even* the righteous acts *{2}* of his rule in Israel. Then the people of Jehovah went down to the gates. *{1}* Or *Because of the voice of the archers...there let them rehearse* 2) Or *toward his villages*}
- 12 ¶ Awake, awake, Deborah; Awake, awake, utter a song: Arise, Barak, and lead away thy captives, thou son of Abinoam.
- 13 *{1}* Then came down a remnant of the nobles *{2}* and the people; Jehovah came down for me *{3}* against the mighty. *{1}* Or *Then go down, O remnant, for the nobles...O Jehovah, go down for me against the mighty*; Or *Then made he a remnant to have dominion over the nobles and the people; Jehovah made me have dominion over the mighty* 2) Or as otherwise read *the people of Jehovah came down for me against* (or among) *the mighty* 3) Or *among*}

- 14 Out of Ephraim *came down* they whose root is in Amalek; After thee, Benjamin, among thy peoples; Out of Machir came down {1} governors, And out of Zebulun they that handle {2} the marshal's staff. {1} Or *lawgivers* 2) Or *the staff of the scribe*}
- 15 And {1} the princes of Issachar were with Deborah; As was Issachar, so was Barak; Into the valley they rushed forth at his feet. By the watercourses of Reuben There were great resolves of heart. {1} Or *my princes in Issachar*}
- 16 Why satest thou among the sheepfolds, To hear the pipings for the flocks? At the watercourses of Reuben There were great searchings of heart.
- 17 Gilead abode beyond the Jordan: And Dan, why did he remain in ships? Asher sat still at the {1} haven of the sea, And abode by his creeks. {1} Or *shore*}
- 18 Zebulun was a people that jeopardized their lives unto the death, And Naphtali, upon the high places of the field.
- 19 The kings came and fought; Then fought the kings of Canaan. In Taanach by the waters of Megiddo: They took no gain of money.
- 20 From heaven fought the stars, From their courses they fought against Sisera.
- 21 The river Kishon swept them away, That ancient river, the river Kishon. O my soul, {1} march on with strength. {1} Or *thou hast trodden down strength*}
- 22 Then did the horsehoofs stamp By reason of the prancings, the prancings of their strong ones.
- 23 Curse ye Meroz, said the angel of Jehovah. Curse ye bitterly the inhabitants thereof, Because they came not to the help of Jehovah, To the help of Jehovah {1} against the mighty. {1} Or *among*}
- 24 ¶ Blessed {1} above women shall Jael be, The wife of Heber the Kenite; Blessed shall she be {1} above women in the tent. {1} Or *of*}
- 25 He asked water, *and* she gave him milk; She brought him butter in a lordly dish.
- 26 She put her hand to the tent-pin, And her right hand to the workmen's hammer; And with the hammer she smote Sisera, she smote through his head; Yea, she pierced and struck through his temples.
- 27 At her feet he bowed, he fell, he lay; At her feet he bowed, he fell; Where he bowed, there he fell down {1} dead. {1} Or *overpowered*}
- 28 Through the window she looked forth, and cried, The mother of Sisera *cried* through the lattice, Why is his chariot so long in coming? Why tarry the {1} wheels of his chariots? {1} *Heb steps*}
- 29 Her wise ladies answered her, {1} Yea, she returned answer to herself, {1} Or *(Yet she repeateth her words unto herself)*}
- 30 Have they not found, have they not divided the spoil? A damsel, two damsels to every man; To Sisera a spoil of dyed garments, A spoil of dyed garments embroidered, Of dyed garments embroidered on both sides, on the necks of the spoil?
- 31 So let all thine enemies perish, O Jehovah: But let them that love him be as the sun when he goeth forth in his might. And the land had rest forty years.

#### D- Servitude to Canaan.

(4:1.-5:51.)

- 1- Relapse. vs. 1
- 2- Ruin. Subject to Jabin King of (Hazor) Canaan for 20 years. vs. 2
- 3- Repentance. Cried to the Lord. vs. 3
- 4- Restoration. The Lord raised up the prophetess Debra and Barak. vs. 10
  - a- Derbra was the first woman prophetess and Judge.
  - b- Barak was ordered to war but refused unless Debra went also.
  - c- Sisera the captain of Jabins' charioteers was killed in the "Jael-house".
  - d- Note: the song of Debra 5:2-31a
- 5- Rest. 40 years. vs. 5:31b

**Judges 6**

- 1 ¶ And the children of Israel did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah: and Jehovah delivered them into the hand of Midian seven years.
- 2 And the hand of Midian prevailed against Israel; and because of Midian the children of Israel made them the dens which are in the mountains, and the caves, and the strongholds.
- 3 And so it was, when Israel had sown, that the Midianites came up, and the Amalekites, and the children of the east; they came up against them;
- 4 and they encamped against them, and destroyed the increase of the earth, till thou come unto Gaza, and left no sustenance in Israel, neither sheep, nor ox, nor ass.
- 5 For they came up with their cattle and their tents; they came in as locusts for multitude; both they and their camels were without number: and they came into the land to destroy it.
- 6 And Israel was brought very low because of Midian; and the children of Israel cried unto Jehovah.
- 7 ¶ And it came to pass, when the children of Israel cried unto Jehovah because of Midian,
- 8 that Jehovah sent a prophet unto the children of Israel: and he said unto them, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, I brought you up from Egypt, and brought you forth out of the house of bondage;
- 9 and I delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of all that oppressed you, and drove them out from before you, and gave you their land;
- 10 and I said unto you, I am Jehovah your God; ye shall not fear the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell. But ye have not hearkened unto my voice.
- 11 ¶ And the angel of Jehovah came, and sat under the {1} oak which was in Ophrah, that pertained unto Joash the Abiezrite: and his son Gideon was beating out wheat in the winepress, to hide it from the Midianites. {1} Or terebinth}
- 12 And the angel of Jehovah appeared unto him, and said unto him, Jehovah is with thee, thou mighty man of valor.
- 13 And Gideon said unto him, Oh, my lord, if Jehovah is with us, why then is all this befallen us? and where are all his wondrous works which our fathers told us of, saying, Did not Jehovah bring us up from Egypt? but now Jehovah hath cast us off, and delivered us into the hand of Midian.
- 14 And Jehovah {1} looked upon him, and said, Go in this thy might, and save Israel from the hand of Midian: have not I sent thee? {1} Or turned towards}
- 15 And he said unto him, Oh, Lord, wherewith shall I save Israel? behold, my {1} family is the poorest in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's house. {1} Heb thousand }
- 16 And Jehovah said unto him, Surely I will be with thee, and thou shalt smite the Midianites as one man.
- 17 And he said unto him, If now I have found favor in thy sight, then show me a sign that it is thou that talkest with me.
- 18 Depart not hence, I pray thee, until I come unto thee, and bring forth my {1} present, and lay it before thee. And he said, I will tarry until thou come again. {1} Or offering}
- 19 And Gideon went in, and made ready a kid, and unleavened cakes of an ephah of meal: the flesh he put in a basket, and he put the broth in a pot, and brought it out unto him under the {1} oak, and presented it. {1} Or terebinth}
- 20 And the angel of God said unto him, Take the flesh and the unleavened cakes, and lay them upon this rock, and pour out the broth. And he did so.
- 21 Then the angel of Jehovah put forth the end of the staff that was in his hand, and touched the flesh and the unleavened cakes; and there went up fire out of the rock, and consumed the flesh and the unleavened cakes; and the angel of Jehovah departed out of his sight.
- 22 And Gideon saw that he was the angel of Jehovah; and Gideon said, Alas, O Lord Jehovah! forasmuch as I have seen the angel of Jehovah face to face.
- 23 And Jehovah said unto him, Peace be unto thee; fear not: thou shalt not die.
- 24 Then Gideon built an altar there unto Jehovah, and called it {1} Jehovah-shalom: unto this day it is yet in Ophrah of the Abiezrites. {1} That is Jehovah is peace}
- 25 ¶ And it came to pass the same night, that Jehovah said unto him, Take thy father's bullock, {1} even the second bullock seven years old, and throw down the altar of Baal that thy father hath, and cut down the Asherah that is {2} by it; {1} Or and 2} Or upon}



- 26 and build an altar unto Jehovah thy God upon the top of this stronghold, {1} in the orderly manner, and take the second bullock, and offer a burnt-offering with the wood of the Asherah which thou shalt cut down. {1} Or with that pertaining to it}
- 27 Then Gideon took ten men of his servants, and did as Jehovah had spoken unto him: and it came to pass, because he feared his father's household and the men of the city, so that he could not do it by day, that he did it by night.
- 28 And when the men of the city arose early in the morning, behold, the altar of Baal was broken down, and the Asherah was cut down that was {1} by it, and the second bullock was offered upon the altar that was built. {1} Or upon}
- 29 And they said one to another, Who hath done this thing? And when they inquired and asked, they said, Gideon the son of Joash hath done this thing.
- 30 Then the men of the city said unto Joash, Bring out thy son, that he may die, because he hath broken down the altar of Baal, and because he hath cut down the Asherah that was {1} by it. {1} Or upon}
- 31 And Joash said unto all that stood against him, Will ye contend for Baal? Or will ye save him? he that will contend for him, {1} let him be put to death {2} whilst it is yet morning: if he be a god, let him contend for himself, because one hath broken down his altar. {1} Or shall be put to death: let be till morning; if etc 2) Or before morning }
- 32 Therefore on that day he called him {1} Jerubbaal, saying, Let Baal contend against him, because he hath broken down his altar. {1} That is Let Baal contend}
- 33 ¶ Then all the Midianites and the Amalekites and the children of the east assembled themselves together; and they passed over, and encamped in the valley of Jezreel.
- 34 But the Spirit of Jehovah {1} came upon Gideon; and he blew a trumpet; and Abiezer was gathered together after him. {1} Heb clothed itself with}
- 35 And he sent messengers throughout all Manasseh; and they also were gathered together after him: and he sent messengers unto Asher, and unto Zebulun, and unto Naphtali; and they came up to meet them.
- 36 And Gideon said unto God, If thou wilt save Israel by my hand, as thou hast spoken,
- 37 behold, I will put a fleece of wool on the threshing-floor; if there be dew on the fleece only, and it be dry upon all the ground, then shall I know that thou wilt save Israel by my hand, as thou hast spoken.
- 38 And it was so; for he rose up early on the morrow, and pressed the fleece together, and wrung the dew out of the fleece, a bowlful of water.
- 39 And Gideon said unto God, Let not thine anger be kindled against me, and I will speak but this once: let me make trial, I pray thee, but this once with the fleece; let it now be dry only upon the fleece, and upon all the ground let there be dew.
- 40 And God did so that night: for it was dry upon the fleece only, and there was dew on all the ground.

---

## E- Servitude to Midian.

(6:1.-8:32.)

- 1- Relapse. They served the gods of the Amorites! vs. 1, 16
- 2- Ruin. Subject to Midian for 7 years. vs. 1-2
- 3- Repentance. Cried to the Lord. vs. 7
- 4- Restoration. The Lord raised up Gideon of a poor family and least in his family. vs. 8-25
  - a- Gideons' commission. vs. 11-40.
    - 1) Angel of the Lord meets him.
    - 2) Gideons' humility (I'm the lowest of the low.)
    - 3) Start simple: Destroy image of Baal of your fathers' and cut down the images by it. vs. 25
    - 4) Desires confirmation of his call so he twice 'puts out the fleece'. vs. 29-40

**Judges 7**

- 1 ¶ Then Jerubbaal, who is Gideon, and all the people that were with him, rose up early, and encamped beside the spring of {1} Harod: and the camp of Midian was on the north side of them, {2} by the hill of Moreh, in the valley. {1} *That is Trembling; See verse 3. 2) Or from the hill of Moreh onwards in the valley*
- 2 And Jehovah said unto Gideon, The people that are with thee are too many for me to give the Midianites into their hand, lest Israel vaunt themselves against me, saying, Mine own hand hath saved me.
- 3 Now therefore proclaim in the ears of the people, saying, Whosoever is fearful and trembling, let him return and {1} depart from mount Gilead. And there returned of the people twenty and two thousand; and there remained ten thousand. {1} *Or go round about*
- 4 And Jehovah said unto Gideon, The people are yet too many; bring them down unto the water, and I will try them for thee there: and it shall be, that of whom I say unto thee, This shall go with thee, the same shall go with thee; and of whomsoever I say unto thee, This shall not go with thee, the same shall not go.
- 5 So he brought down the people unto the water: and Jehovah said unto Gideon, Every one that lappeth of the water with his tongue, as a dog lappeth, him shalt thou set by himself; likewise every one that boweth down upon his knees to drink.
- 6 And the number of them that lapped, putting their hand to their mouth, was three hundred men: but all the rest of the people bowed down upon their knees to drink water.
- 7 And Jehovah said unto Gideon, By the three hundred men that lapped will I save you, and deliver the Midianites into thy hand; and let all the people go every man unto his place.
- 8 So the people took victuals in their hand, and their trumpets; and he sent all the men of Israel every man unto his tent, but retained the three hundred men: and the camp of Midian was beneath him in the valley.
- 9 ¶ And it came to pass the same night, that Jehovah said unto him, Arise, get thee down {1} into the camp; for I have delivered it into thy hand. {1} *Or against*
- 10 But if thou fear to go down, go thou with Purah thy servant down to the camp:
- 11 and thou shalt hear what they say; and afterward shall thy hands be strengthened to go down {1} into the camp. Then went he down with Purah his servant unto the outermost part of the armed men that were in the camp. {1} *Or against*
- 12 And the Midianites and the Amalekites and all the children of the east lay along in the valley like locusts for multitude; and their camels were without number, as the sand which is upon the sea-shore for multitude.
- 13 And when Gideon was come, behold, there was a man telling a dream unto his fellow; and he said, Behold, I dreamed a dream; and, lo, a cake of barley bread tumbled into the camp of Midian, and came unto the tent, and smote it so that it fell, and turned it upside down, so that the tent lay flat.
- 14 And his fellow answered and said, This is nothing else save the sword of Gideon the son of Joash, a man of Israel: into his hand God hath delivered Midian, and all the host.
- 15 And it was so, when Gideon heard the telling of the dream, and the interpretation thereof, that he worshipped; and he returned into the camp of Israel, and said, Arise; for Jehovah hath delivered into your hand the host of Midian.
- 16 ¶ And he divided the three hundred men into three companies, and he put into the hands of all of them trumpets, and empty pitchers, with torches within the pitchers.
- 17 And he said unto them, Look on me, and do likewise: and, behold, when I come to the outermost part of the camp, it shall be that, as I do, so shall ye do.
- 18 When I blow the trumpet, I and all that are with me, then blow ye the trumpets also on every side of all the camp, and say, For Jehovah and for Gideon.
- 19 So Gideon, and the hundred men that were with him, came unto the outermost part of the camp in the beginning of the middle watch, when they had but newly set the watch: and they blew the trumpets, and brake in pieces the pitchers that were in their hands.
- 20 And the three companies blew the trumpets, and brake the pitchers, and held the torches in their left hands, and the trumpets in their right hands wherewith to blow; and they cried, {1} The sword of Jehovah and of Gideon. {1} *Or A sword for etc*

- 21 And they stood every man in his place round about the camp; and all the host ran; and they shouted, and *{1}* put *them* to flight. *{1}* *Another reading is fled* }
- 22 And they blew the three hundred trumpets, and Jehovah set every man's sword against his fellow, and against all the host; and the host fled as far as Beth-shittah toward Zererah, as far as the *{1}* border of Abel-meholah, by Tabbath. *{1}* *Heb lip* }
- 23 ¶ And the men of Israel were gathered together out of Naphtali, and out of Asher, and out of all Manasseh, and pursued after Midian.
- 24 And Gideon sent messengers throughout all the hill-country of Ephraim, saying, Come down against Midian, and take before them the waters, as far as Beth-barah, *{1}* even the Jordan. So all the men of Ephraim were gathered together, and took the waters as far as Beth-barah, *{1}* even the Jordan. *{1}* *Or and also* }
- 25 And they took the two princes of Midian, Oreb and Zeeb; and they slew Oreb at the rock of Oreb, and Zeeb they slew at the winepress of Zeeb, and pursued Midian: and they brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon beyond the Jordan.

---

b- Gideons' victory.

1) note the culling process. 32000 to 10000 to 300.

2) Note also, the victory through the 'brass band'<sup>a</sup>.

(7.)

vs. 1-11

vs. 9.

---

<sup>a</sup> I don't think they played Sousa Marches. Was this the first incidence of Band-Aids? NEC.

- 1 ¶ And the men of Ephraim said unto him, Why hast thou served us thus, that thou calledst us not, when thou wentest to fight with Midian? And they did chide with him sharply.
- 2 And he said unto them, What have I now done in comparison with you? Is not the gleaning of the grapes of Ephraim better than the vintage of Abiezer?
- 3 God hath delivered into your hand the princes of Midian, Oreb and Zeeb: and what was I able to do in comparison with you? Then their *{1}* anger was abated toward him, when he had said that. *{1}* *Heb spirit*
- 4 ¶ And Gideon came to the Jordan, *{1}* and passed over, he, and the three hundred men that were with him, faint, yet pursuing. *{1}* *Or to pass*
- 5 And he said unto the men of Succoth, Give, I pray you, loaves of bread unto the people that follow me; for they are faint, and I am pursuing after Zebah and Zalmunna, the kings of Midian.
- 6 And the princes of Succoth said, Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in thy hand, that we should give bread unto thine army?
- 7 And Gideon said, Therefore when Jehovah hath delivered Zebah and Zalmunna into my hand, then I will *{1}* tear your flesh with the thorns of the wilderness and with briers. *{1}* *Heb thresh*
- 8 And he went up thence to Penuel, and spake unto them in like manner; and the men of Penuel answered him as the men of Succoth had answered.
- 9 And he spake also unto the men of Penuel, saying, When I come again in peace, I will break down this tower.
- 10 Now Zebah and Zalmunna were in Karkor, and their hosts with them, about fifteen thousand men, all that were left of all the host of the children of the east; for there fell a hundred and twenty thousand men that drew sword.
- 11 And Gideon went up by the way of them that dwelt in tents on the east of Nobah and Jogbehah, and smote the host; for the host was secure.
- 12 And Zebah and Zalmunna fled; and he pursued after them; and he took the two kings of Midian, Zebah and Zalmunna, and *{1}* discomfited all the host. *{1}* *Heb terrified*
- 13 And Gideon the son of Joash returned from the battle from the ascent of Heres.
- 14 And he caught a young man of the men of Succoth, and inquired of him: and he *{1}* described for him the princes of Succoth, and the elders thereof, seventy and seven men. *{1}* *Or wrote down*
- 15 And he came unto the men of Succoth, and said, Behold Zebah and Zalmunna, concerning whom ye did taunt me, saying, Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in thy hand, that we should give bread unto thy men that are weary?
- 16 And he took the elders of the city, and thorns of the wilderness and briers, and with them he taught the men of Succoth.
- 17 And he brake down the tower of Penuel, and slew the men of the city.
- 18 ¶ Then said he unto Zebah and Zalmunna, What manner of men were they whom ye slew at Tabor? And they answered, As thou art, so were they; each one resembled the children of a king.
- 19 And he said, They were my brethren, the sons of my mother: as Jehovah liveth, if ye had saved them alive, I would not slay you.
- 20 And he said unto Jether his first-born, Up, and slay them. But the youth drew not his sword; for he feared, because he was yet a youth.
- 21 Then Zebah and Zalmunna said, Rise thou, and fall upon us; for as the man is, so is his strength. And Gideon arose, and slew Zebah and Zalmunna, and took the crescents that were on their camels' necks.
- 22 ¶ Then the men of Israel said unto Gideon, Rule thou over us, both thou, and thy son, and thy son's son also; for thou hast saved us out of the hand of Midian.
- 23 And Gideon said unto them, I will not rule over you, neither shall my son rule over you: Jehovah shall rule over you.
- 24 And Gideon said unto them, I would make a request of you, that ye would give me every man the *{1}* ear-rings of his spoil. (For they had golden ear-rings, because they were Ishmaelites.) *{1}* *Or nose-rings*
- 25 And they answered, We will willingly give them. And they spread a garment, and did cast therein every man the ear-rings of his spoil.
- 26 And the weight of the golden ear-rings that he requested was a thousand and seven hundred *shekels* of gold, besides the crescents, and the pendants, and the purple raiment that was on the kings of Midian, and besides the chains that were about their camels' necks.

- 27 And Gideon made an ephod thereof, and put it in his city, even in Ophrah: and all Israel played the harlot after it there; and it became a snare unto Gideon, and to his house.
- 28 So Midian was subdued before the children of Israel, and they lifted up their heads no more. And the land had rest forty years in the days of Gideon.
- 29 ¶ And Jerubbaal the son of Joash went and dwelt in his own house.
- 30 And Gideon had threescore and ten sons of his body begotten; for he had many wives.
- 31 And his concubine that was in Shechem, she also bare him a son, and he *{1}* called his name Abimelech. *{1} Heb set}*
- 32 And Gideon the son of Joash died in a good old age, and was buried in the sepulchre of Joash his father, in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

- 
- c- Gideons' diplomacy. vs. 8:1-23  
 Ephraim complains because they were not allowed to help. vs 1  
 Gideon builds them up. vs. 2-3  
 The men of Succoth refuse giving Gideons men food to eat. vs. 6  
 He takes the Elders of the city and used thorns and briars as  
 "teaching aids." vs. 16
- d- Gideon refuses Kingship. vs. vs. 22-23  
 e- Principle taught.

5- Rest. 40 years. vs. 28

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 8 Cont. & 9 are backed up.

### Judges 8 (cont.)

- 33 And it came to pass, as soon as Gideon was dead, that the children of Israel turned again, and played the harlot after the Baalim, and made Baal-berith their god.
- 34 And the children of Israel remembered not Jehovah their God, who had delivered them out of the hand of all their enemies on every side;
- 35 neither showed they kindness to the house of Jerubbaal, *who is* Gideon, according to all the goodness which he had showed unto Israel.

### Judges 9

- 1 ¶ And Abimelech the son of Jerubbaal went to Shechem unto his mother's brethren, and spake with them, and with all the family of the house of his mother's father, saying,
- 2 Speak, I pray you, in the ears of all the men of Shechem, Whether is better for you, that all the sons of Jerubbaal, who are threescore and ten persons, rule over you, or that one rule over you? remember also that I am your bone and your flesh.
- 3 And his mother's brethren spake of him in the ears of all the men of Shechem all these words: and their hearts inclined to follow Abimelech; for they said, He is our brother.
- 4 And they gave him threescore and ten *pieces* of silver out of the house of Baal-berith, wherewith Abimelech hired vain and light fellows, who followed him.
- 5 And he went unto his father's house at Ophrah, and slew his brethren the sons of Jerubbaal, being threescore and ten persons, upon one stone: but Jotham the youngest son of Jerubbaal was left; for he hid himself.
- 6 And all the men of Shechem assembled themselves together, and all *{1}* the house of Millo, and went and made Abimelech king, by the *{2}* oak of the *{3}* pillar that was in Shechem. *{1} Or Beth-millo 2) Or terebinth 3) Or garrison}*
- 7 ¶ And when they told it to Jotham, he went and stood on the top of mount Gerizim, and lifted up his voice, and cried, and said unto them, Hearken unto me, ye men of Shechem, that God may hearken unto you.
- 8 The trees went forth on a time to anoint a king over them; and they said unto the olive-tree, Reign thou over us.
- 9 But the olive-tree said unto them, Should I leave my fatness, *{1}* wherewith by me they honor God and man, and go to wave to and fro over the trees? *{1} Or which God and man honor in me}*
- 10 And the trees said to the fig-tree, Come thou, and reign over us.
- 11 But the fig-tree said unto them, Should I leave my sweetness, and my good fruit, and go to wave to and fro over the trees?
- 12 And the trees said unto the vine, Come thou, and reign over us.

- 13 And the vine said unto them, Should I leave my new wine, which cheereth God and man, and go to wave to and fro over the trees?
- 14 Then said all the trees unto the {1} bramble, Come thou, and reign over us. {1} Or thorn}
- 15 And the {1} bramble said unto the trees, If in truth ye anoint me king over you, then come and take refuge in my shade; and if not, let fire come out of the {1} bramble, and devour the cedars of Lebanon. {1} Or thorn}
- 16 Now therefore, if ye have dealt truly and uprightly, in that ye have made Abimelech king, and if ye have dealt well with Jerubbaal and his house, and have done unto him according to the deserving of his hands
- 17 (for my father fought for you, and {1} adventured his life, and delivered you out of the hand of Midian: {1} Heb cast his life before him}
- 18 and ye are risen up against my father's house this day, and have slain his sons, threescore and ten persons, upon one stone, and have made Abimelech, the son of his maid-servant, king over the men of Shechem, because he is your brother);
- 19 if ye then have dealt truly and uprightly with Jerubbaal and with his house this day, then rejoice ye in Abimelech, and let him also rejoice in you:
- 20 but if not, let fire come out from Abimelech, and devour the men of Shechem, and the house of Millo; and let fire come out from the men of Shechem, and from the house of Millo, and devour Abimelech.
- 21 And Jotham ran away, and fled, and went to Beer, and dwelt there, for fear of Abimelech his brother.
- 22 ¶ And Abimelech was prince over Israel three years.
- 23 And God sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and the men of Shechem; and the men of Shechem dealt treacherously with Abimelech:
- 24 that the violence done to the threescore and ten sons of Jerubbaal might come, and that their blood might be laid upon Abimelech their brother, who slew them, and upon the men of Shechem, who strengthened his hands to slay his brethren.
- 25 And the men of Shechem set liers-in-wait for him on the tops of the mountains, and they robbed all that came along that way by them: and it was told Abimelech.
- 26 And Gaal the son of Ebed came with his brethren, and went over to Shechem; and the men of Shechem put their trust in him.
- 27 And they went out into the field, and gathered their vineyards, and trod *the grapes*, and {1} held festival, and went into the house of their god, and did eat and drink, and cursed Abimelech. {1} Or offered a praise-offering}
- 28 And Gaal the son of Ebed said, Who is Abimelech, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him? is not he the son of Jerubbaal? and Zebul his officer? serve ye the men of Hamor the father of Shechem: but why should we serve him?
- 29 And would that this people were under my hand! then would I remove Abimelech. And he said {1} to Abimelech, Increase thine army, and come out. {1} Or of}
- 30 And when Zebul the ruler of the city heard the words of Gaal the son of Ebed, his anger was kindled.
- 31 And he sent messengers unto Abimelech {1} craftily, saying, Behold, Gaal the son of Ebed and his brethren are come to Shechem; and, behold, they {2} constrain the city to take part against thee. {1} Or in Tormah 2) Or oppress the city on thy account}
- 32 Now therefore, up by night, thou and the people that are with thee, and lie in wait in the field:
- 33 and it shall be, that in the morning, as soon as the sun is up, thou shalt rise early, and rush upon the city; and, behold, when he and the people that are with him come out against thee, then mayest thou do to them {1} as thou shalt find occasion. {1} Heb as thy hand shall find}
- 34 And Abimelech rose up, and all the people that were with him, by night, and they laid wait against Shechem in four companies.
- 35 And Gaal the son of Ebed went out, and stood in the entrance of the gate of the city: and Abimelech rose up, and the people that were with him, from the ambushment.
- 36 And when Gaal saw the people, he said to Zebul, Behold, there come people down from the tops of the mountains. And Zebul said unto him, Thou seest the shadow of the mountains as if they were men.
- 37 And Gaal spake again and said, See, there come people down by the {1} middle of the land, and one company cometh by the way of {2} the oak of Meonenim. {1} Heb navel 2) That is *the augurs' oak* (or *terebinth*)}
- 38 Then said Zebul unto him, Where is now thy mouth, that thou saidst, Who is Abimelech, that we should serve him? is not this the people that thou hast despised? go out now, I pray, and fight with them.
- 39 And Gaal went out before the men of Shechem, and fought with Abimelech.
- 40 And Abimelech chased him, and he fled before him, and there fell many wounded, even unto the entrance of the gate.
- 41 And Abimelech dwelt at Arumah: and Zebul drove out Gaal and his brethren, that they should not dwell in Shechem.
- 42 And it came to pass on the morrow, that the people went out into the field; and they told Abimelech.

- 43 And he took the people, and divided them into three companies, and laid wait in the field; and he looked, and, behold, the people came forth out of the city; And he rose up against them, and smote them.
- 44 And Abimelech, and the companies that were with him, rushed forward, and stood in the entrance of the gate of the city: and the two companies rushed upon all that were in the field, and smote them.
- 45 And Abimelech fought against the city all that day; and he took the city, and slew the people that were therein: and he beat down the city, and sowed it with salt.
- 46 And when all the men of the tower of Shechem heard thereof, they entered into the stronghold of the house of El-berith.
- 47 And it was told Abimelech that all the men of the tower of Shechem were gathered together.
- 48 And Abimelech gat him up to mount Zalmon, he and all the people that were with him; and Abimelech took *{1}* an axe in his hand, and cut down a bough from the trees, and took it up, and laid it on his shoulder: and he said unto the people that were with him, What ye have seen me do, make haste, and do as I have done. *{1}* *Heb the axes*
- 49 And all the people likewise cut down every man his bough, and followed Abimelech, and put them to the stronghold, and set the stronghold on fire upon them; so that all the men of the tower of Shechem died also, about a thousand men and women.
- 50 ¶ Then went Abimelech to Thebez, and encamped against Thebez, and took it.
- 51 But there was a strong tower within the city, and thither fled all the men and women, and all they of the city, and shut themselves in, and gat them up to the roof of the tower.
- 52 And Abimelech came unto the tower, and fought against it, and drew near unto the door of the tower to burn it with fire.
- 53 And a certain woman cast an upper millstone upon Abimelech's head, and brake his skull.
- 54 Then he called hastily unto the young man his armorbearer, and said unto him, Draw thy sword, and kill me, that men say not of me, A woman slew him. And his young man thrust him through, and he died.
- 55 And when the men of Israel saw that Abimelech was dead, they departed every man unto his place.
- 56 Thus God requited the wickedness of Abimelech, which he did unto his father, in slaying his seventy brethren;
- 57 and all the wickedness of the men of Shechem did God requite upon their heads: and upon them came the curse of Jotham the son of Jerubbaal.

## F- The usurpation Of Abimelech.

(8:33.-10:5.)

- 1- Relapse. Went after Baalim. vs 33-35
- 2- Ruin by Gideons son Abimelech.
  - Illegitimate son with a harlot from Shechem.
  - Principle: Spiritual incapacity is the inheritance of disobedience.
  - a- Abimelech made king at Shechem. vs 9:6  
Note his campaign funds - 40 pieces of silver out of the house of Baal. vs. 9:4.
  - b- Jotham's Fable. (actually an allegory since it contains its own interpretation.)  
Made from the top of Mt. Gerizim. vs. 8-15
  - c- The rebellion and the death of Abimelech. vs. 22-57  
Note Abimelech crowned as king in vs. 53

Because of length of text, Ch. 10 & 11 are backed up.

## Judges 10

- 1 ¶ And after Abimelech there arose to save Israel Tola the son of Puah, the son of Dodo, a man of Issachar; and he dwelt in Shamir in the hill-country of Ephraim.
- 2 And he judged Israel twenty and three years, and died, and was buried in Shamir.
- 3 And after him arose Jair, the Gileadite; and he judged Israel twenty and two years.
- 4 And he had thirty sons that rode on thirty ass colts, and they had thirty cities, which are called *{1}* Havvoth-jair unto this day, which are in the land of Gilead. *{1}* *That is The towns of Jair*
- 5 And Jair died, and was buried in Kamon.
- 6 ¶ And the children of Israel again did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and served the Baalim, and the Ashtaroth, and the gods of *{1}* Syria, and the gods of Sidon, and the gods of Moab, and the gods of the children of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines; and they forsook Jehovah, and served him not. *{1}* *Heb Aram*

- 7 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel, and he sold them into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the children of Ammon.
- 8 And they vexed and oppressed the children of Israel that year: eighteen years *oppressed they* all the children of Israel that were beyond the Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which is in Gilead.
- 9 And the children of Ammon passed over the Jordan to fight also against Judah, and against Benjamin, and against the house of Ephraim; so that Israel was sore distressed.
- 10 ¶ And the children of Israel cried unto Jehovah, saying, We have sinned against thee, even because we have forsaken our God, and have served the Baalim.
- 11 And Jehovah said unto the children of Israel, *Did not I save you* from the Egyptians, and from the Amorites, from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines?
- 12 The Sidonians also, and the Amalekites, and the Maonites, did oppress you; and ye cried unto me, and I saved you out of their hand.
- 13 Yet ye have forsaken me, and served other gods: wherefore I will save you no more.
- 14 Go and cry unto the gods which ye have chosen; let them save you in the time of your distress.
- 15 And the children of Israel said unto Jehovah, We have sinned: do thou unto us whatsoever seemeth good unto thee; only deliver us, we pray thee, this day.
- 16 And they put away the foreign gods from among them, and served Jehovah; and his soul was grieved for the misery of Israel.
- 17 Then the children of Ammon were gathered together, and encamped in Gilead. And the children of Israel assembled themselves together, and encamped in Mizpah.
- 18 And the people, the princes of Gilead, said one to another, What man is he that will begin to fight against the children of Ammon? he shall be head over all the inhabitants of Gilead.

## Judges 11

- 1 ¶ Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty man of valor, and he was the son of a harlot: and Gilead begat Jephthah.
- 2 And Gilead's wife bare him sons; and when his wife's sons grew up, they drove out Jephthah, and said unto him, Thou shalt not inherit in our father's house; for thou art the son of another woman.
- 3 Then Jephthah fled from his brethren, and dwelt in the land of Tob: and there were gathered vain fellows to Jephthah, and they went out with him.
- 4 ¶ And it came to pass after a while, that the children of Ammon made war against Israel.
- 5 And it was so, that, when the children of Ammon made war against Israel, the elders of Gilead went to fetch Jephthah out of the land of Tob;
- 6 and they said unto Jephthah, Come and be our chief, that we may fight with the children of Ammon.
- 7 And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead, Did not ye hate me, and drive me out of my father's house? and why are ye come unto me now when ye are in distress?
- 8 And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah, Therefore are we turned again to thee now, that thou mayest go with us, and fight with the children of Ammon; and thou shalt be our head over all the inhabitants of Gilead.
- 9 And Jephthah said unto the elders of Gilead, If ye bring me home again to fight with the children of Ammon, and Jehovah deliver them before me, shall I be your head?
- 10 And the elders of Gilead said unto Jephthah, Jehovah shall be *{I}* witness between us; surely according to thy word so will we do. *{1} Heb hearer}*
- 11 Then Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people made him head and chief over them: and Jephthah spake all his words before Jehovah in Mizpah.
- 12 ¶ And Jephthah sent messengers unto the king of the children of Ammon, saying, What hast thou to do with me, that thou art come unto me to fight against my land?
- 13 And the king of the children of Ammon answered unto the messengers of Jephthah, Because Israel took away my land, when he came up out of Egypt, from the Arnon even unto the Jabbok, and unto the Jordan: now therefore restore those *lands* again peaceably.
- 14 And Jephthah sent messengers again unto the king of the children of Ammon;
- 15 and he said unto him, Thus saith Jephthah: Israel took not away the land of Moab, nor the land of the children of Ammon, but when they came up from Egypt, and Israel went through the wilderness unto the Red Sea, and came to Kadesh;
- 16 then Israel sent messengers unto the king of Edom, saying, Let me, I pray thee, pass through thy land; but the king of Edom hearkened not. And in like manner he sent unto the king of Moab; but he would not: and Israel abode in Kadesh.
- 17 Then they went through the wilderness, and went around the land of Edom, and the land of Moab, and came by the east side of the land of Moab, and they encamped on the other side of the Arnon; but they came not within the border of Moab, for the Arnon was the border of Moab.
- 18 And Israel sent messengers unto Sihon king of the Amorites, the king of Heshbon; and Israel said unto him, Let us pass, we pray thee, through thy land unto my place.
- 19 But Sihon trusted not Israel to pass through his border; but Sihon gathered all his people together, and encamped in Jahaz, and fought against Israel.
- 20 And Jehovah, the God of Israel, delivered Sihon and all his people into the hand of Israel, and they smote them: so Israel possessed all the land of the Amorites, the inhabitants of that country.
- 21 And they possessed all the border of the Amorites, from the Arnon even unto the Jabbok, and from the wilderness even unto the Jordan.
- 22 So now Jehovah, the God of Israel, hath dispossessed the Amorites from before his people Israel, and shouldst thou possess them?



- 24 Wilt not thou possess that which Chemosh thy god giveth thee to possess? So whomsoever Jehovah our God hath dispossessed from before us, them will we possess.
- 25 And now art thou anything better than Balak the son of Zippor, king of Moab? did he ever strive against Israel, or did he ever fight against them?
- 26 While Israel dwelt in Heshbon and its {1} towns, and in Aroer and its {1} towns, and in all the cities that are along by the side of the Arnon, three hundred years; wherefore did ye not recover them within that time? {1} Heb daughters}
- 27 I therefore have not sinned against thee, but thou doest me wrong to war against me: Jehovah, the Judge, be judge this day between the children of Israel and the children of Ammon.
- 28 Howbeit the king of the children of Ammon hearkened not unto the words of Jephthah which he sent him.
- 29 ¶ Then the Spirit of Jehovah came upon Jephthah, and he passed over Gilead and Manasseh, and passed over Mizpeh of Gilead, and from Mizpeh of Gilead he passed over unto the children of Ammon.
- 30 And Jephthah vowed a vow unto Jehovah, and said, If thou wilt indeed deliver the children of Ammon into my hand,
- 31 then it shall be, that {1} whatsoever cometh forth from the doors of my house to meet me, when I return in peace from the children of Ammon, it shall be Jehovah's, and I will offer it up for a burnt-offering. {1} Or whosoever}
- 32 So Jephthah passed over unto the children of Ammon to fight against them; and Jehovah delivered them into his hand.
- 33 And he smote them from Aroer until thou come to Minnith, even twenty cities, and unto {1} Abel-cheramim, with a very great slaughter. So the children of Ammon were subdued before the children of Israel. {1} That is The meadow of vineyards}
- 34 And Jephthah came to Mizpah unto his house; and, behold, his daughter came out to meet him with timbrels and with dances: and she was his only child; besides her he had neither son nor daughter.
- 35 And it came to pass, when he saw her, that he rent his clothes, and said, Alas, my daughter! thou hast brought me very low, and thou art one of them that trouble me; for I have opened my mouth unto Jehovah, and I cannot go back.
- 36 And she said unto him, My father, thou hast opened thy mouth unto Jehovah; do unto me according to that which hath proceeded out of thy mouth, forasmuch as Jehovah hath taken vengeance for thee on thine enemies, even on the children of Ammon.
- 37 And she said unto her father, Let this thing be done for me: let me alone two months, that I may depart and go down upon the mountains, and bewail my virginity, I and my companions.
- 38 And he said, Go. And he sent her away for two months: and she departed, she and her companions, and bewailed her virginity upon the mountains.
- 39 And it came to pass at the end of two months, that she returned unto her father, who did with her according to his vow which he had vowed: and she knew not man. And it was {1} a custom in Israel, {1} Or an ordinance}
- 40 that the daughters of Israel went yearly to {1} celebrate the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite four days in a year. {1} Or lament}

3- Restoration. Note the judgeships of Tola 23 years over Ephraim and Jair 22 years over Gilead. vs. 10:1-5

4- Rest. 45 years.

### G- Servitude to Philistines and Ammonites. (10:6.-12:7.)

- 1- Relapse. Worshipped all the gods- Baa'im, Ashtaroth and the gods of Syria, Sidon, Moab, Ammon, and the Phillistines... vs. 6
- 2- Ruin. Judah, Benjamin and Ephraim oppressed. vs. 10
- 3- Repentance. vs. 11
  - a- The Lord's refusal. "Cry unto the gods you have chosen." vs. 14
  - b- The search for a leader. vs. 18
- 4- Restoration.
  - a- Jephthah (a half-Canaanite) appointed. vs. 11:1-11
  - b- Jephthahs' argument with Ammon. vs. 12-28
    - 1) Jephthah is going to attack Ammon because they claim Gilead for themselves.
    - 2) God gave Gilead to Israel. vs. 21-23
    - 3) The Ammonites claim squatters' rights. vs.26  
We've been here 300 years since you folks came into the land. Why did you not dispossess us sooner? **This is a good confirmation of the Early exodus!**
  - c- Jephthahs' tragic vow. vs. 30-31
- 5- Rest. ??? Jephthah judged 6 years and he died, vs. 12:7

**Judges 12**

- 1 ¶ And the men of Ephraim were gathered together, and passed *{1}* northward; and they said unto Jephthah, Wherefore passedst thou over to fight against the children of Ammon, and didst not call us to go with thee? we will burn thy house upon thee with fire. *{1}* *Or to Zaphon*
- 2 And Jephthah said unto them, I and my people were at great strife with the children of Ammon; and when I called you, ye saved me not out of their hand.
- 3 And when I saw that ye saved me not, I put my life in my hand, and passed over against the children of Ammon, and Jehovah delivered them into my hand: wherefore then are ye come up unto me this day, to fight against me?
- 4 Then Jephthah gathered together all the men of Gilead, and fought with Ephraim; and the men of Gilead smote Ephraim, because they said, Ye are fugitives of Ephraim, ye Gileadites, in the midst of Ephraim, *and* in the midst of Manasseh.
- 5 And the Gileadites took the fords of the Jordan *{1}* against the Ephraimites. And it was so, that, when *any of* the fugitives of Ephraim said, Let me go over, the men of Gilead said unto him, Art thou an Ephraimite? If he said, Nay; *{1}* *Or toward Ephraim*
- 6 then said they unto him, Say now Shibboleth; and he said Sibboleth; for he could not frame to pronounce it right: then they laid hold on him, and slew him at the fords of the Jordan. And there fell at that time of Ephraim forty and two thousand.
- 7 And Jephthah judged Israel six years. Then died Jephthah the Gileadite, and was buried in *one of* the cities of Gilead.
- 8 ¶ And after him Ibzan of Beth-lehem judged Israel.
- 9 And he had thirty sons; and thirty daughters he sent abroad, and thirty daughters he brought in from abroad for his sons. And he judged Israel seven years.
- 10 And Ibzan died, and was buried at Beth-lehem.
- 11 And after him Elon the Zebulunite judged Israel; and he judged Israel ten years.
- 12 And Elon the Zebulunite died, and was buried in Aijalon in the land of Zebulun.
- 13 And after him Abdon the son of Hillel the Pirathonite judged Israel.
- 14 And he had forty sons and thirty sons' sons, that rode on threescore and ten ass colts: and he judged Israel eight years.
- 15 And Abdon the son of Hillel the Pirathonite died, and was buried in Pirathon in the land of Ephraim, in the hill-country of the Amalekites.

## H- Civil war between Gilead and Ephraim. (12:1-7)

1- Ephraim's jealousy at Jephthah.

2- Jephthah defeats Ephraim.

a- Note the dispute with Ephraim

vs. 12:1-6

Note the language problem with Ephraim at the Jordan. This is where the שִׁבְלֵת

shiboleth vs שִׁבְלֵת sibboleth saying comes from.

b- 42,000 Ephraimites are slain trying to cross the Jordan.

vs. 6

## I- Peaceful Judgeships. (12:8-15)

1- Ebzan of Bethlehem--7 years.

2- Elon of Zebulun--10 years.

3- Abdon of Ephraim--8 years.

**Judges 13**

- 1 ¶ And the children of Israel again did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah; and Jehovah delivered them into the hand of the Philistines forty years.
- 2 And there was a certain man of Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah; and his wife was barren, and bare not.
- 3 And the angel of Jehovah appeared unto the woman, and said unto her, Behold now, thou art barren, and bearest not; but thou shalt conceive, and bear a son.
- 4 Now therefore beware, I pray thee, and drink no wine nor strong drink, and eat not any unclean thing:
- 5 for, lo, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and no razor shall come upon his head; for the child shall be a Nazirite unto God from the womb: and he shall begin to save Israel out of the hand of the Philistines.
- 6 Then the woman came and told her husband, saying, A man of God came unto me, and his countenance was like the countenance of the angel of God, very terrible; and I asked him not whence he was, neither told he me his name:
- 7 but he said unto me, Behold, thou shalt conceive, and bear a son; and now drink no wine nor strong drink, and eat not any unclean thing; for the child shall be a Nazirite unto God from the womb to the day of his death.
- 8 ¶ Then Manoah entreated Jehovah, and said, Oh, Lord, I pray thee, let the man of God whom thou didst send come again unto us, and teach us what we shall do unto the child that shall be born.
- 9 And God hearkened to the voice of Manoah; and the angel of God came again unto the woman as she sat in the field: but Manoah her husband was not with her.
- 10 And the woman made haste, and ran, and told her husband, and said unto him, Behold, the man hath appeared unto me, that came unto me the *other* day.
- 11 And Manoah arose, and went after his wife, and came to the man, and said unto him, Art thou the man that spakest unto the woman? And he said, I am.
- 12 And Manoah said, *{1}* Now let thy words come to pass: what shall be the ordering of the child, and *how* shall we do unto him? *{1}* Or *Now when thy words come to pass, what etc*
- 13 And the angel of Jehovah said unto Manoah, Of all that I said unto the woman let her beware.
- 14 She may not eat of anything that cometh of the *{1}* vine, neither let her drink wine or strong drink, nor eat any unclean thing; all that I commanded her let her observe. *{1}* Or *grape-vine*
- 15 ¶ And Manoah said unto the angel of Jehovah, I pray thee, let us detain thee, that we may make ready a kid for thee.
- 16 And the angel of Jehovah said unto Manoah, Though thou detain me, I will not eat of thy bread; and if thou wilt make ready a burnt-offering, thou must offer it unto Jehovah. For Manoah knew not that he was the angel of Jehovah.
- 17 And Manoah said unto the angel of Jehovah, What is thy name, that, when thy words come to pass, we may do thee honor?
- 18 And the angel of Jehovah said unto him, Wherefore askest thou after my name, seeing it is *{1}* wonderful? *{1}* Or *secret*
- 19 So Manoah took the kid with the meal-offering, and offered it upon the rock unto Jehovah: and *the* angel did wondrously, and Manoah and his wife looked on.
- 20 For it came to pass, when the flame went up toward heaven from off the altar, that the angel of Jehovah ascended in the flame of the altar: and Manoah and his wife looked on; and they fell on their faces to the ground.
- 21 But the angel of Jehovah did no more appear to Manoah or to his wife. Then Manoah knew that he was the angel of Jehovah.
- 22 And Manoah said unto his wife, We shall surely die, because we have seen God.
- 23 But his wife said unto him, If Jehovah were pleased to kill us, he would not have received a burnt-offering and a meal-offering at our hand, neither would he have showed us all these things, nor would at this time have told such things as these.
- 24 ¶ And the woman bare a son, and called his name *{1}* Samson: and the child grew, and Jehovah blessed him. *{1}* Heb *Shimshon*
- 25 And the Spirit of Jehovah began to move him in *{1}* Mahaneh-dan, between Zorah and Eshtaol. *{1}* *That is The camp of Dan*

J- Servitude to the Philistines. (13.-16.)

- 1- Relapse. vs 13:1
- 2- Ruin. 40 years oppression. vs. 1
- 3- Repentance.
- 4- Restoration. Not a true restoration.
  - a- The birth of Samson.
    - 1) His tribe. His father Manoah of Dan. vs. 2
    - 2) His unusual birth Angel of the LORD went first to mother; vs. 2; then to Manoah; vs.9; and then ascended in a flame of fire; vs. 20; the name given by (the) Angel of the LORD, was "Wonderful". vs. 18
    - 3) His special gift - a Nazarite from birth. vs. 5 and vs. 24

**Judges 14**

- 1 ¶ And Samson went down to Timnah, and saw a woman in Timnah of the daughters of the Philistines.
- 2 And he came up, and told his father and his mother, and said, I have seen a woman in Timnah of the daughters of the Philistines: now therefore get her for me to wife.
- 3 Then his father and his mother said unto him, Is there never a woman among the daughters of thy brethren, or among all my people, that thou goest to take a wife of the uncircumcised Philistines? And Samson said unto his father, Get her for me; for she pleaseth me well.
- 4 But his father and his mother knew not that it was of Jehovah; for he sought an occasion against the Philistines. Now at that time the Philistines had rule over Israel.
- 5 Then went Samson down, and his father and his mother, to Timnah, and came to the vineyards of Timnah: and, behold, a young lion roared against him.
- 6 And the Spirit of Jehovah came mightily upon him, and he rent him as he would have rent a kid; and he had nothing in his hand: but he told not his father or his mother what he had done.
- 7 And he went down, and talked with the woman, and she pleased Samson well.
- 8 And after a while he returned to take her; and he turned aside to see the carcass of the lion: and, behold, there was a swarm of bees in the body of the lion, and honey.
- 9 And he took it into his hands, and went on, eating as he went; and he came to his father and mother, and gave unto them, and they did eat: but he told them not that he had taken the honey out of the body of the lion.
- 10 ¶ And his father went down unto the woman: and Samson made there a feast; for so used the young men to do.
- 11 And it came to pass, when they saw him, that they brought thirty companions to be with him.
- 12 And Samson said unto them, Let me now put forth a riddle unto you: if ye can declare it unto me within the seven days of the feast, and find it out, then I will give you thirty linen garments and thirty changes of raiment;
- 13 but if ye cannot declare it unto me, then shall ye give me thirty linen garments and thirty changes of raiment. And they said unto him, Put forth thy riddle, that we may hear it.
- 14 And he said unto them, Out of the eater came forth food, And out of the strong came forth sweetness. And they could not in three days declare the riddle.
- 15 And it came to pass on the seventh day, that they said unto Samson's wife, Entice thy husband, that he may declare unto us the riddle, lest we burn thee and thy father's house with fire: have ye called us to *{1}* impoverish us? is it not *so*? *{1}* Or take that which we have
- 16 And Samson's wife wept before him, and said, Thou dost but hate me, and lovest me not: thou hast put forth a riddle unto the children of my people, and hast not told it me. And he said unto her, Behold, I have not told it my father nor my mother, and shall I tell thee?
- 17 And she wept before him the seven days, while their feast lasted: and it came to pass on the seventh day, that he told her, because she pressed him sore; and she told the riddle to the children of her people.
- 18 And the men of the city said unto him on the seventh day before the sun went down, What is sweeter than honey? and what is stronger than a lion? And he said unto them, If ye had not plowed with my heifer, Ye had not found out my riddle.
- 19 And the Spirit of Jehovah came mightily upon him, and he went down to Ashkelon, and smote thirty men of them, and took their *{1}* spoil, and gave the changes *of raiment* unto them that declared the riddle. And his anger was kindled, and he went up to his father's house. *{1}* Or *apparel*
- 20 But Samson's wife was *given* to his companion, whom he had used as his friend.

**Judges 15**

- 1 ¶ But it came to pass after a while, in the time of wheat harvest, that Samson visited his wife with a kid; and he said, I will go in to my wife into the chamber. But her father would not suffer him to go in.
- 2 And her father said, I verily thought that thou hadst utterly hated her; therefore I gave her to thy companion: is not her younger sister fairer than she? take her, I pray thee, instead of her.
- 3 And Samson said unto them, This time *{1}* shall I be blameless in regard of the Philistines, when I do them a mischief. *{1}* Or shall I be quits with

- 4 And Samson went and caught three hundred {1} foxes, and took {2} firebrands, and turned tail to tail, and put a firebrand in the midst between every two tails. {1} Or jackals 2) Or torches}
- 5 And when he had set the brands on fire, he let them go into the standing grain of the Philistines, and burnt up both the shocks and the standing grain, and also the oliveyards.
- 6 Then the Philistines said, Who hath done this? And they said, Samson, the son-in-law of the Timnite, because he hath taken his wife, and given her to his companion. And the Philistines came up, and burnt her and her father with fire.
- 7 And Samson said unto them, If ye do after this manner, surely I will be avenged of you, and after that I will cease.
- 8 And he smote them hip and thigh with a great slaughter: and he went down and dwelt in the cleft of the rock of Etam.
- 9 ¶ Then the Philistines went up, and encamped in Judah, and spread themselves in Lehi.
- 10 And the men of Judah said, Why are ye come up against us? And they said, To bind Samson are we come up, to do to him as he hath done to us.
- 11 Then three thousand men of Judah went down to the cleft of the rock of Etam, and said to Samson, Knowest thou not that the Philistines are rulers over us? what then is this that thou hast done unto us? And he said unto them, As they did unto me, so have I done unto them.
- 12 And they said unto him, We are come down to bind thee, that we may deliver thee into the hand of the Philistines. And Samson said unto them, Swear unto me, that ye will not fall upon me yourselves.
- 13 And they spake unto him, saying, No; but we will bind thee fast, and deliver thee into their hand: but surely we will not kill thee. And they bound him with two new ropes, and brought him up from the rock.
- 14 When he came unto Lehi, the Philistines shouted as they met him: and the Spirit of Jehovah came mightily upon him, and the ropes that were upon his arms became as flax that was burnt with fire, and his bands {1} dropped from off his hands. {1} Heb were melted}
- 15 And he found a fresh jawbone of an ass, and put forth his hand, and took it, and smote a thousand men therewith.
- 16 And Samson said, With the jawbone of an ass, {1} heaps upon heaps, With the jawbone of an ass have I smitten a thousand men. {1} Heb heap, two heaps}
- 17 And it came to pass, when he had made an end of speaking, that he cast away the jawbone out of his hand; and {1} that place was called {2} Ramath-lehi. {1} Or he called that place 2) That is The hill of the jawbone}
- 18 ¶ And he was sore athirst, and called on Jehovah, and said, Thou hast given this great deliverance by the hand of thy servant; and now shall I die for thirst, and fall into the hand of the uncircumcised.
- 19 But God clave the hollow place that is in {1} Lehi, and there came water thereout; and when he had drunk, his spirit came again, and he revived: wherefore {2} the name thereof was called {3} En-hakkore, which is in Lehi, unto this day. {1} Or the jawbone 2) Or he called the name thereof 3) That is The spring of him that called }
- 20 And he judged Israel in the days of the Philistines twenty years.

- 
- b- The marriage of Sampson. a “mixed” marriage vs.3 vs. 14:1-11
- c- The exploits of Sampson. Ordinary except when energized by the H.S. vs. 12-15:20
- 1) Sampson’s riddle and slaughter. 30 men of Ashkelon. vs. 5-19  
His wife was then given to his ‘companion’.
- 2) Sampson’s fire-branded fox-tails. He sets fire to the Phillistines crops. They respond by burning his wife and father-in-law. vs. 15:1-8  
And Sampson slew them ‘Hip and thigh’.
- 3) He then slays 1,000 men with the jawbone of an ass. vs. 9-19  
**“God can do great and amazing things with anyone He Choses.”**

**Judges 16**

- 1 ¶ And Samson went to Gaza, and saw there a harlot, and went in unto her.
- 2 *And it was told* the Gazites, saying, Samson is come hither. And they compassed him in, and laid wait for him all night in the gate of the city, and were quiet all the night, saying, *{1}* *Let be* till morning light, then we will kill him. *{1}* *Or When (or Before) the morning is light}*
- 3 And Samson lay till midnight, and arose at midnight, and laid hold of the doors of the gate of the city, and the two posts, and plucked them up, bar and all, and put them upon his shoulders, and carried them up to the top of the mountain that is before Hebron.
- 4 ¶ And it came to pass afterward, that he loved a woman *{1}* in the valley of Sorek, whose name was Delilah. *{1}* *Or by the brook}*
- 5 And the lords of the Philistines came up unto her, and said unto her, Entice him, and see wherein his great strength lieth, and by what means we may prevail against him, that we may bind him to *{1}* afflict him: and we will give thee every one of us eleven hundred *pieces* of silver. *{1}* *Or humble}*
- 6 And Delilah said to Samson, Tell me, I pray thee, wherein thy great strength lieth, and wherewith thou mightest be bound to afflict thee.
- 7 And Samson said unto her, If they bind me with seven *{1}* green withes that were never dried, then shall I become weak, and be as another man. *{1}* *Or new bowstrings}*
- 8 Then the lords of the Philistines brought up to her seven green withes which had not been dried, and she bound him with them.
- 9 Now she had liers-in-wait abiding in the inner chamber. And she said unto him, The Philistines are upon thee, Samson. And he brake the withes, as a string of tow is broken when it *{1}* toucheth the fire. So his strength was not known. *{1}* *Heb smelleth}*
- 10 And Delilah said unto Samson, Behold, thou hast mocked me, and told me lies: now tell me, I pray thee, wherewith thou mightest be bound.
- 11 And he said unto her, If they only bind me with new ropes wherewith no work hath been done, then shall I become weak, and be as another man.
- 12 So Delilah took new ropes, and bound him therewith, and said unto him, The Philistines are upon thee, Samson. And the liers-in-wait were abiding in the inner chamber. And he brake them off his arms like a thread.
- 13 And Delilah said unto Samson, Hitherto thou hast mocked me, and told me lies: tell me wherewith thou mightest be bound. And he said unto her, If thou weavest the seven locks of my head with the web.
- 14 And she fastened it with the pin, and said unto him, The Philistines are upon thee, Samson. And he awaked out of his sleep, and plucked away the pin of the beam, and the web.
- 15 And she said unto him, How canst thou say, I love thee, when thy heart is not with me? thou hast mocked me these three times, and hast not told me wherein thy great strength lieth.
- 16 And it came to pass, when she pressed him daily with her words, and urged him, that his soul was vexed unto death.
- 17 And he told her all his heart, and said unto her, There hath not come a razor upon my head; for I have been a Nazirite unto God from my mother's womb: if I be shaven, then my strength will go from me, and I shall become weak, and be like any other man.
- 18 ¶ And when Delilah saw that he had told her all his heart, she sent and called for the lords of the Philistines, saying, Come up this once, for *{1}* he hath told me all his heart. Then the lords of the Philistines came up unto her, and brought the money in their hand. *{1}* *Or according to another reading he had told her}*
- 19 And she made him sleep upon her knees; and she called for *{1}* a man, and shaved off the seven locks of his head; and she began to afflict him, and his strength went from him. *{1}* *Or the men}*
- 20 And she said, The Philistines are upon thee, Samson. And he awoke out of his sleep, and said, I will go out as at other times, and shake myself free. But he knew not that Jehovah was departed from him.
- 21 And the Philistines laid hold on him, and put out his eyes; and they brought him down to Gaza, and bound him with fetters of brass; and he did grind in the prison-house.



- 22 ¶ Howbeit the hair of his head began to grow again after he was shaven.
- 23 And the lords of the Philistines gathered them together to offer a great sacrifice unto Dagon their god, and to rejoice; for they said, Our god hath delivered Samson our enemy into our hand.
- 24 And when the people saw him, they praised their god; for they said, Our god hath delivered into our hand our enemy, and the destroyer of our country, who hath slain many of us.
- 25 And it came to pass, when their hearts were merry, that they said, Call for Samson, that he may make us sport. And they called for Samson out of the prison-house; and he made sport before them. And they set him between the pillars:
- 26 and Samson said unto the lad that held him by the hand, Suffer me that I may feel the pillars whereupon the house resteth, that I may lean upon them.
- 27 Now the house was full of men and women; and all the lords of the Philistines were there; and there were upon the roof about three thousand men and women, that beheld while Samson made sport.
- 28 And Samson called unto Jehovah, and said, O Lord Jehovah, remember me, I pray thee, and strengthen me, I pray thee, only this once, O God, that I may *{1}* be at once avenged of the Philistines for my two eyes. *{1} Or be avenged...for one of my two eyes}*
- 29 And Samson took hold of the two middle pillars upon which the house rested, and leaned upon them, the one with his right hand, and the other with his left.
- 30 And Samson said, Let me die with the Philistines. And he bowed himself with all his might; and the house fell upon the lords, and upon all the people that were therein. So the dead that he slew at his death were more than they that he slew in his life.
- 31 Then his brethren and all the house of his father came down, and took him, and brought him up, and buried him between Zorah and Eshtaol in the burying-place of Manoah his father. And he judged Israel twenty years.

d- The romance and defeat of Sampson. (16.)

- 1) His immoral conduct.
- 2) The deceit of Delilah. He is so enamored with her his sense leaves him.

vs. 17:2-22

She finds out his secret of his power and cons him into a 'haircut'. Sampson is put into prison and his eyes are blinded.

- 3) The death of Sampson in the temple of Dagon (the fish god). vs. 31
- 4) Sampson Judged for twenty years but he alone was unable to deliver.

##### **5- Principles taught.**

- a- **Strength or gifts are futile without morals. Ref. Prv 6:20.**
- b- **Gifts alone are not enough for spiritual results.**
- c- **Victory begins by first conquering one's personal 'devils'.**

**Judges 17**

- 1 ¶ And there was a man of the hill-country of Ephraim, whose name was Micah.
- 2 And he said unto his mother, The eleven hundred *pieces* of silver that were taken from thee, about which thou didst utter {1} a curse, and didst also speak it in mine ears, behold, the silver is with me; I took it. And his mother said, Blessed be my son of Jehovah. {1} Or an adjuration}
- 3 And he restored the eleven hundred *pieces* of silver to his mother; and his mother said, I verily {1} dedicate the silver unto Jehovah from my hand for my son, to make a graven image and a molten image: now therefore I will restore it unto thee. {1} Or had dedicated}
- 4 And when he restored the money unto his mother, his mother took two hundred *pieces* of silver, and gave them to the founder, who made thereof a graven image and a molten image: and it was in the house of Micah.
- 5 And the man Micah had a house of {1} gods, and he made an ephod, and teraphim, and {2} consecrated one of his sons, who became his priest. {1} Or God 2) Heb filled the hand of}
- 6 In those days there was no king in Israel: every man did that which was right in his own eyes.
- 7 ¶ And there was a young man out of Beth-lehem-judah, of the family of Judah, who was a Levite; and he sojourned there.
- 8 And the man departed out of the city, out of Beth-lehem-judah, to sojourn where he could find a *place*, and he came to the hill-country of Ephraim to the house of Micah, as he journeyed.
- 9 And Micah said unto him, Whence comest thou? And he said unto him, I am a Levite of Beth-lehem-judah, and I go to sojourn where I may find a *place*.
- 10 And Micah said unto him, Dwell with me, and be unto me a father and a priest, and I will give thee ten *pieces* of silver by the year, and a suit of apparel, and thy victuals. So the Levite went in.
- 11 And the Levite was content to dwell with the man; and the young man was unto him as one of his sons.
- 12 And Micah consecrated the Levite, and the young man became his priest, and was in the house of Micah.
- 13 Then said Micah, Now know I that Jehovah will do me good, seeing I have a Levite to my priest.

### III. THE INEVITABLE ACCOMPANIMENTS OF SPIRITUAL DEPARTURE. (17.-21.)

This is an appendix to the story. It is not chronological but shows the character of that age.

#### A- Dan's idolatry and migration. (17.-18.)

1- Idolatry in Ephraim (17.)

a- Micah's image set up. Cost 200 shekels of silver. vs. 1-5

b- Micah's priest, a Levite from Bethlehem. vs. 6-12

c- Micah's purpose. Because of the Levite, God will do me good. vs. 13

**Judges 18**

- 1 ¶ In those days there was no king in Israel: and in those days the tribe of the Danites sought them an inheritance to dwell in; for unto that day *their* inheritance had not fallen unto them among the tribes of Israel.
- 2 And the children of Dan sent of their family five men from their whole number, men of valor, from Zorah, and from Eshtaol, to spy out the land, and to search it; and they said unto them, Go, search the land. And they came to the hill-country of Ephraim, unto the house of Micah, and lodged there.
- 3 When they were by the house of Micah, they knew the voice of the young man the Levite; and they turned aside thither, and said unto him, Who brought thee hither? and what doest thou in this place? and what hast thou here?
- 4 And he said unto them, Thus and thus hath Micah dealt with me, and he hath hired me, and I am become his priest.
- 5 And they said unto him, Ask counsel, we pray thee, of God, that we may know whether our way which we go shall be prosperous.
- 6 And the priest said unto them, Go in peace: before Jehovah is your way wherein ye go.
- 7 ¶ Then the five men departed, and came to Laish, and saw the people that were therein, how they dwelt in security, after the manner of the Sidonians, quiet and secure; for there was none in the land, possessing *{1}* authority, *{2}* that might put *them* to shame in anything, and they were far from the Sidonians, and had no dealings with any man. *{1} Heb power of restraint 2) Or that might do any hurt}*
- 8 And they came unto their brethren to Zorah and Eshtaol: and their brethren said unto them, What *say* ye?
- 9 And they said, Arise, and let us go up against them; for we have seen the land, and, behold, it is very good: and are ye still? be not slothful to go and to enter in to possess the land.
- 10 When ye go, ye shall come unto a people secure, and the land is large; for God hath given it into your hand, a place where there is no want of anything that is in the earth.
- 11 And there set forth from thence of the family of the Danites, out of Zorah and out of Eshtaol, six hundred men girt with weapons of war.
- 12 And they went up, and encamped in Kiriath-jearim, in Judah: wherefore they called that place Mahaneh-dan, unto this day; behold, it is behind Kiriath-jearim.
- 13 And they passed thence unto the hill-country of Ephraim, and came unto the house of Micah.
- 14 ¶ Then answered the five men that went to spy out the country of Laish, and said unto their brethren, Do ye know that there is in these houses an ephod, and teraphim, and a graven image, and a molten image? now therefore consider what ye have to do.
- 15 And they turned aside thither, and came to the house of the young man the Levite, even unto the house of Micah, and asked him of his welfare.
- 16 And the six hundred men girt with their weapons of war, who were of the children of Dan, stood by the entrance of the gate.
- 17 And the five men that went to spy out the land went up, and came in thither, and took the graven image, and the ephod, and the teraphim, and the molten image: and the priest stood by the entrance of the gate with the six hundred men girt with weapons of war.
- 18 And when these went into Micah's house, and fetched the graven image, the ephod, and the teraphim, and the molten image, the priest said unto them, What do ye?
- 19 And they said unto him, Hold thy peace, lay thy hand upon thy mouth, and go with us, and be to us a father and a priest: is it better for thee to be priest unto the house of one man, or to be priest unto a tribe and a family in Israel?
- 20 And the priest's heart was glad, and he took the ephod, and the teraphim, and the graven image, and went in the midst of the people.
- 21 So they turned and departed, and put the little ones and the cattle and the goods before them.
- 22 When they were a good way from the house of Micah, the men that were in the houses near to Micah's house were gathered together, and overtook the children of Dan.
- 23 And they cried unto the children of Dan. And they turned their faces, and said unto Micah, What aileth thee, *{1}* that thou comest with such a company? *{1} Heb that thou art gathered together}*

- 24 And he said, ye have taken away my gods which I made, and the priest, and are gone away, and what have I more? and how then say ye unto me, What aileth thee?
- 25 And the children of Dan said unto him, Let not thy voice be heard among us, lest *{1}* angry fellows fall upon you, and thou lose thy life, with the lives of thy household. *{1}* *Heb bitter of soul*
- 26 And the children of Dan went their way: and when Micah saw that they were too strong for him, he turned and went back unto his house.
- 27 ¶ And they took that which Micah had made, and the priest whom he had, and came unto Laish, unto a people quiet and secure, and smote them with the edge of the sword; and they burnt the city with fire.
- 28 And there was no deliverer, because it was far from Sidon, and they had no dealings with any man; and it was in the valley that lieth by Beth-rehob. And they built the city, and dwelt therein.
- 29 And they called the name of the city Dan, after the name of Dan their father, who was born unto Israel: howbeit the name of the city was Laish at the first.
- 30 And the children of Dan set up for themselves the graven image: and Jonathan, the son of Gershom, the son of *{1}* Moses, he and his sons were priests to the tribe of the Danites until the day of the captivity of the land. *{1}* *Another reading is Manasseh*
- 31 So they set them up Micah's graven image which he made, all the time that the house of God was in Shiloh.

- 2- The spying mission of Dan vs. 18:1-10
  - a- The Danites test the counsel of Jonathan Michah's priest.
  - b- They settle in Laish and set up independent religion.
- 3- The migration of Dan to Laish vs. 11-31
  - 600 men move and take Laish, taking Levite, Ephod, Images from Micah.
- 4- The significance of this story.
  - a- **Shows the cowardice accompanying lack of faith.**
  - b- **Shows the prevalence of idolatry even among the Levites.**

**Judges 19**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass in those days, when there was no king in Israel, that there was a certain Levite sojourning on the farther side of the hill-country of Ephraim, who took to him a concubine out of Beth-lehem-judah.
- 2 And his concubine played the harlot against him, and went away from him unto her father's house to Beth-lehem-judah, and was there the space of four months.
- 3 And her husband arose, and went after her, to speak *{1}* kindly unto her, to bring her again, having his servant with him, and a couple of asses: and she brought him into her father's house; and when the father of the damsel saw him, he rejoiced to meet him. *{1} Heb to her heart}*
- 4 And his father-in-law, the damsel's father, retained him; and he abode with him three days: so they did eat and drink, and lodged there.
- 5 And it came to pass on the fourth day, that they arose early in the morning, and he rose up to depart: and the damsel's father said unto his son-in-law, Strengthen thy heart with a morsel of bread, and afterward ye shall go your way.
- 6 So they sat down, and did eat and drink, both of them together: and the damsel's father said unto the man, Be pleased, I pray thee, to tarry all night, and let thy heart be merry.
- 7 And the man rose up to depart; but his father-in-law urged him, and he lodged there again.
- 8 And he arose early in the morning on the fifth day to depart; and the damsel's father said, Strengthen thy heart, I pray thee, and tarry ye until the day declineth; and they did eat, both of them.
- 9 And when the man rose up to depart, he, and his concubine, and his servant, his father-in-law, the damsel's father, said unto him, Behold, now the day draweth toward evening, I pray you tarry all night: behold, the day groweth to an end, lodge here, that thy heart may be merry; and to-morrow get you early on your way, that thou mayest go *{1}* home. *{1} Heb to thy tents}*
- 10 But the man would not tarry that night, but he rose up and departed, and came over against Jebus (the same is Jerusalem): and there were with him a couple of asses saddled; his concubine also was with him.
- 11 When they were by Jebus, the day was far spent; and the servant said unto his master, Come, I pray thee, and let us turn aside into this city of the Jebusites, and lodge in it.
- 12 And his master said unto him, We will not turn aside into the city of a foreigner, *{1}* that is not of the children of Israel; but we will pass over to Gibeah. *{1} Or where there are none of the children of Israel}*
- 13 And he said unto his servant, Come and let us draw near to one of these places; and we will lodge in Gibeah, or in Ramah.
- 14 So they passed on and went their way; and the sun went down upon them near to Gibeah, which belongeth to Benjamin.
- 15 And they turned aside thither, to go in to lodge in Gibeah: and he went in, and sat him down in the street of the city; for there was no man that took them into his house to lodge.
- 16 ¶ And, behold, there came an old man from his work out of the field at even: now the man was of the hill-country of Ephraim, and he sojourned in Gibeah; but the men of the place were Benjamites.
- 17 And he lifted up his eyes, and saw the wayfaring man in the street of the city; and the old man said, Whither goest thou? and whence comest thou?
- 18 And he said unto him, We are passing from Beth-lehem-judah unto the farther side of the hill-country of Ephraim; from thence am I, and I went to Beth-lehem-judah: and I am *now* going to the house of Jehovah; and there is no man that taketh me into his house.
- 19 Yet there is both straw and provender for our asses; and there is bread and wine also for me, and for thy handmaid, and for the young man that is with thy servants: there is no want of anything.
- 20 And the old man said, Peace be unto thee; howsoever let all thy wants lie upon me; only lodge not in the street.
- 21 So he brought him into his house, and gave the asses fodder; and they washed their feet, and did eat and drink.
- 22 ¶ As they were making their hearts merry, behold, the men of the city, certain base fellows, beset the house round about, beating at the door; and they spake to the master of the house, the old man, saying, Bring forth the man that came into thy house, that we may know him.

- 23 And the man, the master of the house, went out unto them, and said unto them, Nay, my brethren, I pray you, do not so wickedly; seeing that this man is come into my house, do not this folly.
- 24 Behold, here is my daughter a virgin, and his concubine; them I will bring out now, and humble ye them, and do with them what seemeth good unto you: but unto this man do not any such folly.
- 25 But the men would not hearken to him: so the man laid hold on his concubine, and brought her forth unto them; and they knew her, and abused her all the night until the morning: and when the day began to spring, they let her go.
- 26 Then came the woman in the dawning of the day, and fell down at the door of the man's house where her lord was, till it was light.
- 27 And her lord rose up in the morning, and opened the doors of the house, and went out to go his way; and, behold, the woman his concubine was fallen down at the door of the house, with her hands upon the threshold.
- 28 And he said unto her, Up, and let us be going; but none answered: then he took her up upon the ass; and the man rose up, and gat him unto his place.
- 29 And when he was come into his house, he took a knife, and laid hold on his concubine, and divided her, <sup>{1}</sup> limb by limb, into twelve pieces, and sent her throughout all the borders of Israel. *{1} Heb according to her bones}*
- 30 And it was so, that all that saw it said, There was no such deed done nor seen from the day that the children of Israel came up out of the land of Egypt unto this day: consider it, take counsel, and speak.
- 

## B- Benjamin's immorality and the civil war. (19.)

1- A Levite from Ephraim reclaims concubine in Bethlehem vs. 1-9

2- Lodging in Gibeah results in atrocity vs. 10-30

Parts of her body is sent to shock Israel unto actions.

**Judges 20**

- 1 ¶ Then all the children of Israel went out, and the congregation was assembled as one man, from Dan even to Beer-sheba, with the land of Gilead, unto Jehovah at Mizpah.
- 2 And the {1} chiefs of all the people, {2} even of all the tribes of Israel, presented themselves in the assembly of the people of God, four hundred thousand footmen that drew sword. {1} *Heb corners* 2) Or *even all*}
- 3 (Now the children of Benjamin heard that the children of Israel were gone up to Mizpah.) And the children of Israel said, Tell us, how was this wickedness brought to pass?
- 4 And the Levite, the husband of the woman that was murdered, answered and said, I came into Gibeah that belongeth to Benjamin, I and my concubine, to lodge.
- 5 And the men of Gibeah rose against me, and beset the house round about me by night; me they thought to have slain, and my concubine they forced, and she is dead.
- 6 And I took my concubine, and cut her in pieces, and sent her throughout all the country of the inheritance of Israel; for they have committed lewdness and folly in Israel.
- 7 Behold, ye children of Israel, all of you, give here your advice and counsel.
- 8 And all the people arose as one man, saying, We will not any of us go to his tent, neither will we any of us turn unto his house.
- 9 But now this is the thing which we will do to Gibeah: *we will go up* against it by lot;
- 10 and we will take ten men of a hundred throughout all the tribes of Israel, and a hundred of a thousand, and a thousand out of ten thousand, to fetch victuals for the people, that they may do, when they come to {1} Gibeah of Benjamin, according to all the folly that they have wrought in Israel. {1} *Heb Geba*}
- 11 So all the men of Israel were gathered against the city, knit together as one man.
- 12 ¶ And the tribes of Israel sent men through all the {1} tribe of Benjamin, saying, What wickedness is this that is come to pass among you? {1} *Heb tribes*; See Nu 4:18; 1 Sa 9:21}
- 13 Now therefore deliver up the men, the base fellows, that are in Gibeah, that we may put them to death, and put away evil from Israel. But {1} Benjamin would not hearken to the voice of their brethren the children of Israel. {1} *Another reading is the children of Benjamin*}
- 14 And the children of Benjamin gathered themselves together out of the cities unto Gibeah, to go out to battle against the children of Israel.
- 15 And the children of Benjamin were numbered on that day out of the cities twenty and six thousand men that drew sword, besides the inhabitants of Gibeah, who were numbered seven hundred chosen men.
- 16 Among all this people there were seven hundred chosen men lefthanded; every one could sling stones at a hair-breadth, and not miss.
- 17 And the men of Israel, besides Benjamin, were numbered four hundred thousand men that drew sword: all these were men of war.
- 18 ¶ And the children of Israel arose, and went up to Beth-el, and asked counsel of God; and they said, Who shall go up for us first to battle against the children of Benjamin? And Jehovah said, Judah *shall go up* first.
- 19 And the children of Israel rose up in the morning, and encamped against Gibeah.
- 20 And the men of Israel went out to battle against Benjamin; and the men of Israel set the battle in array against them at Gibeah.
- 21 And the children of Benjamin came forth out of Gibeah, and destroyed down to the ground of the Israelites on that day twenty and two thousand men.
- 22 And the people, the men of Israel, encouraged themselves, and set the battle again in array in the place where they set themselves in array the first day.
- 23 And the children of Israel went up and wept before Jehovah until even; and they asked of Jehovah, saying, Shall I again draw nigh to battle against the children of Benjamin my brother? And Jehovah said, Go up against him.
- 24 And the children of Israel came near against the children of Benjamin the second day.
- 25 And Benjamin went forth against them out of Gibeah the second day, and destroyed down to the ground of the children of Israel again eighteen thousand men; all these drew the sword.
- 26 ¶ Then all the children of Israel, and all the people, went up, and came unto Beth-el, and wept, and sat there before Jehovah, and fasted that day until even; and they offered burnt-offerings and peace-offerings before Jehovah.
- 27 And the children of Israel asked of Jehovah (for the ark of the covenant of God was there in those days,
- 28 and Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, stood before it in those days), saying, Shall I yet again go out to battle against the children of Benjamin my brother, or shall I cease? And Jehovah said, Go up; for to-morrow I will deliver him into thy hand.
- 29 And Israel set liers-in-wait against Gibeah round about.
- 30 And the children of Israel went up against the children of Benjamin on the third day, and set themselves in array against Gibeah, as at other times.



- 31 And the children of Benjamin went out against the people, and were drawn away from the city; and they began to smite and kill of the people, as at other times, in the highways, of which one goeth up to Beth-el, and the other to Gibeah, in the field, about thirty men of Israel.
- 32 And the children of Benjamin said, They are smitten down before us, as at the first. But the children of Israel said, Let us flee, and draw them away from the city unto the highways.
- 33 And all the men of Israel rose up out of their place, and set themselves in array at Baal-tamar: and the liers-in-wait of Israel brake forth out of their place, even out of *{1}* Maareh-geba. *{1}* Or the meadow of Geba (or Gibeah; See verse 10)}
- 34 And there came over against Gibeah ten thousand chosen men out of all Israel, and the battle was sore; but they knew not that evil was *{1}* close upon them. *{1}* Heb touching }
- 35 And Jehovah smote Benjamin before Israel; and the children of Israel destroyed of Benjamin that day twenty and five thousand and a hundred men: all these drew the sword.
- 36 So the children of Benjamin saw that they were smitten; for the men of Israel gave place to Benjamin, because they trusted unto the liers-in-wait whom they had set against Gibeah.
- 37 And the liers-in-wait hastened, and rushed upon Gibeah; and the liers-in-wait drew themselves along, and smote all the city with the edge of the sword.
- 38 Now the appointed sign between the men of Israel and the liers-in-wait was, that they should make a great cloud of smoke rise up out of the city.
- 39 *{1}* And the men of Israel turned in the battle, and Benjamin began to smite and kill of the men of Israel about thirty persons; for they said, Surely they are smitten down before us, as in the first battle. *{1}* Or And the men...battle: (now Benjamin...heaven:) and the men etc }
- 40 But when the cloud began to arise up out of the city in a pillar of smoke, the Benjamites looked behind them; and, behold, the whole of the city went up *in smoke* to heaven.
- 41 And the men of Israel turned, and the men of Benjamin were dismayed; for they saw that evil was come upon them.
- 42 Therefore they turned their backs before the men of Israel unto the way of the wilderness; but the battle followed hard after them; and *{1}* they that came out of the cities destroyed them in the midst thereof. *{1}* Or them that came...they destroyed }
- 43 They inclosed the Benjamites round about, and chased them, and *{1}* trod them down *{2}* at their resting-place, as far as over against Gibeah toward the sunrising. *{1}* Or overtook them 2) Or at Menuhah }
- 44 And there fell of Benjamin eighteen thousand men; all these were men of valor.
- 45 And they turned and fled toward the wilderness unto the rock of Rimmon: and they gleaned of them in the highways five thousand men, and followed hard after them unto Gidom, and smote of them two thousand men.
- 46 So that all who fell that day of Benjamin were twenty and five thousand men that drew the sword; all these were men of valor.
- 47 But six hundred men turned and fled toward the wilderness unto the rock of Rimmon, and abode in the rock of Rimmon four months.
- 48 And the men of Israel turned again upon the children of Benjamin, and smote them with the edge of the sword, both *{1}* the entire city, and the cattle, and all that they found: moreover all the cities which they found they set on fire. *{1}* Or as otherwise read the inhabited city; See De 2:34 }

- 3- Israel demands death of the Benjamin criminals vs. 20:1-13  
All Israel unites to demand Benjamin produce the criminal..
- 4- Civil war nearly decimates Benjamin vs. 14-48  
40,000 of Judah, 25,00 of Benjamin slain. The Lord destroys all but 600 men of Benjamin..

**Judges 21**

- 1 ¶ Now the men of Israel had sworn in Mizpah, saying, There shall not any of us give his daughter unto Benjamin to wife.
- 2 And the people came to Beth-el, and sat there till even before God, and lifted up their voices, and wept sore.
- 3 And they said, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, why is this come to pass in Israel, that there should be to-day one tribe lacking in Israel?
- 4 And it came to pass on the morrow, that the people rose early, and built there an altar, and offered burnt-offerings and peace-offerings.
- 5 And the children of Israel said, Who is there among all the tribes of Israel that came not up in the assembly unto Jehovah? For they had made a great oath concerning him that came not up unto Jehovah to Mizpah, saying, He shall surely be put to death.
- 6 And the children of Israel repented them for Benjamin their brother, and said, There is one tribe cut off from Israel this day.
- 7 How shall we do for wives for them that remain, seeing we have sworn by Jehovah that we will not give them of our daughters to wives?
- 8 And they said, What one is there of the tribes of Israel that came not up unto Jehovah to Mizpah? And, behold, there came none to the camp from Jabesh-gilead to the assembly.
- 9 For when the people were numbered, behold, there were none of the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead there.
- 10 And the congregation sent thither twelve thousand men of the valiantest, and commanded them, saying, Go and smite the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead with the edge of the sword, with the women and the little ones.
- 11 And this is the thing that ye shall do: ye shall *{1}* utterly destroy every male, and every woman that hath lain by man. *{1} Heb devote}*
- 12 And they found among the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead four hundred young virgins, that had not known man by lying with him; and they brought them unto the camp to Shiloh, which is in the land of Canaan.
- 13 And the whole congregation sent and spake to the children of Benjamin that were in the rock of Rimmon, and proclaimed peace unto them.
- 14 And Benjamin returned at that time; and they gave them the women whom they had saved alive of the women of Jabesh-gilead: and yet so they sufficed them not.
- 15 And the people repented them for Benjamin, because that Jehovah had made a breach in the tribes of Israel.
- 16 ¶ Then the elders of the congregation said, How shall we do for wives for them that remain, seeing the women are destroyed out of Benjamin?
- 17 And they said, There must be an inheritance for them that are escaped of Benjamin, that a tribe be not blotted out from Israel.
- 18 Howbeit we may not give them wives of our daughters, for the children of Israel had sworn, saying, Cursed be he that giveth a wife to Benjamin.
- 19 And they said, Behold, there is *{1}* a feast of Jehovah from year to year in Shiloh, which is on the north of Beth-el, on the east side of the highway that goeth up from Beth-el to Shechem, and on the south of Lebonah. *{1} Or the feast}*
- 20 And they commanded the children of Benjamin, saying, Go and lie in wait in the vineyards,
- 21 and see, and, behold, if the daughters of Shiloh come out to dance in the dances, then come ye out of the vineyards, and catch you every man his wife of the daughters of Shiloh, and go to the land of Benjamin.
- 22 And it shall be, when their fathers or their brethren come to *{1}* complain unto us, that we will say unto them, Grant them *{2}* graciously unto us, because we took not for each man *of them* his wife in battle, neither did ye give them unto them, else would ye now be guilty. *{1} Or strive with us 2) Or as a gift}*
- 23 And the children of Benjamin did so, and took them wives, according to their number, of them that danced, whom they carried off: and they went and returned unto their inheritance, and built the cities, and dwelt in them.

24 And the children of Israel departed thence at that time, every man to his tribe and to his family, and they went out from thence every man to his inheritance.

25 In those days there was no king in Israel: **every man did that which was right in his own eyes.**

---

- 5- Revenge against Jabesh-Gilead. vs. ( 21:1-11)  
 J.-G., refused to go to war against Benjamin, therefore, J.-G. destroyed except for 400 virgins who were then given to the 600 males of Benjamin.
- 6- The rebuilding of Benjamin since 200 men of Benjamin had no wife, vs. 12-24  
 these men were instructed to go to the “summer dance” at Shiloah, and catch a damsel, sort of a backward “Box Social”.
- 7- The significance of the story.  
 a- The deep immorality of that time. **“Every man did that which was right in his own eyes.”** {For us 20<sup>th</sup> & 21<sup>st</sup> Century folks, sounds familiar eh! NEC}  
 b- People would not respond to judgement.  
 c- Brings two cities into focus; Gibeah and Jebesh-Gilead.
- 8- The era characterized and dated vs. 20:28; 21:25  
 a- An age of anarchy - emphasized throughout the whole book.  
 b- 1370-1350, Phinehas, the son of Eleisar, son of Aaron was high priest. vs. 20:28  
 c- Book covers 350 years including 6 invasions, 3 civil wars, 2 periods 40 years and 80 years of rest.  
 d- . **“Every man did that which was right in his own eyes.”**



## **The Book Of Ruth**

**Ruth 1**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass in the days when the judges judged, that there was a famine in the land. And a certain man of Beth-lehem-judah went to sojourn in the *{1}* country of Moab, he, and his wife, and his two sons. *{1}* *Heb field*
- 2 And the name of the man was Elimelech, and the name of his wife *{1}* Naomi, and the name of his two sons Mahlon and Chilion, Ephrathites of Beth-lehem-judah. And they came into the country of Moab, and continued there. *{1}* *Heb Noomi*
- 3 And Elimelech, Naomi's husband, died; and she was left, and her two sons.
- 4 And they took them wives of the women of Moab; the name of the one was Orpah, and the name of the other Ruth: and they dwelt there about ten years.
- 5 And Mahlon and Chilion died both of them; and the woman was left of her two children and of her husband.
- 6 ¶ Then she arose with her daughters-in-law, that she might return from the country of Moab: for she had heard in the country of Moab how that Jehovah had visited his people in giving them bread.
- 7 And she went forth out of the place where she was, and her two daughters-in-law with her; and they went on the way to return unto the land of Judah.
- 8 And Naomi said unto her two daughters-in-law, Go, return each of you to her mother's house: Jehovah deal kindly with you, as ye have dealt with the dead, and with me.
- 9 Jehovah grant you that ye may find rest, each of you in the house of her husband. Then she kissed them, and they lifted up their voice, and wept.
- 10 And they said unto her, Nay, but we will return with thee unto thy people.
- 11 And Naomi said, Turn again, my daughters: why will ye go with me? have I yet sons in my womb, that they may be your husbands?
- 12 Turn again, my daughters, go your way; for I am too old to have a husband. If I should say, I have hope, if I should even have a husband to-night, and should also bear sons;
- 13 would ye therefore tarry till they were grown? would ye therefore stay from having husbands? nay, my daughters, for it *{1}* grieveth me much for your sakes, for the hand of Jehovah is gone forth against me. *{1}* *Or it is far more bitter for me than for you*
- 14 And they lifted up their voice, and wept again: and Orpah kissed her mother-in-law, but Ruth clave unto her.
- 15 And she said, Behold, thy sister-in-law is gone back unto her people, and unto her god: return thou after thy sister-in-law.
- 16 And Ruth said, Entreat me not to leave thee, and to return from following after thee, for whither thou goest, I will go; and where thou lodgest, I will lodge; thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God;
- 17 where thou diest, will I die, and there will I be buried: Jehovah do so to me, and more also, if aught but death part thee and me.
- 18 And when she saw that she was stedfastly minded to go with her, she left off speaking unto her.
- 19 ¶ So they two went until they came to Beth-lehem. And it came to pass, when they were come to Beth-lehem, that all the city was moved about them, and *the women* said, Is this Naomi?
- 20 And she said unto them, Call me not *{1}* Naomi, call me *{2}* Mara; for the Almighty hath dealt very bitterly with me. *{1}* *That is Pleasant* *2)* *That is Bitter*
- 21 I went out full, and Jehovah hath brought me home again empty; why call ye me Naomi, seeing Jehovah hath testified against me, and the Almighty hath afflicted me?
- 22 So Naomi returned, and Ruth the Moabitess, her daughter-in-law, with her, who returned out of the country of Moab: and they came to Beth-lehem in the beginning of barley harvest.

I. RUTH'S DECISION--For Jehovah (In Moab). (1.)

A- Famine in Bethlehem (house of bread) and journey to Moab vs. 1-2

B- Death in Moab Husbands of Naomi, Ruth and Orpah. vs. 3-5

C- Naomi's return to Judah. Tries to send Ruth and Orpah back. vs. 6

D- Ruth's choice of Naomi's God vs. 10-18

E- The arrival in Bethlehem. At the beginning of the barley harvest.  
vs. 19-22

**Ruth 2**

- 1 ¶ And Naomi had a kinsman of her husband's, a mighty man of *{1}* wealth, of the family of Elimelech, and his name was Boaz. *{1} Or valor*;
- 2 And Ruth the Moabitess said unto Naomi, Let me now go to the field, and glean among the ears of grain after him in whose sight I shall find favor. And she said unto her, Go, my daughter.
- 3 And she went, and came and gleaned in the field after the reapers: and her hap was to light on the portion of the field belonging unto Boaz, who was of the family of Elimelech.
- 4 ¶ And, behold, Boaz came from Beth-lehem, and said unto the reapers, Jehovah be with you. And they answered him, Jehovah bless thee.
- 5 Then said Boaz unto his servant that was set over the reapers, Whose damsel is this?
- 6 And the servant that was set over the reapers answered and said, It is the Moabitish damsel that came back with Naomi out of the country of Moab:
- 7 And she said, Let me glean, I pray you, and gather after the reapers among the sheaves. So she came, and hath continued even from the morning until now, save that she tarried a little in the house.
- 8 Then said Boaz unto Ruth, Hearst thou not, my daughter? Go not to glean in another field, neither pass from hence, but abide here fast by my maidens.
- 9 Let thine eyes be on the field that they do reap, and go thou after them: have I not charged the young men that they shall not touch thee? and when thou art athirst, go unto the vessels, and drink of that which the young men have drawn.
- 10 Then she fell on her face, and bowed herself to the ground, and said unto him, Why have I found favor in thy sight, that thou shouldest take knowledge of me, seeing I am a foreigner?
- 11 And Boaz answered and said unto her, It hath fully been showed me, all that thou hast done unto thy mother-in-law since the death of thy husband; and how thou hast left thy father and thy mother, and the land of thy nativity, and art come unto a people that thou knewest not heretofore.
- 12 Jehovah recompense thy work, and a full reward be given thee of Jehovah, the God of Israel, under whose wings thou art come to take refuge.
- 13 Then she said, Let me find favor in thy sight, my lord, for that thou hast comforted me, and for that thou hast spoken *{1}* kindly unto thy handmaid, though I be not as one of thy handmaidens. *{1} Heb to the heart of*;
- 14 And at meal-time Boaz said unto her, Come hither, and eat of the bread, and dip thy morsel in the vinegar. And she sat beside the reapers, and *{1}* they reached her parched grain, and she did eat, and was sufficed, and left thereof. *{1} Or he*;
- 15 And when she was risen up to glean, Boaz commanded his young men, saying, Let her glean even among the sheaves, and reproach her not.
- 16 And also pull out some for her from the bundles, and leave it, and let her glean, and rebuke her not.
- 17 ¶ So she gleaned in the field until even; and she beat out that which she had gleaned, and it was about an ephah of barley.
- 18 And she took it up, and went into the city; and her mother-in-law saw what she had gleaned: and she brought forth and gave to her that which she had left after she was sufficed.
- 19 And her mother-in-law said unto her, Where hast thou gleaned to-day? and where hast thou wrought? blessed be he that did take knowledge of thee. And she showed her mother-in-law with whom she had wrought, and said, The man's name with whom I wrought to-day is Boaz.
- 20 And Naomi said unto her daughter-in-law, Blessed be he of Jehovah, who hath not left off his kindness to the living and to the dead. And Naomi said unto her, The man is nigh of kin unto us, *{1}* one of our near kinsmen. *{1} Or one of them that hath the right to redeem for us; See Le 25:25*;
- 21 And Ruth the Moabitess said, Yea, he said unto me, Thou shalt keep fast by my young men, until they have ended all my harvest.
- 22 And Naomi said unto Ruth her daughter-in-law, It is good, my daughter, that thou go out with his maidens, and that they meet thee not in any other field.
- 23 So she kept fast by the maidens of Boaz, to glean unto the end of barley harvest and of wheat harvest; and she dwelt with her mother-in-law.



II. RUTH'S SERVICE--For Naomi (In the fields of Boaz). (2.)

A- The meeting of Ruth and Boaz vs. 1-14

1- Her humility. She joins the gleaners (the poor of the land). vs. 1-7

2- Her blessing by Boaz vs. 8-14

B- The concern of Boaz for Ruth vs. 15-23

**Ruth 3**

- 1 ¶ And Naomi her mother-in-law said unto her, My daughter, shall I not seek *{1}* rest for thee, that it may be well with thee? *{1}* *Or a resting-place*
- 2 And now is not Boaz our kinsman, with whose maidens thou wast? Behold, he winnoweth barley to-night in the threshing-floor.
- 3 Wash thyself therefore, and anoint thee, and put thy raiment upon thee, and get thee down to the threshing-floor, but make not thyself known unto the man, until he shall have done eating and drinking.
- 4 And it shall be, when he lieth down, that thou shalt mark the place where he shall lie, and thou shalt go in, and uncover his feet, and lay thee down; and he will tell thee what thou shalt do.
- 5 And she said unto her, All that thou *{1}* sayest I will do. *{1}* *Another reading is sayest unto me*
- 6 ¶ And she went down unto the threshing-floor, and did according to all that her mother-in-law bade her.
- 7 And when Boaz had eaten and drunk, and his heart was merry, he went to lie down at the end of the heap of grain: and she came softly, and uncovered his feet, and laid her down.
- 8 And it came to pass at midnight, that the man was *{1}* afraid, and turned himself; and, behold, a woman lay at his feet. *{1}* *Or startled*
- 9 And he said, Who art thou? And she answered, I am Ruth thy handmaid: spread therefore thy skirt over thy handmaid; for thou art *{1}* a near kinsman. *{1}* *Or one that hath the right to redeem; Heb goel*
- 10 And he said, Blessed be thou of Jehovah, my daughter: thou hast showed more kindness in the latter end than at the beginning, inasmuch as thou followedst not young men, whether poor or rich.
- 11 And now, my daughter, fear not; I will do to thee all that thou sayest; for all the *{1}* city of my people doth know that thou art a worthy woman. *{1}* *Heb gate; See Ru 4:1, 11*
- 12 And now it is true that I am a near kinsman; howbeit there is a kinsman nearer than I.
- 13 Tarry this night, and it shall be in the morning, that if he will perform unto thee the part of a kinsman, well; let him do the kinsman's part: but if he will not do the part of a kinsman to thee, then will I do the part of a kinsman to thee, as Jehovah liveth: lie down until the morning.
- 14 ¶ And she lay at his feet until the morning. And she rose up before one could discern another. For he said, Let it not be known that the woman came to the threshing-floor.
- 15 And he said, Bring the mantle that is upon thee, and hold it; and she held it; and he measured six *measures* of barley, and laid it on her: and *{1}* he went into the city. *{1}* *According to Vulg and Syr she went*
- 16 And when she came to her mother-in-law, she said, *{1}* Who art thou, my daughter? And she told her all that the man had done to her. *{1}* *Or How hast thou fared*
- 17 And she said, These six *measures* of barley gave he me; for he *{1}* said, Go not empty unto thy mother-in-law. *{1}* *Another reading is said to me*
- 18 Then said she, Sit still, my daughter, until thou know how the matter will fall; for the man will not rest, until he have finished the thing this day.

III. RUTH'S ENTREATY--To Boaz (On the threshing floor). (3.)

- A- Naomi's instruction to Ruth. Go and make yourself available. vs. 1-5
- B- Ruth's compliance. Her action simply reminds Boaz of his "kindmanship". vs.6-9

**Ruth 4**

- 1 ¶ Now **Boaz went up to the gate**, and sat him down there: and, behold, the near kinsman of whom Boaz spake came by; unto whom he said, Ho, such a one! turn aside, sit down here. And he turned aside, and sat down.
- 2 **And he took ten men of the elders of the city<sup>a</sup>, and said, Sit ye down here.** And they sat down.
- 3 And he said unto the near kinsman, Naomi, that is come again out of the country of Moab, selleth the parcel of land, which was our brother Elimelech's:
- 4 And I thought to *{1}* disclose it unto thee, saying, Buy it before them that sit here, and before the elders of my people. If thou wilt redeem it, redeem it: but if *{2}* thou wilt not redeem it, then tell me, that I may know; for there is none to redeem it besides thee; and I am after thee. And he said, I will redeem it. *{1}* *Heb uncover thine ear 2)* So Sept, Vulg, and Syr; Heb *he will*}
- 5 Then said Boaz, What day thou buyest the field of the hand of Naomi, thou must buy it also of Ruth the Moabitess, the wife of the dead, to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance.
- 6 And the near kinsman said, I cannot redeem it for myself, lest I mar mine own inheritance: take thou my right of redemption on thee; for I cannot redeem it.
- 7 Now this was *the custom* in former time in Israel concerning redeeming and concerning exchanging, to confirm all things: a man drew off his shoe, and gave it to his neighbor; and this was the *manner of attestation* in Israel.
- 8 So the near kinsman said unto Boaz, Buy it for thyself. And he drew off his shoe.
- 9 ¶ And Boaz said unto the elders, and unto all the people, Ye are witnesses this day, that I have bought all that was Elimelech's, and all that was Chilion's and Mahlon's, of the hand of Naomi.
- 10 Moreover Ruth the Moabitess, the wife of Mahlon, have I purchased to be my wife, to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance, that the name of the dead be not cut off from among his brethren, and from the gate of his place: ye are witnesses this day.
- 11 And all the people that were in the gate, and the elders, said, We are witnesses. Jehovah make the woman that is come into thy house like Rachel and like Leah, which two did build the house of Israel: and *{1}* do thou worthily in Ephrathah, and be famous in Beth-lehem: *{1}* *Or get thee wealth (or power)*}
- 12 and let thy house be like the house of Perez, whom Tamar bare unto Judah, of the seed which Jehovah shall give thee of this young woman.
- 13 ¶ So Boaz took Ruth, and she became his wife; and he went in unto her, and Jehovah gave her conception, and she bare a son.
- 14 And the women said unto Naomi, Blessed be Jehovah, who hath not left thee this day without a near kinsman; and let his name be famous in Israel.
- 15 And he shall be unto thee a restorer of life, and a nourisher of thine old age, for thy daughter-in-law, who loveth thee, who is better to thee than seven sons, hath borne him.
- 16 And Naomi took the child, and laid it in her bosom, and became nurse unto it.
- 17 And the women her neighbors gave it a name, saying, There is a son born to Naomi; and they called his name Obed: he is the father of *{1}* Jesse, the father of David. *{1}* *Heb Ishai*}
- 18 Now these are the generations of Perez: Perez begat Hezron,
- 19 and Hezron begat Ram, and Ram begat Amminadab,
- 20 and Amminadab begat Nahshon, and Nahshon begat *{1}* Salmon, *{1}* *Heb Salmah*}
- 21 and Salmon begat Boaz, and Boaz begat Obed,
- 22 and Obed begat Jesse, and Jesse begat David.

---

<sup>a</sup> {Please see Mat 16:18 where we see not the Gates of Hell (hades=unseen), but the **councils of the unseen**. Also Eph 6:12. NEC}

#### IV. RUTH'S MARRIAGE--To Boaz (At the city gate). (4.)

A-The refusal of the near kinsman vs. 1-8

**He agrees to buy the property but would have marred his inheritance to marry Ruth. He removes his shoe and gives it to Boaz.**

B-The redemption and marriage vs. 9-12

C-The birth of Obed. Grandfather of David. vs. 13

D-The blessing for Naomi vs. 14-17

E-The genealogy to David vs. 17-22

F-The significance of the book of Ruth.

**1- Ruth and Esther are the two books named for women.**

**2- Ruth is second of five scrolls called the megilloth:**

**3- Ruth is read at Passover each year.**

**4- Although it is small, it has been called one of the rarest and most beautiful gems of literature.**

**5- Ruth is a gentile married to a Jewish man and is in the lineage of the Messiah.**

**{See Mat 1:1-16 "The Gospel According to Five Women" – Tamar, Rahab, Ruth, Bathsheba, and MARY. NEC}**

## Questions On The Books Of Judges And Ruth

- 1- What was/were the function(s) of the judges?
- 2- What distinguished these Judges from other leaders?
- 3- What purpose(s) do you see in the book of Judges?
- 4- What great contrast do you see between Joshua and Judges?
- 5- What is the result of continued returns to spiritual apostasy?
- 6- Characterize the entire period by one sentence.
- 7- Name the six Prominent invasions and the judges delivering each.
- 8- Characterize Gideon personally.
- 9- What did Gideon's victory demonstrate?
- 10- Who was Abimelech?
- 11- Give two points in Jotham's fable.
- 12- What caused the civil war between Ephraim and Gilead?

13- Name the infamous city of Benjamin where civil war started.

14- What was different about the judgeship of Samson?

15- What truth is demonstrated about the period in the civil war involving Benjamin?

16- What does the story of the Danite migration teach concerning the period?

17- What chronological problem does the book of Judges present and how is it resolved?

18- Characterize the longest periods involved.

19- Give two significances of the book of Ruth.

19- How do you explain Ruth's action in approaching Boaz on the threshing floor?

20- What was Ruth's purpose in marrying Boaz (aside from her natural love)?

22- What does the book of Ruth do for New Testament theology?

Copy these 2 pages, type your answers, and hand in or send by email to [swede@thecfbc.com](mailto:swede@thecfbc.com)





**THE BOOKS OF SAMUEL**  
**INTRODUCTION**  
**PRINCIPLES**  
**TEXT**  
**OUTLINE**  
**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley A. Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible**  
**And Interpretation**  
**At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## I. Authorship.

A- The books are anonymous. The Talmud ascribed I Samuel 1 - 25 to Samuel and the remainder to Nathan and Gad (I Chronicles 29:29). The name Samuel means "asked of God."

B- The two books were originally one; they were divided into two by the LXX, which division was followed by the Vulgate.

## II. Historical Setting.

A- **The events of the books of Samuel** run from the time of Eli (c. 1050 B.C.) to the close of David's reign (c. 970).

B- **Religious setting.** The low state of religion at the beginning of this period can be seen in the evil conduct of the sons of Eli who were religious functionaries. Yet a faithful remnant still kept the feasts, worshipping in sincerity, as seen in the parents of Samuel.

As this period begins, the ark is at Shiloh (having been moved there from Gilgal by Joshua, Joshua 18:1). After its capture by the Philistines, it was returned to Kirjath-Jearim (I Samuel 7:1) and finally brought to Jerusalem by David (II Samuel 6).

**C- Political setting.** The books of Samuel begin with the final judgeship of Samuel, the priest-judge, and it ends with the establishment of the theocratic kingdom. Samuel's headquarters was in Ramah, though he went in a circuit from Bethel to Gilgal to Mizpah, judging Israel. He was the first nation-wide judge. Saul reigned from Gibeah and Gilgal. David reigned first at Hebron over Judah and later at Jerusalem over all Israel.

The primary external opposition during this period is that of the Philistines (fought by both Samuel and Saul and finally defeated by David) and the Ammonites. Under David the countries of Edom, Moab, Ammon, and Syria were put under subjection to Israel, most of Philistia was conquered, and a peace treaty was made with Phoenicia.

## IV. Purpose and Theme of the Books of Samuel.

The unified theme of the two books is the establishment of the Theocratic Kingdom of Israel, progressing from a loosely connected, disorganized group of Hebrew tribes, existing in practical anarchy, to a solidified kingdom under David, its greatest king. It shows the transfer of the crown from the tribe of Benjamin to Judah.

A further theme underlying both books is **the overlordship or Kingship of Jehovah over the theocratic state of Israel.** He sets up, deposes, and

commands the rulers of Israel. When obedient to Him, they win their battles and achieve prosperity; when disobedient, they are defeated by their enemies and confounded in their domestic affairs.

- 
- I. The Rise and Rule of Samuel. (1. - 8.)
- II. The Rise and Rule of Saul. (9. - 15.)
- III. The Rise and Early Role of David. (16. – 31.)
- 

**APPLICATIONS:****David-A Man After God's Own Heart – Said God - Acts 13 22**

22 And when he had removed him, he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfil all my will.

23 Of this man's seed hath God according to his promise raised unto Israel a Saviour, Jesus:

1. **Place priority on our relationship with God**  
Ps 119:16, , 106, A desire after the word of God. What do you hunger after?  
Ps 5:3, 63:6-8 meditation, 62:1 Listening,
2. **Place our trust in Him during challenging and difficult times; and especially during times of success.**  
1 Sam 17:1-50; 2 Sam 11-20.
3. **Strong desire to Obey God & His commandments, because who God is.**  
Ps 139:23-24 Search, try, . . . see if any wicked way in me.
4. **Must possess a spirit of humility. Pride was the downfall of King Saul.**  
1 Sam 16:12, 18:20-23, lightly esteemed. 2 Sam 7:18
5. **Trying to possess the spirit of a servant**  
Example David 1 Sam 17:31-36 "your servant".  
Saul threw spear at him twice, chased him for ten years and in the cave could have killed him but didn't.  
David started as a shepherd – Look at Christ Our Shepherd!

## **HOW ARE WE DOING?**

### **I Sam 16:1-13**

**How Can I Know If God Can (Or Will) Use Me?**

**What Does He Want Me To Do?**

**Can I Depend On Him To Equip Me For The Work?**

**Where Does He Want To Use Me?<sup>1</sup>**

**What Are My Spiritual Gifts?<sup>2</sup>**

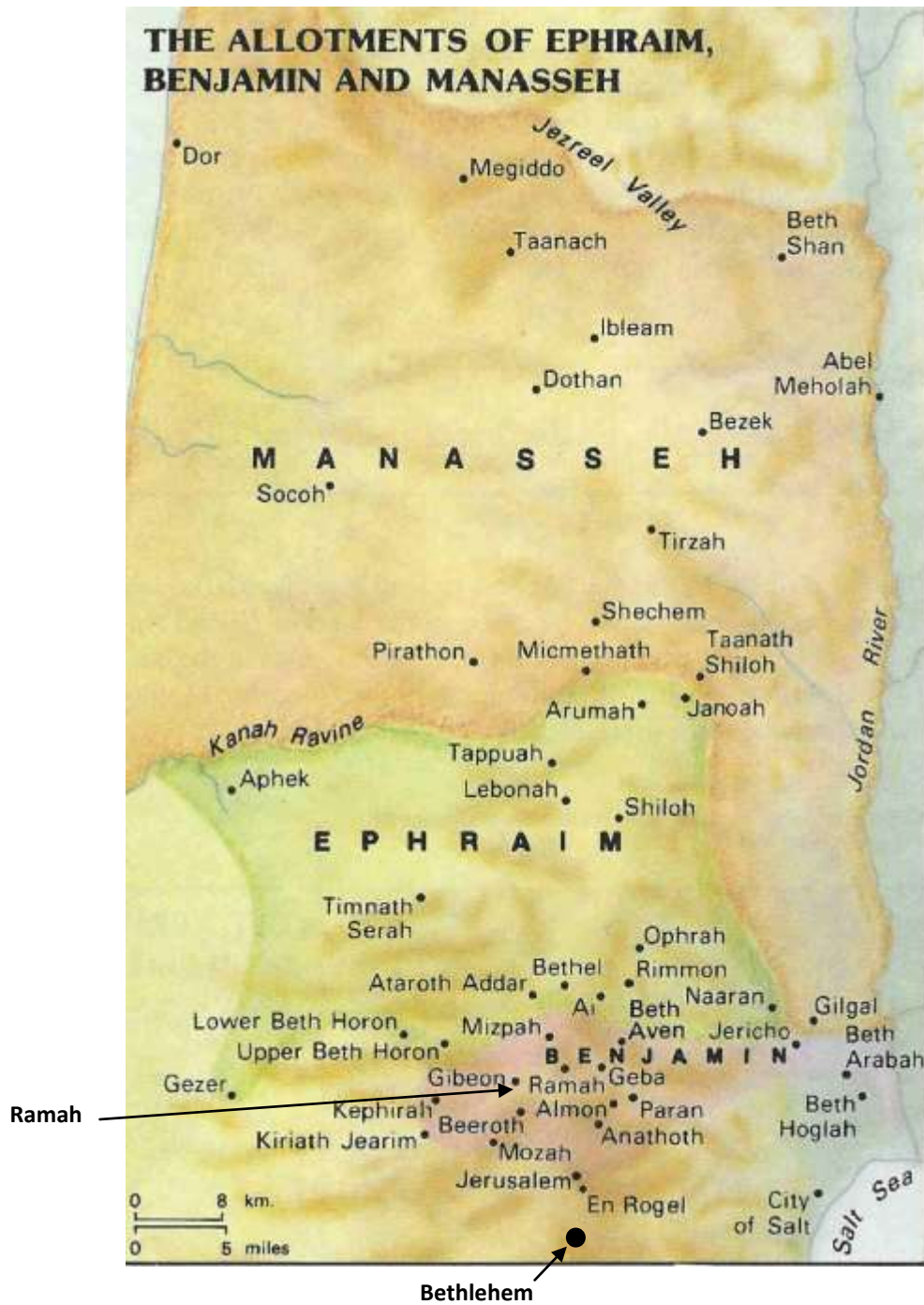


Figure 01. The Land Allotments Of Ephraim, Benjamin And The Western Half Of Manasseh.

Note: Mt. Ephraim is a reference to the very high plateau country of Ephraim

**Table 01. A Chronology Of The Kings Listed In The Books Of The 4 Books Of Kings.**

<b>A CHRONOLOGY OF THE KINGS LISTED IN THE BOOKS OF THE 4 BOOKS OF KINGS</b>							
Unified Kingdom		Date begun	Years Given	Charac-teristics	Contemporary Event	Prophet	Passage
Saul		1025-1023?	15 - 13 ?	Bad	David's victory over Goliath (from Gath). Saul was born again 10:1-6. The witch of Endor!	Samuel (Last Judge)	1 Sa.9-15
David  7 yrs in Hebron and 33 years in Jerusalem.		1010	40	Good	David secretly anointed king by Samuel but didn't become king until after Saul died 1 Sam 31:4-5	Samuel, Nathan	II Sa.1- I K 2:10
Solomon		970	40	Good	He multiplied wives, horses, gold&silver! Deut 17:16-17		I K. 1-11
Southern kingdom	Northern kingdom	Date begun	Years Given	Charac-teristics	Contemporary Event	Prophet	Passage
Rehoboam		931	17	Bad	Shishak Invasion	Shemaiah	12-14
	*Jeroboam I	931	22	Bad	Golden calves set up at Dan and Bethel	Ahijah	12-14
Abijah		913	3	Bad			15
Asa		911	41	Good	revival	Azariah	15:9-24
	Nadab	910	2	Bad			15
	*Baasha	909	24	Bad			15-16
	Elah	886	2	Bad			16
	*Zimri	885	1 Wk.	Bad			16
	*Omri	885	12	Bad	Built Samaria (city)		16
	Ahab	874	22	Bad	Baal worship	Elijah	16-22
Jehoshaphat		870	25	Good	Revival-Bible Conferences		22
	Ahaziah	853	2	Bad			22 - II K.1
	Jehoram	852	12	Bad		Elisha	3-8
Jehoram		848	8	Bad	Edom's Revolt Married Ahab's daughter	Obadiah?	8
Ahaziah		841	1	Bad			8
Jehu, in 841, assassinated Jehoram of Israel and Ahaziah of Judah and all the house of Ahab; becoming king of Israel, he destroyed all the prophets of Baal, destroying Baal worship in the North.							
	*Jehu	841	28	Bad	Hurrying Jehu	Elisha	9-10
Athaliah (the daughter of Jezebel)		841	6	Bad			11
Jehoash		835	40	Good	revival - with Jehoiada the high priest	Joel?	12
	Jehoahaz	814	17	Bad			13
	Jehoash	798	16	Bad	War with Judah		13

Table 01. Cont. on next page.

Southern kingdom	Northern kingdom	Date begun	Years Given	Characteristics	Contemporary Event	Prophet	Passage
Amaziah (Ussiah)		796	29	Good	War with Israel- Temple pillaged		14
	Jereboam II	782	41	Bad	Subjugated Syria - Golden Age	Jonah, Amos	14
Azariah (Ussiah)		767	52	Good	Golden Age	Hosea, Isaiah	14
	Zachariah	753	1/2	Bad	Assassinated		15
	*Shallum	752	1 Mo.	Bad	Assassinated		15
	*Menahe m	752	10	Bad	Invaded by Pul of Assyria in 745		15
	Pekahiah	742	2	Bad	Assassinated		15
	*Pekah	740	20?	Bad	Invaded by Tiglath-Pilezer of Assyria - 732		15
Jothan (Regent & King)		740	16	Good		Micah	15
Ahaz		732	16	Bad	Attacked by Syria and Israel seeks help from Assyria		16
	*Hoshea	725?	9	Bad	Samaria besieged & carried away		17
<b>Samaria was besieged 3 years by Shalmanezar and deported to Assyria by Sennacherib in 722B.C. The North was re peopled with Chaldeans. (heck the Samaritans of the N.T.)</b>							
Hezekiah (big revival)		716	29	Good	Judah invaded by Sennacherib - 701		18-20
Manasseh		687	55	Bad	He re-established Idolatry in Zion. He killed many of the righteous remnant out of Jerusalem	Isaiah, Nahum	21
Amon		642	2	Bad			21
Josiah(big revival)		640	31	Good	Josiah slain in 609	Zepaniah, Habakkuk, Jeremiah, Huldah (non-writing prophetes s)	22-23
Jehoahaz		608	1/4	Bad	Egypt invasion		23
Jehoiakim		608	11	Bad	Nebuchadnezzar invades in 605	Jeremiah	23-24
Jehoiachin		597	1/4	Bad			24
Zedekiah (See Micah 5:1)		597 to 586	11	Bad	Jerusalem destroyed	Jeremiah, Ezekiel	24
<b>There were two deportations of Judah (Southern Kingdom) to Babylon (606 and 597). In 588 Nebuchadnezzar besieged Jerusalem till 586 when He destroyed the Temple and the city.</b>							

**1 Samuel 1**

- 1 ¶ Now there was a certain man of Ramathaim-zophim, of the hill-country of Ephraim, and his name was Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Elihu, the son of Tohu, the son of Zuph, an Ephraimite:
- 2 and he had two wives; the name of the one was Hannah, and the name of other Peninnah: and Peninnah had children, but Hannah had no children.
- 3 And this man went up out of his city from year to year to worship and to sacrifice unto Jehovah of hosts in Shiloh. And the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, priests unto Jehovah, were there.
- 4 And when the day came that Elkanah sacrificed, he gave to Peninnah his wife, and to all her sons and her daughters, portions:
- 5 but unto Hannah he gave a double portion; for he loved Hannah, but Jehovah had shut up her womb.
- 6 And her rival provoked her sore, to make her fret, because Jehovah had shut up her womb.
- 7 And *as* he did so year by year, when she went up to the house of Jehovah, so she provoked her; therefore she wept, and did not eat.
- 8 And Elkanah her husband said unto her, Hannah, why weepest thou? and why eatest thou not? and why is thy heart grieved? am not I better to thee than ten sons?
- 9 ¶ So Hannah rose up after they had eaten in Shiloh, and after they had drunk. Now Eli the priest was sitting upon his seat by the door-post of the temple of Jehovah.
- 10 And she was in bitterness of soul, and prayed unto Jehovah, and wept sore.
- 11 And she vowed a vow, and said, O Jehovah of hosts, if thou wilt indeed look on the affliction of thy handmaid, and remember me, and not forget thy handmaid, but wilt give unto thy handmaid a *{1}* man-child, then I will give him unto Jehovah all the days of his life, and there shall no razor come upon his head. *{1} Heb seed of men}*
- 12 And it came to pass, as she continued praying before Jehovah, that Eli marked her mouth.
- 13 Now Hannah, she spake in her heart; only her lips moved, but her voice was not heard: therefore Eli thought she had been drunken.
- 14 And Eli said unto her, How long wilt thou be drunken? put away thy wine from thee.
- 15 And Hannah answered and said, No, my lord, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit: I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but I poured out my soul before Jehovah.
- 16 Count not thy handmaid for a wicked woman; for out of the abundance of my complaint and my provocation have I spoken hitherto.
- 17 Then Eli answered and said, Go in peace; and the God of Israel grant thy petition that thou hast asked of him.
- 18 And she said, Let thy handmaid find favor in thy sight. So the woman went her way, and did eat; and her countenance was no more *sad*.
- 19 ¶ And they rose up in the morning early, and worshipped before Jehovah, and returned, and came to their house to Ramah: and Elkanah knew Hannah his wife; and Jehovah remembered her.
- 20 And it came to pass, when the time was come about, that Hannah conceived, and bare a son; and she called his name Samuel, *saying*, Because I have asked him of Jehovah.
- 21 And the man Elkanah, and all his house, went up to offer unto Jehovah the yearly sacrifice, and his vow.
- 22 But Hannah went not up; for she said unto her husband, *I will not go up* until the child be weaned; and then I will bring him, that he may appear before Jehovah, and there abide for ever.
- 23 And Elkanah her husband said unto her, Do what seemeth thee good; tarry until thou have weaned him; only Jehovah establish his word. So the woman tarried and gave her son suck, until she weaned him.
- 24 And when she had weaned him, she took him up with her, with *{1}* three bullocks, and one ephah of meal, and a *{2}* bottle of wine, and brought him unto the house of Jehovah in Shiloh: and the child was young. *{1} The Sept and Syr have a bullock three years old 2) Or skin}*
- 25 And they slew the bullock, and brought the child to Eli.
- 26 And she said, Oh, my lord, as thy soul liveth, my lord, I am the woman that stood by thee here, praying unto Jehovah.
- 27 For this child I prayed; and Jehovah hath given me my petition which I asked of him:
- 28 therefore also I have *{1}* granted him to Jehovah; as long as he liveth he is granted to Jehovah. And he worshipped Jehovah there. *{1} Or lent}*



**1 Samuel 2**

- 1 ¶ And Hannah prayed, and said: My heart exulteth in Jehovah; My horn is exalted in Jehovah; My mouth is enlarged over mine enemies; Because I rejoice in thy salvation.
- 2 There is none holy as Jehovah; For there is none besides thee, Neither is there any rock like our God.
- 3 Talk no more so exceeding proudly; Let not arrogancy come out of your mouth; For Jehovah is a God of knowledge, *{1}* And by him actions are weighed. *{1} According to another reading Though actions be not weighed}*
- 4 The bows of the mighty men are broken; And they that stumbled are girded with strength.
- 5 They that were full have hired out themselves for bread; And they that were hungry *{1}* have ceased to *hunger*: Yea, the barren hath borne seven; And she that hath many children languisheth. *{1} Or have rest}*
- 6 Jehovah killeth, and maketh alive: He bringeth down to Sheol, and bringeth up.
- 7 Jehovah maketh poor, and maketh rich: He bringeth low, he also lifteth up.
- 8 He raiseth up the poor out of the dust, He lifteth up the needy from the dunghill, To make them sit with princes, And inherit the throne of glory: For the pillars of the earth are Jehovah's, And he hath set the world upon them.
- 9 He will keep the feet of his *{1}* holy ones; But the wicked shall be put to silence in darkness; For by strength shall no man prevail. *{1} Or godly ones; Another reading is holy one}*
- 10 They that strive with Jehovah shall be broken to pieces; Against them will he thunder in heaven: Jehovah will judge the ends of the earth; And he will give strength unto his king, And exalt the horn of his anointed.
- 11 ¶ And Elkanah went to Ramah to his house. And the child did minister unto Jehovah before Eli the priest.

**I. THE RISE AND RULE OF SAMUEL. (1.-8.)****A- The significance of Samuel.**

- 1- His position.  
Last Judge and first prophet. vs. 3:19-20
- 2- His greatness  
Classed with Moses in Jer 15:1
- 3- His function
- a- To unite all Israel
  - b- To anoint the first two Kings of Israel

**B- The birth of Samuel. vs. 1:1 - 2:11**

- 1- Hannah prays for a son. vs. 1-19
- a- Her plight. (barren)
  - b- Her petition and promise.  
If given a son, she would dedicate him as a Nazarite.
- 2- Hannah bears Samuel. vs. 20-23
- 3- Hannah dedicates Samuel vs. 24 & 2:11
- a- Her presentation.  
She loaned him to the LORD, forever.
  - b- Her praise. vs. 2:1-11  
True Worship.

**1 Samuel 2 (cont.)**

- 12 Now the sons of Eli were base men; *{1}* they knew not Jehovah. *{1}* Or they know not Jehovah, nor the due of the priests from the people. When any man etc}
- 13 And the custom of the priests with the people was, that, when any man offered sacrifice, the priest's servant came, while the flesh was boiling, with a flesh-hook of three teeth in his hand;
- 14 and he struck it into the pan, or kettle, or caldron, or pot; all that the flesh-hook brought up the priest took therewith. So they did in Shiloh unto all the Israelites that came thither.
- 15 Yea, before they burnt the fat, the priest's servant came, and said to the man that sacrificed, Give flesh to roast for the priest; for he will not have boiled flesh of thee, but raw.
- 16 And if the man said unto him, They will surely burn the fat *{1}* first, and then take as much as thy soul desireth; then *{2}* he would say, Nay, but thou shalt give it me now: and if not, I will take it by force. *{1}* Heb to-day 2) Another reading is he would say unto him, Thou etc}
- 17 And the sin of the young men was very great before Jehovah; for the men despised the offering of Jehovah.
- 18 But Samuel ministered before Jehovah, being a child, girded with a linen ephod.
- 19 Moreover his mother made him a little robe, and brought it to him from year to year, when she came up with her husband to offer the yearly sacrifice.
- 20 And Eli blessed Elkanah and his wife, and said, Jehovah give thee seed of this woman for the petition which was asked of Jehovah. And they went unto their own home.
- 21 *{1}* And Jehovah visited Hannah, and she conceived, and bare three sons and two daughters. And the child Samuel grew before Jehovah. *{1}* The Heb has For}
- 22 Now Eli was very old; and he heard all that his sons did unto all Israel, and how that they lay with the women that did service at the door of the tent of meeting.
- 23 And he said unto them, Why do ye such things? for I hear of your evil dealings from all this people.
- 24 Nay, my sons; for it is no good report *{1}* that I hear: ye make Jehovah's people to transgress. *{1}* Or which I hear Jehovah's people do spread abroad}
- 25 If one man sin against another, *{1}* God shall judge him; but if a man sin against Jehovah, who shall entreat for him? Notwithstanding, they hearkened not unto the voice of their father, because Jehovah was minded to slay them. *{1}* Or the judge}
- 26 And the child Samuel grew on, and increased in favor both with Jehovah, and also with men.
- 27 ¶ And there came a man of God unto Eli, and said unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Did I reveal myself unto the house of thy father, when they were in Egypt *{1}* in bondage to Pharaoh's house? *{1}* Or in Pharaoh's house}
- 28 *{1}* and did I choose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be my priest, to *{2}* go up unto mine altar, to burn incense, to wear an ephod before me? *{3}* and did I give unto the house of thy father all the offerings of the children of Israel made by fire? *{1}* Or And I chose 2) Or offer upon 3) Or and gave}
- 29 Wherefore *{1}* kick ye at my sacrifice and at mine offering, which I have commanded in my habitation, and honorest thy sons above me, to make yourselves fat with the chiefest of all the offerings of Israel my people? *{1}* Or trample ye upon...and upon}
- 30 Therefore Jehovah, the God of Israel, saith, I said indeed that thy house, and the house of thy father, should walk before me for ever: but now Jehovah saith, Be it far from me; for them that honor me I will honor, and they that despise me shall be lightly esteemed.
- 31 Behold, the days come, that I will cut off thine arm, and the arm of thy father's house, that there shall not be an old man in thy house.
- 32 And thou shalt behold *{1}* the affliction of my habitation, in all the wealth which God shall give Israel; and there shall not be an old man in thy house for ever. *{1}* Or an adversary in my habitation}
- 33 *{1}* And the man of thine, whom I shall not cut off from mine altar, shall be to consume thine eyes, and to grieve thy heart; and all the increase of thy house shall die *{2}* in the flower of their age. *{1}* Or Yet will I not cut off every man of thine from mine altar, to consume etc 2) Heb. when they are men}
- 34 And this shall be the sign unto thee, that shall come upon thy two sons, on Hophni and Phinehas: in one day they shall die both of them.
- 35 And I will raise me up a faithful priest, that shall do according to that which is in my heart and in my mind: and I will build him a sure house; and he shall walk before mine anointed for ever.
- 36 And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left in thy house shall come and bow down to him for a piece of silver and a loaf of bread, and shall say, Put me, I pray thee, into one of the priests' offices, that I may eat a morsel of bread.

- C- The growth and call of Samuel. (2:12.-3:22.)
- 1- The apostasy under Eli (2:12-36)
    - a - Eli's sons despise the offerings. vs. 12-17
    - b - Samuel's service and Hannah's blessing. vs. 18-21  
3 sons and 2 daughters.  
Lesson: The reward of true worship.
    - c - The immorality of Eli's sons. vs. 22-26  
Adultery at the door of the Tabernacle.
    - d - The warning to Eli. vs. 27-36  
Rebukes him for getting rich off the offerings of Israel.

**1 Samuel 3**

- 1 ¶ And the child Samuel ministered unto Jehovah before Eli. And the word of Jehovah was {1} precious in those days; there was no {2} frequent vision. {1} Or rare 2) Heb widely spread}
- 2 And it came to pass at that time, when Eli was laid down in his place (now his eyes had begun to wax dim, so that he could not see),
- 3 and the lamp of God was not yet gone out, and Samuel was laid down *to sleep*, in the temple of Jehovah, where the ark of God was;
- 4 that Jehovah called Samuel; and he said, Here am I.
- 5 And he ran unto Eli, and said, Here am I; for thou calledst me. And he said, I called not; lie down again. And he went and lay down.
- 6 And Jehovah called yet again, Samuel. And Samuel arose and went to Eli, and said, Here am I; for thou calledst me. And he answered, I called not, my son; lie down again.
- 7 Now Samuel did not yet know Jehovah, neither was the word of Jehovah yet revealed unto him.
- 8 And Jehovah called Samuel again the third time. And he arose and went to Eli, and said, Here am I; for thou calledst me. And Eli perceived that Jehovah had called the child.
- 9 Therefore Eli said unto Samuel, Go, lie down: and it shall be, if he call thee, that thou shalt say, Speak, Jehovah; for thy servant heareth. So Samuel went and lay down in his place.
- 10 And Jehovah came, and stood, and called as at other times, Samuel, Samuel. Then Samuel said, Speak; for thy servant heareth.
- 11 ¶ And Jehovah said to Samuel, Behold, I will do a thing in Israel, at which both the ears of every one that heareth it shall tingle.
- 12 In that day I will perform against Eli all that I have spoken concerning his house, from the beginning even unto the end.
- 13 For I have told him that I will judge his house for ever, for the iniquity which he knew, because his sons did bring a curse upon themselves, and he restrained them not.
- 14 And therefore I have sworn unto the house of Eli, that the iniquity of Eli's house shall not be expiated with sacrifice nor offering for ever.
- 15 And Samuel lay until the morning, and opened the doors of the house of Jehovah. And Samuel feared to show Eli the vision.
- 16 Then Eli called Samuel, and said, Samuel, my son. And he said, Here am I.
- 17 And he said, What is the thing that *Jehovah* hath spoken unto thee? I pray thee, hide it not from me: God do so to thee, and more also, if thou hide anything from me of all the things that he spake unto thee.
- 18 And Samuel told him every whit, and hid nothing from him. And he said, It is Jehovah: let him do what seemeth him good.
- 19 ¶ And Samuel grew, and Jehovah was with him, and did let none of his words fall to the ground.
- 20 And all Israel from Dan even to Beer-sheba knew that Samuel was established to be a prophet of Jehovah.
- 21 And Jehovah appeared again in Shiloh; for Jehovah revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh by the word of Jehovah.

2- The call of Samuel (3.)

- a- His fourfold call. vs. 1-10  
Samuel speaks the Words of the Lord in judgment on Eli and his sons.
- b- The judgment of the house of Eli. vs. 11-18  
Eli blamed for not restraining his sons.
- c- Samuel's recognition as a prophet. vs. 19-20  
All Israel looked with expectation to Samuel.

**1 Samuel 4**

- 1 ¶ And the word of Samuel came to all Israel. Now Israel went out against the Philistines to battle, and encamped beside Eben-ezer: and the Philistines encamped in Aphek.
- 2 And the Philistines put themselves in array against Israel: and when {1} they joined battle, Israel was smitten before the Philistines; and they slew of the {2} army in the field about four thousand men. {1} *Or the battle was spread 2) Heb array}*
- 3 And when the people were come into the camp, the elders of Israel said, Wherefore hath Jehovah smitten us to-day before the Philistines? Let us fetch the ark of the covenant of Jehovah out of Shiloh unto us, that it may come among us, and save us out of the hand of our enemies.
- 4 So the people sent to Shiloh; and they brought from thence the ark of the covenant of Jehovah of hosts, who {1} sitteth *above* the cherubim: and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were there with the ark of the covenant of God. {1} *Or is enthroned}*
- 5 And when the ark of the covenant of Jehovah came into the camp, all Israel shouted with a great shout, so that the earth rang again.
- 6 And when the Philistines heard the noise of the shout, they said, What meaneth the noise of this great shout in the camp of the Hebrews? And they understood that the ark of Jehovah was come into the camp.
- 7 And the Philistines were afraid, for they said, God is come into the camp. And they said, Woe unto us! for there hath not been such a thing heretofore.
- 8 Woe unto us! who shall deliver us out of the hand of these mighty gods? these are the gods that smote the Egyptians with all manner of {1} plagues in the wilderness. {1} *Heb smiting}*
- 9 Be strong, and quit yourselves like men, O ye Philistines, that ye be not servants unto the Hebrews, as they have been to you: quit yourselves like men, and fight.
- 10 ¶ And the Philistines fought, and Israel was smitten, and they fled every man to his tent: and there was a very great slaughter; for there fell of Israel thirty thousand footmen.
- 11 And the ark of God was taken; and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were slain.
- 12 ¶ And there ran a man of Benjamin out of the {1} army, and came to Shiloh the same day, with his clothes rent, and with earth upon his head. {1} *Heb array}*
- 13 And when he came, lo, Eli was sitting upon his seat by the wayside watching; for his heart trembled for the ark of God. And when the man came into the city, and told it, all the city cried out.
- 14 And when Eli heard the noise of the crying, he said, What meaneth the noise of this tumult? And the man hasted, and came and told Eli.
- 15 Now Eli was ninety and eight years old; and his eyes were set, so that he could not see.
- 16 And the man said unto Eli, I am he that came out of the {1} army, and I fled to-day out of the {1} army. And he said, How went the matter, my son? {1} *Heb array}*
- 17 And he that brought the tidings answered and said, Israel is fled before the Philistines, and there hath been also a great slaughter among the people, and thy two sons also, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead, and the ark of God is taken.
- 18 And it came to pass, when he made mention of the ark of God, that *Eli* fell from off his seat backward by the side of the gate; and his neck brake, and he died: for he was an old man, and heavy. And he had judged Israel forty years.
- 19 ¶ And his daughter-in-law, Phinehas' wife, was with child, near to be delivered: and when she heard the tidings that the ark of God was taken, and that her father-in-law and her husband were dead, she bowed herself and brought forth; for her pains came upon her.
- 20 And about the time of her death the women that stood by her said unto her, Fear not; for thou hast brought forth a son. But she answered not, neither did she regard it.
- 21 And she named the child {1} Ichabod, saying, The glory is departed from Israel; because the ark of God was taken, and because of her father-in-law and her husband. {1} *That is, There is no glory}*
- 22 And she said, The glory is departed from Israel; for the ark of God is taken.

**D- The Philistines and the Ark.** (4. - 7.)**1- The ark removed and stolen.** (4.)

- a- Israel's superstitious use of the ark vs. 1-9
  - They took it out to battle.
  - No command by the Lord to do this,  
"although it seems religious."
  
- b- Israel's defeat and loss of the ark vs. 10-22
  - 1) The defeat. 30,000 slain. vs.10
    - Hophni and Phinehas the two "bad boy" sons of Eli also slain..
  - 2) The death of Eli. vs. 18
  - 3) The birth of Ichabod, (the glory is departed). vs.19-22

**1 Samuel 5**

- 1 ¶ Now the Philistines had taken the ark of God, and they brought it from Eben-ezer unto Ashdod.
- 2 And the Philistines took the ark of God, and brought it into the house of Dagon, and set it by Dagon.
- 3 And when they of Ashdod arose early on the morrow, behold, Dagon was fallen *{1}* upon his face to the ground before the ark of Jehovah. And they took Dagon, and set him in his place again. *{1}* Or before it
- 4 And when they arose early on the morrow morning, behold, Dagon was fallen *{1}* upon his face to the ground before the ark of Jehovah; and the head of Dagon and both the palms of his hands *lay* cut off upon the threshold; only *the stump of Dagon* was left to him. *{1}* Or before it
- 5 Therefore neither the priests of Dagon, nor any that come into Dagon's house, tread on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod, unto this day.
- 6 ¶ But the hand of Jehovah was heavy upon them of Ashdod, and he destroyed them, and smote them with *{1}* tumors, even Ashdod and the borders thereof. *{1}* Or plague boils ; As read by the Jews *emrods*
- 7 And when the men of Ashdod saw that it was so, they said, The ark of the God of Israel shall not abide with us; for his hand is sore upon us, and upon Dagon our god.
- 8 They sent therefore and gathered all the lords of the Philistines unto them, and said, What shall we do with the ark of the God of Israel? And they answered, Let the ark of the God of Israel be carried about unto Gath. And they carried the ark of the God of Israel *thither*.
- 9 And it was so, that, after they had carried it about, the hand of Jehovah was against the city with a very great discomfiture: and he smote the men of the city, both small and great; and tumors brake out upon them.
- 10 So they sent the ark of God to Ekron. And it came to pass, as the ark of God came to Ekron, that the Ekronites cried out, saying, They have brought about the ark of the God of Israel to us, to slay us and our people.
- 11 They sent therefore and gathered together all the lords of the Philistines, and they said, Send away the ark of the God of Israel, and let it go again to its own place, that is slay us not, and our people. For there was a deadly discomfiture throughout all the city; the hand of God was very heavy there.
- 12 And the men that died not were smitten with the tumors; and the cry of the city went up to heaven.

**1 Samuel 6**

- 1 ¶ And the ark of Jehovah was in the *{1}* country of the Philistines seven months. *{1}* Heb *field*
- 2 And the Philistines called for the priests and the diviners, saying, What shall we do with the ark of Jehovah? show us wherewith we shall sent it to its place.
- 3 And they said, If ye send away the ark of the God of Israel, send it not empty; but by all means return him a trespass-offering: then ye shall be healed, and it shall be known to you why his hand is not removed from you.
- 4 Then said they, What shall be the trespass-offering which we shall return to him? And they said, Five golden tumors, and five golden mice, *according to* the number of the lords of the Philistines; for one plague was on *{1}* you all, and on your lords. *{1}* Heb *them*
- 5 Wherefore ye shall make images of your tumors, and images of your mice that mar the land; and ye shall give glory unto the God of Israel: peradventure he will lighten his hand from off you, and from off your gods, and from off your land.
- 6 Wherefore then do ye harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts? When he had *{1}* wrought wonderfully among them, did they not let *{2}* the people go, and they departed? *{1}* Or *made a mock of 2* Heb *them*
- 7 Now therefore take and prepare you a new cart, and two milch kine, on which there hath come no yoke; and tie the kine to the cart, and bring their calves home from them;
- 8 and take the ark of Jehovah, and lay it upon the cart; and put the jewels of gold, which ye return him for a trespass-offering, in a coffer by the side thereof; and send it away, that it may go.
- 9 And see; if it goeth up by the way of its own border to Beth-shemesh, then he hath done us this great evil: but if not, then we shall know that it is not his hand that smote us; it was a chance that happened to us.
- 10 ¶ And the men did so, and took two milch kine, and tied them to the cart, and shut up their calves at home;
- 11 and they put the ark of Jehovah upon the cart, and the coffer with the mice of gold and the images of their tumors.
- 12 And the kine took the straight way by the way to Beth-shemesh; they went along *{1}* the highway,



- lowing as they went, and turned not aside to the right hand or to the left; and the lords of the Philistines went after them unto the border of Beth-shemesh. *{1} Heb one raised way}*
- 13 And they of Beth-shemesh were reaping their wheat harvest in the valley; and they lifted up their eyes, and saw the ark, and rejoiced to see it.
- 14 And the cart came into the field of Joshua the Beth-shemite, and stood there, where there was a great *{1}* stone: and they clave the wood of the cart, and offered up the kine for a burnt-offering unto Jehovah. *{1} So the Sept; The Hebrew text has Abel (that is a meadow)}*
- 15 And the Levites took down the ark of Jehovah, and the coffer that was with it, wherein the jewels of gold were, and put them on the great stone: and the men of Beth-shemesh offered burnt-offerings and sacrificed sacrifices the same day unto Jehovah.
- 16 And when the five lords of the Philistines had seen it, they returned to Ekron the same day.
- 17 And these are the golden tumors which the Philistines returned for a trespass-offering unto Jehovah: for Ashdod one, for Gaza one, for Ashkelon one, for Gath one, for Ekron one;
- 18 and the golden mice, according to the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five lords, both of fortified cities and of country villages, even unto the great stone, whereon they set down the ark of Jehovah, *which stone remaineth* unto this day in the field of Joshua the Beth-shemite.
- 19 ¶ And he smote of the men of Beth-shemesh, because they had looked into the ark of Jehovah, he smote of the people seventy men, *and* fifty thousand men; and the people mourned, because Jehovah had smitten the people with a great slaughter.
- 20 And the men of Beth-shemesh said, Who is able to stand before Jehovah, this holy God? and to whom shall he go up from us?
- 21 And they sent messengers to the inhabitants of Kiriath-jearim, saying, The Philistines have brought back the ark of Jehovah; come ye down, and fetch it up to you.

2- The ark confounds the Philistines. (5.)  
It becomes a "hot potato".

- a- Dagon falls before the ark. vs. 1-5
- b- Cities of Philistines cursed by the ark. vs. 6-12  
Possibly bubonic plague, inflammation, "mice". vs.6:5

3- The ark is returned to Israel (6.)

- a- The ark at Beth-shemish. vs. 1-20
- 1) The Philistines dispatch it.
- 2) The Israelites receive it.
- 3) The trespass against it.  
The Israelites looked into it and 50,000 (possibly only 5,000) were slain.
- b- The ark at Kirjath-jearim. vs. 21

**1 Samuel 7**

- 1 ¶ And the men of Kiriath-jearim came, and fetched up the ark of Jehovah, and brought it into the house of Abinadab in *{1}* the hill, and sanctified Eleazar his son to keep the ark of Jehovah. *{1}* *Or Gibeah*
- 2 And it came to pass, from the day that the ark abode in Kiriath-jearim, that the time was long; for it was twenty years: and all the house of Israel *{1}* lamented after Jehovah. *{1}* *Or was drawn together*
- 3 ¶ And Samuel spake unto all the house of Israel, saying, If ye do return unto Jehovah with all your heart, then put away the foreign gods and the Ashtaroth from among you, and direct your hearts unto Jehovah, and serve him only; and he will deliver you out of the hand of the Philistines.
- 4 Then the children of Israel did put away the Baalim and the Ashtaroth, and served Jehovah only.
- 5 And Samuel said, Gather all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray for you unto Jehovah.
- 6 And they gathered together to Mizpah, and drew water, and poured it out before Jehovah, and fasted on that day, and said there, We have sinned against Jehovah. And Samuel judged the children of Israel in Mizpah.
- 7 ¶ And when the Philistines heard that the children of Israel were gathered together to Mizpah, the lords of the Philistines went up against Israel. And when the children of Israel heard it, they were afraid of the Philistines.
- 8 And the children of Israel said to Samuel, Cease not to cry unto Jehovah our God for us, that he will save us out of the hand of the Philistines.
- 9 And Samuel took a sucking lamb, and offered it for a whole burnt-offering unto Jehovah: and Samuel cried unto Jehovah for Israel; and Jehovah answered him.
- 10 And as Samuel was offering up the burnt-offering, the Philistines drew near to battle against Israel; but Jehovah thundered with a great *{1}* thunder on that day upon the Philistines, and discomfited them; and they were smitten down before Israel. *{1}* *Heb voice*
- 11 And the men of Israel went out of Mizpah, and pursued the Philistines, and smote them, until they came under Beth-car.
- 12 Then Samuel took a stone, and set it between Mizpah and Shen, and called the name of it *{1}* Eben-ezer, saying, Hitherto hath Jehovah helped us. *{1}* *That is The stone of help*
- 13 ¶ So the Philistines were subdued, and they came no more within the border of Israel: and the hand of Jehovah was against the Philistines all the days of Samuel.
- 14 And the cities which the Philistines had taken from Israel were restored to Israel, from Ekron even unto Gath; and the border thereof did Israel deliver out of the hand of the Philistines. And there was peace between Israel and the Amorites.
- 15 And Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life.
- 16 And he went from year to year in circuit to Beth-el and Gilgal, and Mizpah; and he judged Israel in all those places.
- 17 And his return was to Ramah, for there was his house; and there he judged Israel: and he built there an altar unto Jehovah.

**1 Samuel 8**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when Samuel was old, that he made his sons judges over Israel.
- 2 Now the name of his first-born was Joel; and the name of his second, Abijah: they were judges in Beer-sheba.
- 3 And his sons walked not in his ways, but turned aside after lucre, and took bribes, and perverted justice.
- 4 ¶ Then all the elders of Israel gathered themselves together, and came to Samuel unto Ramah;
- 5 and they said unto him, Behold, thou art old, and thy sons walk not in thy ways: now make us a king to judge us like all the nations.
- 6 But the thing displeased Samuel, when they said, Give us a king to judge us. And Samuel prayed unto Jehovah.
- 7 And Jehovah said unto Samuel, Hearken unto the voice of the people in all that they say unto thee; for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me, that I should not be king over them.
- 8 According to all the works which they have done since the day that I brought them up out of Egypt even unto this day, in that they have forsaken me, and served other gods, so do they also unto thee.
- 9 Now therefore hearken unto their voice: howbeit thou shalt protest solemnly unto them, and shalt show them the manner of the king that shall reign over them.
- 10 And Samuel told all the words of Jehovah unto the people that asked of him a king.

- 11 And he said, This will be the manner of the king that shall reign over you: he will take your sons, and appoint them unto him, *{1}* for his chariots, and to be his horsemen; and they shall run before his chariots; *{1}* *Or over his chariots, and over his horses*
- 12 and he will appoint them unto him for captains of thousands, and captains of fifties; and *he will set some* to plow his ground, and to reap his harvest, and to make his instruments of war, and the instruments of his chariots.
- 13 And he will take your daughters to be perfumers, and to be cooks, and to be bakers.
- 14 And he will take your fields, and your vineyards, and your oliveyards, even the best of them, and give them to his servants.
- 15 And he will take the tenth of your seed, and of your vineyards, and give to his *{1}* officers, and to his servants. *{1}* *Or eunuchs*
- 16 And he will take your men-servants, and your maid-servants, and your goodliest *{1}* young men, and your asses, and put them to his work. *{1}* *The Sept has herds*
- 17 He will take the tenth of your flocks: and ye shall be his servants.
- 18 And ye shall cry out in that day because of your king whom ye shall have chosen you; and Jehovah will not answer you in that day.
- 19 But the people refused to hearken unto the voice of Samuel; and they said, Nay: but we will have a king over us,
- 20 that we also may be like all the nations, and that our king may judge us, and go out before us, and fight our battles.
- 21 And Samuel heard all the words of the people, and he rehearsed them in the ears of Jehovah.
- 22 And Jehovah said to Samuel, Hearken unto their voice, and make them a king. And Samuel said unto the men of Israel, Go ye every man unto his city.

- 
- 4- Samuel's victory over the Philistines (7.)
- a- Samuel leads Israel from Idolatry. vs. 1-6
- b- Samuel leads Israel in victory over Philistines. vs. 7-14  
While Samuel prayed - the LORD fought the battle.
- c- Samuel has-a circuit judgeship. vs. 15-17  
From Bethel to Gilgal to Mizpeh back to Ramah
- E- Israel's demand for a king. (8.)
- 1- The evil judgeships of Samuel's sons. vs. 1-3  
They perverted judgment.
- 2- Israel's purpose in seeking a king. vs. 4-8
- a- We want to be like the other nations (sound familiar?). vs. 5  
A very syncretistic movement that is more pronounced today.
- b- They reject the LORD'S rule!!! vs. 7
- 3- Samuel's warning concerning a king. vs. 9-18  
A King will make large demands on you.
- 4- The Lord acquiesces to give them a king. vs. 22  
Note the warning in Deu 17:14-20.  
Saul selected after the people rejected the LORD.

## 1 Samuel 9

- 1 ¶ Now there was a man of Benjamin, whose name was Kish, the son of Abiel, the son of Zeror, the son of Becorath, the son of Aphiah, the son of a Benjamite, a mighty man of *{1}* valor. *{1} Or wealth*
- 2 And he had a son, whose name was Saul, a *{1}* young man and a goodly: and there was not among the children of Israel a goodlier person than he: from his shoulders and upward he was higher than any of the people. *{1} Or choice*
- 3 ¶ And the asses of Kish, Saul's father, were lost. And Kish said to Saul his son, Take now one of the servants with thee, and arise, go seek the asses.
- 4 And he passed through the hill-country of Ephraim, and passed through the land of Shalishah, but they found them not: then they passed through the land of Shaalim, and there they were not: and he passed through the land of the Benjamites, but they found them not.
- 5 When they were come to the land of Zuph, Saul said to his servant that was with him, Come, and let us return, lest my father leave off caring for the asses, and be anxious for us.
- 6 And he said unto him, Behold now, there is in this city a man of God, and he is a man that is held in honor; all that he saith cometh surely to pass: now let us go thither; peradventure he can tell us concerning our journey whereon we go.
- 7 Then said Saul to his servant, But, behold, if we go, what shall we bring the man? for the bread is spent in our vessels, and there is not a present to bring to the man of God: what have we?
- 8 And the servant answered Saul again, and said, Behold, I have in my hand the fourth part of a shekel of silver: that will I give to the man of God, to tell us our way.
- 9 (Beforetime in Israel, when a man went to inquire of God, thus he said, Come, and let us go to the seer; for he that is now called a Prophet was beforetime called a Seer.)
- 10 Then said Saul to his servant, Well said; come, let us go. So they went unto the city where the man of God was.
- 11 ¶ As they went up the ascent to the city, they found young maidens going out to draw water, and said unto them, Is the seer here?
- 12 And they answered them, and said, He is; behold, *he is* before thee: make haste now, for he is come to-day into the city; for the people have a sacrifice to-day in the high place:
- 13 as soon as ye are come into the city, ye shall straightway find him, before he goeth up to the high place to eat; for the people will not eat until he come, because he doth bless the sacrifice; *and* afterwards they eat that are bidden. Now therefore get you up; for at this time ye shall find him.
- 14 And they went up to the city; *and* as they came within the city, behold, Samuel came out toward them, to go up to the high place.
- 15 Now Jehovah had *{1}* revealed unto Samuel a day before Saul came, saying, *{1} Heb uncovered the ear of Samuel*
- 16 To-morrow about this time I will send thee a man out of the land of Benjamin, and thou shalt anoint him to be *{1}* prince over my people Israel; and he shall save my people out of the hand of the Philistines: for I have looked upon my people, because their cry is come unto me. *{1} Or leader*
- 17 And when Samuel saw Saul, Jehovah *{1}* said unto him, Behold, the man *{2}* of whom I spake to thee! this same shall have authority over my people. *{1} Heb answered him 2) Or of whom I said unto thee, This same etc*
- 18 ¶ Then Saul drew near to Samuel in the gate, and said, Tell me, I pray thee, where the seer's house is.
- 19 And Samuel answered Saul, and said, I am the seer; go up before me unto the high place, for ye shall eat with me to-day: and in the morning I will let thee go, and will tell thee all that is in thy heart.
- 20 And as for thine asses that were lost three days ago, set not thy mind on them; for they are found. And *{1}* for whom is all that is desirable in Israel? Is it not for thee, and for all thy father's house? *{1} Or on whom is all the desire of Israel? It is not on thee, and on all etc?*
- 21 And Saul answered and said, Am not I a Benjamite, of the smallest of the tribes of Israel? and my family the least of all the families of the *{1}* tribe of Benjamin? wherefore then speakest thou to me after this manner? *{1} Heb tribes*
- 22 And Samuel took Saul and his servant, and brought them into the guest-chamber, and made them sit in the chiefest place among them that were bidden, who were about thirty persons.
- 23 And Samuel said unto the cook, Bring the portion which I gave thee, of which I said unto thee, Set it by thee.
- 24 And the cook took up the *{1}* thigh, and that which was upon it, and set it before Saul. And *Samuel* said, Behold, that which hath been reserved! set it before thee and eat; because unto the appointed time hath it been kept for thee, *{2}* for I said, I have invited the people. So Saul did eat with Samuel that

day. {1} Or shoulder 2) Heb saying}

- 25 And when they were come down from the high place into the city, he communed with Saul upon the housetop.
- 26 And they arose early: and it came to pass about the spring of the day, that Samuel called to Saul on the housetop, saying, Up, that I may send thee away. And Saul arose, and they went out both of them, he and Samuel, abroad.
- 27 As they were going down at the end of the city, Samuel said to Saul, Bid the servant pass on before us (and he passed on), but stand thou still {1} first, that I may cause thee to hear the word of God. {1} Heb to-day}
- 

## II. THE RISE AND RULE OF SAUL. (9.-15.)

### A- The selection of Saul. (9.-10.)

#### 1- Saul introduced (9.)

- a- A choice man with great potential. vs. 1-2  
Tribe of Benjamin, from Gibeah, taller and more handsome than any.
- b- He providentially meets Samuel. vs. 3-20  
Out looking for lost animals.
- c- His initial humility noted. vs 21  
Note: 1 Co 1:26-31.

**1 Samuel 10**

- 1 ¶ Then Samuel took the vial of oil, and poured it upon his head, and kissed him, and said, Is it not that Jehovah hath anointed thee to be prince over his inheritance?
- 2 When thou art departed from me to-day, then thou shalt find two men by Rachel's sepulchre, in the border of Benjamin at Zelzah; and they will say unto thee, The asses which thou wentest to seek are found; and, lo, thy father hath left off caring for the asses, and is anxious for you, saying, What shall I do for my son?
- 3 Then shalt thou go on forward from thence, and thou shalt come to the {1} oak of Tabor; and there shall meet thee there three men going up to God to Beth-el, one carrying three kids, and another carrying three loaves of bread, and another carrying a {2} bottle of wine: {1} Or terebinth 2) Or skin}
- 4 and they will salute thee, and give thee two loaves of bread, which thou shalt receive of their hand.
- 5 After that thou shalt come to {1} the hill of God, where is the garrison of the Philistines: and it shall come to pass, when thou art come thither to the city, that thou shalt meet a band of prophets coming down from the high place with a psaltery, and a timbrel, and a pipe, and a harp, before them; and they will be prophesying: {1} Or Gibeah}
- 6 and the Spirit of Jehovah will come mightily upon thee, and thou shalt prophesy with them, and shalt be turned into another man.
- 7 And {1} let it be, when these signs are come unto thee, {2} that thou do as occasion shall serve thee; for God is with thee. {1} Heb it shall come to pass, that when these signs etc 2) Heb do for thee as thy hand shall find}
- 8 And thou shalt go down before me to Gilgal; and, behold, I will come down unto thee, to offer burnt-offerings, and to sacrifice sacrifices of peace-offerings: seven days shalt thou tarry, till I come unto thee, and show thee what thou shalt do.
- 9 ¶ And it was so, that, when he had turned his back to go from Samuel, God {1} gave him another heart: and all those signs came to pass that day. {1} Heb turned}
- 10 And when they came thither to {1} the hill, behold, a band of prophets met him; and the Spirit of God came mightily upon him, and he prophesied among them. {1} Or Gibeah }
- 11 And it came to pass, when all that knew him beforetime saw that, behold, he prophesied with the prophets, then the people said one to another, What is this that is come unto the son of Kish? Is Saul also among the prophets?
- 12 And one of the same place answered and said, And who is their father? Therefore it became a proverb, Is Saul also among the prophets?
- 13 And when he had made an end of prophesying, he came to the high place.
- 14 And Saul's uncle said unto him and to his servant, Whither went ye? And he said, To seek the asses; and when we saw that they were not found, we came to Samuel.
- 15 And Saul's uncle said, Tell me, I pray thee, what Samuel said unto you.
- 16 And Saul said unto his uncle, He told us plainly that the asses were found. But concerning the matter of the kingdom, whereof Samuel spake, he told him not.
- 17 ¶ And Samuel called the people together unto Jehovah to Mizpah;
- 18 and he said unto the children of Israel, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, I brought up Israel out of Egypt, and I delivered you out of the hand of the Egyptians, and out of the hand of all the kingdoms that oppressed you:
- 19 but ye have this day rejected your God, who himself saveth you out of all your calamities and your distresses; and ye have said unto him, Nay, but set a king over us. Now therefore present yourselves before Jehovah by your tribes, and by your thousands.
- 20 So Samuel brought all the tribes of Israel near, and the tribe of Benjamin was taken.
- 21 And he brought the tribe of Benjamin near by their families; and the family of the Matrites was taken; and Saul the son of Kish was taken: but when they sought him, he could not be found.
- 22 Therefore they asked of Jehovah further, {1} Is there yet a man to come hither? And Jehovah answered, Behold, he hath hid himself among the baggage. {1} Or Is the man yet come hither?}
- 23 And they ran and fetched him thence; and when he stood among the people, he was higher than any of the people from his shoulders and upward.
- 24 And Samuel said to all the people, See ye him whom Jehovah hath chosen, that there is none like him along all the people? And all the people shouted, and said, Long live the king.
- 25 Then Samuel told the people the manner of the kingdom, and wrote it in {1} a book, and laid it up

- before Jehovah. And Samuel sent all the people away, every man to his house. *{1} Or the}*
- 26 And Saul also went to his house to Gibeah; and there went with him the *{1}* host, whose hearts God had touched. *{1} Or, men of valor}*
- 27 But certain worthless fellows said, How shall this man save us? And they despised him, and brought him no present. *{1}* But he held his peace. *{1} Or But he was as though he had been deaf.}*
- 

- |    |  |           |
|----|--|-----------|
| 2- | <u>Saul anointed king of Israel</u>        | (10.)     |
| a- | He is anointed and empowered.              | vs. 1-16  |
|    | Is Saul born again?                        | vs. 9     |
| b- | He is presented to Israel as God's choice. | vs. 17-25 |
| c- | He takes leadership at his home in Gibeah. | vs. 26-27 |
- 

Because of length of text, Ch. 11 & 12 are backed up.

## 1 Samuel 11

- 1 ¶ Then Nahash the Ammonite came up, and encamped against Jabesh-gilead: and all the men of Jabesh said unto Nahash, Make a covenant with us, and we will serve thee.
- 2 And Nahash the Ammonite said unto them, On this condition will I make it with you, that all your right eyes be put out; and I will lay it for a reproach upon all Israel.
- 3 And the elders of Jabesh said unto him, Give us seven days' respite, that we may send messengers unto all the borders of Israel; and then, if there be none to save us, we will come out to thee.
- 4 Then came the messengers to Gibeah of Saul, and spake these words in the ears of the people: and all the people lifted up their voice, and wept.
- 5 ¶ And, behold, Saul came following the oxen out of the field; and Saul said, What aileth the people that they weep? And they told him the words of the men of Jabesh.
- 6 And the Spirit of God came mightily upon Saul when he heard those words, and his anger was kindled greatly.
- 7 And he took a yoke of oxen, and cut them in pieces, and sent them throughout all the borders of Israel by the hand of messengers, saying, Whosoever cometh not forth after Saul and after Samuel, so shall it be done unto his oxen. And *{1}* the dread of Jehovah fell on the people, and they came out as one man. *{1} Or a terror from Jehovah}*
- 8 And he numbered them in Bezek; and the children of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand.
- 9 And they said unto the messengers that came, Thus shall ye say unto the men of Jabesh-gilead, To-morrow, by the time the sun is hot, ye shall have deliverance. And the messengers came and told the men of Jabesh; and they were glad.
- 10 Therefore the men of Jabesh said, To-morrow we will come out unto you, and ye shall do with us all that seemeth good unto you.
- 11 And it was so on the morrow, that Saul put the people in three companies; and they came into the midst of the camp in the morning watch, and smote the Ammonites until the heat of the day: and it came to pass, that they that remained were scattered, so that not two of them were left together.
- 12 ¶ And the people said unto Samuel, Who is he that said, Shall Saul reign over us? bring the men, that we may put them to death.
- 13 And Saul said, There shall not a man be put to death this day; for to-day Jehovah hath wrought *{1}* deliverance in Israel. *{1} Heb salvation}*
- 14 Then said Samuel to the people, Come, and let us go to Gilgal, and renew the kingdom there.
- 15 And all the people went to Gilgal; and there they made Saul king before Jehovah in Gilgal; and there they offered sacrifices of peace-offerings before Jehovah; and there Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced greatly.

## 1 Samuel 12

- 1 ¶ And Samuel said unto all Israel, Behold, I have hearkened unto your voice in all that ye said unto me, and have made a king over you.
- 2 And now, behold, the king walketh before you; and I am old and grayheaded; and, behold, my sons are with you: and I have walked before you from my youth unto this day.
- 3 Here I am: witness against me before Jehovah, and before his anointed: whose ox have I taken? or whose ass have I taken? or whom have I defrauded? whom have I oppressed? or of whose hand have I taken a *{1}* ransom *{2}* to blind mine eyes therewith? and I will restore it you. *{1}* Or bribe 2) Or that I should hide mine eyes at him
- 4 And they said, Thou hast not defrauded us, nor oppressed us, neither hast thou taken aught of any man's hand.
- 5 And he said unto them, Jehovah is witness against you, and his anointed is witness this day, that ye have not found aught in my hand. And they said, He is witness.
- 6 ¶ And Samuel said unto the people, It is Jehovah that *{1}* appointed Moses and Aaron, and that brought your fathers up out of the land of Egypt. *{1}* Or made
- 7 Now therefore stand still, that I may plead with you before Jehovah concerning all the righteous acts of Jehovah, which he did to you and to your fathers.
- 8 When Jacob was come into Egypt, and your fathers cried unto Jehovah, then Jehovah sent Moses and Aaron, who brought forth your fathers out of Egypt, and made them to dwell in this place.
- 9 But they forgot Jehovah their God; and he sold them into the hand of Sisera, captain of the host of Hazor, and into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the king of Moab; and they fought against them.
- 10 And they cried unto Jehovah, and said, We have sinned, because we have forsaken Jehovah, and have served the Baalim and the Ashtaroth: but now deliver us out of the hand of our enemies, and we will serve thee.
- 11 And Jehovah sent Jerubbaal, and *{1}* Bedan, and Jephthah, and Samuel, and delivered you out of the hand of your enemies on every side; and ye dwelt in safety. *{1}* According to Sept and Syr Barak
- 12 And when ye saw that Nahash the king of the children of Ammon came against you, ye said unto me, Nay, but a king shall reign over us; when Jehovah your God was your king.
- 13 Now therefore behold the king whom ye have chosen, and whom ye have asked for: and, behold, Jehovah hath set a king over you.
- 14 If ye will fear Jehovah, and serve him, and hearken unto his voice, and not rebel against the commandment of Jehovah, *{1}* and both ye and also the king that reigneth over you be followers of Jehovah your God, *well*: *{1}* Or then shall both ye...Jehovah your God: but etc
- 15 but if ye will not hearken unto the voice of Jehovah, but rebel against the commandment of Jehovah, then will the hand of Jehovah be against you, as it was against your fathers.
- 16 ¶ Now therefore stand still and see this great thing, which Jehovah will do before your eyes.
- 17 Is it not wheat harvest to-day? I will call unto Jehovah, that he may send thunder and rain; and ye shall know and see that your wickedness is great, which ye have done in the sight of Jehovah, in asking you a king.
- 18 So Samuel called unto Jehovah; and Jehovah sent thunder and rain that day: and all the people greatly feared Jehovah and Samuel.
- 19 And all the people said unto Samuel, Pray for thy servants unto Jehovah thy God, that we die not; for we have added unto all our sins *this* evil, to ask us a king.
- 20 And Samuel said unto the people, Fear not; ye have indeed done all this evil; yet turn not aside from following Jehovah, but serve Jehovah with all your heart:
- 21 and turn ye not aside; for *then would ye go* after vain things which cannot profit nor deliver, for they are vain.
- 22 For Jehovah will not forsake his people for his great name's sake, because it hath pleased Jehovah to make you a people unto himself.
- 23 Moreover as for me, far be it from me that I should sin against Jehovah in ceasing to pray for you: but I will instruct you in the good and the right way.
- 24 Only fear Jehovah, and serve him in truth with all your heart; for consider how great things he hath done for you.
- 25 But if ye shall still do wickedly, ye shall be consumed, both ye and your king.



**B- The victory and confirmation of Saul. (11.)**

United under the leadership of Saul.

- 1- The Ammonites threaten Jabesh-Gilead. vs. 1-4  
Surrender terms too high - Right eye out of each man.
- 2- Saul recruits large army to slay Ammon. vs. 5-11
- 3- Saul refuses revenge. vs. 12-13
- 4- Saul's official inauguration at Gilgal. vs. 14-15

**C- The final address of Samuel. (12.)**

- 1- He defends his personal character and God's leading. vs. 1-11  
He hasn't used his office for personal gain!  
Could our Religious and Political officials learn from this?
- 2- The desire for a king seen as rejection of the Lord. vs. 12-19  
The LORD was your King, but now, here is the king you have chosen!
- 3- The assurance of the Lord's care if obedient. vs. 20-25  
Don't turn aside! Reminded them of the Covenant.

**1 Samuel 13**

- 1 ¶ Saul was *{1}* forty years old when he began to reign; and when he had reigned two years over Israel, *{1}*  
*The number is lacking in the Hebrew text, and is supplied conjecturally.*
- 2 Saul chose him three thousand men of Israel, whereof two thousand were with Saul in Michmash and in the mount of Beth-el, and a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin: and the rest of the people he sent every man to his tent.
- 3 And Jonathan smote the garrison of the Philistines that was in Geba: and the Philistines heard of it. And Saul blew the trumpet throughout all the land, saying, Let the Hebrews hear.
- 4 And all Israel heard say that Saul had smitten the garrison of the Philistines, and also that Israel was had in abomination with the Philistines. And the people were gathered together after Saul to Gilgal.
- 5 And the Philistines assembled themselves together to fight with Israel, thirty thousand chariots, and six thousand horsemen, and people as the sand which is on the sea-shore in multitude: and they came up, and encamped in Michmash, eastward of Beth-aven.
- 6 When the men of Israel saw that they were in a strait (for the people were distressed), then the people did hide themselves in caves, and in thickets, and in rocks, and in coverts, and in *{1}* pits. *{1}* Or cisterns
- 7 Now some of the Hebrews had gone over the Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead; but as for Saul, he was yet in Gilgal, and all the people followed him trembling.
- 8 ¶ And he tarried seven days, according to the set time that Samuel *had appointed*: but Samuel came not to Gilgal; and the people were scattered from him.
- 9 And Saul said, Bring hither the burnt-offering to me, and the peace-offerings. And he offered the burnt-offering.
- 10 And it came to pass that, as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt-offering, behold, Samuel came; and Saul went out to meet him, that he might *{1}* salute him. *{1}* Or bless
- 11 And Samuel said, What hast thou done? And Saul said, Because I saw that the people were scattered from me, and that thou camest not within the days appointed, and that the Philistines assembled themselves together at Michmash;
- 12 therefore said I, Now will the Philistines come down upon me to Gilgal, and I have not entreated the favor of Jehovah: I forced myself therefore, and offered the burnt-offering.
- 13 And Samuel said to Saul, Thou hast done foolishly; thou hast not kept the commandment of Jehovah thy God, which he commanded thee: for now would Jehovah have established thy kingdom upon Israel for ever.
- 14 But now thy kingdom shall not continue: Jehovah hath sought him a man after his own heart, and Jehovah hath appointed him to be prince over his people, because thou hast not kept that which Jehovah commanded thee.
- 15 ¶ And Samuel arose, and gat him up from Gilgal unto Gibeah of Benjamin. And Saul numbered the people that were present with him, about six hundred men.
- 16 And Saul, and Jonathan his son, and the people that were present with them, abode in Geba of Benjamin: but the Philistines encamped in Michmash.
- 17 And the spoilers came out of the camp of the Philistines in three companies: one company turned unto the way that leadeth to Ophrah, unto the land of Shual;
- 18 and another company turned the way to Beth-horon; and another company turned the way of the border that looketh down upon the valley of Zeboim toward the wilderness.
- 19 Now there was no smith found throughout all the land of Israel; for the Philistines said, Lest the Hebrews make them swords or spears:
- 20 but all the Israelites went down to the Philistines, to sharpen every man his share, and his coulter, and his axe, and his mattock;
- 21 *{1}* yet they had a file for the mattocks, and for the coulters, and for the forks, and for the axes, and to set the goads. *{1}* Or when the edges of the mattocks...and of the axes were blunt; The Hebrew text is obscure.
- 22 So it came to pass in the day of battle, that there was neither sword nor spear found in the hand of any of the people that were with Saul and Jonathan: but with Saul and with Jonathan his son was there found.
- 23 And the garrison of the Philistines went out unto the pass of Michmash.

D- The rejection of Saul. (13. - 15.)

The test of Saul: Trust the Lord or resort to fleshly methods.

- 1- Saul's initial error. (13.)
- a- Israel is driven beyond Jordan by Philistines. vs. 1-7
- b- Saul's impatience with Samuel. vs. 8-12  
He assumes Samuel's role as Prophet.
- c- Saul's loss of the kingdom. vs. 13-23

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 14 is backed up.

**1 Samuel 14**

- 1 ¶ Now it fell upon a day, that Jonathan the son of Saul said unto the young man that bare his armor, Come, and let us go over to the Philistines' garrison, that is on yonder side. But he told not his father.
- 2 And Saul abode in the uttermost part of Gibeah under the pomegranate-tree which is in Migron: and the people that were with him were about six hundred men;
- 3 and Ahijah, the son of Ahitub, Ichabod's brother, the son of Phinehas, the son of Eli, the priest of Jehovah in Shiloh, wearing an ephod. And the people knew not that Jonathan was gone.
- 4 And between the passes, by which Jonathan sought to go over unto the Philistines' garrison, there was a rocky crag on the one side, and a rocky crag on the other side: and the name of the one was Bozez, and the name of the other Seneh.
- 5 The one crag rose up on the north in front of Michmash, and the other on the south in front of Geba.
- 6 And Jonathan said to the young man that bare his armor, Come, and let us go over unto the garrison of these uncircumcised: it may be that Jehovah will work for us; for there is no restraint to Jehovah to save by many or by few.
- 7 And his armorbearer said unto him, Do all that is in thy heart: turn thee, behold, I am with thee according to thy heart.
- 8 Then said Jonathan, Behold, we will pass over unto the men, and we will disclose ourselves unto them.
- 9 If they say thus unto us, Tarry until we come to you; then we will stand still in our place, and will not go up unto them.
- 10 But if they say thus, Come up unto us; then we will go up; for Jehovah hath delivered them into our hand: and this shall be the sign unto us.
- 11 And both of them disclosed themselves unto the garrison of the Philistines: and the Philistines said, Behold, the Hebrews come forth out of the holes where they had hid themselves.
- 12 And the men of the garrison answered Jonathan and his armorbearer, and said, Come up to us, and we will show you a thing. And Jonathan said unto his armorbearer, Come up after me; for Jehovah hath delivered them into the hand of Israel.
- 13 And Jonathan climbed up upon his hands and upon his feet, and his armorbearer after him: and they fell before Jonathan; and his armorbearer slew them after him.
- 14 And that first slaughter, which Jonathan and his armorbearer made, was about twenty men, within as it were {1} half a furrow's length in an acre of land. {1} Or half an acre of land}
- 15 And there was a trembling in the camp, in the field, and among all the people; the garrison, and the spoilers, they also trembled; and the earth quaked: so there was {1} an exceeding great trembling. {1} Heb a trembling of God}
- 16 ¶ And the watchmen of Saul in Gibeah of Benjamin looked; and, behold, the multitude melted away, and they went *hither* and thither.
- 17 Then said Saul unto the people that were with him, Number now, and see who is gone from us. And when they had numbered, behold, Jonathan and his armorbearer were not there.
- 18 And Saul said unto Ahijah, {1} Bring hither the ark of God. For the ark of God was *there* at that time {2} with the children of Israel. {1} Some editions of Sept have Bring hither the ephod. For he wore the ephod at that time before Israel. 2) Heb and}
- 19 And it came to pass, while Saul talked unto the priest, that the tumult that was in the camp of the Philistines went on and increased: and Saul said unto the priest, Withdraw thy hand.
- 20 And Saul and all the people that were with him were gathered together, and came to the battle: and, behold,

- every man's sword was against his fellow, *and there was a very great discomfiture.*
- 21 Now the Hebrews that were with the Philistines as beforetime, and that went up with them *{1}* into the camp, *from the country* round about, even they also *turned* to be with the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan. *{1}* *Or in the camp, round about}*
- 22 Likewise all the men of Israel that had hid themselves in the hill-country of Ephraim, when they heard that the Philistines fled, even they also followed hard after them in the battle.
- 23 So Jehovah saved Israel that day: and the battle passed over by Beth-aven.
- 24 ¶ And the men of Israel were distressed that day; for Saul had adjured the people, saying, Cursed be the man that eateth any food until it be evening, and I be avenged on mine enemies. So none of the people tasted food.
- 25 And all *{1}* the people came into the forest; and there was honey upon the ground. *{1}* *Heb the land}*
- 26 And when the people were come unto the forest, behold, *{1}* the honey dropped: but no man put his hand to his mouth; for the people feared the oath. *{1}* *Or a stream of honey }*
- 27 But Jonathan heard not when his father charged the people with the oath: wherefore he put forth the end of the rod that was in his hand, and dipped it in the honeycomb, and put his hand to his mouth; and his eyes were enlightened.
- 28 Then answered one of the people, and said, Thy father straitly charged the people with an oath, saying, Cursed be the man that eateth food this day. And the people were faint.
- 29 Then said Jonathan, My father hath troubled the land: see, I pray you, how mine eyes have been enlightened, because I tasted a little of this honey.
- 30 How much more, if haply the people had eaten freely to-day of the spoil of their enemies which they found? *{1}* for now hath there been no great slaughter among the Philistines. *{1}* *Or for had there not been now a much greater slaughter etc?}*
- 31 And they smote of the Philistines that day from Michmash to Aijalon. And the people were very faint;
- 32 and the people flew upon the spoil, and took sheep, and oxen, and calves, and slew them on the ground; and the people did eat them with the blood.
- 33 Then they told Saul, saying, Behold, the people sin against Jehovah, in that they eat with the blood. And he said, ye have dealt treacherously: roll a great stone unto me this day.
- 34 And Saul said, Disperse yourselves among the people, and say unto them, Bring me hither every man his ox, and every man his sheep, and slay them here, and eat; and sin not against Jehovah in eating with the blood. And all the people brought every man his ox with him that night, and slew them there.
- 35 And Saul built an altar unto Jehovah: the same was the first altar that he built unto Jehovah.
- 36 ¶ And Saul said, Let us go down after the Philistines by night, and take spoil among them until the morning light, and let us not leave a man of them. And they said, Do whatsoever seemeth good unto thee. Then said the priest, Let us draw near hither unto God.
- 37 And Saul asked counsel of God, Shall I go down after the Philistines? wilt thou deliver them into the hand of Israel? But he answered him not that day.
- 38 And Saul said, Draw nigh hither, all ye *{1}* chiefs of the people; and know and see wherein this sin hath been this day. *{1}* *Heb corners}*
- 39 For, as Jehovah liveth, who saveth Israel, though it be in Jonathan my son, he shall surely die. But there was not a man among all the people that answered him.
- 40 Then said he unto all Israel, Be ye on one side, and I and Jonathan my son will be on the other side. And the people said unto Saul, Do what seemeth good unto thee.
- 41 Therefore Saul said unto Jehovah, the God of Israel, *{1}* Show the right. And Jonathan and Saul were taken *by lot*; but the people escaped. *{1}* *Or Give a perfect lot}*
- 42 And Saul said, Cast *lots* between me and Jonathan my son. And Jonathan was taken.
- 43 Then Saul said to Jonathan, Tell me what thou hast done. And Jonathan told him, and said, I did certainly taste a little honey with the end of the rod that was in my hand; and, lo, I must die.
- 44 And Saul said, God do so and more also; for thou shalt surely die, Jonathan.
- 45 And the people said unto Saul, Shall Jonathan die, who hath wrought this great salvation in Israel? Far from it: as Jehovah liveth, there shall not one hair of his head fall to the ground; for he hath wrought with God this day. So the people *{1}* rescued Jonathan, that he died not. *{1}* *Heb ransomed}*
- 46 Then Saul went up from following the Philistines; and the Philistines went to their own place.
- 47 ¶ Now when Saul had taken the kingdom over Israel, he fought against all his enemies on every side, against Moab, and against the children of Ammon, and against Edom, and against the kings of Zobah, and against the Philistines: and whithersoever he turned himself, he put *them* to the worse.
- 48 And he did valiantly, and smote the Amalekites, and delivered Israel out of the hands of them that despoiled them.
- 49 Now the sons of Saul were Jonathan, and Ishvi, and Malchi-shua; and the names of his two daughters were these: the name of the first-born Merab, and the name of the younger Michal:
- 50 and the name of Saul's wife was Ahinoam the daughter of Ahimaaz. And the name of the captain of his host was

Abner the son of Ner, Saul's uncle.

51 And Kish was the father of Saul; and Ner the father of Abner was the son of Abiel.

52 And there was sore war against the Philistines all the days of Saul: and when Saul saw any mighty man, or any valiant man, he *{1}* took him unto him. *{1}* *Heb gathered }*

---

2- Saul's foolish action and Jonathan's courage. (14.)

- a- Jonathan's ("Man of God") lone probe and victory. vs. 1-23
- b- Saul's foolish order. vs. 24-35  
"No eating until victory. Note vs.32, people ate meat with the blood.
- c- Jonathan is spared. vs. 36-46
- d- Saul's constant warfare. vs. 47-52

**1 Samuel 15**

- 1 ¶ And Samuel said unto Saul, Jehovah sent me to anoint thee to be king over his people, over Israel: now therefore hearken thou unto the voice of the words of Jehovah.
- 2 Thus saith Jehovah of hosts, I {1} have marked that which Amalek did to Israel, how he set himself against him in the way, when he came up out of Egypt. {1} Or will visit }
- 3 Now go and smite Amalek, and {1} utterly destroy all that they have, and spare them not; but slay both man and woman, infant and suckling, ox and sheep, camel and ass. {1} Heb devote}
- 4 And Saul summoned the people, and numbered them in Telaim, two hundred thousand footmen, and ten thousand men of Judah.
- 5 And Saul came to the city of Amalek, and {1} laid wait in the valley. {1} Or strove}
- 6 And Saul said unto the Kenites, Go, depart, get you down from among the Amalekites, lest I destroy you with them; for ye showed kindness to all the children of Israel, when they came up out of Egypt. So the Kenites departed from among the Amalekites.
- 7 And Saul smote the Amalekites, from Havilah as thou goest to Shur, that is before Egypt.
- 8 And he took Agag the king of the Amalekites alive, and {1} utterly destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword. {1} Heb devoted}
- 9 But Saul and the people spared Agag, and the best of the sheep, and of the oxen, and of the fatlings, and the lambs, and all that was good, and would not {1} utterly destroy them: but everything that was vile and refuse, that they {2} destroyed utterly. {1} Heb devote 2) Heb devoted}
- 10 ¶ Then came the word of Jehovah unto Samuel, saying,
- 11 It repenteth me that I have set up Saul to be king; for he is turned back from following me, and hath not performed my commandments. And Samuel was wroth; and he cried unto Jehovah all night.
- 12 And Samuel rose early to meet Saul in the morning; and it was told Samuel, saying, Saul came to Carmel, and, behold, he set him up a {1} monument, and turned, and passed on, and went down to Gilgal. {1} Heb hand}
- 13 And Samuel came to Saul; and Saul said unto him, Blessed be thou of Jehovah: I have performed the commandment of Jehovah.
- 14 And Samuel said, What meaneth then this bleating of the sheep in mine ears, and the lowing of the oxen which I hear?
- 15 And Saul said, They have brought them from the Amalekites: for the people spared the best of the sheep and of the oxen, to sacrifice unto Jehovah thy God; and the rest we have {1} utterly destroyed. {1} Heb devoted}
- 16 Then Samuel said unto Saul, Stay, and I will tell thee what Jehovah hath said to me this night. And he said unto him, Say on.
- 17 And Samuel said, {1} Though thou wast little in thine own sight, wast thou not made the head of the tribes of Israel? And Jehovah anointed thee king over Israel; {1} Or Though thou be little...art thou not head of the tribe of Israel?}
- 18 and Jehovah sent thee on a journey, and said, Go, and utterly destroy the sinners the Amalekites, and fight against them until they be consumed.
- 19 Wherefore then didst thou not obey the voice of Jehovah, but didst fly upon the spoil, and didst that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah?
- 20 And Saul said unto Samuel, Yea, I have obeyed the voice of Jehovah, and have gone the way which Jehovah sent me, and have brought Agag the king of Amalek, and have {1} utterly destroyed the Amalekites. {1} Heb devoted}
- 21 But the people took of the spoil, sheep and oxen, the chief of the devoted things, to sacrifice unto Jehovah thy God in Gilgal.
- 22 And Samuel said, Hath Jehovah as great delight in burnt-offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Jehovah? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams.
- 23 For rebellion is as the sin of {1} witchcraft, and stubbornness is as {2} idolatry and teraphim. Because thou hast rejected the word of Jehovah, he hath also rejected thee from being king. {1} Heb divination 2) Or iniquity}
- 24 ¶ And Saul said unto Samuel, I have sinned; for I have transgressed the commandment of Jehovah, and thy words, because I feared the people, and obeyed their voice.
- 25 Now therefore, I pray thee, pardon my sin, and turn again with me, that I may worship Jehovah.
- 26 And Samuel said unto Saul, I will not return with thee; for thou hast rejected the word of Jehovah, and

- Jehovah hath rejected thee from being king over Israel.
- 27 And as Samuel turned about to go away, *Saul* laid hold upon the skirt of his robe, and it rent.
- 28 And Samuel said unto him, Jehovah hath rent the kingdom of Israel from thee this day, and hath given it to a neighbor of thine, that is better than thou.
- 29 And also the {1} Strength of Israel will not lie nor repent; for he is not a man, that he should repent. {1} Or *Victory; Or Glory* }
- 30 Then he said, I have sinned: yet honor me now, I pray thee, before the elders of my people, and before Israel, and turn again with me, that I may worship Jehovah thy God.
- 31 So Samuel turned again after Saul; and Saul worshipped Jehovah.
- 32 ¶ Then said Samuel, Bring ye hither to me Agag the king of the Amalekites. And Agag came unto him cheerfully. And Agag said, Surely the bitterness of death is past.
- 33 And Samuel said, As thy sword hath made women childless, so shall thy mother be childless among women. And Samuel hewed Agag in pieces before Jehovah in Gilgal.
- 34 Then Samuel went to Ramah; and Saul went up to his house to Gibeah of Saul.
- 35 And Samuel came no more to see Saul until the day of his death; {1} for Samuel mourned for Saul: and Jehovah repented that he had made Saul king over Israel. {1} Or *but* }

- 3- Saul's partial obedience and hypocrisy. (15.)
- a- The Lord's command to destroy Amalekites. vs. 1-3
  - b- Samuel's grief at Saul's disobedience. vs. 4-11
  - c- Saul' s excuse and belated repentance. vs. 12-29
  - d- Saul seeks to retain some honor. vs. 30-35

**1 Samuel 16**

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah said unto Samuel, How long wilt thou mourn for Saul, seeing I have rejected him from being king over Israel? fill thy horn with oil, and go: I will send thee to Jesse the Beth-lehemite; for I have provided me a king among his sons.
- 2 And Samuel said, How can I go? if Saul hear it, he will kill me. And Jehovah said, Take a heifer with thee, and say, I am come to sacrifice to Jehovah.
- 3 And call Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show thee what thou shalt do: and thou shalt anoint unto me him whom I name unto thee.
- 4 And Samuel did that which Jehovah spake, and came to Beth-lehem. And the elders of the city came to meet him trembling, and said, Comest thou peaceably?
- 5 And he said, Peaceably; I am come to sacrifice unto Jehovah: sanctify yourselves, and come with me to the sacrifice. And he sanctified Jesse and his sons, and called them to the sacrifice.
- 6 ¶ And it came to pass, when they were come, that he looked on *{1}* Eliab, and said, Surely Jehovah's anointed is before him. *{1}* In 1 Ch 27:18 Elihu
- 7 But Jehovah said unto Samuel, Look not on his countenance, or on the height of his stature; because I have rejected him: for *Jehovah seeth* not as man seeth; for man looketh on the outward appearance, but Jehovah looketh on the heart.
- 8 Then Jesse called Abinadab, and made him pass before Samuel. And he said, Neither hath Jehovah chosen this.
- 9 Then Jesse made *{1}* Shammah to pass by. And he said, Neither hath Jehovah chosen this. *{1}* In 2 Sa 13:3 Shimeah; In 1 Ch 2:13 Shimea
- 10 And Jesse made seven of his sons to pass before Samuel. And Samuel said unto Jesse, Jehovah hath not chosen these.
- 11 And Samuel said unto Jesse, Are here all thy children? And he said, There remaineth yet the youngest, and, behold, he is keeping the sheep. And Samuel said unto Jesse, Send and fetch him; for we will not sit *{1}* down till he come hither. *{1}* Heb around
- 12 And he sent, and brought him in. Now he was ruddy, and withal *{1}* of a beautiful countenance, and goodly to look upon. And Jehovah said, Arise, anoint him; for this is he. *{1}* Heb fair of eyes
- 13 Then Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren: and the Spirit of Jehovah came mightily upon David from that day forward. So Samuel rose up, and went to Ramah.
- 14 ¶ Now the Spirit of Jehovah departed from Saul, and an evil spirit from Jehovah *{1}* troubled him. *{1}* Or terrified
- 15 And Saul's servants said unto him, Behold now, an evil spirit from God troubleth thee.
- 16 Let our lord now command thy servants, that are before thee, to seek out a man who is a skilful player on the harp: and it shall come to pass, when the evil spirit from God is upon thee, that he shall play with his hand, and thou shalt be well.
- 17 And Saul said unto his servants, Provide me now a man that can play well, and bring him to me.
- 18 Then answered one of the young men, and said, Behold, I have seen a son of Jesse the Beth-lehemite, that is skilful in playing, and a mighty man of valor, and a man of war, and *{1}* prudent in *{2}* speech, and a comely person; and Jehovah is with him. *{1}* Or skilful 2) Or business
- 19 Wherefore Saul sent messengers unto Jesse, and said, Send me David thy son, who is with the sheep.
- 20 And Jesse took an ass *laden* with bread, and a *{1}* bottle of wine, and a kid, and sent them by David his son unto Saul. *{1}* Or skin
- 21 And David came to Saul, and stood before him: and he loved him greatly; and he became his armorbearer.
- 22 And Saul sent to Jesse, saying, Let David, I pray thee, stand before me; for he hath found favor in my sight.
- 23 And it came to pass, when the *evil* spirit from God was upon Saul, that David took the harp, and played with his hand: so Saul was refreshed, and was well, and the evil spirit departed from him.



### III. THE RISE AND EARLY ROLE OF DAVID. (16.-31.)

#### A- David's rise as a shepherd. (16.-17.)

1- He is anointed by Samuel vs. 1-13

a- Saul is rejected. vs. 1

b- Samuel instructed to anoint. vs.1 and 12

c- David the most unlikely, is God's choice. vs. 12

d- David is endued with the Spirit. vs. 13

e- The Spirit removed from Saul. vs.14

Note: David's request after his great sin' Psm 51:11.

A lying spirit given him Ref. 1Ki 22:19-23.

2- He serves Saul a a harpist. vs. 15-23

Harp = Lyre

Because of length of text, Ch. 17 is backed up.

#### 1 Samuel 17

- 1 ¶ Now the Philistines gathered together their armies to battle; and they were gathered together at Socoh, which belongeth to Judah, and encamped between Socoh and Azekah, in Ephes-dammim.
- 2 And Saul and the men of Israel were gathered together, and encamped in the vale of *{I}* Elah, and set the battle in array against the Philistines. *{I} Or the terebinth }*
- 3 And the Philistines stood on the mountain on the one side, and Israel stood on the mountain on the other side: and there was a valley between them.
- 4 And there went out a champion out of the camp of the Philistines, named Goliath, of Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span.
- 5 And he had a helmet of brass upon his head, and he was clad with a coat of mail; and the weight of the coat was five thousand shekels of brass.
- 6 And he had greaves of brass upon his legs, and a javelin of brass between his shoulders.
- 7 And the *{I}* staff of his spear was like a weaver's beam; and his spear's head *weighed* six hundred shekels of iron: and his shield-bearer went before him. *{I} Or according to another reading blade }*
- 8 And he stood and cried unto the *{I}* armies of Israel, and said unto them, Why are ye come out to set your battle in array? am not I a Philistine, and ye servants to Saul? choose you a man for you, and let him come down to me. *{I} Heb ranks (and so in verses 10, 21, 22, 26, etc) }*
- 9 If he be able to fight with me, and kill me, then will we be your servants; but if I prevail against him, and kill him, then shall ye be our servants, and serve us.
- 10 And the Philistine said, I *{I}* defy the armies of Israel this day; give me a man, that we may fight together. *{I} Or reproach }*
- 11 And when Saul and all Israel heard those words of the Philistine, they were dismayed, and greatly afraid.
- 12 ¶ Now David was the son of that Ephrathite of Beth-lehem-judah, whose name was Jesse; and he had eight sons: and the man was an old man in the days of Saul, stricken *in years* among men.
- 13 And the three eldest sons of Jesse had gone after Saul to the battle: and the names of his three sons that went to the battle were Eliab the first-born, and next unto him Abinadab, and the third Shammah.
- 14 And David was the youngest; and the three eldest followed Saul.
- 15 Now David went to and fro from Saul to feed his father's sheep at Beth-lehem.
- 16 And the Philistine drew near morning and evening, and presented himself forty days.
- 17 And Jesse said unto David his son, Take now for thy brethren an ephah of this parched grain, and these ten loaves, and carry *them* quickly to the camp to thy brethren;
- 18 and bring these ten cheeses unto the captain of their thousand, and look how thy brethren fare, and take their pledge.

- 19 Now Saul, and they, and all the men of Israel, {1} were in the vale of Elah, fighting with the Philistines. {1} Or are}
- 20 And David rose up early in the morning, and left the sheep with a keeper, and took, and went, as Jesse had commanded him; and he came to the {1} place of the wagons, as the host which was going forth to the {2} fight shouted for the battle. {1} Or *barricade* 2) Or *battle ground*}
- 21 And Israel and the Philistines put the battle in array, army against army.
- 22 And David left his baggage in the hand of the keeper of the baggage, and ran to the army, and came and saluted his brethren.
- 23 And as he talked with them, behold, there came up the champion, the Philistine of Gath, Goliath by name, out of the ranks of the Philistines, and spake according to the same words: and David heard them.
- 24 And all the men of Israel, when they saw the man, fled from him, and were sore afraid.
- 25 And the men of Israel said, Have ye seen this man that is come up? surely to {1} defy Israel is he come up: and it shall be, that the man who killeth him, the king will enrich him with great riches, and will give him his daughter, and make his father's house free in Israel. {1} Or *reproach*}
- 26 And David spake to the men that stood by him, saying, What shall be done to the man that killeth this Philistine, and taketh away the reproach from Israel? for who is this uncircumcised Philistine, that he should {1} defy the armies of the living God? {1} Or *reproach*}
- 27 And the people answered him after this manner, saying, So shall it be done to the man that killeth him.
- 28 And Eliab his eldest brother heard when he spake unto the men; and Eliab's anger was kindled against David, and he said, Why art thou come down? and with whom hast thou left those few sheep in the wilderness? I know thy pride, and the naughtiness of thy heart; for thou art come down that thou mightest see the battle.
- 29 And David said, What have I now done? {1} Is there not a cause? {1} Or *Was it not but a word?*}
- 30 And he turned away from him toward another, and spake after the same manner: and the people answered him again after the former manner.
- 31 ¶ And when the words were heard which David spake, they rehearsed them before Saul; and he sent for him.
- 32 And David said to Saul, Let no man's heart fail {1} because of him; thy servant will go and fight with this Philistine. {1} Or *within him*}
- 33 And Saul said to David, Thou art not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him; for thou art but a youth, and he a man of war from his youth.
- 34 And David said unto Saul, Thy servant was keeping his father's sheep; {1} and when there came a lion, or a bear, and took a lamb out of the flock, {1} Or *and there came a lion and a bear...and I went out etc*}
- 35 I went out after him, and smote him, and delivered it out of his mouth; and when he arose against me, I caught him by his beard, and smote him, and slew him.
- 36 Thy servant smote both the lion and the bear: and this uncircumcised Philistine shall be as one of them, seeing he hath {1} defied the armies of the living God. {1} Or *reproached*}
- 37 And David said, Jehovah that delivered me out of the paw of the lion, and out of the paw of the bear, he will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine. And Saul said unto David, Go, and Jehovah shall be with thee.
- 38 And Saul clad David with his apparel, and he put a helmet of brass upon his head, and he clad him with a coat of mail.
- 39 And David girded his sword upon his apparel, and he assayed to go; for he had not proved it. And David said unto Saul, I cannot go with these; for I have not proved them. And David put them off him.
- 40 ¶ And he took his staff in his hand, and chose him five smooth stones out of the {1} brook, and put them in the shepherd's bag which he had, even in his wallet; and his sling was in his hand: and he drew near to the Philistine. {1} Or *torrent bed*}
- 41 And the Philistine came on and drew near unto David; and the man that bare the shield went before him.
- 42 And when the Philistine looked about, and saw David, he disdained him; for he was but a youth, and ruddy, and withal of a fair countenance.
- 43 And the Philistine said unto David, Am I a dog, that thou comest to me with staves? And the Philistine cursed David by his gods.
- 44 And the Philistine said to David, Come to me, and I will give thy flesh unto the birds of the heavens, and to the beasts of the field.
- 45 Then said David to the Philistine, Thou comest to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a javelin: but I come to thee in the name of Jehovah of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast {1} defied. {1} Or *reproached*}
- 46 This day will Jehovah deliver thee into my hand; and I will smite thee, and take thy head from off thee; and I will give the dead bodies of the host of the Philistines this day unto the birds of the heavens, and to the wild beasts of the earth; that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel,
- 47 and that all this assembly may know that Jehovah saveth not with sword and spear: for the battle is Jehovah's, and he will give you into our hand.
- 48 ¶ And it came to pass, when the Philistine arose, and came and drew nigh to meet David, that David hastened,

- and ran toward the army to meet the Philistine.
- 49 And David put his hand in his bag, and took thence a stone, and slang it, and smote the Philistine in his forehead; and the stone sank into his forehead, and he fell upon his face to the earth.
- 50 So David prevailed over the Philistine with a sling and with a stone, and smote the Philistine, and slew him; but there was no sword in the hand of David.
- 51 Then David ran, and stood over the Philistine, and took his sword, and drew it out of the sheath thereof, and slew him, and cut off his head therewith. And when the Philistines saw that their *{1}* champion was dead, they fled. *{1} Or mighty man}*
- 52 And the men of Israel and of Judah arose, and shouted, and pursued the Philistines, until thou comest to *{1}* Gai, and to the gates of Ekron. And the wounded of the Philistines fell down by the way to *{2}* Shaaraim, even unto Gath, and unto Ekron. *{1} The Syr and some editions of Sept have Gath 2) Or the two gates}*
- 53 And the children of Israel returned from chasing after the Philistines, and they plundered their camp.
- 54 And David took the head of the Philistine, and brought it to Jerusalem; but he put his armor in his tent.
- 55 And when Saul saw David go forth against the Philistine, he said unto Abner, the captain of the host, Abner, whose son is this youth? And Abner said, As thy soul liveth, O king, I cannot tell.
- 56 And the king said, Inquire thou whose son the stripling is.
- 57 And as David returned from the slaughter of the Philistine, Abner took him, and brought him before Saul with the head of the Philistine in his hand.
- 58 And Saul said to him, Whose son art thou, thou young man? And David answered, I am the son of thy servant Jesse the Beth-lehemite.
- 

3- He slays Goliath. (17.)

- a- Israel is challenged by Goliath. vs. 1-11
- b- David challenges Goliath. vs. 12-37
- c- David demonstrates the power of God. vs 38-58

He has brothers. part of the Nephilim gene pool of Gen 6.<sup>3</sup>

**1 Samuel 18**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when he had made an end of speaking unto Saul, that the soul of Jonathan was knit with the soul of David, and Jonathan loved him as his own soul.
- 2 And Saul took him that day, and would let him go no more home to his father's house.
- 3 Then Jonathan and David made a covenant, because he loved him as his own soul.
- 4 And Jonathan stripped himself of the robe that was upon him, and gave it to David, and his apparel, even to his sword, and to his bow, and to his girdle.
- 5 And David *{1}* went out whithersoever Saul sent him, *and {2}* behaved himself wisely: and Saul set him over the men of war, and it was good in the sight of all the people, and also in the sight of Saul's servants. *{1} Or went out; whithersoever Saul sent him, he etc 2) Or prospered}*
- 6 ¶ And it came to pass as they came, when David returned from the slaughter of the *{1}* Philistine, that the women came out of all the cities of Israel, singing and dancing, to meet king Saul, with timbrels, with joy, and with *{2}* instruments of music. *{1} Or Philistines 2) Or triangles Or three-stringed instruments}*
- 7 And the women *{1}* sang one to another as they played, and said, Saul hath slain his thousands, And David his ten thousands. *{1} Or answered one another}*
- 8 And Saul was very wroth, and this saying displeased him; and he said, They have ascribed unto David ten thousands, and to me they have ascribed but thousands: and what can he have more but the kingdom?
- 9 And Saul eyed David from that day and forward.
- 10 And it came to pass on the morrow, that an evil spirit from God came mightily upon Saul, and he *{1}* prophesied in the midst of the house: and David played with his hand, as he did day by day. And Saul had his spear in his hand; *{1} Or raved}*
- 11 and Saul cast the spear; for he said, I will smite David even to the wall. And David avoided out of his presence twice.
- 12 ¶ And Saul was afraid of David, because Jehovah was with him, and was departed from Saul.
- 13 Therefore Saul removed him from him, and made him his captain over a thousand; and he went out and came in before the people.
- 14 And David *{1}* behaved himself wisely in all his ways; and Jehovah was with him. *{1} Or prospered}*
- 15 And when Saul saw that he behaved himself very wisely, he stood in awe of him.
- 16 But all Israel and Judah loved David; for he went out and came in before them.
- 17 And Saul said to David, Behold, my elder daughter Merab, her will I give thee to wife: only be thou valiant for me, and fight Jehovah's battles. For Saul said, Let not my hand be upon him, but let the hand of the Philistines be upon him.
- 18 And David said unto Saul, Who am I, and *{1}* what is my life, *or* my father's family in Israel, that I should be son-in-law to the king? *{1} Or who are my kinsfolk}*
- 19 But it came to pass at the time when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David, that she was given unto Adriel the Meholathite to wife.
- 20 And Michal, Saul's daughter, loved David: and they told Saul, and the thing pleased him.
- 21 And Saul said, I will give him her, that she may be a snare to him, and that the hand of the Philistines may be against him. Wherefore Saul said to David, Thou shalt this day be my son-in-law a second time.
- 22 And Saul commanded his servants, *saying*, Commune with David secretly, and say, Behold, the king hath delight in thee, and all his servants love thee: now therefore be the king's son-in-law.
- 23 And Saul's servants spake those words in the ears of David. And David said, Seemeth it to you a light thing to be the king's son-in-law, seeing that I am a poor man, and lightly esteemed?
- 24 And the servants of Saul told him, saying, On this manner spake David.
- 25 And Saul said, Thus shall ye say to David, The king desireth not any dowry, but a hundred foreskins of the Philistines, to be avenged of the king's enemies. Now Saul thought to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines.
- 26 And when his servants told David these words, it pleased David well to be the king's son-in-law. And the days were not expired;
- 27 and David arose and went, he and his men, and slew of the Philistines two hundred men; and David brought their foreskins, and they gave them in full number to the king, that he might be the king's son-in-law. And Saul gave him Michal his daughter to wife.

28 And Saul saw and knew that Jehovah was with David; and Michal, Saul's daughter, loved him.

29 And Saul was yet the more afraid of David; and Saul was David's enemy continually.

30 Then the princes of the Philistines went forth: and it came to pass, as often as they went forth, that David *{1}* behaved himself more wisely than all the servants of Saul; so that his name was much *{2}* set by. *{1} Or prospered more than 2) Heb precious}*

---

B- David's service as a courtier. (18.-19.)

1- David's friendship with Jonathan. vs. 18:1-4  
Both fought in the strength of the LORD.

2- Saul's jealousy and attempts to kill David. vs. 4-30

a- Casts javelin at him, twice. vs. 10-11

b- Requires David to slay 100 Phillistines, He slew 200.  
Required by Saul in order to marru Saul's daughter Michal.

**1 Samuel 19**

- 1 ¶ And Saul spake to Jonathan his son, and to all his servants, that they should slay David. But Jonathan, Saul's son, delighted much in David.
- 2 And Jonathan told David, saying, Saul my father seeketh to slay thee: now therefore, I pray thee, take heed to thyself in the morning, and abide in a secret place, and hide thyself:
- 3 and I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where thou art, and I will commune with my father of thee; and if I see aught, I will tell thee.
- 4 And Jonathan spake good of David unto Saul his father, and said unto him, Let not the king sin against his servant, against David; because he hath not sinned against thee, and because his works have been to thee-ward very good:
- 5 for he put his life in his hand, and smote the Philistine, and Jehovah wrought a great {1} victory for all Israel: thou sawest it, and didst rejoice; wherefore then wilt thou sin against innocent blood, to slay David without a cause? {1} *Heb salvation*}
- 6 And Saul hearkened unto the voice of Jonathan: and Saul sware, As Jehovah liveth, he shall not be put to death.
- 7 And Jonathan called David, and Jonathan showed him all those things. And Jonathan brought David to Saul, and he was in his presence, as beforetime.
- 8 ¶ And there was war again: and David went out, and fought with the Philistines, and slew them with a great slaughter; and they fled before him.
- 9 And {1} an evil spirit from Jehovah was upon Saul, as he sat in his house with his spear in his hand; and David was playing with his hand. {1} *Or the spirit of Jehovah was evil toward Saul*}
- 10 And Saul sought to smite David even to the wall with the spear; but he slipped away out of Saul's presence, and he smote the spear into the wall: and David fled, and escaped that night.
- 11 ¶ And Saul sent messengers unto David's house, to watch him, and to slay him in the morning: and Michal, David's wife, told him, saying, If thou save not thy life to-night, to-morrow thou wilt be slain.
- 12 So Michal let David down through the window: and he went, and fled, and escaped.
- 13 And Michal took the teraphim, and laid it in the bed, and put a {1} pillow of goats' hair at the head thereof, and covered it with the clothes. {1} *Or quilt; Or network*}
- 14 And when Saul sent messengers to take David, she said, He is sick.
- 15 And Saul sent the messengers to see David, saying, Bring him up to me in the bed, that I may slay him.
- 16 And when the messengers came in, behold, the teraphim was in the bed, with the {1} pillow of goats' hair at the head thereof. {1} *Or quilt; Or network*}
- 17 And Saul said unto Michal, Why hast thou deceived me thus, and let mine enemy go, so that he is escaped? And Michal answered Saul, He said unto me, Let me go; why should I kill thee?
- 18 ¶ Now David fled, and escaped, and came to Samuel to Ramah, and told him all that Saul had done to him. And he and Samuel went and dwelt in Naioth.
- 19 And it was told Saul, saying, Behold, David is at Naioth in Ramah.
- 20 And Saul sent messengers to take David: and when they saw the company of the prophets prophesying, and Samuel standing as head over them, the Spirit of God came upon the messengers of Saul, and they also prophesied.
- 21 And when it was told Saul, he sent other messengers, and they also prophesied. And Saul sent messengers again the third time, and they also prophesied.
- 22 Then went he also to Ramah, and came to the great {1} well that is in Secu: and he asked and said, Where are Samuel and David? And one said, Behold, they are at Naioth in Ramah. {1} *Or cistern*}
- 23 And he went thither to Naioth in Ramah: and the Spirit of God came upon him also, and he went on, and prophesied, until he came to Naioth in Ramah.
- 24 And he also stripped off his clothes, and he also prophesied before Samuel, and {1} lay down naked all that day and all that night. Wherefore they say, Is Saul also among the prophets? {1} *Or fell*}

- 3- David's flight from Saul to Samuel. (19.)
- a- Further jealousy brings third attempt by Saul. vs. 1-10
- b- David retreats to Samuel. vs. 11-20
- c- David is untouchable at Samuel's seminary. vs. 20-24

**1 Samuel 20**

- 1 ¶ And David fled from Naioth in Ramah, and came and said before Jonathan, What have I done? what is mine iniquity? and what is my sin before thy father, that he seeketh my life?
- 2 And he said unto him, Far from it; thou shalt not die: behold, my father doeth nothing either great or small, but that he *{1}* discloseth it unto me; and why should my father hide this thing from me? it is not so. *{1}* *Heb uncovereth mine ear*;
- 3 And David sware moreover, and said, Thy father knoweth well that I have found favor in thine eyes; and he saith, Let not Jonathan know this, lest he be grieved: but truly as Jehovah liveth, and as thy soul liveth, there is but a step between me and death.
- 4 Then said Jonathan unto David, *{1}* Whatsoever thy soul *{2}* desireth, I will even do it for thee. *{1}* *Or What doth thy soul desire, that I should do it for thee?* *2)* *Heb saith*;
- 5 And David said unto Jonathan, Behold, to-morrow is the new moon, and I should not fail to sit with the king at meat: but let me go, that I may hide myself in the field unto the third day at even.
- 6 If thy father miss me at all, then say, David earnestly asked leave of me that he might run to Beth-lehem his city; for it is the yearly sacrifice there for all the family.
- 7 If he say thus, It is well; thy servant shall have peace: but if he be wroth, then know that evil is determined by him.
- 8 Therefore deal kindly with thy servant; for thou hast brought thy servant into a covenant of Jehovah with thee: but if there be in me iniquity, slay me thyself; for why shouldest thou bring me to thy father?
- 9 ¶ And Jonathan said, Far be it from thee; for if I should at all know that evil were determined by my father to come upon thee, then would not I tell it thee?
- 10 Then said David to Jonathan, Who shall tell me if perchance thy father answer thee roughly?
- 11 And Jonathan said unto David, Come, and let us go out into the field. And they went out both of them into the field.
- 12 And Jonathan said unto David, Jehovah, the God of Israel, *be witness*: when I have sounded my father about this time to-morrow, *or* the third day, behold, if there be good toward David, shall I not then send unto thee, and disclose it unto thee?
- 13 Jehovah do so to Jonathan, and more also, should it please my father to do thee evil, if I disclose it not unto thee, and send thee away, that thou mayest go in peace: and Jehovah be with thee, as he hath been with my father.
- 14 And thou shalt not only while yet I live show me the lovingkindness of Jehovah, that I die not; but also thou shalt not cut off thy kindness from my house for ever; no, not when Jehovah hath cut off the enemies of David every one from the face of the earth.
- 16 So Jonathan made a covenant with the house of David, *saying*, And Jehovah will require it at the hand of David's enemies.
- 17 And Jonathan caused David to swear again, *{1}* for the love that he had to him; for he loved him as he loved his own soul. *{1}* *Or by his love toward him*;
- 18 Then Jonathan said unto him, To-morrow is the new moon: and thou wilt be missed, because thy seat will be *{1}* empty. *{1}* *Heb missed*;
- 19 And when thou hast stayed three days, thou shalt go down *{1}* quickly, and come to the place where thou didst hide thyself *{2}* when the business was in hand, and shalt remain by the stone Ezel. *{1}* *Heb greatly* *2)* *Heb in the day of the business*; See 1 Sa 19:2}
- 20 And I will shoot three arrows on the side thereof, as though I shot at a mark.
- 21 And, behold, I will send the lad, *saying*, Go, find the arrows. If I say unto the lad, Behold, the arrows are on this side of thee; take *{1}* them, and come; for there is peace to thee and *{2}* no hurt, as Jehovah liveth. *{1}* *Or him* *2)* *Heb not any thing*;
- 22 But if I say thus unto the boy, Behold, the arrows are beyond thee; go thy way; for Jehovah hath sent thee away.
- 23 And as touching the matter which thou and I have spoken of, behold, Jehovah is between thee and me for ever.
- 24 ¶ So David hid himself in the field: and when the new moon was come, the king sat him down to eat food.
- 25 And the king sat upon his seat, as at other times, even upon the seat by the wall; and Jonathan stood up, and Abner sat by Saul's side: but David's place was empty.



- 26 Nevertheless Saul spake not anything that day: for he thought, Something hath befallen him, he is not clean; surely he is not clean.
- 27 And it came to pass on the morrow after the new moon, *which was the second day*, that David's place was empty: and Saul said unto Jonathan his son, Wherefore cometh not the son of Jesse to meat, neither yesterday, nor to-day?
- 28 And Jonathan answered Saul, David earnestly asked leave of me to go to Beth-lehem:
- 29 and he said, Let me go, I pray thee; for our family hath a sacrifice in the city; and my brother, he hath commanded me *to be there*: and now, if I have found favor in thine eyes, let me get away, I pray thee, and see my brethren. Therefore he is not come unto the king's table.
- 30 Then Saul's anger was kindled against Jonathan, and he said unto him, Thou son of a perverse rebellious woman, do not I know that thou hast chosen the son of Jesse to thine own shame, and unto the shame of thy mother's nakedness?
- 31 For as long as the son of Jesse liveth upon the ground, thou shalt not be established, nor thy kingdom. Wherefore now send and fetch him unto me, for he *{1}* shall surely die. *{1} Or is worthy to die; Heb is a son of death;*
- 32 And Jonathan answered Saul his father, and said unto him, Wherefore should he be put to death? what hath he done?
- 33 And Saul cast his spear at him to smite him; whereby Jonathan knew that it was determined of his father to put David to death.
- 34 So Jonathan arose from the table in fierce anger, and did eat no food the second day of the month; for he was grieved for David, because his father had done him shame.
- 35 ¶ And it came to pass in the morning, that Jonathan went out into the field *{1}* at the time appointed with David, and a little lad with him. *{1} Or to the place;*
- 36 And he said unto his lad, Run, find now the arrows which I shoot. And as the lad ran, he shot an arrow *{1}* beyond him. *{1} Heb making it pass over him;*
- 37 And when the lad was come to the place of the arrow which Jonathan had shot, Jonathan cried after the lad, and said, Is not the arrow beyond thee?
- 38 And Jonathan cried after the lad, Make speed, haste, stay not. And Jonathan's lad gathered up the arrows, and came to his master.
- 39 But the lad knew not anything: only Jonathan and David knew the matter.
- 40 And Jonathan gave his weapons unto his lad, and said unto him, Go, carry them to the city.
- 41 And as soon as the lad was gone, David arose *{1}* out of *a place* toward the South, and fell on his face to the ground, and bowed himself three times: and they kissed one another, and wept one with another, until David exceeded. *{1} Heb from beside the South;*
- 42 And Jonathan said to David, Go in peace, forasmuch as we have sworn both of us in the name of Jehovah, saying, Jehovah shall be between me and thee, and between my seed and thy seed, for ever. And he arose and departed: and Jonathan went into the city.

## C- David's training as a fugitive. (20.-21.)

- 1- Jonathan's intervention for David. (20.)
- a- David's covenant with Jonathan.  
David is to spare the family of Johnathan.
- b- The parting.

**1 Samuel 21**

- 1 ¶ Then came David to Nob to Ahimelech the priest: and Ahimelech came to meet David trembling, and said unto him, Why art thou alone, and no man with thee?
- 2 And David said unto Ahimelech the priest, The king hath commanded me a business, and hath said unto me, Let no man know anything of the business whereabout I send thee, and what I have commanded thee: and I have appointed the young men to such and such a place.
- 3 Now therefore what is under thy hand? give me five loaves of bread in my hand, or whatsoever there is present.
- 4 And the priest answered David, and said, There is no common bread under my hand, but there is holy bread; if only the young men have kept themselves from women.
- 5 And David answered the priest, and said unto him, Of a truth women have been kept from us about these three days; when I came out, the vessels of the young men were holy, *{1}* though it was but a common journey; how much more then to-day shall their vessels be holy? *{1}* Or and it may be used as common bread; and especially since to-day it will be holy in respect of their vessels}
- 6 So the priest gave him holy *bread*; for there was no bread there but the showbread, that was taken from before Jehovah, to put hot bread in the day when it was taken away.
- 7 Now a certain man of the servants of Saul was there that day, detained before Jehovah; and his name was Doeg the Edomite, the *{1}* chiefest of the herdsmen that belonged to Saul. *{1}* Or mightiest}
- 8 And David said unto Ahimelech, And is there not here under thy hand spear or sword? for I have neither brought my sword nor my weapons with me, because the king's business required haste.
- 9 And the priest said, The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom thou slewest in the vale of *{1}* Elah, behold, it is here wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod: if thou wilt take that, take it; for there is no other save that here. And David said, There is none like that; give it me. *{1}* Or the terebinth}
- 10 ¶ And David arose, and fled that day for fear of Saul, and went to Achish the king of Gath.
- 11 And the servants of Achish said unto him, Is not this David the king of the land? did they not sing one to another of him in dances, saying, Saul hath slain his thousands, And David his ten thousands?
- 12 And David laid up these words in his heart, and was sore afraid of Achish the king of Gath.
- 13 And he changed his behavior before them, and feigned himself mad in their hands, and *{1}* scrabbled on the doors of the gate, and let his spittle fall down upon his beard. *{1}* Or made marks}
- 14 Then said Achish unto his servants, Lo, ye see the man is mad; wherefore then have ye brought him to me?
- 15 Do I lack madmen, that ye have brought this fellow to play the madman in my presence? shall this fellow come into my house?

**1 Samuel 22**

- 1 ¶ David therefore departed thence, and escaped to the cave of Adullam: and when his brethren and all his father's house heard it, they went down thither to him.
- 2 And every one that was in distress, and every one that was in debt, and every one that was *{1}* discontented, gathered themselves unto him; and he became captain over them: and there were with him about four hundred men. *{1}* Heb bitter of soul}
- 3 And David went thence to Mizpeh of Moab: and he said unto the king of Moab, Let my father and my mother, I pray thee, come forth, *and be* with you, till I know what God will do for me.
- 4 And he brought them before the king of Moab: and they dwelt with him all the while that David was in the stronghold.
- 5 And the prophet Gad said unto David, Abide not in the stronghold; depart, and get thee into the land of Judah. Then David departed, and came into the forest of Hereth.
- 6 ¶ And Saul heard that David was discovered, and the men that were with him: now Saul was sitting in Gibeah, under the tamarisk-tree *{1}* in Ramah, with his spear in his hand, and all his servants were standing about him. *{1}* Or on the height}
- 7 And Saul said unto his servants that stood about him, Hear now, ye Benjamites; will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards, will he make you all captains of thousands and captains of hundreds,
- 8 that all of you have conspired against me, and *{1}* there is none that discloseth to me when my son maketh a league with the son of Jesse, and there is none of you that is sorry for me, or discloseth unto me that my son hath stirred up my servant against me, to lie in wait, as at this day? *{1}* Or there was none that disclosed it to me when my son made etc}

- 9 Then answered Doeg the Edomite, who *{1}* stood by the servants of Saul, and said, I saw the son of Jesse coming to Nob, to Ahimelech the son of Ahitub. *{1}* *Or was set over }*
- 10 And he inquired of Jehovah for him, and gave him victuals, and gave him the sword of Goliath the Philistine.
- 11 Then the king sent to call Ahimelech the priest, the son of Ahitub, and all his father's house, the priests that were in Nob: and they came all of them to the king.
- 12 And Saul said, Hear now, thou son of Ahitub. And he answered, Here I am, my lord.
- 13 And Saul said unto him, Why have ye conspired against me, thou and the son of Jesse, in that thou hast given him bread, and a sword, and hast inquired of God for him, that he should rise against me, to lie in wait, as at this day?
- 14 Then Ahimelech answered the king, and said, And who among all thy servants is so faithful as David, who is the king's son-in-law, and is taken into thy council, and is honorable in thy house?
- 15 Have I to-day begun to inquire of God for him? be it far from me: let not the king impute anything unto his servant, nor to all the house of my father; for thy servant knoweth nothing of all this, less or more.
- 16 And the king said, Thou shalt surely die, Ahimelech, thou, and all thy father's house.
- 17 And the king said unto the *{1}* guard that stood about him, Turn, and slay the priests of Jehovah; because their hand also is with David, and because they knew that he fled, and did not disclose it to me. But the servants of the king would not put forth their hand to fall upon the priests of Jehovah. *{1}* *Heb runners}*
- 18 And the king said to Doeg, Turn thou, and fall upon the priests. And Doeg the Edomite turned, and he fell upon the priests, and he slew on that day fourscore and five persons that did wear a linen ephod.
- 19 And Nob, the city of the priests, smote he with the edge of the sword, both men and women, children and sucklings, and oxen and asses and sheep, with the edge of the sword.
- 20 ¶ And one of the sons of Ahimelech, the son of Ahitub, named Abiathar, escaped, and fled after David.
- 21 And Abiathar told David that Saul had slain Jehovah's priests.
- 22 And David said unto Abiathar, I knew on that day, when Doeg the Edomite was there, that he would surely tell Saul: I have occasioned *the death* of all the persons of thy father's house.
- 23 Abide thou with me, fear not; for he that seeketh my life seeketh thy life: for with me thou shalt be in safeguard.

2- David flees to Gath. (21.)

- a- He stops at Nob for food from the priest. vs. 1-9  
He gets weapons and eats of the "hallowed bread" Ref. 12:3-8.
- b- He feigns insanity at Gath to preserve his life. vs. 10-15

3- David flees to Moab. vs. 22:1-4

Gathered a band of discontents  
Brought his father and mother there.

4- Saul destroys the priests of Nob. vs. 5-23

- a- An Edomite does the slaying.
- b- Abiathar escapes.

**1 Samuel 23**

- 1 ¶ And they told David, saying, Behold, the Philistines are fighting against Keilah, and are robbing the threshing-floors.
- 2 Therefore David inquired of Jehovah, saying, Shall I go and smite these Philistines? And Jehovah said unto David, Go, and smite the Philistines, and save Keilah.
- 3 And David's men said unto him, Behold, we are afraid here in Judah: how much more then if we go to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?
- 4 Then David inquired of Jehovah yet again. And Jehovah answered him, and said, Arise, go down to Keilah; for I will deliver the Philistines into thy hand.
- 5 And David and his men went to Keilah, and fought with the Philistines, and brought away their cattle, and slew them with a great slaughter. So David saved the inhabitants of Keilah.
- 6 And it came to pass, when Abiathar the son of Ahimelech fled to David to Keilah, that he came down with an ephod in his hand.
- 7 ¶ And it was told Saul that David was come to Keilah. And Saul said, God hath *{1}* delivered him into my hand; for he is shut in, by entering into a town that hath gates and bars. *{1} The Sept has sold}*
- 8 And Saul summoned all the people to war, to go down to Keilah, to besiege David and his men.
- 9 And David knew that Saul was devising mischief against him; and he said to Abiathar the priest, Bring hither the ephod.
- 10 Then said David, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, thy servant hath surely heard that Saul seeketh to come to Keilah, to destroy the city for my sake.
- 11 Will the men of Keilah deliver me up into his hand? will Saul come down, as thy servant hath heard? O Jehovah, the God of Israel, I beseech thee, tell thy servant. And Jehovah said, He will come down.
- 12 Then said David, Will the men of Keilah deliver up to me and my men into the hand of Saul? And Jehovah said, They will deliver thee up.
- 13 Then David and his men, who were about six hundred, arose and departed out of Keilah, and went whithersoever they could go. And it was told Saul that David was escaped from Keilah; and he forbore to go forth.
- 14 ¶ And David abode in the wilderness in the strongholds, and remained in the hill-country in the wilderness of Ziph. And Saul sought him every day, but God delivered him not into his hand.
- 15 And David saw that Saul was come out to seek his life: and David was in the wilderness of Ziph in *{1}* the wood. *{1} Or Horesh}*
- 16 And Jonathan, Saul's son, arose, and went to David into *{1}* the wood, and strengthened his hand in God. *{1} Or Horesh}*
- 17 And he said unto him, Fear not; for the hand of Saul my father shall not find thee; and thou shalt be king over Israel, and I shall be next unto thee; and that also Saul my father knoweth.
- 18 And they two made a covenant before Jehovah: and David abode in *{1}* the wood, and Jonathan went to his house. *{1} Or Horesh}*
- 19 ¶ Then came up the Ziphites to Saul to Gibeah, saying, Doth not David hide himself with us in the strongholds in *{1}* the wood, in the hill of Hachilah, which is on the south of *{2}* the desert? *{1} Or Horesh 2) Or Jeshimon}*
- 20 Now therefore, O king, come down, according to all the desire of thy soul to come down; and our part shall be to deliver him up into the king's hand.
- 21 And Saul said, Blessed be ye of Jehovah; for ye have had compassion on me.
- 22 Go, I pray you, make yet more sure, and know and see his place where his *{1}* haunt is, *and* who hath seen him there; for it is told me that he dealeth very subtly. *{1} Heb foot}*
- 23 See therefore, and take knowledge of all the lurking-places where he hideth himself, and come ye again to me *{1}* of a certainty, and I will go with you: and it shall come to pass, if he be in the land, that I will search him out among all the *{2}* thousands of Judah. *{1} Or with the certainty; Or to a set place 2) Or families}*
- 24 And they arose, and went to Ziph before Saul: but David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon, in the Arabah on the south of *{1}* the desert. *{1} Or Jeshimon}*
- 25 And Saul and his men went to seek him. And they told David: wherefore he came down to the rock, and abode in the wilderness of Maon. And when Saul heard *that*, he pursued after David in the wilderness of Maon.
- 26 And Saul went on this side of the mountain, and David and his men on that side of the mountain: and

David made haste to get away for fear of Saul; for Saul and his men compassed David and his men round about to take them.

27 But there came a messenger unto Saul, saying, Haste thee, and come; for the Philistines have made a raid upon the land.

28 So Saul returned from pursuing after David, and went against the Philistines: therefore they called that place *{1}* Sela-hammahlekoth. *{1}* That is *The rock of divisions* (or *escape*)

29 And David went up from thence, and dwelt in the strongholds of En-gedi.

---

5- Saul's pursuit in the wilderness (23.)

a- David protects towns from enemies. vs. 1-13

b- The wilderness meeting with Jonathan. vs. 14-18

**1 Samuel 24**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when Saul was returned from following the Philistines, that it was told him, saying, Behold, David is in the wilderness of En-gedi.
- 2 Then Saul took three thousand chosen men out of all Israel, and went to seek David and his men upon the rocks of the wild goats.
- 3 And he came to the sheepcotes by the way, where was a cave; and Saul went in to cover his feet. Now David and his men were *{1}* abiding in the innermost parts of the cave. *{1} Or sitting*
- 4 And the men of David said unto him, Behold, the day of which Jehovah said unto thee, Behold, I will deliver thine enemy into thy hand, and thou shalt do to him as it shall seem good unto thee. Then David arose, and cut off the skirt of Saul's robe privily.
- 5 And it came to pass afterward, that David's heart smote him, because he had cut off Saul's skirt.
- 6 And he said unto his men, Jehovah forbid that I should do this thing unto my lord, Jehovah's anointed, to put forth my hand against him, seeing he is Jehovah's anointed.
- 7 So David checked his men with these words, and suffered them not to rise against Saul. And Saul rose up out of the cave, and went on his way.
- 8 David also arose afterward, and went out of the cave, and cried after Saul, saying, My lord the king. And when Saul looked behind him, David bowed with his face to the earth, and did obeisance.
- 9 ¶ And David said to Saul, Wherefore hearkenest thou to men's words, saying, Behold, David seeketh thy hurt?
- 10 Behold, this day thine eyes have seen how that Jehovah had delivered thee to-day into my hand in the cave: and some bade me kill thee; but *mine eye* spared thee; and I said, I will not put forth my hand against my lord; for he is Jehovah's anointed.
- 11 Moreover, my father, see, yea, see the skirt of thy robe in my hand; for in that I cut off the skirt of thy robe, and killed thee not, know thou and see that there is neither evil nor transgression in my hand, and I have not sinned against thee, though thou *{1}* huntest after my life to take it. *{1} Or layest wait for*
- 12 Jehovah judge between me and thee, and Jehovah avenge me of thee; but my hand shall not be upon thee.
- 13 As saith the proverb of the ancients, Out of the wicked cometh forth wickedness; but my hand shall not be upon thee.
- 14 After whom is the king of Israel come out? after whom dost thou pursue? after a dead dog, after a flea.
- 15 Jehovah therefore be judge, and give sentence between me and thee, and see, and plead my cause, and *{1}* deliver me out of thy hand. *{1} Heb give sentence for me*
- 16 ¶ And it came to pass, when David had made an end of speaking these words unto Saul, that Saul said, Is this thy voice, my son David? And Saul lifted up his voice, and wept.
- 17 And he said to David, Thou art more righteous than I; for thou hast rendered unto me good, whereas I have rendered unto thee evil.
- 18 And thou hast declared this day how that thou hast dealt well with me, forasmuch as when Jehovah had delivered me up into thy hand, thou killedst me not.
- 19 For if a man find his enemy, will he let him go well away? wherefore Jehovah reward thee good for that which thou hast done unto me this day.
- 20 And now, behold, I know that thou shalt surely be king, and that the kingdom of Israel shall be established in thy hand.
- 21 Swear now therefore unto me by Jehovah, that thou wilt not cut off my seed after me, and that thou wilt not destroy my name out of my father's house.
- 22 And David sware unto Saul. And Saul went home; but David and his men gat them up unto the stronghold.

- 6- David spares Saul in the wilderness of Engedi. (24.)
- a- Saul at David's mercy. vs. 1-6
- b- David commits vengeance to God. vs. 7-15
- c- Saul's confession and request. vs. 16-22

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 25 is backed up.

## 1 Samuel 25

- 1 ¶ And Samuel died; and all Israel gathered themselves together, and lamented him, and buried him in his house at Ramah. And David arose, and went down to the wilderness of Paran.
- 2 ¶ And there was a man in Maon, whose *{1}* possessions were in Carmel; and the man was very great, and he had three thousand sheep, and a thousand goats: and he was shearing his sheep in Carmel. *{1}* Or *business was*}
- 3 Now the name of the man was Nabal; and the name of his wife Abigail; and the woman was of good understanding, and of a beautiful countenance: but the man was churlish and evil in his doings; and he was of the house of Caleb.
- 4 And David heard in the wilderness that Nabal was shearing his sheep.
- 5 And David sent ten young men, and David said unto the young men, Get you up to Carmel, and go to Nabal, and greet him in my name:
- 6 and *{1}* thus shall ye say to him that liveth *in prosperity*, Peace be unto thee, and peace be to thy house, and peace be unto all that thou hast. *{1}* Or *thus shall ye say, All hail! and peace be unto thee etc*}
- 7 And now I have heard that thou hast shearers: thy shepherds have now been with us, and we *{1}* did them no hurt, neither was there aught missing unto them, all the while they were in Carmel. *{1}* Heb *put them to shame*}
- 8 Ask thy young men, and they will tell thee: wherefore let the young men find favor in thine eyes; for we come in a good day: give, I pray thee, whatsoever cometh to thy hand, unto thy servants, and to thy son David.
- 9 And when David's young men came, they spake to Nabal according to all those words in the name of David, and *{1}* ceased. *{1}* Or *remained quiet*}
- 10 And Nabal answered David's servants, and said, Who is David? and who is the son of Jesse? there are many servants now-a-days that break away every man from his master.
- 11 Shall I then take my bread, and my water, and my *{1}* flesh that I have killed for my shearers, and give it unto men of whom I know not whence they are? *{1}* Heb *slaughter* }
- 12 ¶ So David's young men turned on their way, and went back, and came and told him according to all these words.
- 13 And David said unto his men, Gird ye on every man his sword. And they girded on every man his sword; and David also girded on his sword: and there went up after David about four hundred men; and two hundred abode by the baggage.
- 14 But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife, saying, Behold, David sent messengers out of the wilderness to *{1}* salute our master; and he railed at them. *{1}* Heb *bless*}
- 15 But the men were very good unto us, and we were not *{1}* hurt, neither missed we anything, as long as we went with them, when we were in the fields: *{1}* Heb *put to shame* }
- 16 they were a wall unto us both by night and by day, all the while we were with them keeping the sheep.
- 17 Now therefore know and consider what thou wilt do; for evil is determined against our master, and against all his house: for he is such a worthless fellow, that one cannot speak to him.
- 18 ¶ Then Abigail made haste, and took two hundred loaves, and two *{1}* bottles of wine, and five sheep ready dressed, and five measures of parched grain, and a hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred cakes of figs, and laid them on asses. *{1}* Or *skins*}
- 19 And she said unto her young men, Go on before me; behold, I come after you. But she told not her

- 20 And it was so, as she rode on her ass, and came down by the covert of the mountain, that, behold, David and his men came down toward her; and she met them.
- 21 Now David had said, Surely in vain have I kept all that this fellow hath in the wilderness, so that nothing was missed of all that pertained unto him: and he hath returned me evil for good.
- 22 God do so {1} unto the enemies of David, and more also, if I leave of all that pertain to him by the morning light so much as one man-child. {1} *The Syr and some editions of Sept have unto David*
- 23 And when Abigail saw David, she hasted, and alighted from her ass, and fell before David on her face, and bowed herself to the ground.
- 24 And she fell at his feet, and said, Upon me, my lord, upon me be the iniquity; and let thy handmaid, I pray thee, speak in thine ears, and hear thou the words of thy handmaid.
- 25 Let not my lord, I pray thee, regard this worthless fellow, even Nabal; for as his name is, so is he; {1} Nabal is his name, and folly is with him: but I thy handmaid saw not the young men of my lord, whom thou didst send. {1} *That is Fool*
- 26 Now therefore, my lord, as Jehovah liveth, and as thy soul liveth, seeing Jehovah hath withholden thee {1} from bloodguiltiness, and from {2} avenging thyself with thine own hand, now therefore let thine enemies, and them that seek evil to my lord, be as Nabal. {1} *Heb from coming into blood* 2) *Heb thine own hand saving thee*
- 27 And now this {1} present which thy servant hath brought unto my lord, let it be given unto the young men that follow my lord. {1} *Heb blessing*
- 28 Forgive, I pray thee, the trespass of thy handmaid: for Jehovah will certainly make my lord a sure house, because my lord fighteth the battles of Jehovah; and evil shall not be found in thee all thy days.
- 29 And though men be risen up to pursue thee, and to seek thy soul, yet the soul of my lord shall be bound in the bundle of {1} life with Jehovah thy God; and the souls of thine enemies, them shall he sling out, as from the hollow of a sling. {1} *Or the living*
- 30 And it shall come to pass, when Jehovah shall have done to my lord according to all the good that he hath spoken concerning thee, and shall have appointed thee prince over Israel,
- 31 that this shall be no {1} grief unto thee, nor offence of heart unto my lord, {2} either that thou hast shed blood without cause, or that my lord hath avenged himself. And when Jehovah shall have dealt well with my lord, then remember thy handmaid. {1} *Heb. cause of staggering* 2) *Or so that thou shouldest shed etc*
- 32 ¶ And David said to Abigail, Blessed be Jehovah, the God of Israel, who sent thee this day to meet me: and blessed be thy discretion, and blessed be thou, that hast kept me this day from bloodguiltiness, and from avenging myself with mine own hand.
- 34 For in very deed, as Jehovah, the God of Israel, liveth, who hath withholden me from hurting thee, except thou hadst hasted and come to meet me, surely there had not been left unto Nabal by the morning light so much as one man-child.
- 35 So David received of her hand that which she had brought him: and he said unto her, Go up in peace to thy house; see, I have hearkened to thy voice, and have accepted thy person.
- 36 ¶ And Abigail came to Nabal; and, behold, he held a feast in his house, like the feast of a king; and Nabal's heart was merry within him, for he was very drunken: wherefore she told him nothing, less or more, until the morning light.
- 37 And it came to pass in the morning, when the wine was gone out of Nabal, that his wife told him these things, and his heart died within him, and he became as a stone.
- 38 And it came to pass about ten days after, that Jehovah smote Nabal, so that he died.
- 39 And when David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, Blessed be Jehovah, that hath pleaded the cause of my reproach from the hand of Nabal, and hath kept back his servant from evil: and the evil-doing of Nabal hath Jehovah returned upon his own head. And David sent and spake concerning Abigail, to take her to him to wife.
- 40 And when the servants of David were come to Abigail to Carmel, they spake unto her, saying, David hath sent us unto thee, to take thee to him to wife.
- 41 And she arose, and bowed herself with her face to the earth, and said, Behold, thy handmaid is a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my lord.
- 42 And Abigail hasted, and arose, and rode upon an ass, with five damsels of hers that followed her; and she went after the messengers of David, and became his wife.
- 43 David also took Ahinoam of Jezreel; and they became both of them his wives.



44 Now Saul had given Michal his daughter, David's wife, to {1} Palti the son of Laish, who was of Gallim. {1} In 2 Sa 3:15 Paltiel}

---

- 7- The death of Samuel and David's marriages. (25.)
- a- David requires food from farmers for protection. vs. 1-13
- b- The shame and generosity of Abigail. vs. 14-38
- c- David marries Abigail. vs. 39-42
- d- David's three wives noted. vs. 43-44

**1 Samuel 26**

- 1 ¶ And the Ziphites came unto Saul to Gibeah, saying, Doth not David hide himself in the hill of Hachilah, which is before *{1}* the desert? *{1}* Or *Jeshimon*; See 1 Sa 23:19}
- 2 Then Saul arose, and went down to the wilderness of Ziph, having three thousand chosen men of Israel with him, to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph.
- 3 And Saul encamped in the hill of Hachilah, which is before *{1}* the desert, by the way. But David abode in the wilderness, and he saw that Saul came after him into the wilderness. *{1}* Or *Jeshimon*; See 1 Sa 23:19}
- 4 David therefore sent out spies, and understood that Saul was come *{1}* of a certainty. *{1}* Or to a set place; See 1 Sa 23:23}
- 5 And David arose, and came to the place where Saul had encamped; and David beheld the place where Saul lay, and Abner the son of Ner, the captain of his host: and Saul lay within the *{1}* place of the wagons, and the people were encamped round about him. *{1}* Or *barricade*}
- 6 ¶ Then answered David and said to Ahimelech the Hittite, and to Abishai the son of Zeruiah, brother to Joab, saying, Who will go down with me to Saul to the camp? And Abishai said, I will go down with thee.
- 7 So David and Abishai came to the people by night: and, behold, Saul lay sleeping within the place of the wagons, with his spear stuck in the ground at his head; and Abner and the people lay round about him.
- 8 Then said Abishai to David, God hath delivered up thine enemy into thy hand this day: now therefore let me smite him, I pray thee, with the spear to the earth at one stroke, and I will not smite him the second time.
- 9 And David said to Abishai, Destroy him not; for who can put forth his hand against Jehovah's anointed, and be guiltless?
- 10 And David said, As Jehovah liveth, Jehovah will smite him; *{1}* or his day shall come to die; or he shall go down into battle and perish. *{1}* Or *either*}
- 11 Jehovah forbid that I should put forth my hand against Jehovah's anointed: but now take, I pray thee, the spear that is at his head, and the cruse of water, and let us go.
- 12 So David took the spear and the cruse of water from Saul's head; and they gat them away: and no man saw it, nor knew it, neither did any awake; for they were all asleep, because a deep sleep from Jehovah was fallen upon them.
- 13 ¶ Then David went over to the other side, and stood on the top of the mountain afar off; a great space being between them;
- 14 and David cried to the people, and to Abner the son of Ner, saying, Answerest thou not, Abner? Then Abner answered and said, Who art thou that criest to the king?
- 15 And David said to Abner, Art not thou a *valiant* man? and who is like to thee in Israel? wherefore then hast thou not kept watch over thy lord the king? for there came one of the people in to destroy the king thy lord.
- 16 This thing is not good that thou hast done. As Jehovah liveth, ye are *{1}* worthy to die, because ye have not kept watch over your lord, Jehovah's anointed. And now see where the king's spear is, and the cruse of water that was at his head. *{1}* Heb *sons of death*}
- 17 And Saul knew David's voice, and said, Is this thy voice, my son David? And David said, It is my voice, my lord, O king.
- 18 And he said, Wherefore doth my lord pursue after his servant? for what have I done? or what evil is in my hand?
- 19 Now therefore, I pray thee, let my lord the king hear the words of his servant. If it be Jehovah that hath stirred thee up against me, let him *{1}* accept an offering: but if it be the children of men, cursed be they before Jehovah: for they have driven me out this day that I should *{2}* not cleave unto the inheritance of Jehovah, saying, Go, serve other gods. *{1}* Heb *smell* 2) Or *have no share in*}
- 20 Now therefore, let not my blood fall to the earth away from the presence of Jehovah: for the king of Israel is come out to seek a flea, as when one doth hunt a partridge in the mountains.
- 21 ¶ Then said Saul, I have sinned: return, my son David; for I will no more do thee harm, because my life was precious in thine eyes this day: behold, I have played the fool, and have erred exceedingly.
- 22 And David answered and said, Behold *{1}* the spear, O king! let then one of the young men come over and fetch it. *{1}* Another reading is *the king's spear*}
- 23 And Jehovah will render to every man his righteousness and his faithfulness; forasmuch as Jehovah

- delivered thee into my hand to-day, and I would not put forth my hand against Jehovah's anointed.
- 24 And, behold, as thy life was much set by this day in mine eyes, so let my life be much set by in the eyes of Jehovah, and let him deliver me out of all tribulation.
- 25 Then Saul said to David, Blessed be thou, my son David: thou shalt both do mightily, and shalt surely prevail. So David went his way, and Saul returned to his place
- 

- 8- David again spares Saul. (26.)
- a- Saul is again at David's mercy. vs. 1-12  
The LORD puts Saul to sleep.
  - b- David taunts Saul and ("Lil.") Abner. vs. 3-20
  - c- Saul again confesses. vs. 21-25

**1 Samuel 27**

- 1 ¶ And David said in his heart, I shall now perish one day by the hand of Saul: there is nothing better for me than that I should escape into the land of the Philistines; and Saul will despair of me, to seek me any more in all the borders of Israel: so shall I escape out of his hand.
- 2 And David arose, and passed over, he and the six hundred men that were with him, unto Achish the son of Maoch, king of Gath.
- 3 And David dwelt with Achish at Gath, he and his men, every man with his household, even David with his two wives, Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail the Carmelitess, Nabal's wife.
- 4 And it was told Saul that David was fled to Gath: and he sought no more again for him.
- 5 And David said unto Achish, If now I have found favor in thine eyes, let them give me a place in one of the cities in the {1} country, that I may dwell there: for why should thy servant dwell in the royal city with thee? {1} *Heb field*
- 6 Then Achish gave him Ziklag that day: wherefore Ziklag pertaineth unto the kings of Judah unto this day.
- 7 And the number of the days that David dwelt in the {1} country of the Philistines was a full year and four months. {1} *Heb field*
- 8 ¶ And David and his men went up, and made a raid upon the Geshurites, and the {1} Girzites, and the Amalekites; for those *nations* were the inhabitants of the land, who were of old, as thou goest to Shur, even unto the land of Egypt. {1} *Another reading is Gizrites*
- 9 And David smote the land, and saved neither man nor woman alive, and took away the sheep, and the oxen, and the asses, and the camels, and the apparel; and he returned, and came to Achish.
- 10 And Achish said, {1} Against whom have ye made a raid to-day? And David said, Against the South of Judah, and against the South of the Jerahmeelites, and against the South of the Kenites. {1} *So Sept and Vulg*
- 11 And David saved neither man nor woman alive, to bring them to Gath, saying, Lest they should tell of us, saying, So did David, and so hath been his manner all the while he hath dwelt in the {1} country of the Philistines. {1} *Heb field*
- 12 And Achish believed David, saying, He hath made his people Israel utterly to abhor him; therefore he shall be my servant for ever.

- 9- David with the Philistines. (27.-30.)
  - a- In desperation he flees to the Philistines. vs. 27:1-9  
He is given the city of Ziklag to him and his God.
  - b- He pretends to serve the Philistines. vs. 10-12

**1 Samuel 28**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass in those days, that the Philistines gathered their *{1}* hosts together for warfare, to fight with Israel. And Achish said unto David, Know thou assuredly, that thou shalt go out with me in the host, thou and thy men. *{1}* *Heb camps*
- 2 And David said to Achish, Therefore thou shalt know what thy servant will do. And Achish said to David, Therefore will I make thee keeper of my head for ever.
- 3 Now Samuel was dead, and all Israel had lamented him, and buried him in Ramah, even in his own city. And Saul had put away those that had familiar spirits, and the wizards, out of the land.
- 4 And the Philistines gathered themselves together, and came and encamped in Shunem: and Saul gathered all Israel together, and they encamped in Gilboa.
- 5 And when Saul saw the host of the Philistines, he was afraid, and his heart trembled greatly.
- 6 And when Saul inquired of Jehovah, Jehovah answered him not, neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets.
- 7 ¶ Then said Saul unto his servants, Seek me a woman that hath a familiar spirit, that I may go to her, and inquire of her. And his servants said to him, Behold, there is a woman that hath a familiar spirit at Endor.
- 8 And Saul disguised himself, and put on other raiment, and went, he and two men with him, and they came to the woman by night: and he said, Divine unto me, I pray thee, by the familiar spirit, and bring me up whomsoever I shall name unto thee.
- 9 And the woman said unto him, Behold, thou knowest what Saul hath done, how he hath cut off those that have familiar spirits, and the wizards, out of the land: wherefore then layest thou a snare for my life, to cause me to die?
- 10 And Saul sware to her by Jehovah, saying, As Jehovah liveth, there shall no *{1}* punishment happen to thee for this thing. *{1}* *Or guilt come upon thee*
- 11 Then said the woman, Whom shall I bring up unto thee? And he said, Bring me up Samuel.
- 12 And when the woman saw Samuel, she cried with a loud voice; and the woman spake to Saul, saying, Why hast thou deceived me? for thou art Saul.
- 13 And the king said unto her, Be not afraid: for what seest thou? And the woman said unto Saul, I see *{1}* a god coming up out of the earth. *{1}* *Or gods*
- 14 And he said unto her, What form is he of? And she said, An old man cometh up; and he is covered with a robe. And Saul perceived that it was Samuel, and he bowed with his face to the ground, and did obeisance.
- 15 ¶ And Samuel said to Saul, Why hast thou disquieted me, to bring me up? And Saul answered, I am sore distressed; for the Philistines make war against me, and God is departed from me, and answereth me no more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams: therefore I have called thee, that thou mayest make known unto me what I shall do.
- 16 And Samuel said, Wherefore then dost thou ask of me, seeing Jehovah is departed from thee, and is become thine adversary?
- 17 And Jehovah hath done unto *{1}* thee, as he spake by me: and Jehovah hath rent the kingdom out of thy hand, and given it to thy neighbor, even to David. *{1}* *So Vulg and some editions of Sept; The Heb has him*
- 18 Because thou obeyedst not the voice of Jehovah, and didst not execute his fierce wrath upon Amalek, therefore hath Jehovah done this thing unto thee this day.
- 19 Moreover Jehovah will deliver Israel also with thee into the hand of the Philistines; and to-morrow shalt thou and thy sons be with me: Jehovah will deliver the host of Israel also into the hand of the Philistines.
- 20 ¶ Then Saul fell straightway his full length upon the earth, and was sore afraid, because of the words of Samuel: and there was no strength in him; for he had eaten no bread all the day, nor all the night.
- 21 And the woman came unto Saul, and saw that he was sore troubled, and said unto him, Behold, thy handmaid hath hearkened unto thy voice, and I have put my life in my hand, and have hearkened unto thy words which thou spakest unto me.
- 22 Now therefore, I pray thee, hearken thou also unto the voice of thy handmaid, and let me set a morsel of bread before thee; and eat, that thou mayest have strength, when thou goest on thy way.
- 23 But he refused, and said, I will not eat. But his servants, together with the woman, constrained him; and he hearkened unto their voice. So he arose from the earth, and sat upon the bed.

24 And the woman had a fatted calf in the house; and she hasted, and killed it; and she took flour, and kneaded it, and did bake unleavened bread thereof:

25 and she brought it before Saul, and before his servants; and they did eat. Then they rose up, and went away that night.

---

- c- David's dilemma as the Philistines attack Israel. vs. 28:1-5  
He is made the body guard of king Achish.
- d- Saul seeks Samuel by witch of Endor. vs. 6-25
  - 1) Samuel's return. Woman brings up Samuel.
  - 2) Samuel's prediction.  
Tomorrow you and your sons "shall be with me".

**1 Samuel 29**

- 1 ¶ Now the Philistines gathered together all their hosts to Aphek: and the Israelites encamped by the fountain which is in Jezreel.
- 2 And the lords of the Philistines passed on by hundreds, and by thousands; and David and his men passed on in the rearward with Achish.
- 3 Then said the princes of the Philistines, What *do* these Hebrews *here*? And Achish said unto the princes of the Philistines, Is not this David, the servant of Saul the king of Israel, who hath been with me these days, or *rather* these years, and I have found no fault in him since he fell away *unto me* unto this day?
- 4 But he princes of the Philistines were wroth with him; and the princes of the Philistines said unto him, Make the man return, that he may go back to his place where thou hast appointed him, and let him not go down with us to battle, lest in the battle he become an adversary to us: for wherewith should this *fellow* reconcile himself unto his lord? should it not be with the heads of these men?
- 5 Is not this David, of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, Saul hath slain his thousands, And David his ten thousands?
- 6 ¶ Then Achish called David, and said unto him, As Jehovah liveth, thou hast been upright, and thy going out and thy coming in with me in the host is good in my sight; for I have not found evil in thee since the day of thy coming unto me unto this day: nevertheless the lords favor thee not.
- 7 Wherefore now return, and go in peace, that thou displease not the lords of the Philistines.
- 8 And David said unto Achish, But what have I done? and what hast thou found in thy servant so long as I have been before thee unto this day, that I may not go and fight against the enemies of my lord the king?
- 9 And Achish answered and said to David, I know that thou art good in my sight, as an angel of God: notwithstanding the princes of the Philistines have said, He shall not go up with us to the battle.
- 10 Wherefore now rise up early in the morning with the servants of thy lord that are come with thee; and as soon as ye are up early in the morning, and have light, depart.
- 11 So David rose up early, he and his men, to depart in the morning, to return into the land of the Philistines. And the Philistines went up to Jezreel.

**1 Samuel 30**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when David and his men were come to Ziklag on the third day, that the Amalekites had made a raid upon the South, and upon Ziklag, and had smitten Ziklag, and burned it with fire,
- 2 and had taken captive the women *and all* that were therein, both small and great: they slew not any, but carried them off, and went their way.
- 3 And when David and his men came to the city, behold, it was burned with fire; and their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, were taken captive.
- 4 Then David and the people that were with him lifted up their voice and wept, until they had no more power to weep.
- 5 And David's two wives were taken captive, Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite.
- 6 And David was greatly distressed; for the people spake of stoning him, because the soul of all the people was grieved, every man for his sons and for his daughters: but David strengthened himself in Jehovah his God.
- 7 ¶ And David said to Abiathar the priest, the son of Ahimelech, I pray thee, bring me hither the ephod. And Abiathar brought thither the ephod to David.
- 8 And David inquired of Jehovah, saying, *{1}* If I pursue after this troop, shall I overtake them? And he answered him, Pursue; for thou shalt surely overtake *them*, and shalt without fail recover *all*. *{1}* Or *Shall I pursue*?
- 9 So David went, he and the six hundred men that were with him, and came to the brook Besor, where those that were left behind stayed.
- 10 But David pursued, he and four hundred men; for two hundred stayed behind, who were so faint that they could not go over the brook Besor.
- 11 And they found an Egyptian in the field, and brought him to David, and gave him bread, and he did eat; and they gave him water to drink.



- 12 And they gave him a piece of a cake of figs, and two clusters of raisins: and when he had eaten, his spirit came again to him; for he had eaten no bread, nor drunk any water, three days and three nights.
- 13 And David said unto him, To whom belondest thou? and whence art thou? And he said, I am a young man of Egypt, servant to an Amalekite; and my master left me, because three days ago I fell sick.
- 14 We made a raid upon the South of the Cherethites, and upon that which belongeth to Judah, and upon the South of Caleb; and we burned Ziklag with fire.
- 15 And David said to him, Wilt thou bring me down to this troop? And he said, Swear unto me by God, that thou wilt neither kill me, nor deliver me up into the hands of my master, and I will bring thee down to this troop.
- 16 And when he had brought him down, behold, they were spread abroad over all the ground, eating and drinking, and dancing, *{1}* because of all the great spoil that they had taken out of the land of the Philistines, and out of the land of Judah. *{1} Or amidst*
- 17 And David smote them from the twilight even unto the evening of the next day: and there escaped not a man of them, save four hundred young men, who rode upon camels and fled.
- 18 And David recovered all that the Amalekites had taken; and David rescued his two wives.
- 19 And there was nothing lacking to them, neither small nor great, neither sons nor daughters, neither spoil, nor anything that they had taken to them: David brought back all.
- 20 And David took all the flocks and the herds, *which* they drove before those *other* cattle, and said, This is David's spoil.
- 21 ¶ And David came to the two hundred men, who were so faint that they could not follow David, whom also they had made to abide at the brook Besor; and they went forth to meet David, and to meet the people that were with him: and when David came near *{1}* to the people, he *{2}* saluted them. *{1} Or with 2) Or asked them of their welfare*
- 22 Then answered all the wicked men and base fellows, of those that went with David, and said, Because they went not with us, we will not give them aught of the spoil that we have recovered, save to every man his wife and his children, that he may lead them away, and depart.
- 23 Then said David, Ye shall not do so, my brethren, with that which Jehovah hath given unto us, who hath preserved us, and delivered the troop that came against us into our hand.
- 24 And who will hearken unto you in this matter? for as his share is that goeth down to the battle, so shall his share be that tarrieth by the baggage: they shall share alike.
- 25 And it was so from that day forward, that he made it a statute and an ordinance for Israel unto this day.
- 26 And when David came to Ziklag, he sent of the spoil unto the elders of Judah, even to his friends, saying, Behold, a *{1}* present for you of the spoil of the enemies of Jehovah: *{1} Heb blessing*
- 27 To them that were in Beth-el, and to them that were in Ramoth of the South, and to them that were in Jattir,
- 28 and to them that were in Aroer, and to them that were in Siphmoth, and to them that were in Eshtemoa,
- 29 and to them that were in Racal, and to them that were in the cities of the Jerahmeelites, and to them that were in the cities of the Kenites,
- 30 and to them that were in Hormah, and to them that were in Bor-ashan, and to them that were in Athach,
- 31 and to them that were in Hebron, and to all the places where David himself and his men were wont to haunt.

- 
- e- David is saved from fighting Israel. (29.)
- f- David rescues the stricken people of Ziklag. (30.)
- 1) He proceeds on orders from the Lord. vs. 1-20
- 2) His policy of distributing the spoils. vs. 21-25  
Equal spoil to those going to battle and those staying home because the LORD gives the victory.
- 3) His gifts to the cities of Judah. vs. 26-31

**1 Samuel 31**

- 1 ¶ Now the Philistines fought against Israel: and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines, and fell down *{1}* slain in mount Gilboa. *{1}* Or wounded
- 2 And the Philistines followed hard upon Saul and upon his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and *{1}* Abinadab, and Malchi-shua, the sons of Saul. *{1}* In 1 Sa 14:49 Ishvi
- 3 And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers overtook him; and he was greatly distressed by reason of the archers.
- 4 Then said Saul to his armorbearer, Draw thy sword, and thrust me through therewith, lest these uncircumcised come and thrust me through, and *{1}* abuse me. But his armorbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. Therefore Saul took his sword, and fell upon it. *{1}* Or make a mock of me
- 5 And when his armorbearer saw that Saul was dead, he likewise fell upon his sword, and died with him.
- 6 So Saul died, and his three sons, and his armorbearer, and all his men, that same day together.
- 7 And when the men of Israel that were on the other side of the valley, and they that were beyond the Jordan, saw that the men of Israel fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they forsook the cities, and fled; and the Philistines came and dwelt in them.
- 8 ¶ And it came to pass on the morrow, when the Philistines came to strip the slain, that they found Saul and his three sons fallen in mount Gilboa.
- 9 And they cut off his head, and stripped off his armor, and sent into the land of the Philistines round about, to carry the tidings unto the house of their idols, and to the people.
- 10 And they put his armor in the house of the Ashtaroth; and they fastened his body to the wall of Beth-shan.
- 11 And when the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead heard concerning him that which the Philistines had done to Saul,
- 12 all the valiant men arose, and went all night, and took the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons from the wall of Beth-shan; and they came to Jabesh, and burnt them there.
- 13 And they took their bones, and buried them under the tamarisk-tree in Jabesh, and fasted seven days.

- 10- The death of Saul (31.)
- a- Saul and his sons die in battle. vs. 1-6
  - b- The Philistines take over the cities of North Israel. vs. 7-10
  - c- Saul's body is recovered by men of Jabesh-Gilead. vs. 11-13  
Remember; Saul was from Gibeah,  
which had been repopulated by the virgins of Jabesh-Gilead



## THE BOOK OF II SAMUEL

## An Outline Of II Samuel

---

- I. David's Triumphs. (1.-10.)
- II. David' s Troubles. (11.-20.)
- III. Appendix of Sundry Events. (21. -24.)
- 

### 2 Samuel 1

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after the death of Saul, when David was returned from the slaughter of the Amalekites, and David had abode two days in Ziklag;
- 2 it came to pass on the third day, that, behold, a man came out of the camp from Saul, with his clothes rent, and earth upon his head: and so it was, when he came to David, that he fell to the earth, and did obeisance.
- 3 And David said unto him, From whence comest thou? And he said unto him, Out of the camp of Israel am I escaped.
- 4 And David said unto him, How went the matter? I pray thee, tell me. And he answered, The people are fled from the battle, and many of the people also are fallen and dead; and Saul and Jonathan his son are dead also.
- 5 And David said unto the young man that told him, How knowest thou that Saul and Jonathan his son are dead?
- 6 And the young man that told him said, As I happened by chance upon mount Gilboa, behold, Saul was leaning upon his spear; and, lo, the chariots and the horsemen followed hard after him.
- 7 And when he looked behind him, he saw me, and called unto me. And I answered, Here am I.
- 8 And he said unto me, Who art thou? And I answered him, I am an Amalekite.
- 9 And he said unto me, Stand, I pray thee, <sup>{1}</sup> beside me, and slay me; for <sup>{2}</sup> anguish hath taken hold of me, because my life is yet whole in me. <sup>{1}</sup> Or over <sup>2</sup> Or giddiness
- 10 So I stood beside him, and slew him, because I was sure that he could not live after that he was fallen: and I took the crown that was upon his head, and the bracelet that was on his arm, and have brought them hither unto my lord.
- 11 ¶ Then David took hold on his clothes, and rent them; and likewise all the men that were with him:
- 12 and they mourned, and wept, and fasted until even, for Saul, and for Jonathan his son, and for the people of Jehovah, and for the house of Israel; because they were fallen by the sword.
- 13 And David said unto the young man that told him, Whence art thou? And he answered, I am the son of a sojourner, an Amalekite.
- 14 And David said unto him, How wast thou not afraid to put forth thy hand to destroy Jehovah's anointed?
- 15 And David called one of the young men, and said, Go near, and fall upon him. And he smote him, so that he died.
- 16 And David said unto him, Thy blood be upon thy head; for thy mouth hath testified against thee, saying, I have slain Jehovah's anointed.
- 17 ¶ And David lamented with this lamentation over Saul and over Jonathan his son
- 18 (and he bade them teach the children of Judah *the song of the bow*: behold, it is written in the book of <sup>{1}</sup> Jashar): <sup>{1}</sup> Or *The Upright*
- 19 <sup>{1}</sup> Thy glory, O Israel, is slain upon thy high places! How are the mighty fallen! <sup>{1}</sup> Or *The gazelle*
- 20 Tell it not in Gath, Publish it not in the streets of Ashkelon; Lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice, Lest the daughters of the uncircumcised triumph.
- 21 Ye mountains of Gilboa, Let there be no dew nor rain upon you, neither fields of offerings: For there the shield of the mighty was <sup>{1}</sup> vilely cast away, The shield of Saul, <sup>{2}</sup> not anointed with oil. <sup>{1}</sup> Or defiled <sup>2</sup> Or, as of one not anointed
- 22 From the blood of the slain, from the fat of the mighty, The bow of Jonathan turned not back, And the

sword of Saul returned not empty.

23 Saul and Jonathan were lovely and pleasant in their lives, And in their death they were not divided:

They were swifter than eagles, They were stronger than lions.

24 Ye daughters of Israel, weep over Saul, Who clothed you in scarlet *{1}* delicately, Who put ornaments of gold upon your apparel. *{1}* *Heb with delights}*

25 How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! *{1}* Jonathan is slain upon thy high places. *{1}* *Or O Jonathan, slain etc}*

26 I am distressed for thee, my brother Jonathan: Very pleasant hast thou been unto me: Thy love to me was wonderful, Passing the love of women.

27 How are the mighty fallen, And the weapons of war perished!

## I. DAVID'S TRIUMPHS. (1.-10.)

### A. King over Judah at Hebron. (7.5 years) (1.-4.)

#### 1- David mourns the death of Saul and Jonathan. (at Ziklag) (1.)

a- An Amalekite fabricates a story of mercy-killing. vs. 1-10

b- David has the Amalekite slain. vs. 11-16

c- David's lamentation and praise. vs. 17-27

**2 Samuel 2**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that David inquired of Jehovah, saying, Shall I go up into any of the cities of Judah? And Jehovah said unto him, Go up. And David said, Whither shall I go up? And he said, Unto Hebron.
- 2 So David went up thither, and his two wives also, Ahinoam the Jezreelitess, and Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite.
- 3 And his men that were with him did David bring up, every man with his household: and they dwelt in the cities of Hebron.
- 4 And the men of Judah came, and there they anointed David king over the house of Judah. And they told David, saying, The men of Jabesh-gilead were they that buried Saul.
- 5 And David sent messengers unto the men of Jabesh-gilead, and said unto them, Blessed be ye of Jehovah, that ye have showed this kindness unto your lord, even unto Saul, and have buried him.
- 6 And now Jehovah show lovingkindness and truth unto you: and I also will requite you this kindness, because ye have done this thing.
- 7 Now therefore let your hands be strong, and be ye valiant; for Saul your lord is dead, and also the house of Judah have anointed me king over them.
- 8 ¶ Now Abner the son of Ner, captain of Saul's host, had taken *{1}* Ish-bosheth the son of Saul, and brought him over to Mahanaim; *{1} In 1 Ch 8:33; 9:39 Eshbaal}*
- 9 and he made him king over Gilead, and over the *{1}* Ashurites, and over Jezreel, and over Ephraim, and over Benjamin, and over all Israel. *{1} The Vulg and Syr have Geshurites }*
- 10 Ish-bosheth, Saul's son, was forty years old when he began to reign over Israel, and he reigned two years. But the house of Judah followed David.
- 11 And the time that David was king in Hebron over the house of Judah was seven years and six months.
- 12 And Abner the son of Ner, and the servants of Ish-bosheth the son of Saul, went out from Mahanaim to Gibeon.
- 13 And Joab the son of Zeruiah, and the servants of David, went out, and met *{1}* them by the pool of Gibeon; and they sat down, the one on the one side of the pool, and the other on the other side of the pool. *{1} Heb them together}*
- 14 And Abner said to Joab, Let the young men, I pray thee, arise and play before us. And Joab said, Let them arise.
- 15 Then they arose and went over by number: twelve for Benjamin, and for Ish-bosheth the son of Saul, and twelve of the servants of David.
- 16 And they caught every one his fellow by the head, and *thrust* his sword in his fellow's side; so they fell down together: wherefore that place was called *{1}* Helkath-hazzurim, which is in Gibeon. *{1} That is The field of the sharp knives}*
- 17 And the battle was very sore that day: and Abner was beaten, and the men of Israel, before the servants of David.
- 18 ¶ And the three sons of Zeruiah were there, Joab, and Abishai, and Asahel: and Asahel was as light of foot *{1}* as a wild roe. *{1} Heb as one of the roes that are in the field}*
- 19 And Asahel pursued after Abner; and in going he turned not to the right hand nor to the left from following Abner.
- 20 Then Abner looked behind him, and said, Is it thou, Asahel? And he answered, It is I.
- 21 And Abner said to him, Turn thee aside to thy right hand or to thy left, and lay thee hold on one of the young men, and take thee his *{1}* armor. But Asahel would not turn aside from following him. *{1} Or spoil; See Jud 14:19}*
- 22 And Abner said again to Asahel, Turn thee aside from following me: wherefore should I smite thee to the ground? how then should I hold up my face to Joab thy brother?
- 23 Howbeit he refused to turn aside: wherefore Abner with the hinder end of the spear smote him in the body, so that the spear came out behind him; and he fell down there, and died in the same place: and it came to pass, that as many as came to the place where Asahel fell down and died stood still.
- 24 But Joab and Abishai pursued after Abner: and the sun went down when they were come to the hill of Ammah, that lieth before Giah by the way of the wilderness of Gibeon.
- 25 ¶ And the children of Benjamin gathered themselves together after Abner, and became one band, and stood on the top of a hill.
- 26 Then Abner called to Joab, and said, Shall the sword devour for ever? knowest thou not that it will be



- bitterness in the latter end? how long shall it be then, ere thou bid the people return from following their brethren?
- 27 And Joab said, As God liveth, if thou hadst not spoken, surely then *{1}* in the morning the people had gone away, nor followed every one his brother. *{1} Heb from the morning }*
- 28 So Joab blew the trumpet; and all the people stood still, and pursued after Israel no more, neither fought they any more.
- 29 And Abner and his men went all that night through the Arabah; and they passed over the Jordan, and went through all Bithron, and came to Mahanaim.
- 30 And Joab returned from following Abner: and when he had gathered all the people together, there lacked of David's servants nineteen men and Asahel.
- 31 But the servants of David had smitten of Benjamin, and of Abner's men, *so that* three hundred and threescore men died.
- 32 And they took up Asahel, and buried him in the sepulchre of his father, which was in Beth-lehem. And Joab and his men went all night, and the day brake upon them at Hebron.
- 

- 2- David is made king of Judah. vs. 2:1-7
- a- He is sent by the Lord to Hebron.
  - b- He is invited by Judah.
  - c- He blesses the men of Jabesh-Gilead. They recovered Saul's body.
- 3- Ish-bosheth is made king over Israel. (40 years okd) vs. 8-32
- a- He reigns two years at Mahanaim (across Jordan). vs. 1-11
  - b- The civil war between Israel and Judah. vs. 12-24
  - c- The truce is declared. vs. 25-32

**2 Samuel 3**

- 1 ¶ Now there was long war between the house of Saul and the house of David: and David waxed stronger and stronger, but the house of Saul waxed weaker and weaker.
- 2 And unto David were sons born in Hebron: and his first-born was Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess;
- 3 and his second, Chileab, of Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite; and the third, Absalom the son of Maacah the daughter of Talmi king of Geshur;
- 4 and the fourth, Adonijah the son of Haggith; and the fifth, Shephatiah the son of Abital;
- 5 and the sixth, Ithream, of Eglah, David's wife. These were born to David in Hebron.
- 6 And it came to pass, while there was war between the house of Saul and the house of David, that Abner *{1}* made himself strong in the house of Saul. *{1}* Or showed himself strong for
- 7 ¶ Now Saul had a concubine, whose name was Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah: and *Ish-bosheth* said to Abner, Wherefore hast thou gone in unto my father's concubine?
- 8 Then was Abner very wroth for the words of *Ish-bosheth*, and said, Am I a dog's head that belongeth to Judah? This day do I show kindness unto the house of Saul thy father, to his brethren, and to his friends, and have not delivered thee into the hand of David; and yet thou charest me this day with *{1}* a fault concerning this woman. *{1}* Or the fault of this woman
- 9 God do so to Abner, and more also, if, as Jehovah hath sworn to David, I do not even so to him;
- 10 to transfer the kingdom from the house of Saul, and to set up the throne of David over Israel and over Judah, from Dan even to Beer-sheba.
- 11 And he could not answer Abner another word, because he feared him.
- 12 And Abner sent messengers to David *{1}* on his behalf, saying, Whose is the land? saying *also*, Make thy league with me, and, behold, my hand shall be with thee, to bring about all Israel unto thee. *{1}* Or where he was
- 13 And he said, Well; I will make a league with thee; but one thing I require of thee: that is, thou shalt not see my face, except thou first bring Michal, Saul's daughter, when thou comest to see my face.
- 14 And David sent messengers to *Ish-bosheth*, Saul's son, saying, Deliver me my wife Michal, whom I betrothed to me for a hundred foreskins of the Philistines.
- 15 And *Ish-bosheth* sent, and took her from her husband, even from *{1}* Paltiel the son of Laish. *{1}* In 1 Sa 25:44 *Palti}*
- 16 And her husband went with her, weeping as he went, and followed her to Bahurim. Then said Abner unto him, Go, return: and he returned.
- 17 And Abner had communication with the elders of Israel, saying, In times past ye sought for David to be king over you:
- 18 now then do it; for Jehovah hath spoken of David, saying, By the hand of my servant David I will save my people Israel out of the hand of the Philistines, and out of the hand of all their enemies.
- 19 And Abner also spake in the ears of Benjamin: and Abner went also to speak in the ears of David in Hebron all that seemed good to Israel, and to the whole house of Benjamin.
- 20 So Abner came to David to Hebron, and twenty men with him. And David made Abner and the men that were with him a feast.
- 21 And Abner said unto David, I will arise and go, and will gather all Israel unto my lord the king, that they may make a covenant with thee, and that thou mayest reign over all that thy soul desireth. And David sent Abner away; and he went in peace.
- 22 ¶ And, behold, the servants of David and Joab came from *{1}* a foray, and brought in a great spoil with them: but Abner was not with David in Hebron; for he had sent him away, and he was gone in peace. *{1}* Heb the troop
- 23 When Joab and all the host that was with him were come, they told Joab, saying, Abner the son of Ner came to the king, and he hath sent him away, and he is gone in peace.
- 24 Then Joab came to the king, and said, What hast thou done? behold, Abner came unto thee; why is it that thou hast sent him away, and he is quite gone?
- 25 Thou knowest Abner the son of Ner, that he came to deceive thee, and to know thy going out and thy coming in, and to know all that thou doest.
- 26 And when Joab was come out from David, he sent messengers after Abner, and they brought him back from the *{1}* well of Sirah: but David knew it not. *{1}* Or cistern
- 27 And when Abner was returned to Hebron, Joab took him aside into the midst of the gate to speak with him quietly, and smote him there in the body, so that he died, for the blood of Asahel his brother.
- 28 And afterward, when David heard it, he said, I and my kingdom are guiltless before Jehovah for ever of the blood of Abner the son of Ner:
- 29 let it fall upon the head of Joab, and upon all his father's house; and let there not fail from the house of Joab one that hath an issue, or that is a leper, or that leaneth on a staff, or that falleth by the sword, or that lacketh bread.
- 30 So Joab and Abishai his brother slew Abner, because he had killed their brother Asahel at Gibeon in the battle.
- 31 And David said to Joab, and to all the people that were with him, Rend your clothes, and gird you with sackcloth, and mourn before Abner. And king David followed the bier.

- 32 And they buried Abner in Hebron: and the king lifted up his voice, and wept at the grave of Abner; and all the people wept.
- 33 And the king lamented for Abner, and said, Should Abner die as a fool dieth?
- 34 Thy hands were not bound, nor thy feet put into fetters: As a man falleth before the children of iniquity, so didst thou fall. And all the people wept again over him.
- 35 And all the people came to cause David to eat bread while it was yet day; but David sware, saying, God do so to me, and more also, if I taste bread, or aught else, till the sun be down.
- 36 And all the people took notice of it, and it pleased them; as whatsoever the king did pleased all the people.
- 37 So all the people and all Israel understood that day that it was not of the king to slay Abner the son of Ner.
- 38 And the king said unto his servants, Know ye not that there is a prince and a great man fallen this day in Israel?
- 39 And I am this day weak, though anointed king; and these men the sons of Zeruiah are too hard for me: Jehovah reward the evil-doer according to his wickedness.

## 2 Samuel 4

- 1 ¶ And when *Ish-bosheth*, Saul's son, heard that Abner was dead in Hebron, his hands became feeble, and all the Israelites were troubled.
- 2 And *Ish-bosheth*, Saul's son, had two men that were captains of bands: the name of the one was Baanah, and the name of the other Rechab, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, of the children of Benjamin (for Beeroth also is reckoned to Benjamin:
- 3 and the Beerothites fled to Gittaim, and have been sojourners there until this day).
- 4 Now Jonathan, Saul's son, had a son that was lame of his feet. He was five years old when the tidings came of Saul and Jonathan out of Jezreel; and his nurse took him up, and fled: and it came to pass, as she made haste to flee, that he fell, and became lame. And his name was {1} Mephibosheth. {1} In 1 Ch 8:34; 9:40 Merib-baal?
- 5 And the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, Rechab and Baanah, went, and came about the heat of the day to the house of *Ish-bosheth*, as he took his rest at noon.
- 6 And {1} they came thither into the midst of the house, as though they would have fetched wheat; and they smote him in the body: and Rechab and Baanah his brother escaped. {1} Or there came...men fetching wheat?
- 7 Now when they came into the house, as he lay on his bed in his bedchamber, they smote him, and slew him, and beheaded him, and took his head, and went by the way of the Arabah all night.
- 8 And they brought the head of *Ish-bosheth* unto David to Hebron, and said to the king, Behold, the head of *Ish-bosheth*, the son of Saul, thine enemy, who sought thy life; and Jehovah hath avenged my lord the king this day of Saul, and of his seed.
- 9 ¶ And David answered Rechab and Baanah his brother, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, and said unto them, As Jehovah liveth, who hath redeemed my soul out of all adversity,
- 10 when one told me, saying, Behold, Saul is dead, thinking to have brought good tidings, I took hold of him, and slew him in Ziklag, which was the reward I gave him for his tidings.
- 11 How much more, when wicked men have slain a righteous person in his own house upon his bed, shall I not now require his blood of your hand, and take you away from the earth?
- 12 And David commanded his young men, and they slew them, and cut off their hands and their feet, and hanged them up beside the pool in Hebron. But they took the head of *Ish-bosheth*, and buried it in the grave of Abner in Hebron.

- 
- 4- David's ascendancy. (3.-4.)
- a- David's 6-wives and sons at Hebron. vs. 3:1-5
- b- Abner revolts to David. vs. 6-21
- 1) Abner's fall-out with *Ish-bosheth*.
- 2) Abner's death at hands of Joab. vs. 27
- 3) The death, of *Ish-bosheth* and David's revenge. (4.)

**2 Samuel 5**

- 1 ¶ Then came all the tribes of Israel to David unto Hebron, and spake, saying, Behold, we are thy bone and thy flesh.
- 2 In times past, when Saul was king over us, it was thou that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and Jehovah said to thee, Thou shalt be shepherd of my people Israel, and thou shalt be *{1}* prince over Israel. *{1}* Or leader}
- 3 So all the elders of Israel came to the king to Hebron; and king David made a covenant with them in Hebron before Jehovah: and they anointed David king over Israel.
- 4 David was thirty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years.
- 5 In Hebron he reigned over Judah seven years and six months; and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty and three years over all Israel and Judah.
- 6 ¶ And the king and his men went to Jerusalem against the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land, who spake unto David, saying, *{1}* Except thou take away the blind and the lame, thou shalt not come in hither; thinking, David cannot come in hither. *{1}* Or Thou shalt not come in hither, but the blind and the lame shall turn thee away}
- 7 Nevertheless David took the stronghold of Zion; the same is the city of David.
- 8 And David said on that day, Whosoever smiteth the Jebusites, let him get up to the watercourse, *{1}* and smite the lame and the blind, *{2}* that are hated of David's soul. Wherefore they say, *{3}* There are the blind and the lame; he cannot come into the house. *{1}* Or and as for the lame and the blind, that are hated of David's soul—  
2) Another reading is that hate David's soul 3) Or The blind and the lame shall not come into the house}
- 9 And David dwelt in the stronghold, and called it the city of David. And David built round about from Millo and inward.
- 10 And David waxed greater and greater; for Jehovah, the God of hosts, was with him.
- 11 ¶ And Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar-trees, and carpenters, and masons; and they built David a house.
- 12 And David perceived that Jehovah had established him king over Israel, and that he had exalted his kingdom for his people Israel's sake.
- 13 And David took him more concubines and wives out of Jerusalem, after he was come from Hebron; and there were yet sons and daughters born to David.
- 14 And these are the names of those that were born unto him in Jerusalem: Shammua, and Shobab, and Nathan, and Solomon,
- 15 and Ibhara, and Elishua, and Nepheg, and Japhia,
- 16 and Elishama, and *{1}* Eliada, and Eliphelet. *{1}* In 1 Ch 14:7 Beeliada}
- 17 ¶ And when the Philistines heard that they had anointed David king over Israel, all the Philistines went up to seek David; and David heard of it, and went down to the stronghold.
- 18 Now the Philistines had come and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.
- 19 And David inquired of Jehovah, saying, Shall I go up against the Philistines? wilt thou deliver them into my hand? And Jehovah said unto David, Go up; for I will certainly deliver the Philistines into thy hand.
- 20 And David came to Baal-perazim, and David smote them there; and he said, Jehovah hath *{1}* broken mine enemies before me, like the breach of waters. Therefore he called the name of that place *{2}* Baal-perazim. *{1}* Or broken forth upon mine enemies 2) That is The place of breakings forth}
- 21 And they left their images there; and David and his men took them away.
- 22 And the Philistines came up yet again, and spread themselves in the valley of Rephaim.
- 23 And when David inquired of Jehovah, he said, Thou shalt not go up: make a circuit behind them, and come upon them over against the *{1}* mulberry-trees. *{1}* Or balsam-trees }
- 24 And it shall be, when thou hearest the sound of marching in the tops of the mulberry-trees, that then thou shalt bestir thyself; for then is Jehovah gone out before thee to smite the host of the Philistines.
- 25 And David did so, as Jehovah commanded him, and smote the Philistines from *{1}* Geba until thou come to Gezer. *{1}* In 1 Ch 14:16 Gibeon}

- B- King over all Israel at Jerusalem. (5.-10.)
  - 1- David's throne established. (5.-7.)
    - a- His reign summarized (5.)
      - 1) He is made king over Judah at Hebron at age 30. vs. 1-5
      - 2) He took Jerusalem from the Jebusites. vs. 7
      - 3) He acquires wives and children. vs. 11-16
      - 4) He defeats the Philistines. vs. 17-25

**2 Samuel 6**

- 1 ¶ And David again gathered together all the chosen men of Israel, thirty thousand.
- 2 And David arose, and went with all the people that were with him, from Baale-judah, to bring up from thence the ark of God, *{1}* which is called by the Name, even the name of Jehovah of hosts that *{2}* sitteth *above* the cherubim. *{1}* *Heb whereupon is called the Name* 2) *Or is enthroned*;
- 3 And they set the ark of God upon a new cart, and brought it out of the house of Abinadab that was in *{1}* the hill: and Uzzah and Ahio, the sons of Abinadab, drove the new cart. *{1}* *Or Gibeah*;
- 4 And they brought it out of the house of Abinadab, which was in *{1}* the hill, with the ark of God: and Ahio went before the ark. *{1}* *Or Gibeah*;
- 5 And David and all the house of Israel played before Jehovah with all manner of *instruments made of* *{1}* fir-wood, and with harps, and with psalteries, and with timbrels, and with *{2}* castanets, and with cymbals. *{1}* *Or cypress-wood* 2) *Or sistra*;
- 6 ¶ And when they came to the threshing-floor of Nacon, Uzzah put forth *his hand* to the ark of God, and took hold of it; for the oxen *{1}* stumbled. *{1}* *Or were restive; Or threw it down*;
- 7 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Uzzah; and God smote him there for his *{1}* error; and there he died by the ark of God. *{1}* *Or rashness*;
- 8 And David was displeased, because Jehovah had broken forth upon Uzzah; and he called that place *{1}* Perez-uzzah, unto this day. *{1}* *That is The breach of Uzzah*;
- 9 And David was afraid of Jehovah that day; and he said, How shall the ark of Jehovah come unto me?
- 10 So David would not remove the ark of Jehovah unto him into the city of David; but David carried it aside into the house of Obed-edom the Gittite.
- 11 And the ark of Jehovah remained in the house of Obed-edom the Gittite three months: and Jehovah blessed Obed-edom, and all his house.
- 12 ¶ And it was told king David, saying, Jehovah hath blessed the house of Obed-edom, and all that pertaineth unto him, because of the ark of God. And David went and brought up the ark of God from the house of Obed-edom into the city of David with joy.
- 13 And it was so, that, when they that bare the ark of Jehovah had gone six paces, he sacrificed an ox and a fatling.
- 14 And David danced before Jehovah with all his might; and David was girded with a linen ephod.
- 15 So David and all the house of Israel brought up the ark of Jehovah with shouting, and with the sound of the trumpet.
- 16 And it was so, as the ark of Jehovah came into the city of David, that Michal the daughter of Saul looked out at the window, and saw king David leaping and dancing before Jehovah; and she despised him in her heart.
- 17 And they brought in the ark of Jehovah, and set it in its place, in the midst of the tent that David had pitched for it; and David offered burnt-offerings and peace-offerings before Jehovah.
- 18 And when David had made an end of offering the burnt-offering and the peace-offerings, he blessed the people in the name of Jehovah of hosts.
- 19 And he dealt among all the people, even among the whole multitude of Israel, both to men and women, to every one a cake of bread, and a portion *{1}* of *flesh*, and a cake of raisins. So all the people departed every one to his house. *{1}* *Or, of wine*;
- 20 ¶ Then David returned to bless his household. And Michal the daughter of Saul came out to meet David, and said, How glorious was the king of Israel to-day, who uncovered himself to-day in the eyes of the handmaids of his servants, as one of the vain fellows shamelessly uncovereth himself!
- 21 And David said unto Michal, *It was* before Jehovah, who chose me above thy father, and above all his house, to appoint me prince over the people of Jehovah, over Israel: therefore will I play before Jehovah.
- 22 And I will be yet more vile than this, and will be base in mine own sight: but of the handmaids of whom thou hast spoken, of them shall I be had in honor.
- 23 And Michal the daughter of Saul had no child unto the day of her death.

- b- The ark is brought to Jerusalem. (6.)
- 1) First attempt is unsuccessful. vs. 1-11  
Uzzah (not a Kohathite) smitten trying to steady the ark.
- 2) Second attempt is joyous vs. 12-23  
Michal despises David's "dancing",  
hence, she bore no children.

**2 Samuel 7**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when the king dwelt in his house, and Jehovah had given him rest from all his enemies round about,
- 2 that the king said unto Nathan the prophet, See now, I dwell in a house of cedar, but the ark of God dwelleth within curtains.
- 3 And Nathan said to the king, Go, do all that is in thy heart; for Jehovah is with thee.
- 4 ¶ And it came to pass the same night, that the word of Jehovah came unto Nathan, saying,
- 5 Go and tell my servant David, Thus saith Jehovah, Shalt thou build me a house for me to dwell in?
- 6 for I have not dwelt in a house since the day that I brought up the children of Israel out of Egypt, even to this day, but have walked in a tent and in a tabernacle.
- 7 In all places wherein I have walked with all the children of Israel, spake I a word with *{1}* any of the tribes of Israel, whom I commanded to be shepherd of my people Israel, saying, Why have ye not built me a house of cedar? *{1}* *In 1 Ch 17:6 any of the judges}*
- 8 Now therefore thus shalt thou say unto my servant David, Thus saith Jehovah of hosts, I took thee from the *{1}* sheepcote, from following the sheep, that thou shouldest be *{2}* prince over my people, over Israel; *{1}* *Or pasture 2) Or leader}*
- 9 and I have been with thee whithersoever thou wentest, and have cut off all thine enemies from before thee; and I will make thee a great name, like unto the name of the great ones that are in the earth.
- 10 And I will appoint a place for my people Israel, and will plant them, that they may dwell in their own place, and be moved no more; neither shall the children of wickedness afflict them any more, as at the first,
- 11 and *as* from the day that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel; and I *{1}* will cause thee to rest from all thine enemies. Moreover Jehovah telleth thee that Jehovah will make thee a house. *{1}* *Or have caused}*
- 12 When thy days are fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, that shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.
- 13 He shall build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom for ever.
- 14 I will be his father, and he shall be my son: if he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men;
- 15 but my lovingkindness shall not depart from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I put away before thee.
- 16 And thy house and thy kingdom shall be made sure for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever.
- 17 According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David.
- 18 ¶ Then David the king went in, and sat before Jehovah; and he said, Who am I, O Lord Jehovah, and what is my house, that thou hast brought me thus far?
- 19 And this was yet a small thing in thine eyes, O Lord Jehovah; but thou hast spoken also of thy servant's house for a great while to come; *{1}* and this *too* after the manner of men, O Lord Jehovah! *{1}* *Or and is this the law of man, O Lord Jehovah?}*
- 20 And what can David say more unto thee? for thou knowest thy servant, O Lord Jehovah.
- 21 For thy word's sake, and according to thine own heart, hast thou wrought all this greatness, to make thy servant know it.
- 22 Wherefore thou art great, O Jehovah God: for there is none like thee, neither is there any God besides thee, according to all that we have heard with our ears.
- 23 *{1}* And what one nation in the earth is like thy people, even like Israel, whom God went to redeem unto himself for a people, and to make him a name, and to do great things for you, and terrible things for thy land, before thy people, whom thou redeemest to thee out of Egypt, *from* the nations and their gods? *{1}* *Or And who is like thy people, like Israel, a nation that is alone in the earth etc }*
- 24 And thou didst establish to thyself thy people Israel to be a people unto thee for ever; and thou, Jehovah, becamest their God.
- 25 And now, O Jehovah God, the word that thou hast spoken concerning thy servant, and concerning his house, confirm thou it for ever, and do as thou hast spoken.
- 26 And let thy name be magnified for ever, saying, Jehovah of hosts is God over Israel; and the house of thy servant David shall be established before thee.
- 27 For thou, O Jehovah of hosts, the God of Israel, hast revealed to thy servant, saying, I will build thee a house: therefore hath thy servant *{1}* found in his heart to pray this prayer unto thee. *{1}* *Or been bold}*



28 And now, O Lord Jehovah, thou art God, and thy words are truth, and thou hast promised this good thing unto thy servant:

29 now therefore *{1}* let it please thee to bless the house of thy servant, that it may continue for ever before thee; for thou, O Lord Jehovah, hast spoken it: and with thy blessing let the house of thy servant be blessed for ever. *{1} Or begin and bless}*

---

- c- The Davidic covenant is established. (7.)
- 1) David's desire to build a house for the Lord. vs. 1-3
- 2) The Lord's refusal through Nathan. vs. 4-9
- 3) The Lord to build David a house. vs. 10-17
  - a) David's house to be established forever.
  - Note:
  - b) David's throne to be established forever.
- 4) David's praise and prayer. vs. 18-29

**2 Samuel 8**

- 1 ¶ And after this it came to pass, that David smote the Philistines, and subdued them: and David took *{1}* the bridle of the mother city out of the hand of the Philistines. *{1}* Or *Metheg-ammah*
- 2 And he smote Moab, and measured them with the line, making them to lie down on the ground; and he measured two lines to put to death, and one full line to keep alive. And the Moabites became servants to David, and brought tribute.
- 3 David smote also Hadadezer the son of Rehob, king of Zobah, as he went to recover his dominion at *{1}* the River. *{1}* Another reading is the river *Euphrates*;
- 4 And David took from him a thousand and seven hundred horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen: and David hocked all the chariot horses, but reserved of them for a hundred chariots.
- 5 And when *{1}* the Syrians of Damascus came to succor Hadadezer king of Zobah, David smote of *{1}* the Syrians two and twenty thousand men. *{1}* Heb *Aram*;
- 6 Then David put garrisons in *{1}* Syria of Damascus; and *{1}* the Syrians became servants to David, and brought tribute. And Jehovah *{2}* gave victory to David whithersoever he went. *{1}* Heb *Aram* 2) Or *saved David*;
- 7 And David took the shields of gold that were on the servants of Hadadezer, and brought them to Jerusalem.
- 8 And from *{1}* Betah and from Berothai, cities of Hadadezer, king David took exceeding much brass. *{1}* In *1 Ch 18:8 Tibhath*;
- 9 ¶ And when Toi king of Hamath heard that David had smitten all the host of Hadadezer,
- 10 then Toi sent *{1}* Joram his son unto king David, to *{2}* salute him, and to bless him, because he had fought against Hadadezer and smitten him: for Hadadezer *{3}* had wars with Toi. And *{4}* *Joram* brought with him vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and vessels of brass: *{1}* In *1 Ch 18:10 Hadoram* 2) Heb *asked him of his welfare* 3) Heb *was a man of wars* 4) Heb *in his hand were*;
- 11 These also did king David dedicate unto Jehovah, with the silver and gold that he dedicated of all the nations which he subdued;
- 12 of *{1}* Syria, and of Moab, and of the children of Ammon, and of the Philistines, and of Amalek, and of the spoil of Hadadezer, son of Rehob, king of Zobah. *{1}* Heb *Aram* }
- 13 And David gat him a name when he returned from smiting *{1}* the Syrians in the Valley of Salt, even eighteen thousand men. *{1}* Edom in *1 Ch 18:11, 12; Ps 60:1* title;
- 14 And he put garrisons in Edom; throughout all Edom put he garrisons, and all the Edomites became servants to David. And Jehovah *{1}* gave victory to David whithersoever he went. *{1}* Or *saved David*;
- 15 ¶ And David reigned over all Israel; and David executed justice and righteousness unto all his people.
- 16 And Joab the son of Zeruiah was over the host; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud was *{1}* recorder; *{1}* Or *chronicler*;
- 17 and Zadok the son of Ahitub, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, were priests; and Seraiah was *{1}* scribe; *{1}* Or *secretary*;
- 18 and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada *{1}* was over the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and David's sons were *{2}* chief ministers. *{1}* So in *2 Sa 20:23* and *1 Ch 18:17*; The Hebrew text has and the Cherethites etc 2) Or *priests*;

**2 Samuel 9**

- 1 ¶ And David said, Is there yet any that is left of the house of Saul, that I may show him kindness for Jonathan's sake?
- 2 And there was of the house of Saul a servant whose name was Ziba, and they called him unto David; and the king said unto him, Art thou Ziba? And he said, Thy servant is he.
- 3 And the king said, Is there not yet any of the house of Saul, that I may show the kindness of God unto him? And Ziba said unto the king, Jonathan hath yet a son, who is lame of his feet.
- 4 And the king said unto him, Where is he? And Ziba said unto the king, Behold, he is in the house of Machir the son of Ammiel, in Lo-debar.
- 5 Then king David sent, and fetched him out of the house of Machir the son of Ammiel, from Lo-debar.
- 6 And Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan, the son of Saul, came unto David, and fell on his face, and did obeisance. And David said, Mephibosheth. And he answered, Behold, thy servant!
- 7 And David said unto him, Fear not; for I will surely show thee kindness for Jonathan thy father's sake, and will restore thee all the *{1}* land of Saul thy father; and thou shalt eat bread at my table continually. *{1}* Heb *field*;
- 8 And he did obeisance, and said, What is thy servant, that thou shouldest look upon such a dead dog as I

- 9 ¶ Then the king called to Ziba, Saul's servant, and said unto him, All that pertained to Saul and to all his house have I given unto thy master's son.
- 10 And thou shalt till the land for him, thou, and thy sons, and thy servants; and thou shalt bring in *the fruits*, that thy master's son may have bread to eat: but Mephibosheth thy master's son shall eat bread alway at my table. Now Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants.
- 11 Then said Ziba unto the king, According to all that my lord the king commandeth his servant, so shall thy servant do. *{1}* As for Mephibosheth, *said the king*, he shall eat at my table, as one of the king's sons. *{1} Or But Mephibosheth eateth etc}*
- 12 And Mephibosheth had a young son, whose name was Mica. And all that dwelt in the house of Ziba were servants unto Mephibosheth.
- 13 So Mephibosheth dwelt in Jerusalem; for he did eat continually at the king's table. And he was lame in both his feet.
- 

2- David's kingdom extended. (8.-10.)

a- His foreign conquests. (8.)

1) Neighboring countries made tributary.

2) Two high priests. 4001< pz,

b- His kindness to Jonathan's son, Mephibosheth. (9.)

**2 Samuel 10**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that the king of the children of Ammon died, and Hanun his son reigned in his stead.
- 2 And David said, I will show kindness unto Hanun the son of Nahash, as his father showed kindness unto me. So David sent by his servants to comfort him concerning his father. And David's servants came into the land of the children of Ammon.
- 3 But the princes of the children of Ammon said unto Hanun their lord, Thinkest thou that David doth honor thy father, in that he hath sent comforters unto thee? hath not David sent his servants unto thee to search the city, and to spy it out, and to overthrow it?
- 4 So Hanun took David's servants, and shaved off the one half of their beards, and cut off their garments in the middle, even to their buttocks, and sent them away.
- 5 When they told it unto David, he sent to meet them; for the men were greatly ashamed. And the king said, Tarry at Jericho until your beards be grown, and then return.
- 6 ¶ And when the children of Ammon saw that they were become odious to David, the children of Ammon sent and hired the Syrians of Beth-rehob, and the Syrians of Zobah, twenty thousand footmen, and the king of Maacah with a thousand men, and the men of Tob twelve thousand men.
- 7 And when David heard of it, he sent Joab, and all the host of the mighty men.
- 8 And the children of Ammon came out, and put the battle in array at the entrance of the gate: and the Syrians of Zobah and of Rehob, and the men of Tob and Maacah, were by themselves in the field.
- 9 Now when Joab saw that <sup>{1}</sup> the battle was set against him before and behind, he chose of all the choice men of Israel, and put them in array against the Syrians: <sup>{1}</sup> *Heb the face of the battle was against*
- 10 And the rest of the people he committed into the hand of <sup>{1}</sup> Abishai his brother; and he put them in array against the children of Ammon. <sup>{1}</sup> *Heb Abshai*
- 11 And he said, If the Syrians be too strong for me, then thou shalt help me; but if the children of Ammon be too strong for thee, then I will come and help thee.
- 12 Be of good courage, and let us play the man for our people, and for the cities of our God: and Jehovah do that which seemeth him good.
- 13 So Joab and the people that were with him drew nigh unto the battle against the Syrians: and they fled before him.
- 14 And when the children of Ammon saw that the Syrians were fled, they likewise fled before Abishai, and entered into the city. Then Joab returned from the children of Ammon, and came to Jerusalem.
- 15 ¶ And when the Syrians saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they gathered themselves together.
- 16 And <sup>{1}</sup> Hadarezer sent, and brought out the Syrians that were beyond the River: and they came to Helam, with Shobach the captain of the host of Hadarezer at their head. <sup>{1}</sup> *In 2 Sa 8:3 Hadadazer*
- 17 And it was told David; and he gathered all Israel together, and passed over the Jordan, and came to Helam. And the Syrians set themselves in array against David, and fought with him.
- 18 And the Syrians fled before Israel; and David slew of the Syrians *the men of* seven hundred chariots, and forty thousand horsemen, and smote Shobach the captain of their host, so that he died there.
- 19 And when all the kings that were servants to Hadarezer saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they made peace with Israel, and served them. So the Syrians feared to help the children of Ammon any more.

- c- His kindness to Ammon despised. (10.)
- 1) His kind gesture repulsed. vs. 1-4
- 2) Ammon hires Syria against Israel. vs. 5-6
- 3) Israel subjects both Ammon and Syria. vs. 7-19

**2 Samuel 11**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, at the return of the year, at the time when kings go out *to battle*, that David sent Joab, and his servants with him, and all Israel; and they destroyed the children of Ammon, and besieged Rabbah. But David tarried at Jerusalem.
- 2 And it came to pass at eventide, that David arose from off his bed, and walked upon the roof of the king's house: and from the roof he saw a woman bathing; and the woman was very beautiful to look upon.
- 3 And David send and inquired after the woman. And one said, Is not this Bath-sheba, the daughter of Eliam, the wife of Uriah the Hittite?
- 4 And David sent messengers, and took her; and she came in unto him, and he lay with her (for she was purified from her uncleanness); and she returned unto her house.
- 5 And the woman conceived; and she sent and told David, and said, I am with child.
- 6 ¶ And David sent to Joab, *saying*, Send me Uriah the Hittite. And Joab sent Uriah to David.
- 7 And when Uriah was come unto him, David asked of him how Joab did, and how the people fared, and how the war prospered.
- 8 And David said to Uriah, Go down to thy house, and wash thy feet. And Uriah departed out of the king's house, and there followed him a *{1}* mess *of food* from the king. *{1} Or present from*
- 9 But Uriah slept at the door of the king's house with all the servants of his lord, and went not down to his house.
- 10 And when they had told David, saying, Uriah went not down unto his house, David said unto Uriah, Art thou not come from a journey? wherefore didst thou not go down unto thy house?
- 11 And Uriah said unto David, The ark, and Israel, and Judah, abide in booths; and my lord Joab, and the servants of my lord, are encamped in the open field; shall I then go into my house, to eat and to drink, and to lie with my wife? as thou livest, and as thy soul liveth, I will not do this thing.
- 12 And David said to Uriah, Tarry here to-day also, and to-morrow I will let thee depart. So Uriah abode in Jerusalem *{1}* that day, and the morrow. *{1} Or that day. And on the morrow David called him, and he etc*
- 13 And when David had called him, he did eat and drink before him; and he made him drunk: and at even he went out to lie on his bed with the servants of his lord, but went not down to his house.
- 14 ¶ And it came to pass in the morning, that David wrote a letter to Joab, and sent it by the hand of Uriah.
- 15 And he wrote in the letter, saying, Set ye Uriah in the forefront of the *{1}* hottest battle, and retire ye from him, that he may be smitten, and die. *{1} Heb strong*
- 16 And it came to pass, when Joab *{1}* kept watch upon the city, that he assigned Uriah unto the place where he knew that valiant men were. *{1} Or observed*
- 17 And the men of the city went out, and fought with Joab: and there fell some of the people, even of the servants of David; and Uriah the Hittite died also.
- 18 Then Joab sent and told David all the things concerning the war;
- 19 and he charged the messenger, saying, When thou hast made an end of telling all the things concerning the war unto the king,
- 20 it shall be that, if the king's wrath arise, and he say unto thee, Wherefore went ye so nigh unto the city to fight? knew ye not that they would shoot from the wall?
- 21 who smote Abimelech the son of *{1}* Jerubbesheth? did not a woman cast an upper millstone upon him from the wall, so that he died at Thebez? why went ye so nigh the wall? then shalt thou say, Thy servant Uriah the Hittite is dead also. *{1} In Jud 6:32 Jerubbaal*
- 22 So the messenger went, and came and showed David all that Joab had sent him for.
- 23 And the messenger said unto David, The men prevailed against us, and came out unto us into the field, and we were upon them even unto the entrance of the gate.
- 24 And the shooters shot at thy servants from off the wall; and some of the king's servants are dead, and thy servant Uriah the Hittite is dead also.
- 25 Then David said unto the messenger, Thus shalt thou say unto Joab, Let not this thing displease thee, for the sword devoureth one as well as another; make thy battle more strong against the city, and overthrow it: and encourage thou him.
- 26 And when the wife of Uriah heard that Uriah her husband was dead, she made lamentation for her husband.
- 27 And when the mourning was past, David sent and took her home to his house, and she became his

II. DAVID'S TROUBLES.

(11.-20.)

**Theme: The High Cost Of Low Living!****Began at the height of his success.****Note: Heb 3:13 But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.**A- His sin and repentance.

(11. - 12.)

1- David's sin committed .

- a- The affair with Bathsheba. One of the Mat 1, Gospel According to 5 women.vs. 1-5. Tamar, Gen 38:6; Rahab, Jos 2:1; Bethsheba, 2 Sam 11:3; Ruth, Ruth; and finally Mary The Mother of Jesus The Messiah.
- b- The attempted cover-up. vs. 6-11
  - 1) Uriah is returned from battle. vs. 12-13
  - 2) Uriah's honor foils David.
- c- The resort to murder. vs. 14-25
- d- The marriage and birth vs. 26-27
- e- The Lord's observation. vs. 27b

- 1 ¶ And Jehovah sent Nathan unto David. And he came unto him, and said unto him, There were two men in one city; the one rich, and the other poor.
- 2 The rich man had exceeding many flocks and herds;
- 3 but the poor man had nothing, save one little ewe lamb, which he had bought and nourished up: and it grew up together with him, and with his children; it did eat of his own morsel, and drank of his own cup, and lay in his bosom, and was unto him as a daughter.
- 4 And there came a traveller unto the rich man, and he spared to take of his own flock and of his own herd, to dress for the wayfaring man that was come unto him, but took the poor man's lamb, and dressed it for the man that was come to him.
- 5 And David's anger was greatly kindled against the man; and he said to Nathan, As Jehovah liveth, the man that hath done this is *{1}* worthy to die: *{1}* *Heb a son of death* }
- 6 and he shall restore the lamb fourfold, because he did this thing, and because he had no pity.
- 7 And Nathan said to David, Thou art the man. Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, I anointed thee king over Israel, and I delivered thee out of the hand of Saul;
- 8 and I gave thee thy master's house, and thy master's wives into thy bosom, and gave thee the house of Israel and of Judah; and if that had been too little, I would have added unto thee such and such things.
- 9 Wherefore hast thou despised the word of Jehovah, to do that which is evil in his sight? thou hast smitten Uriah the Hittite with the sword, and hast taken his wife to be thy wife, and hast slain him with the sword of the children of Ammon.
- 10 Now therefore the sword shall never depart from thy house, because thou hast despised me, and hast taken the wife of Uriah the Hittite to be thy wife.
- 11 Thus saith Jehovah, Behold, I will raise up evil against thee out of thine own house; and I will take thy wives before thine eyes, and give them unto thy neighbor, and he shall lie with thy wives in the sight of this sun.
- 12 For thou didst it secretly: but I will do this thing before all Israel, and before the sun.
- 13 And David said unto Nathan, I have sinned against Jehovah. And Nathan said unto David, Jehovah also hath put away thy sin; thou shalt not die.
- 14 Howbeit, because by this deed thou hast given great occasion to the enemies of Jehovah to blaspheme, the child also that is born unto thee shall surely die.
- 15 ¶ And Nathan departed unto his house. And Jehovah struck the child that Uriah's wife bare unto David, and it was very sick.
- 16 David therefore besought God for the child; and David fasted, and went in, and lay all night upon the earth.
- 17 And the elders of his house arose, *and stood* beside him, to raise him up from the earth: but he would not, neither did he eat bread with them.
- 18 And it came to pass on the seventh day, that the child died. And the servants of David feared to tell him that the child was dead; for they said, Behold, while the child was yet alive, we spake unto him, and he hearkened not unto our voice: *{1}* how will he then vex himself, if we tell him that the child is dead! *{1}* *Or how then shall we tell him that the child is dead, so that he do himself some harm?* }
- 19 But when David saw that his servants were whispering together, David perceived that the child was dead; and David said unto his servants, Is the child dead? And they said, He is dead.
- 20 Then David arose from the earth, and washed, and anointed himself, and changed his apparel; and he came into the house of Jehovah, and worshipped: then he came to his own house; and when he required, they set bread before him, and he did eat.
- 21 Then said his servants unto him, What thing is this that thou hast done? thou didst fast and weep for the child, while it was alive; but when the child was dead, thou didst rise and eat bread.
- 22 And he said, While the child was yet alive, I fasted and wept: for I said, Who knoweth whether Jehovah will not be gracious to me, that the child may live?
- 23 But now he is dead, wherefore should I fast? can I bring him back again? I shall go to him, but he will not return to me.
- 24 And David comforted Bath-sheba his wife, and went in unto her, and lay with her: and she bare a son, and *{1}* he called his name Solomon. And Jehovah loved him; *{1}* *Another reading is she called* }
- 25 and he sent by the hand of Nathan the prophet; and he called his name *{1}* Jedidiah, for Jehovah's sake. *{1}* *That is Beloved of Jehovah* }



- 26 ¶ Now Joab fought against Rabbah of the children of Ammon, and took the royal city.
- 27 And Joab sent messengers to David, and said, I have fought against Rabbah; yea, I have taken the city of waters.
- 28 Now therefore gather the rest of the people together, and encamp against the city, and take it; lest I take the city, and {1} it be called after my name. {1} *Heb my name be called upon it*
- 29 And David gathered all the people together, and went to Rabbah, and fought against it, and took it.
- 30 And he took the crown of {1} their king from off his head; and the weight thereof was a talent of gold, and *in it were* precious stones; and it was set on David's head. And he brought forth the spoil of the city, exceeding much. {1} *Or Malcam; See Zep 1:5*
- 31 And he brought forth the people that were therein, and put them {1} under saws, and {1} under harrows of iron, and {1} under axes of iron, and {2} made them pass through the {3} brickkiln: and thus did he unto all the cities of the children of Ammon. And David and all the people returned unto Jerusalem. {1} *Or to 2) Or with a slight change in the Hebrew text made them labor at 3) Or brick-mould*

## 2- David's sin revealed and punished. (12.)

- a- Nathan's parable of The Ewe Lamb. vs. 1-4  
Or: "The tale of two sheep ranchers."
- b- David's self-judgment. vs. 5-6
- c- Nathan's judgment. vs 7-12
  - 1) Three sins noted. [adultery, stealing, murder]
  - 2) The judgment.
    - a) The sword will be in his house continually. vs. 10
    - b) He will lose his wives. vs. 11
- d- David's repentance and mercy from the Lord. vs.13-14
- e- The birth of the child of Uriah's wife.
  - 1) The child dies on the 7<sup>th</sup> day (before circumcision performed).
  - 2) David's "pregnant" response: vs. 23  
"But now he is dead. Why should I fast?  
Can I bring him back again? I shall go to him,  
but he shall not return to me!"
- f- The birth of Solomon. vs. 24-25
- g- The jeweled crown of Ammon taken. vs. 26-31  
A talent of gold and precious jewels and placed on David's head.

**2 Samuel 13**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that Absalom the son of David had a fair sister, whose name was Tamar; and Amnon the son of David loved her.
- 2 And Amnon was so vexed that he fell sick because of his sister Tamar; for she was a virgin; and it seemed hard to Amnon to do anything unto her.
- 3 But Amnon had a friend, whose name was Jonadab, the son of Shimeah, David's brother; and Jonadab was a very subtle man.
- 4 And he said unto him, Why, O son of the king, art thou thus lean *{1}* from day to day? wilt thou not tell me? And Amnon said unto him, I love Tamar, my brother Absalom's sister. *{1} Heb morning by morning*
- 5 And Jonadab said unto him, Lay thee down on thy bed, and feign thyself sick: and when thy father cometh to see thee, say unto him, Let my sister Tamar come, I pray thee, and give me bread to eat, and dress the food in my sight, that I may see it, and eat it from her hand.
- 6 So Amnon lay down, and feigned himself sick: and when the king was come to see him, Amnon said unto the king, Let her sister Tamar come, I pray thee, and make me a couple of cakes in my sight, that I may eat from her hand.
- 7 Then David sent home to Tamar, saying, Go now to thy brother Amnon's house, and dress him food.
- 8 So Tamar went to her brother Amnon's house; and he was laid down. And she took dough, and kneaded it, and made cakes in his sight, and did bake the cakes.
- 9 And she took the pan, and poured them out before him; but he refused to eat. And Amnon said, Have out all men from me. And they went out every man from him.
- 10 And Amnon said unto Tamar, Bring the food into the chamber, that I may eat from thy hand. And Tamar took the cakes which she had made, and brought them into the chamber to Amnon her brother.
- 11 And when she had brought them near unto him to eat, he took hold of her, and said unto her, Come, lie with me, my sister.
- 12 And she answered him, Nay, my brother, do not *{1}* force me; for no such thing ought to be done in Israel: do not thou this folly. *{1} Heb humble*
- 13 And I, whither shall I carry my shame? and as for thee, thou wilt be as one of the fools in Israel. Now therefore, I pray thee, speak unto the king; for he will not withhold me from thee.
- 14 Howbeit he would not hearken unto her voice; but being stronger than she, he forced her, and lay with her.
- 15 Then Amnon hated her with exceeding great hatred; for the hatred wherewith he hated her was greater than the love wherewith he had loved her. And Amnon said unto her, Arise, be gone.
- 16 And she said unto him, *{1}* Not so, because this great wrong in putting me forth is *worse* than the other that thou didst unto me. But he would not hearken unto her. *{1} Or, Think not there is occasion for this great wrong in putting me forth, which is worse etc*
- 17 Then he called his servant that ministered unto him, and said, Put now this woman out from me, and bolt the door after her.
- 18 And she had *{1}* a garment of divers colors upon her; for with such robes were the king's daughters that were virgins apparelled. Then his servant brought her out, and bolted the door after her. *{1} Or a long garment with sleeves*
- 19 And Tamar put ashes on her head, and rent her garment of divers colors that was on her; and she laid her hand on her head, and went her way, crying aloud as she went.
- 20 And Absalom her brother said unto her, Hath *{1}* Amnon thy brother been with thee? but now hold thy peace, my sister: he is thy brother; take not this thing to heart. So Tamar remained desolate in her brother Absalom's house. *{1} Heb Aminon*
- 21 ¶ But when king David heard of all these things, he was very wroth.
- 22 And Absalom spake unto Amnon neither good nor bad; for Absalom hated Amnon, because he had forced his sister Tamar.
- 23 And it came to pass after two full years, that Absalom had sheep-shearers in Baal-hazor, which is beside Ephraim: and Absalom invited all the king's sons.
- 24 And Absalom came to the king, and said, Behold now, thy servant hath sheep-shearers; let the king, I pray thee, and his servants go with thy servant.
- 25 And the king said to Absalom, Nay, my son, let us not all go, lest we be burdensome unto thee. And he pressed him: howbeit he would not go, but blessed him.
- 26 Then said Absalom, If not, I pray thee, let my brother Amnon go with us. And the king said unto him,

- Why should he go with thee?
- 27 But Absalom pressed him, and he let Amnon and all the king's sons go with him.
- 28 And Absalom commanded his servants, saying, Mark ye now, when Amnon's heart is merry with wine; and when I say unto you, Smite Amnon, then kill him; fear not; have not I commanded you? be courageous, and be valiant.
- 29 And the servants of Absalom did unto Amnon as Absalom had commanded. Then all the king's sons arose, and every man gat him up upon his mule, and fled.
- 30 ¶ And it came to pass, while they were in the way, that the tidings came to David, saying, Absalom hath slain all the king's sons, and there is not one of them left.
- 31 Then the king arose, and rent his garments, and lay on the earth; and all his servants stood by with their clothes rent.
- 32 And Jonadab, the son of Shimeah, David's brother, answered and said, Let not my lord suppose that they have killed all the young men the king's sons; for Amnon only is dead; for by the appointment of Absalom this hath been determined from the day that he forced his sister Tamar.
- 33 Now therefore let not my lord the king take the thing to his heart, to think that all the king's sons are dead; for Amnon only is dead.
- 34 But Absalom fled. And the young man that kept the watch lifted up his eyes, and looked, and, behold, there came much people by the way of the hill-side behind him.
- 35 And Jonadab said unto the king, Behold, the king's sons are come: as thy servant said, so it is.
- 36 And it came to pass, as soon as he had made an end of speaking, that, behold, the king's sons came, and lifted up their voice, and wept: and the king also and all his servants wept <sup>{1}</sup> very sore. <sup>{1}</sup> *Heb with a very great weeping*
- 37 But Absalom fled, and went to Talmai the son of <sup>{1}</sup> Ammihur, king of Geshur. And *David* mourned for his son every day. <sup>{1}</sup> *Another reading is Ammihud }*
- 38 So Absalom fled, and went to Geshur, and was there three years.
- 39 And *the soul of* king David longed to go forth unto Absalom: for he was comforted concerning Amnon, seeing he was dead.
- 

## B- His family troubles. (13.-14.)

### 1- Absalom's exile. (13.)

Note: all these sins David did also.  
 "Don't do as I do, but do as I say!"

- |    |   |           |
|----|---|-----------|
| a- | Amnon seduces and shames Tamar.<br>He loves her then hates her. | vs. 1-19  |
| b- | Absalom slays Amnon for revenge.                                | vs. 20-36 |
| c- | Absalom retreats to Geshur of Syria.                            | vs. 37-39 |

**2 Samuel 14**

- 1 ¶ Now Joab the son of Zeruiah perceived that the king's heart was toward Absalom.
- 2 And Joab sent to Tekoa, and fetched thence a wise woman, and said unto her, I pray thee, feign thyself to be a mourner, and put on mourning apparel, I pray thee, and anoint not thyself with oil, but be as a woman that hath a long time mourned for the dead:
- 3 and go in to the king, and speak on this manner unto him. So Joab put the words in her mouth.
- 4 And when the woman of Tekoa spake to the king, she fell on her face to the ground, and did obeisance, and said, Help, O king.
- 5 And the king said unto her, What aileth thee? And she answered, Of a truth I am a widow, and my husband is dead.
- 6 And thy handmaid had two sons, and they two strove together in the field, and there was none to part them, but the one smote the other, and killed him.
- 7 And, behold, the whole family is risen against thy handmaid, and they say, Deliver him that smote his brother, that we may kill him for the life of his brother whom he slew, and so destroy the heir also. Thus will they quench my coal which is left, and will leave to my husband neither name nor remainder upon the face of the earth.
- 8 And the king said unto the woman, Go to thy house, and I will give charge concerning thee.
- 9 And the woman of Tekoa said unto the king, My lord, O king, the iniquity be on me, and on my father's house; and the king and his throne be guiltless.
- 10 And the king said, Whosoever saith aught unto thee, bring him to me, and he shall not touch thee any more.
- 11 Then said she, I pray thee, let the king remember Jehovah thy God, that the avenger of blood destroy not any more, lest they destroy my son. And he said, As Jehovah liveth, there shall not one hair of thy son fall to the earth.
- 12 Then the woman said, Let thy handmaid, I pray thee, speak a word unto my lord the king. And he said, Say on.
- 13 And the woman said, Wherefore then hast thou devised such a thing against the people of God? for in speaking this word the king is as one that is guilty, in that the king doth not fetch home again his banished one.
- 14 For we must needs die, and are as water split on the ground, which cannot be gathered up again; neither doth God take away life, but deviseth means, that he that is banished be not an outcast from him.
- 15 Now therefore seeing that I am come to speak this word unto my lord the king, it is because the people have made me afraid: and thy handmaid said, I will now speak unto the king; it may be that the king will perform the request of his servant.
- 16 For the king will hear, to deliver his servant out of the hand of the man that would destroy me and my son together out of the inheritance of God.
- 17 Then thy handmaid said, Let, I pray thee, the word of my lord the king be *{1}* comfortable; for as *{2}* an angel of God, so is my lord the king *{3}* to discern good and bad: and Jehovah thy God be with thee.  
*{1} Heb for rest 2) Or the 3) Heb to hear}*
- 18 Then the king answered and said unto the woman, Hide not from me, I pray thee, aught that I shall ask thee. And the woman said, Let my lord the king now speak.
- 19 And the king said, Is the hand of Joab with thee in all this? And the woman answered and said, As thy soul liveth, my lord the king, none can turn to the right hand or to the left from aught that my lord the king hath spoken; for thy servant Joab, he bade me, and he put all these words in the mouth of thy handmaid;
- 20 to change the face of the matter hath thy servant Joab done this thing: and my lord is wise, according to the wisdom of an angel of God, to know all things that are in the earth.
- 21 ¶ And the king said unto Joab, Behold now, *{1}* I have done this thing: go therefore, bring the young man Absalom back. *{1} Another reading is thou hast done}*
- 22 And Joab fell to the ground on his face, and did obeisance, and blessed the king: and Joab said, To-day thy servant knoweth that I have found favor in thy sight, my lord, O king, in that the king hath performed the request of *{1}* his servant. *{1} Another reading is thy}*
- 23 So Joab arose and went to Geshur, and brought Absalom to Jerusalem.

- 24 And the king said, Let him turn to his own house, but let him not see my face. So Absalom turned to his own house, and saw not the king's face.
- 25 Now in all Israel there was none to be so much praised as Absalom for his beauty: from the sole of his foot even to the crown of his head there was no blemish in him.
- 26 And when he cut the hair of his head (now it was at every year's end that he cut it; because it was heavy on him, therefore he cut it); he weighed the hair of his head at two hundred shekels, after the king's weight.
- 27 And unto Absalom there were born three sons, and one daughter, whose name was Tamar: she was a woman of a fair countenance.
- 28 ¶ And Absalom dwelt two full years in Jerusalem; and he saw not the king's face.
- 29 Then Absalom sent for Joab, to send him to the king; but he would not come to him: and he sent again a second time, but he would not come.
- 30 Therefore he said unto his servants, See, Joab's field is near mine, and he hath barley there; go and set it on fire. And Absalom's servants set the field on fire.
- 31 Then Joab arose, and came to Absalom unto his house, and said unto him, Wherefore have thy servants set my field on fire?
- 32 And Absalom answered Joab, Behold, I sent unto thee, saying, Come hither, that I may send thee to the king, to say, Wherefore am I come from Geshur? it were better for me to be there still. Now therefore let me see the king's face; and if there be iniquity in me, let him kill me.
- 33 So Joab came to the king, and told him; and when he had called for Absalom, he came to the king, and bowed himself on his face to the ground before the king: and the king kissed Absalom.

- 2- Absalom's return to Jerusalem. (14.)
- a- Joab arranges his return to Jerusalem. vs. 1-24  
Note the irreconciliation with David
- b- The long grudge is ended by Absalom. vs. 25-33

**2 Samuel 15**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that Absalom prepared him a chariot and horses, and fifty men to run before him.
- 2 And Absalom rose up early, and stood beside the way of the gate: and it was so, that, when any man had a suit which should come to the king for judgment, then Absalom called unto him, and said, Of what city art thou? And he said, Thy servant is of one of the tribes of Israel.
- 3 And Absalom said unto him, See, thy matters are good and right; but there is no man deputed of the king to hear thee.
- 4 Absalom said moreover, Oh that I were made judge in the land, that every man who hath any suit or cause might come unto me, and I would do him justice!
- 5 And it was so, that, when any man came nigh to do him obeisance, he put forth his hand, and took hold of him, and kissed him.
- 6 And on this manner did Absalom to all Israel that came to the king for judgment: so Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel.
- 7 ¶ And it came to pass at the end of *{1}* forty years, that Absalom said unto the king, I pray thee, let me go and pay my vow, which I have vowed unto Jehovah, in Hebron. *{1} According to Syr and some editions of Sept four}*
- 8 For thy servant vowed a vow while I abode at Geshur in *{1}* Syria, saying, If Jehovah shall indeed bring me again to Jerusalem, then I will *{2}* serve Jehovah. *{1} Heb Aram 2} Or worship}*
- 9 And the king said unto him, Go in peace. So he arose, and went to Hebron.
- 10 But Absalom sent spies throughout all the tribes of Israel, saying, As soon as ye hear the sound of the trumpet, then ye shall say, Absalom is king in Hebron.
- 11 And with Absalom went two hundred men out of Jerusalem, that were invited, and went in their simplicity; and they knew not anything.
- 12 And Absalom *{1}* sent for Ahithophel the Gilonite, David's counsellor, from his city, even from Giloh, while he was offering the sacrifices. And the conspiracy was strong; for the people increased continually with Absalom. *{1} Or sent Ahithophel}*
- 13 ¶ And there came a messenger to David, saying, The hearts of the men of Israel are after Absalom.
- 14 And David said unto all his servants that were with him at Jerusalem, Arise, and let us flee; for else none of us shall escape from Absalom: make speed to depart, lest he overtake us quickly, and bring down evil upon us, and smite the city with the edge of the sword.
- 15 And the king's servants said unto the king, Behold, thy servants are ready to do whatsoever my lord the king shall choose.
- 16 And the king went forth, and all his household after him. And the king left ten women, that were concubines, to keep the house.
- 17 And the king went forth, and all the people after him; and they tarried *{1}* in Beth-merhak. *{1} Or at the Far House}*
- 18 And all his servants passed on beside him; and all the Cherethites, and all the Pelethites, and all the Gittites, six hundred men that came after him from Gath, passed on before the king.
- 19 Then said the king to Ittai the Gittite, Wherefore goest thou also with us? return, and abide with the king: for thou art a foreigner, and also an exile; *return* to thine own place.
- 20 Whereas thou camest but yesterday, should I this day make thee go up and down with us, seeing I go whither I may? return thou, and take back thy brethren; mercy and truth be with thee.
- 21 And Ittai answered the king, and said, As Jehovah liveth, and as my lord the king liveth, surely in what place my lord the king shall be, whether for death or for life, even there also will thy servant be.
- 22 And David said to Ittai, Go and pass over. And Ittai the Gittite passed over, and all his men, and all the little ones that were with him.
- 23 And all the country wept with a loud voice, and all the people passed over: the king also himself passed over the brook Kidron, and all the people passed over, toward the way of the wilderness.
- 24 ¶ And, lo, Zadok also *came*, and all the Levites with him, bearing the ark of the covenant of God; and they set down the ark of God; and Abiathar went up, until all the people had done passing out of the city.
- 25 And the king said unto Zadok, Carry back the ark of God into the city: if I shall find favor in the eyes of Jehovah, he will bring me again, and show me both it, and his habitation:
- 26 but if he say thus, I have no delight in thee; behold, here am I, let him do to me as seemeth good unto

- 27 The king said also unto Zadok the priest, *{1}* Art thou *not* a seer? return into the city in peace, and your two sons with you, Ahimaaz thy son, and Jonathan the son of Abiathar. *{1}* Or Seest thou?
- 28 See, I will tarry *{1}* at the fords of the wilderness, until there come word from you to certify me. *{1}*  
*Another reading is in the plains}*
- 29 Zadok therefore and Abiathar carried the ark of God again to Jerusalem: and they abode there.
- 30 And David went up by the ascent of the *mount of Olives*, and wept as he went up; and he had his head covered, and went barefoot: and all the people that were with him covered every man his head, and they went up, weeping as they went up.
- 31 ¶ And one told David, saying, Ahithophel is among the conspirators with Absalom. And David said, O Jehovah, I pray thee, turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness.
- 32 And it came to pass, that, when David was come to the top *of the ascent*, *{1}* where God was worshipped, behold, Hushai the Archite came to meet him with his coat rent, and earth upon his head.  
*{1}* Or where he was wont to worship God}
- 33 And David said unto him, If thou passest on with me, then thou wilt be a burden unto me:
- 34 but if thou return to the city, and say unto Absalom, I will be thy servant, O king; as I have been thy father's servant in time past, so will I now be thy servant; then wilt thou defeat for me the counsel of Ahithophel.
- 35 And hast thou not there with thee Zadok and Abiathar the priests? therefore it shall be, that what thing soever thou shalt hear out of the king's house, thou shalt tell it to Zadok and Abiathar the priests.
- 36 Behold, they have there with them their two sons, Ahimaaz, Zadok's son, and Jonathan, Abiathar's son; and by them ye shall send unto me everything that ye shall hear.
- 37 So Hushai, David's friend, came into the city; and Absalom came into Jerusalem.
- 

### C- His kingdom is divided by Absalom.

(15.-18.)

#### 1- Absalom takes Jerusalem.

(15:1-17:25)

- a- He stole the hearts of the people. vs. 1-6
- b- He conspires at Hebron. vs. 7-12
- c- David is forced to flee Jerusalem.  
To save the city. vs. 13-16
  - 1) He leaves with 600 faithful men. vs. 18
  - 2) He crosses the Kidron weeping.
  - 3) He leaves secret agents in. Jerusalem. vs. 32-37  
Hushai, Zadok and Abiathar the priests.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 16 & 17 are backed up.

## 2 Samuel 16

- 1 ¶ And when David was a little past the top *of the ascent*, behold, Ziba the servant of Mephibosheth met him, with a couple of asses saddled, and upon them two hundred loaves of bread, and a hundred clusters of raisins, and a hundred of summer fruits, and a *{1}* bottle of wine. *{1}* Or skin}
- 2 And the king said unto Ziba, What meanest thou by these? And Ziba said, The asses are for the king's household to ride on; and the bread and summer fruit for the young men to eat; and the wine, that such as are faint in the wilderness may drink.
- 3 And the king said, And where is thy master's son? And Ziba said unto the king, Behold, he abideth at Jerusalem; for he said, To-day will the house of Israel restore me the kingdom of my father.
- 4 Then said the king to Ziba, Behold, thine is all that pertaineth unto Mephibosheth. And Ziba said, I do obeisance; let me find favor in thy sight, my lord, O king.
- 5 ¶ And when king David came to Bahurim, behold, there came out thence a man of the family of the house of Saul, whose name was Shimei, the son of Gera; he came out, and cursed still as he came.

- 6 And he cast stones at David, and at all the servants of king David: and all the people and all the mighty men were on his right hand and on his left.
- 7 And thus said Shimei when he cursed, Begone, begone, thou man of blood, and base fellow:
- 8 Jehovah hath returned upon thee all the blood of the house of Saul, in whose stead thou hast reigned; and Jehovah hath delivered the kingdom into the hand of Absalom thy son; and, behold, thou art *taken* in thine own mischief, because thou art a man of blood.
- 9 Then said Abishai the son of Zeruiah unto the king, Why should this dead dog curse my lord the king? let me go over, I pray thee, and take off his head.
- 10 And the king said, What have I to do with you, ye sons of Zeruiah? *{1}* Because he curseth, and because Jehovah hath said unto him, Curse David; who then shall say, Wherefore hast thou done so? *{1}* Or *When he curseth, and when etc*; Another reading is *So let him curse, because*
- 11 And David said to Abishai, and to all his servants, Behold, my son, who came forth from my bowels, seeketh my life: how much more *may* this Benjamite now *do it*? let him alone, and let him curse; for Jehovah hath bidden him.
- 12 It may be that Jehovah will look on the wrong done unto me, and that Jehovah will requite me good for *his* cursing of me this day.
- 13 So David and his men went by the way; and Shimei went along on the hill-side over against him, and cursed as he went, and threw stones *{1}* at him, and cast dust. *{1}* *Heb over against*
- 14 And the king, and all the people that were with him, came *{1}* weary; and he refreshed himself there. *{1}* *Or to Ayephim*
- 15 ¶ And Absalom, and all the people, the men of Israel, came to Jerusalem, and Ahithophel with him.
- 16 And it came to pass, when Hushai the Archite, David's friend, was come unto Absalom, that Hushai said unto Absalom, *Long live the king, Long live the king.*
- 17 And Absalom said to Hushai, Is this thy kindness to thy friend? why wentest thou not with thy friend?
- 18 And Hushai said unto Absalom, Nay; but whom Jehovah, and this people, and all the men of Israel have chosen, his will I be, and with him will I abide.
- 19 And again, whom should I serve? *should I not serve* in the presence of his son? as I have served in thy father's presence, so will I be in thy presence.
- 20 Then said Absalom to Ahithophel, Give your counsel what we shall do.
- 21 And Ahithophel said unto Absalom, Go in unto thy father's concubines, that he hath left to keep the house; and all Israel will hear that thou art abhorred of thy father: then will the hands of all that are with thee be strong.
- 22 So they spread Absalom a tent upon the top of the house; and Absalom went in unto his father's concubines in the sight of all Israel.
- 23 And the counsel of Ahithophel, which he gave in those days, was as if a man inquired at the *{1}* oracle of God: so was all the counsel of Ahithophel both with David and with Absalom. *{1}* *Heb word*

## 2 Samuel 17

- 1 ¶ Moreover Ahithophel said unto Absalom, Let me now choose out twelve thousand men, and I will arise and pursue after David this night:
- 2 and I will come upon him while he is weary and weak-handed, and will make him afraid; and all the people that are with him shall flee; and I will smite the king only;
- 3 and I will bring back all the people unto thee: the man whom thou seekest is as if all returned: *so* all the people shall be in peace.
- 4 And the saying pleased Absalom well, and all the elders of Israel.
- 5 Then said Absalom, Call now Hushai the Archite also, and let us hear likewise what he saith.
- 6 And when Hushai was come to Absalom, Absalom spake unto him, saying, Ahithophel hath spoken after this manner: shall we do *after* his saying? if not, speak thou.
- 7 And Hushai said unto Absalom, The counsel that Ahithophel hath given this time is not good.
- 8 Hushai said moreover, Thou knowest thy father and his men, that they are mighty men, and they are *{1}* chafed in their minds, as a bear robbed of her whelps in the field; and thy father is a man of war, and will not lodge with the people. *{1}* *Heb bitter of soul*
- 9 Behold, he is hid now in some pit, or in some *other* place: and it will come to pass, *{1}* when some of them are fallen at the first, that whosoever heareth it will say, There is a slaughter among the people that follow Absalom. *{1}* *Or when he falleth upon them*
- 10 And even he that is valiant, whose heart is as the heart of a lion, will utterly melt; for all Israel knoweth that thy father is a mighty man, and they that are with him are valiant men.
- 11 But I counsel that all Israel be gathered together unto thee, from Dan even to Beer-sheba, as the sand that is by the sea for multitude; and *{1}* that thou go to battle in thine own person. *{1}* *Or that thy presence* (Heb *face*) *go to the battle*
- 12 So shall we come upon him in some place where he shall be found, and we will light upon him as the dew falleth on the ground; and of him and of all the men that are with him we will not leave so much as one.



- 13 Moreover, if he {1} be gotten into a city, then shall all Israel bring ropes to that city, and we will draw it into the river, until there be not one small stone found there. {1} Or *withdraw himself* }
- 14 And Absalom and all the men of Israel said, The counsel of Hushai the Archite is better than the counsel of Ahithophel. For Jehovah had ordained to defeat the good counsel of Ahithophel, to the intent that Jehovah might bring evil upon Absalom.
- 15 ¶ Then said Hushai unto Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, Thus and thus did Ahithophel counsel Absalom and the elders of Israel; and thus and thus have I counselled.
- 16 Now therefore send quickly, and tell David, saying, Lodge not this night {1} at the fords of the wilderness, but by all means pass over; lest the king be swallowed up, and all the people that are with him. {1} *Another reading is in the plains* }
- 17 {1} Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz were staying by En-rogel; and a maid-servant used to go and tell them; and they went and told king David: for they might not be seen to come into the city. {1} Or *Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz are staying by Enrogel; so let the maid-servant go and tell them, and let them go and tell king David; for they may not be seen to come into the city.* }
- 18 But a lad saw them, and told Absalom: and they went both of them away quickly, and came to the house of a man in Bahurim, who had a well in his court; and they went down thither.
- 19 And the woman took and spread the covering over the well's mouth, and strewed bruised grain thereon; and nothing was known.
- 20 And Absalom's servants came to the woman to the house; and they said, Where are Ahimaaz and Jonathan? And the woman said unto them, They are gone over the brook of water. And when they had sought and could not find them, they returned to Jerusalem.
- 21 And it came to pass, after they were departed, that they came up out of the well, and went and told king David; and they said unto David, Arise ye, and pass quickly over the water; for thus hath Ahithophel counselled against you.
- 22 ¶ Then David arose, and all the people that were with him, and they passed over the Jordan: by the morning light there lacked not one of them that was not gone over the Jordan.
- 23 And when Ahithophel saw that his counsel was not followed, he saddled his ass, and arose, and gat him home, unto his city, and set his house in order, and hanged himself; and he died, and was buried in the sepulchre of his father.
- 24 Then David came to Mahanaim. And Absalom passed over the Jordan, he and all the men of Israel with him.
- 25 And Absalom set Amasa over the host instead of Joab. Now Amasa was the son of a man, whose name was {1} Ithra the Israelite, that went in to {2} Abigail the daughter of Nahash, sister to Zeruiah, Joab's mother. {1} *In 1 Ch 2:17 Jether the Ishmaelite 2) In 1 Ch 2:16, 17 Abigail* }
- 26 And Israel and Absalom encamped in the land of Gilead.
- 27 And it came to pass, when David was come to Mahanaim, that Shobi the son of Nahash of Rabbah of the children of Ammon, and Machir the son of Ammiel of Lodebar, and Barzillai the Gileadite of Rogelim,
- 28 brought beds, and basins, and earthen vessels, and wheat, and barley, and meal, and parched *grain*, and beans, and lentils, and parched *pulse*,
- 29 and honey, and butter, and sheep, and cheese of the herd, for David, and for the people that were with him, to eat: for they said, The people are hungry, and weary, and thirsty, in the wilderness.

- 
- 4) He takes the curse of Shimei as from the Lord. vs. 16:5-14
- d- Absalom plans his strategy. (16:15.-17:29.)  
He takes David's concubines. vs. 21
- 1) He accepts the false counsel of Hushai. vs.16:15-17:23
- 2) David organizes at Mahanaim beyond Jordan. vs. 24-29

**2 Samuel 18**

- 1 ¶ And David numbered the people that were with him, and set captains of thousands and captains of hundreds over them.
- 2 And David sent forth the people, a third part under the hand of Joab, and a third part under the hand of Abishai the son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother, and a third part under the hand of Ittai the Gittite. And the king said unto the people, I will surely go forth with you myself also.
- 3 But the people said, Thou shalt not go forth: for if we flee away, they will not care for us; neither if half of us die, will they care for us: *{1}* but thou art worth ten thousand of us; therefore now it is better that thou be ready to succor us out of the city. *{1}* *So Vulg and some editions of Sept; The Hebrew text has for now are there ten thousand such as we}*
- 4 And the king said unto them, What seemeth you best I will do. And the king stood by the gate-side, and all the people went out by hundreds and by thousands.
- 5 And the king commanded Joab and Abishai and Ittai, saying, Deal gently for my sake with the young man, even with Absalom. And all the people heard when the king gave all the captains charge concerning Absalom.
- 6 So the people went out into the field against Israel: and the battle was in the forest of Ephraim.
- 7 And the people of Israel were smitten there before the servants of David, and there was a great slaughter there that day of twenty thousand men.
- 8 For the battle was there spread over the face of all the country; and the forest devoured more people that day than the sword devoured.
- 9 ¶ And Absalom chanced to meet the servants of David. And Absalom was riding upon his mule, and the mule went under the thick boughs of a great *{1}* oak, and his head caught hold of the oak, and he was taken up between heaven and earth; and the mule that was under him went on. *{1}* *Or terebinth}*
- 10 And a certain man saw it, and told Joab, and said, Behold, I saw Absalom hanging in an oak.
- 11 And Joab said unto the man that told him, And, behold, thou sawest it, and why didst thou not smite him there to the ground? and I would have given thee ten *pieces of silver*, and a girdle.
- 12 And the man said unto Joab, Though I should receive a thousand *pieces of silver* in my hand, yet would I not put forth my hand against the king's son; for in our hearing the king charged thee and Abishai and Ittai, saying, *{1}* Beware that none touch the young man Absalom. *{1}* *Heb Have a care, whosoever ye be, of etc}*
- 13 Otherwise if I had dealt falsely against *{1}* his life (and there is no matter hid from the king), then thou thyself wouldest have set thyself against *me*. *{1}* *Another reading is my}*
- 14 Then said Joab, I may not tarry thus with thee. And he took three *{1}* darts in his hand, and thrust them through the heart of Absalom, while he was yet alive in the midst of the oak. *{1}* *Heb staves}*
- 15 And ten young men that bare Joab's armor compassed about and smote Absalom, and slew him.
- 16 And Joab blew the trumpet, and the people returned from pursuing after Israel; for Joab *{1}* held back the people. *{1}* *Or spared}*
- 17 And they took Absalom, and cast him into the great pit in the forest, and raised over him a very great heap of stones: and all Israel fled every one to his tent.
- 18 Now Absalom in his lifetime had taken and reared up for himself the pillar, which is in the king's dale; for he said, I have no son to keep my name in remembrance: and he called the pillar after his own name; and it is called Absalom's monument, unto this day.
- 19 ¶ Then said Ahimaaz the son of Zadok, Let me now run, and bear the king tidings, how that Jehovah hath *{1}* avenged him of his enemies. *{1}* *Heb judged him from the hand etc }*
- 20 And Joab said unto him, Thou shalt not be the bearer of tidings this day, but thou shalt bear tidings another day; but this day thou shalt bear no tidings, because the king's son is dead.
- 21 Then said Joab to the Cushite, Go, tell the king what thou hast seen. And the Cushite bowed himself unto Joab, and ran.
- 22 Then said Ahimaaz the son of Zadok yet again to Joab, But come what may, let me, I pray thee, also run after the Cushite. And Joab said, Wherefore wilt thou run, my son, seeing that thou *{1}* wilt have no reward for the tidings? *{1}* *Or hast no sufficient tidings}*
- 23 But come what may, *said he*, I will run. And he said unto him, Run. Then Ahimaaz ran by the way of the Plain, and outran the Cushite.
- 24 Now David was sitting between the two gates: and the watchman went up to the roof of the gate unto the wall, and lifted up his eyes, and looked, and, behold, a man running alone.

- 25 And the watchman cried, and told the king. And the king said, If he be alone, there is tidings in his mouth. And he came apace, and drew near.
- 26 And the watchman saw another man running; and the watchman called unto the porter, and said, Behold, *another* man running alone. And the king said, He also bringeth tidings.
- 27 And the watchman said, I think the running of the foremost is like the running of Ahimaaz the son of Zadok. And the king said, He is a good man, and cometh with good tidings.
- 28 And Ahimaaz called, and said unto the king, <sup>{1}</sup> All is well. And he bowed himself before the king with his face to the earth, and said, Blessed be Jehovah thy God, who hath delivered up the men that lifted up their hand against my lord the king. <sup>{1}</sup> *Heb Peace*
- 29 And the king said, <sup>{1}</sup> Is it well with the young man Absalom? And Ahimaaz answered, When Joab sent the king's servant, <sup>{2}</sup> even me thy servant, I saw a great tumult, but I knew not what it was. <sup>{1}</sup> *Heb. Is there peace with etc? 2) Or and*
- 30 And the king said, Turn aside, and stand here. And he turned aside, and stood still.
- 31 And, behold, the Cushite came; and the Cushite said, Tidings for my lord the king; for Jehovah hath avenged thee this day of all them that rose up against thee.
- 32 And the king said unto the Cushite, Is it well with the young man Absalom? And the Cushite answered, The enemies of my lord the king, and all that rise up against thee to do thee hurt, be as that young man is.
- 33 And the king was much moved, and went up to the chamber over the gate, and wept: and as he went, thus he said, O my son Absalom, my son, my son Absalom! would I had died for thee, O Absalom, my son, my son!

## 2- Absalom's defeat in the woods of Ephraim. (18.)

- a- David orders the battle. vs. 1-8  
20,000 slain in the woods. Not exactly a pleasant walk in the park!
- b- Absalom is hanged and slain by Joab. vs. 9-18  
Contrary to David's command.
- c- David's grief. vs. 19-33  
Oh, Absalom, Absalom, . .

**2 Samuel 19**

- 1 ¶ And it was told Joab, Behold, the king weepeth and mourneth for Absalom.
- 2 And the *{1}* victory that day was turned into mourning unto all the people; for the people heard say that day, The king grieveth for his son. *{1}* *Heb salvation*
- 3 And the people gat them by stealth that day into the city, as people that are ashamed steal away when they flee in battle.
- 4 And the king covered his face, and the king cried with a loud voice, O my son Absalom, O Absalom, my son, my son!
- 5 And Joab came into the house to the king, and said, Thou hast shamed this day the faces of all thy servants, who this day have saved thy life, and the lives of thy sons and of thy daughters, and the lives of thy wives, and the lives of thy concubines;
- 6 in that thou lovest them that hate thee, and hatest them that love thee. For thou hast declared this day, that princes and servants are nought unto thee: for this day I perceive, that if Absalom had lived, and all we had died this day, then it had pleased thee well.
- 7 Now therefore arise, go forth, and speak comfortably unto thy servants; for I swear by Jehovah, if thou go not forth, there will not tarry a man with thee this night: and that will be worse unto thee than all the evil that hath befallen thee from thy youth until now.
- 8 Then the king arose, and sat in the gate. And they told unto all the people, saying, Behold, the king is sitting in the gate: and all the people came before the king. Now Israel had fled every man to his tent.
- 9 ¶ And all the people were at strife throughout all the tribes of Israel, saying, The king delivered us out of the hand of our enemies, and he saved us out of the hand of the Philistines; and now he is fled out of the land from Absalom.
- 10 And Absalom, whom we anointed over us, is dead in battle. Now therefore why speak ye not a word of bringing the king back?
- 11 And king David sent to Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, saying, Speak unto the elders of Judah, saying, Why are ye the last to bring the king back to his house? seeing the speech of all Israel is come to the king, *to bring him* to his house.
- 12 Ye are my brethren, ye are my bone and my flesh: wherefore then are ye the last to bring back the king?
- 13 And say ye to Amasa, Art thou not my bone and my flesh? God do so to me, and more also, if thou be not captain of the host before me continually in the room of Joab.
- 14 And he bowed the heart of all the men of Judah, even as *the heart of one man*; so that they sent unto the king, *saying*, Return thou, and all thy servants.
- 15 So the king returned, and came to the Jordan. And Judah came to Gilgal, to go to meet the king, to bring the king over the Jordan.
- 16 ¶ And Shimei the son of Gera, the Benjamite, who was of Bahurim, hasted and came down with the men of Judah to meet king David.
- 17 And there were a thousand men of Benjamin with him, and Ziba the servant of the house of Saul, and his fifteen sons and his twenty servants with him; and they went through the Jordan in the presence of the king.
- 18 And there went over *{1}* a ferry-boat to bring over the king's household, and to do what he thought good. And Shimei the son of Gera fell down before the king, when he *{2}* was come over the Jordan. *{1}* *Or the convoy 2)* *Or would go over}*
- 19 And he said unto the king, Let not my lord impute iniquity unto me, neither do thou remember that which thy servant did perversely the day that my lord the king went out of Jerusalem, that the king should take it to his heart.
- 20 For thy servant doth know that I have sinned: therefore, behold, I am come this day the first of all the house of Joseph to go down to meet my lord the king.
- 21 But Abishai the son of Zeruiah answered and said, Shall not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed Jehovah's anointed?
- 22 And David said, What have I to do with you, ye sons of Zeruiah, that ye should this day be adversaries unto me? shall there any man be put to death this day in Israel? for do not I know that I am this day king over Israel?
- 23 And the king said unto Shimei, Thou shalt not die. And the king sware unto him.
- 24 ¶ And Mephibosheth the son of Saul came down to meet the king; and he had neither dressed his feet, nor trimmed his beard, nor washed his clothes, from the day the king departed until the day he came home in peace.
- 25 And it came to pass, *{1}* when he was come to Jerusalem to meet the king, that the king said unto him, Wherefore wentest not thou with me, Mephibosheth? *{1}* *Or when Jerusalem was come}*
- 26 And he answered, My lord, O king, my servant deceived me: for thy servant said, I will saddle me an ass, that I may ride thereon, and go *{1}* with the king; because thy servant is lame. *{1}* *Another reading is to}*
- 27 And he hath slandered thy servant unto my lord the king; but my lord the king is as *{1}* an angel of God: do therefore what is good in thine eyes. *{1}* *Or the}*
- 28 For all my father's house were but *{1}* dead men before my lord the king; yet didst thou set thy servant among

- them that did eat at thine own table. What right therefore have I yet that I should cry any more unto the king?  
*{1} Heb men of death}*
- 29 And the king said unto him, Why speakest thou any more of thy matters? I say, Thou and Ziba divide the land.
- 30 And Mephibosheth said unto the king, yea, let him take all, forasmuch as my lord the king is come in peace unto his own house.
- 31 ¶ And Barzillai the Gileadite came down from Rogelim; and he went over the Jordan with the king, to conduct him over the Jordan.
- 32 Now Barzillai was a very aged man, even fourscore years old: and he had provided the king with sustenance while he lay at Mahanaim; for he was a very great man.
- 33 And the king said unto Barzillai, Come thou over with me, and I will sustain thee with me in Jerusalem.
- 34 And Barzillai said unto the king, How many are the days of the years of my life, that I should go up with the king unto Jerusalem?
- 35 I am this day fourscore years old: can I discern between good and bad? can thy servant taste what I eat or what I drink? can I hear any more the voice of singing men and singing women? wherefore then should thy servant be yet a burden unto my lord the king?
- 36 Thy servant would but just go over the Jordan with the king: and why should the king recompense it me with such a reward?
- 37 Let thy servant, I pray thee, turn back again, that I may die in mine own city, by the grave of my father and my mother. But behold, thy servant Chimham; let him go over with my lord the king; and do to him what shall seem good unto thee.
- 38 And the king answered, Chimham shall go over with me, and I will do to him that which shall seem good unto thee: and whatsoever thou shalt *{1}* require of me, that will I do for thee. *{1} Heb choose to lay upon}*
- 39 And all the people went over the Jordan, and the king went over: and the king kissed Barzillai, and blessed him; and he returned unto his own place.
- 40 ¶ So the king went over to Gilgal, and Chimham went over with him: and all the people of Judah brought the king over, and also half the people of Israel.
- 41 And, behold, all the men of Israel came to the king, and said unto the king, Why have our brethren the men of Judah stolen thee away, and brought the king, and his household, over the Jordan, and all David's men with him?
- 42 And all the men of Judah answered the men of Israel, Because the king is near of kin to us: wherefore then are ye angry for this matter? have we eaten at all at the king's cost? or hath he given us any gift?
- 43 And the men of Israel answered the men of Judah, and said, We have ten parts in the king, and we have also more *right* in David than ye: why then did ye despise us, *{1}* that our advice should not be first had in bringing back our king? And the words of the men of Judah were fiercer than the words of the men of Israel. *{1} Or and were we not the first to speak of bringing back our king?}*

## D- His kingdom restored. (19.-20.)

- 1- David is invited back to Jerusalem. vs. 19:1-15
- a- David is rebuked by Joab. vs. 1-8  
 For morning after Absalom.
- b- David makes Amasa (Absalom's captain) captain instead of Joab. vs. 9-14
- c- David is invited back by Israel, then Judah.
- 2- David is escorted over Jordan. vs. 19:16-43
- a- Judah meets him at Gilgal.  
 David forgives his enemies.
- b- Israel and Judah vie to bring back the king.

**2 Samuel 20**

- 1 ¶ And there happened to be there a base fellow, whose name was Sheba, the son of Bichri, a Benjamite: and he blew the trumpet, and said, We have no portion in David, neither have we inheritance in the son of Jesse: every man to his tents, O Israel.
- 2 So all the men of Israel went up from following David, and followed Sheba the son of Bichri; but the men of Judah clave unto their king, from the Jordan even to Jerusalem.
- 3 And David came to his house at Jerusalem; and the king took the ten women his concubines, whom he had left to keep the house, and put them in ward, and provided them with sustenance, but went not in unto them. So they were shut up unto the day of their death, *{1}* living in widowhood. *{1}* *Heb in widowhood of life*
- 4 ¶ Then said the king to Amasa, Call me the men of Judah together within three days, and be thou here present.
- 5 So Amasa went to call *the men of Judah* together; but he tarried longer than the set time which he had appointed him.
- 6 And David said to Abishai, Now will Sheba the son of Bichri do us more harm than did Absalom: take thou thy lord's servants, and pursue after him, lest he get him fortified cities, and escape out of our sight.
- 7 And there went out after him Joab's men, and the Cherethites and the Pelethites, and all the mighty men; and they went out of Jerusalem, to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri.
- 8 When they were at the great stone which is in Gibeon, Amasa came to meet them. And Joab was girded with his apparel of war that he had put on, and thereon was a girdle with a sword fastened upon his loins in the sheath thereof; and as he went forth it fell out.
- 9 And Joab said to Amasa, Is it well with thee, my brother? And Joab took Amasa by the beard with his right hand to kiss him.
- 10 But Amasa took no heed to the sword that was in Joab's hand: so he smote him therewith in the body, and shed out his bowels to the ground, and struck him not again; and he died. And Joab and Abishai his brother pursued after Sheba the son of Bichri.
- 11 And there stood by him one of Joab's young men, and said, He that favoereth Joab, and he that is for David, let him follow Joab.
- 12 And Amasa lay wallowing in his blood in the midst of the highway. And when the man saw that all the people stood still, he carried Amasa out of the highway into the field, and cast a garment over him, when he saw that every one that came by him stood still.
- 13 When he was removed out of the highway, all the people went on after Joab, to pursue after Sheba the son of Bichri.
- 14 ¶ And he went through all the tribes of Israel unto Abel, and to Beth-maacah, and all the Berites: and they were gathered together, and went also after him.
- 15 And they came and besieged him in Abel of Beth-maacah, and they cast up a mound against the city, and it stood against the rampart; and all the people that were with Joab *{1}* battered the wall, to throw it down. *{1}* *Or undermined*
- 16 Then cried a wise woman out of the city, Hear, hear; say, I pray you, unto Joab, Come near hither, that I may speak with thee.
- 17 And he came near unto her; and the woman said, Art thou Joab? And he answered, I am. Then she said unto him, Hear the words of thy handmaid. And he answered, I do hear.
- 18 Then she spake, saying, They were wont to speak in old time, saying, They shall surely ask *counsel* at Abel: and so they ended *the matter*.
- 19 I am of them that are peaceable and faithful in Israel: thou seekest to destroy a city and a mother in Israel: why wilt thou swallow up the inheritance of Jehovah?
- 20 And Joab answered and said, Far be it, far be it from me, that I should swallow up or destroy.
- 21 The matter is not so: but a man of the hill-country of Ephraim, Sheba the son of Bichri by name, hath lifted up his hand against the king, even against David; deliver him only, and I will depart from the city. And the woman said unto Joab, Behold, his head shall be thrown to thee over the wall.
- 22 Then the woman went unto all the people in her wisdom. And they cut off the head of Sheba the son of Bichri, and threw it out to Joab. And he blew the trumpet, and they were dispersed from the city, every man to his tent. And Joab returned to Jerusalem unto the king.

23 ¶ Now Joab was over all the host of Israel; and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the {1} Cherethites and over the Pelethites; {1} Another reading is Carites; See 2 Ki 11:4}

24 and Adoram was over the men subject to taskwork; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud was the {1} recorder; {1} Or chronicler}

25 and Sheva was {1} scribe; and Zadok and Abiathar were priests; {1} Or secretary}

26 and also Ira the Jairite was {1} chief minister unto David. {1} Or priest; See 1 Ch 18:17}

---

- 3- Joab suppresses the new rebellion of Sheba. (20.)
- a- Civil war is started by Sheba of Benjamin. vs. 1-3
- b - In pursuit, Joab slays Amasa. vs. 4-10
- c- Joab slays Sheba. vs. 11-26

**2 Samuel 21**

- 1 ¶ And there was a famine in the days of David three years, year after year; and David sought the face of Jehovah. And Jehovah said, It is for Saul, and for his bloody house, because he put to death the Gibeonites.
- 2 And the king called the Gibeonites, and said unto them (now the Gibeonites were not of the children of Israel, but of the remnant of the Amorites; and the children of Israel had sworn unto them: and Saul sought to slay them in his zeal for the children of Israel and Judah);
- 3 and David said unto the Gibeonites, What shall I do for you? and wherewith shall I make atonement, that ye may bless the inheritance of Jehovah?
- 4 And the Gibeonites said unto him, It is no matter of silver or gold between us and Saul, or his house; *{1}* neither is it for us to put any man to death in Israel. And he said, What ye shall say, that will I do for you. *{1}* *Or neither for us shalt thou put any man to death in Israel}*
- 5 And they said unto the king, The man that consumed us, and that devised against us, *{1}* *that* we should be destroyed from remaining in any of the borders of Israel, *{1}* *Or, so that we have been destroyed}*
- 6 let seven men of his sons be delivered unto us, and we will hang them up unto Jehovah in Gibeah of Saul, the chosen of Jehovah. And the king said, I will give them.
- 7 But the king spared Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan the son of Saul, because of Jehovah's oath that was between them, between David and Jonathan the son of Saul.
- 8 But the king took the two sons of Rizpah the daughter of Aiah, whom she bare unto Saul, Armoni and Mephibosheth; and the five sons of *{1}* Michal the daughter of Saul, whom she bare to Adriel the son of Barzillai the Meholathite: *{1}* *In 1 Sa 18:19 Merab}*
- 9 And he delivered them into the hands of the Gibeonites, and they hanged them in the mountain before Jehovah, and they fell *all* seven together. And they were put to death in the days of harvest, in the first days, at the beginning of barley harvest.
- 10 ¶ And Rizpah the daughter of Aiah took sackcloth, and spread it for her upon the rock, from the beginning of harvest until water was poured upon them from heaven; and she suffered neither the birds of the heavens to rest on them by day, nor the beasts of the field by night.
- 11 And it was told David what Rizpah the daughter of Aiah, the concubine of Saul, had done.
- 12 And David went and took the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son from the men of Jabesh-gilead, who had stolen them from the *{1}* street of Beth-shan, where the Philistines had hanged them, in the day that the Philistines slew Saul in Gilboa; *{1}* *Or broad place}*
- 13 and he brought up from thence the bones of Saul and the bones of Jonathan his son: and they gathered the bones of them that were hanged.
- 14 And they buried the bones of Saul and Jonathan his son in the country of Benjamin in Zela, in the sepulchre of Kish his father: and they performed all that the king commanded. And after that God was entreated for the land.
- 15 ¶ And the Philistines had war again with Israel; and David went down, and his servants with him, and fought against the Philistines. And David waxed faint;
- 16 and Ishbibenob, who was of the sons of the *{1}* giant, the weight of whose spear was three hundred *shekels* of brass in weight, he being girded with *{2}* a new *sword*, thought to have slain David. *{1}* *Heb Raphah 2) Or new armor}*
- 17 But Abishai the son of Zeruiah succored him, and smote the Philistine, and killed him. Then the men of David swore unto him, saying, Thou shalt go no more out with us to battle, that thou quench not the lamp of Israel.
- 18 And it came to pass after this, that there was again war with the Philistines at *{1}* Gob: then Sibbecai the Hushathite slew *{2}* Saph, who was of the sons of the *{3}* giant. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 20:4 Gezer 2) In 1 Ch 20:4 Sippai 3) Heb Raphah}*
- 19 And there was again war with the Philistines at Gob; and Elhanan the son of Jaareoregim the Bethlehemite slew *{1}* Goliath the Gittite, the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 20:5 the brother of Goliath}*
- 20 And there was again war at Gath, where was a man of great stature, that had on every hand six fingers, and on every foot six toes, four and twenty in number; and he also was born to the *{1}* giant. *{1}* *Heb Raphah}*
- 21 And when he *{1}* defied Israel, Jonathan the son of *{2}* Shimei, David's brother, slew him. *{1}* *Or reproached 2) In 1 Sa 16:9 Shammah ; In 1 Ch 2:13; 20:7 Shimea}*
- 22 These four were born to the *{1}* giant in Gath; and they fell by the hand of David, and by the hand of his



III. AN APPENDIX OF SUNDRY EVENTS. (21. - 24.)

A- The Gibeonites avenged. (21.)

1- A broken treaty brings famine. vs. 1-2

2- Seven sons of Saul required by the Gibeonites. vs. 3-14

3- A parenthesis on the slaying of the brother of Goliath and his 4 giant sons.  
{Another of the Anakims Deut 1:28, 2:10, 2:11, 2:21, 9:2, 11:22 etc. NEC}<sup>4</sup>  
vs. 15-22

**2 Samuel 22**

- 1 ¶ And David spake unto Jehovah the words of this song in the day that Jehovah delivered him out of the hand of all his enemies, and out of the hand of Saul:
- 2 ¶ and he said, Jehovah is my rock, and my fortress, and my deliverer, even mine;
- 3 God, my rock, in him will I take refuge; My shield, and the horn of my salvation, my high tower, and my refuge; My saviour, thou savest me from violence.
- 4 I will call upon Jehovah, who is worthy to be praised: So shall I be saved from mine enemies.
- 5 For the waves of death compassed me; The floods of {1} ungodliness made me afraid: {1} Heb Belial}
- 6 The cords of Sheol were round about me; The snares of death came upon me.
- 7 In my distress I called upon Jehovah; Yea, I called unto my God: And he heard my voice out of his temple, And my cry *came* into his ears.
- 8 Then the earth shook and trembled, The foundations of heaven quaked And were shaken, because he was wroth.
- 9 There went up a smoke {1} out of his nostrils, And fire out of his mouth devoured: Coals were kindled by it. {1} Or in his wrath}
- 10 He bowed the heavens also, and came down; And thick darkness was under his feet.
- 11 And he rode upon a cherub, and did fly; Yea, he was seen upon the wings of the wind.
- 12 And he made darkness pavilions round about him, Gathering of waters, thick clouds of the skies.
- 13 At the brightness before him Coals of fire were kindled.
- 14 Jehovah thundered from heaven, And the Most High uttered his voice.
- 15 And he sent out arrows, and scattered them; Lightning, and discomfited them.
- 16 Then the channels of the sea appeared, The foundations of the world were laid bare, By the rebuke of Jehovah, At the blast of the breath of his nostrils.
- 17 He sent from on high, he took me; He drew me out of {1} many waters; {1} Or great}
- 18 He delivered me from my strong enemy, From them that hated me; for they were too mighty for me.
- 19 They came upon me in the day of my calamity; But Jehovah was my stay.
- 20 He brought me forth also into a large place; He delivered me, because he delighted in me.
- 21 Jehovah rewarded me according to my righteousness; According to the cleanness of my hands hath he recompensed me.
- 22 For I have kept the ways of Jehovah, And have not wickedly departed from my God.
- 23 For all his ordinances were before me; And as for his statutes, I did not depart from them.
- 24 I was also perfect toward him; And I kept myself from mine iniquity.
- 25 Therefore hath Jehovah recompensed me according to my righteousness, According to my cleanness in his eyesight.
- 26 With the merciful thou wilt show thyself merciful; With the perfect man thou wilt show thyself perfect;
- 27 With the pure thou wilt show thyself pure; And with the perverse thou wilt show thyself {1} froward. {1} So Ps 18:26; The text has unsavory}
- 28 And the afflicted people thou wilt save; But thine eyes are upon the haughty, {1} that thou mayest bring them down. {1} Or whom thou wilt bring down}
- 29 For thou art my lamp, O Jehovah; And Jehovah will lighten my darkness.
- 30 For by thee I run {1} upon a troop; By my God do I leap over a wall. {1} Or through}
- 31 As for God, his way is perfect: The word of Jehovah is tried; He is a shield unto all them that take refuge in him.
- 32 For who is God, save Jehovah? And who is a rock, save our God?
- 33 God is my strong fortress; And he {1} guideth the perfect in his way. {1} Or setteth free; According to another reading guideth my way in perfectness }
- 34 He maketh {1} his feet like hinds' *feet*, And setteth me upon my high places. {1} Another reading is my}
- 35 He teacheth my hands to war, So that mine arms do bend a bow of brass.
- 36 Thou hast also given me the shield of thy salvation; And thy {1} gentleness hath made me great. {1} Or condescension}
- 37 Thou hast enlarged my steps under me; And my {1} feet have not slipped. {1} Heb ankles}
- 38 I have pursued mine enemies, and destroyed them; Neither did I turn again till they were consumed.
- 39 And I have consumed them, and smitten them through, so that they cannot arise: Yea, they are fallen under my feet.
- 40 For thou hast girded me with strength unto the battle; Thou hast {1} subdued under me those that rose

- up against me. *{1} Heb caused to bow}*
- 41 Thou hast also made mine enemies turn their backs unto me, That I might cut off them that hate me.
- 42 They looked, but there was none to save; Even unto Jehovah, but he answered them not.
- 43 Then did I beat them small as the dust of the earth, I did crush them as the mire of the streets, and did spread them abroad.
- 44 Thou also hast delivered me from the strivings of my people; Thou *{1}* hast kept me to be the head of the nations: A people whom I have not known shall serve me. *{1} Or will keep}*
- 45 The foreigners shall *{1}* submit themselves unto me: As soon as they hear of me, they shall obey me. *{1} Or yield feigned obedience; Heb lie}*
- 46 The foreigners shall fade away, And shall *{1}* come trembling out of their close places. *{1} So Ps 18:45; The text has gird themselves}*
- 47 Jehovah liveth; And blessed be my rock; And exalted be God, the rock of my salvation,
- 48 Even the God that executeth vengeance for me, And that bringeth down peoples under me,
- 49 And that bringeth me forth from mine enemies: Yea, thou liftest me up above them that rise up against me; Thou deliverest me from the violent man.
- 50 Therefore I will give thanks unto thee, O Jehovah, among the nations, And will sing praises unto thy name.
- 51 *{1}* Great *{2}* deliverance giveth he to his king, And showeth lovingkindness to his anointed, To David and to his seed, for evermore. *{1} Another reading is He is a tower of deliverance 2) Heb salvations}*
- 

## B- David composes the 18th Psalm.

(22.)

- 1- Written when delivered from Saul.
- 2- Pictures the Lord destroying David's enemies.
- 3- Pictures God as a rewarder of the righteous.

**2 Samuel 23**

- 1 ¶ Now these are the last words of David. David the son of Jesse saith, And the man who was raised on high saith, The anointed of the God of Jacob, And {1} the sweet psalmist of Israel: {1} *Heb pleasant in the psalms of Israel*;
- 2 The Spirit of Jehovah spake {1} by me, And his word was upon my tongue. {1} *Or in*;
- 3 The God of Israel said, The Rock of Israel spake to me: {1} One that ruleth over men {2} righteously, That ruleth in the fear of God, {1} *Or, There shall be one...and it shall be as etc 2) Heb a righteous one*;
- 4 *He shall be* as the light of the morning, when the sun riseth, A morning without clouds, *When* the tender grass *springeth* out of the earth, Through clear shining after rain.
- 5 {1} Verily my house is not so with God; Yet he hath made with me an everlasting covenant, Ordered in all things, and sure: For it is all my salvation, and all *my* desire, Although he maketh it not to grow. {1} *Or For is not my house so with God? for he...for all my salvation, and all my desire, will he not make it to grow?*
- 6 But {1} the ungodly shall be all of them as thorns to be thrust away, Because they cannot be taken with the hand; {1} *Heb Belial, that is worthlessness* }
- 7 But the man that toucheth them Must be {1} armed with iron and the staff of a spear: And they shall be utterly burned with fire in *their* place. {1} *Heb filled* }
- 8 ¶ These are the names of the mighty men whom David had: {1} Josheb-basshebeth a Tahchemonite, chief of the captains; the same was Adino the Eznite, against eight hundred slain at one time. {1} *In 1 Ch 11:11 Jashobeam; The Hebrew of this verse is obscure.*
- 9 And after him was Eleazar the son of Dodai the son of an Ahohite, one of the three mighty men with David, when they defied the Philistines that were there gathered together to battle, and the men of Israel {1} were gone away. {1} *Heb went up*;
- 10 He arose, and smote the Philistines until his hand was weary, and his hand clave unto the sword; and Jehovah wrought a great {1} victory that day; and the people returned after him only to take spoil. {1} *Heb salvation*;
- 11 And after him was Shammah the son of Agee a Hararite. And the Philistines were gathered together {1} into a troop, where was a plot of ground full of lentils; and the people fled from the Philistines. {1} *Or for foraging*;
- 12 But he stood in the midst of the plot, and defended it, and slew the Philistines; and Jehovah wrought a great {1} victory. {1} *Heb salvation*;
- 13 And three of the thirty chief men went down, and came to David in the harvest time unto the cave of Adullam; and the troop of the Philistines was encamped in the valley of Rephaim.
- 14 And David was then in the stronghold; and the garrison of the Philistines was then in Beth-lehem.
- 15 And David longed, and said, Oh that one would give me water to drink of the well of Beth-lehem, which is by the gate!
- 16 And the three mighty men brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Beth-lehem, that was by the gate, and took it, and brought it to David: but he would not drink thereof, but poured it out unto Jehovah.
- 17 And he said, Be it far from me, O Jehovah, that I should do this: *shall I drink* the blood of the men that went {1} in jeopardy of their lives? therefore he would not drink it. These things did the three mighty men. {1} *Heb with their lives*;
- 18 And Abishai, the brother of Joab, the son of Zeruah, was chief of the three. And he lifted up his spear against three hundred {1} and slew them, and had a name among the three. {1} *Heb slain*;
- 19 Was he not most honorable of the three? therefore he was made their captain: howbeit he attained not unto the *first* three.
- 20 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of {1} a valiant man of Kabzeel, who had done mighty deeds, he slew the two *sons* of Ariel of Moab: he went down also and slew a lion in the midst of a pit in time of snow. {1} *According to another reading Ish-hai*;
- 21 And he slew an Egyptian, a goodly man: and the Egyptian had a spear in his hand; but he went down to him with a staff, and plucked the spear out of the Egyptian's hand, and slew him with his own spear.
- 22 These things did Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and had a name among the three mighty men.
- 23 He was more honorable than the thirty, but he attained not to the *first* three. And David set him over his {1} guard. {1} *Or council*;
- 24 Asahel the brother of Joab was one of the thirty; Elhanan the son of Dodo of Beth-lehem,
- 25 Shammah the Harodite, Elika the Harodite,
- 26 Helez the Paltite, Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite,

- 27 Abiezer the Anathothite, Mebunnai the Hushathite,  
28 Zalmon the Ahohite, Maharai the Netophathite,  
29 Heleb the son of Baanah the Netophathite, Ittai the son of Ribai of Gibeah of the children of Benjamin,  
30 Benaiah a Pirathonite, Hiddai of the brooks of Gaash.  
31 Abialbon the Arbathite, Azmaveth the Barhumite,  
32 Eliahba the Shaalbonite, the sons of Jashen, Jonathan,  
33 Shammah the Hararite, Ahiam the son of Sharar the Ararite,  
34 Eliphelet the son of Ahasbai, the son of the Maacathite, Eliam the son of Ahithophel the Gilonite,  
35 *{1}* Hezro the Carmelite, Paarai the Arbite, *{1}* Or *Hezrai*  
36 Igal the son of Nathan of Zobah, Bani the Gadite,  
37 Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Beerothite, *{1}* armorbearers to Joab the son of Zeruiah, *{1}* *Another reading is armorbearer*  
38 Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,  
39 Uriah the Hittite: thirty and seven in all.
- 

C- The last words of the sweet Psalmist of Israel. (23.)

- 1- The covenant not based on David's righteousness.
- 2- David's 37 mighty men listed.

**2 Samuel 24**

- 1 ¶ And again the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel, and he moved David against them, saying, Go, number Israel and Judah.
- 2 And the king said to Joab the captain of the host, who was with him, Go now to and fro through all the tribes of Israel, from Dan even to Beer-sheba, and number ye the people, that I may know the sum of the people.
- 3 And Joab said unto the king, Now Jehovah thy God add unto the people, how many soever they may be, a hundredfold; and may the eyes of my lord the king see it: but why doth my lord the king delight in this thing?
- 4 Notwithstanding, the king's word prevailed against Joab, and against the captains of the host. And Joab and the captains of the host went out from the presence of the king, to number the people of Israel.
- 5 And they passed over the Jordan, and encamped in Aroer, on the right side of the city that is in the middle of the valley *{1}* of Gad, and unto Jazer: *{1}* Or toward
- 6 then they came to Gilead, and to the land of Tahtim-hodshi; and they came to Dan-jaan, and round about to Sidon,
- 7 and came to the stronghold of Tyre, and to all the cities of the Hivites, and of the Canaanites; and they went out to the south of Judah, at Beer-sheba.
- 8 So when they had gone to and from through all the land, they came to Jerusalem at the end of nine months and twenty days.
- 9 And Joab gave up the sum of the numbering of the people unto the king: and there were in Israel eight hundred thousand valiant men that drew the sword; and the men of Judah were five hundred thousand men.
- 10 ¶ And David's heart smote him after that he had numbered the people. And David said unto Jehovah, I have sinned greatly in that which I have done: but now, O Jehovah, put away, I beseech thee, the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly.
- 11 And when David rose up in the morning, the word of Jehovah came unto the prophet Gad, David's seer, saying,
- 12 Go and speak unto David, Thus saith Jehovah, I *{1}* offer thee three things: choose thee one of them, that I may do it unto thee. *{1}* Or lay upon
- 13 So Gad came to David, and told him, and said unto him, Shall seven years of famine come unto thee in thy land? or wilt thou flee three months before thy foes while they pursue thee? or shall there be three days' pestilence in thy land? now advise thee, and consider what answer I shall return to him that sent me.
- 14 And David said unto Gad, I am in a great strait: let us fall now into the hand of Jehovah; for his mercies are *{1}* great; and let me not fall into the hand of man. *{1}* Or many
- 15 So Jehovah sent a pestilence upon Israel from the morning even to the time appointed; and there died of the people from Dan even to Beer-sheba seventy thousand men.
- 16 And when the angel stretched out his hand toward Jerusalem to destroy it, Jehovah repented him of the evil, and said to the angel that destroyed the people, It is enough; now stay thy hand. And the angel of Jehovah was by the threshing-floor of *{1}* Araunah the Jebusite. *{1}* Or Ornah; In 1 Ch 21:15 Ornan
- 17 And David spake unto Jehovah when he saw the angel that smote the people, and said, Lo, I have sinned, and I have done perversely; but these sheep, what have they done? let thy hand, I pray thee, be against me, and against my father's house.
- 18 ¶ And Gad came that day to David, and said unto him, Go up, rear an altar unto Jehovah in the threshing-floor of Araunah the Jebusite.
- 19 And David went up according to the saying of Gad, as Jehovah commanded.
- 20 And Araunah looked forth, and saw the king and his servants *{1}* coming on toward him: and Araunah went out, and bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground. *{1}* Or passing over
- 21 And Araunah said, Wherefore is my lord the king come to his servant? And David said, To buy the threshing-floor of thee, to build an altar unto Jehovah, that the plague may be stayed from the people.
- 22 And Araunah said unto David, Let my lord the king take and offer up what seemeth good unto him: behold, the oxen for the burnt-offering, and the threshing instruments and the yokes of the oxen for the wood:
- 23 *{1}* all this, O king, doth Araunah give unto the king. And Araunah said unto the king, Jehovah thy God

accept thee. {1} Or all this did Araunah the king give etc}

- 24 And the king said unto Araunah, Nay; but I will verily buy it of thee at a price. Neither will I offer burnt-offerings unto Jehovah my God which cost me nothing. So David bought the threshing-floor and the oxen for fifty shekels of silver.
- 25 And David built there an altar unto Jehovah, and offered burnt-offerings and peace-offerings. So Jehovah was entreated for the land, and the plague was stayed from Israel.
- 

D- David's sin of numbering and the plague. (24.)

- 1- Joab's protest is overruled.
- 2- The census taken. vs. 1-9  
800,000 in Israel and 500,000 in Judah, valiant men.
- 3- David's punishment. vs. 10-17  
He takes the pestilence.  
But averted because of David's offering.
- 4- David's purchase of the temple site. vs. 18-25
  - a- He insisted to pay a price.
  - b- His offering stayed the plague.

## QUESTIONS ON THE BOOKS OF SAMUEL

- 1- In what two ways was the birth of Samuel similar to that of Samson?
- 2- Where did Samuel grow up?
- 3- Why was the house of Eli to be cut off?
- 4- Name a famous grandson of Eli.
- 5- When was Ichabod born?
- 6- In what ways was Samuel like Moses
- 7- How was Samuels judgeship different from all preceding him?
- 8- What led Israel to seek a king?
- 9- From what city did Saul originate?
- 10- What event helped unite the nation under Saul?
- 11- Why was Saul rejected by the Lord to be king of Israel?
- 12- Name two famous children of Saul.
- 13- Why did the Lord allow Saul to slay the priests of Nob?
- 14- Name Saul's captain and David's captain.
- 15- - Where did David live with the Phillistines?



16- What happened to northern Israel after the death of Saul?

17- How long was David king of Judah alone and how long was Ish-bosheth king?

18- Characterize this divided period.

20- What age was David when he began to reign, and how long did he reign?

21- What special desire was David refused by the Lord?

22- Trace the location of the Ark through the books of Samuel?

23- Do you note any problems? What are they?

24- Who was Mephibosheth?

25- Name two prophets that advised David while he was king?

26- State two guarantees of the Davidic Covenant.

27- At what point does David's story turn from triumph to trouble?

28- How was David's reign characterized in his time of triumph?

29- What was David's punishment for his sin with Bathsheba?

30- Give two examples of this judgment in David's family.

31- What prompted Absalom to turn against David?

32- Where did David flee while in exile away from Jerusalem?

33- Why were the seven sons of Saul's children slain to stop the famine?

34- What Psalm does 2 Samuel record; who wrote it; and under what circumstances was it written?

22 What sin of David required the building of the altar on Mt. Moriah?

**THE BOOKS OF KINGS**  
**INTRODUCTION**  
**PRINCIPLES**  
**TEXT**  
**OUTLINE**  
**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley A. Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible**  
**And Interpretation**  
**At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## Introduction

### 1. Authorship.

- A- The books are anonymous. Jeremiah is often held to be the author (Bab. Talmud). The author was probably a prophet and a contemporary of Jeremiah. Thus Jeremiah could have written most of it before the captivity and the last chapter in Babylon (if he went there, which tradition avers, after Nebuchadnezzar conquered Egypt in 568 B.C.).
- B- The books take their title from the first word "we-ha-m.melek," "And the king." In the Hebrew text the two are treated as one book. The LXX and the Vulgate called them III and IV Kings.
- C- Various sources were used by the author:
  - "The book of the Acts of Solomon" (I Kings 1:41).
  - "The books of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel" (so stated 17 times). "The books of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah."

### II. Historical Setting.

- A- Date and place of writing: Probably in Babylon during the early part of the captivity--c. 585-60 B.C.
- B- Inclusive dates of the content: 970--562 B.C.  
From the death of David to the captivity and the release of Jehoiachin in Babylon.
- C- Political setting of Israel and Judah.  
The period extends from the time of Israel's widest political influence to its fall into political ignominy. Solomon's domestic policy was one of despotism and heavy oppression by taxation. His foreign policy was one of diplomacy rather than military might, achieving his ends by peaceful negotiations.
- D- Political setting surrounding, Israel and Judah.  
This period of Israel paralleled the growth of the second Assyrian Empire (c. 1000-612 B.C.). The Babylonian Empire commenced with the alliance of the Medes and Babylonians, c. 626 B.C. Egypt's power was not great during most of this period. Only sporadic raids were attempted against Israel. Syria was dominated by Israel at the beginning of the period, but she revolted and became a source of oppression to both kingdoms subsequently.
- E- Religious setting.  
The period began with the inauguration of the Solomonic temple era, which temple was constructed at a value of c. \$600,000,000.  
Idolatry was often prevalent during this era. Solomon introduced it through his heathen wives. Jeroboam I instituted the worship of the two golden calves for the Northern Kingdom. Ahab and Jezebel introduced Baal worship again to Israel and their son-in-law brought it into Judah. Although Jehu destroyed Baal worship in Israel, idolatry continued to be practiced throughout the period until the captivity.

Judah had 19 kings, 8 of which were righteous; Israel had 19 also, all of which were evil.

**III. Purpose and Theme of the Books of Kings.** The purpose of these books is to continue the history of the kingdom that was instituted by Samuel, from the coronation of Solomon to the captivity in Babylon and to show the cause of the decline from glory under Solomon to its decay in captivity.

The theme and key message is the inseparable connection between obedience and blessing, and of disobedience and cursing. The nation is seen as passing from affluence and influence to poverty because of their disobedience to God's law, or, differently stated, failure to adhere to the covenant (Deuteronomy 28-30).

The viewpoint is that of the prophets (in contrast to the priestly viewpoint of Chronicles).

## **An Outline Of The Books Of Kings**

---

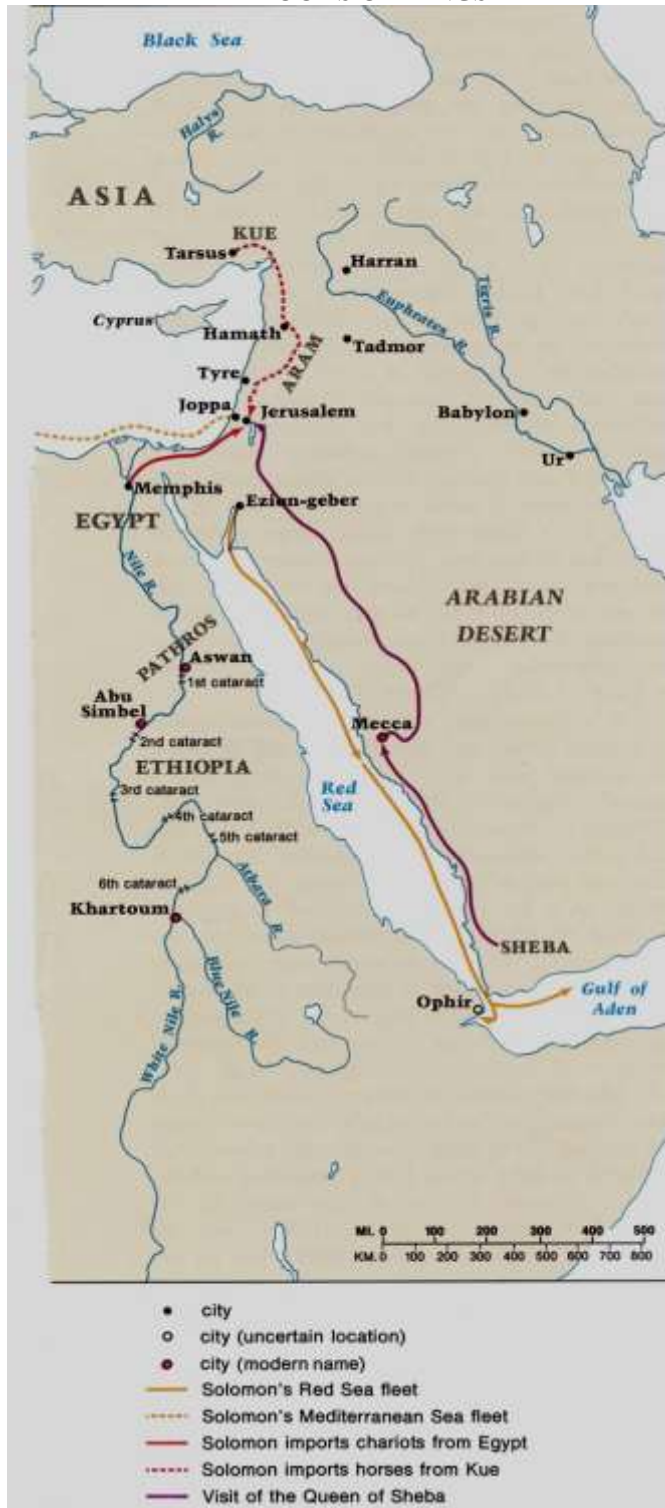
- I. The United Kingdom under Solomon. I Kings (1.-11.)
  - II. The Divided Kingdoms of Israel and Judah.  
(I Kings 12.-II Kings 17.)
  - III. The Solitary Kingdom of Judah. (II Kings 18.-25.)
-

**Table 01. A Chronology Of The Kings Listed In The Books Of The 4 Books Of Kings**

Unified Kingdom		Date begun	Years Given	Charac-teristics	Contemporary Event	Prophet	Passage
Saul		1025-1023?	15 - 13 ?	Bad	David's victory over Goliath (from Gath). Saul was born again 10:1-6. The witch of Endor!	Samuel (Last Judge)	1 Sa.9-15
David  7 yrs in Hebron and 33 years in Jerusalem.		1010	40	Good	David secretly anointed king by Samuel but didn't become king until after Saul died 1 Sam 31:4-5	Samuel, Nathan	II Sa.1- I K 2:10
Solomon		970	40	Good	He multiplied wives, horses, gold&silver!Deut 17:16-17		I K. 1-11
Southernki ngdom	Northernki ngdom	Date begun	Years Given	Charac-teristics	Contemporary Event	Prophet	Passage
Rehoboam		931	17	Bad	Shishak Invasion	Shemaiah	12-14
	*Jeroboam I	931	22	Bad	Golden calves set up at Dan and Bethel	Ahijah	12-14
Abijah		913	3	Bad			15
Asa		911	41	Good	revival	Azariah	15:9-24
	Nadab	910	2	Bad			15
	*Baasha	909	24	Bad			15-16
	Elah	886	2	Bad			16
	*Zimri	885	1 Wk.	Bad			16
	*Omri	885	12	Bad	Built Samaria (city)		16
	Ahab	874	22	Bad	Baal worship	Elijah	16-22
Jehoshaphat		870	25	Good	Revival-Bible Conferences		22
	Ahaziah	853	2	Bad			22 - II K.1
	Jehoram	852	12	Bad		Elisha	3-8
Jehoram		848	8	Bad	Edom's Revolt Married Ahab's daughter	Obadiah?	8
Ahaziah		841	1	Bad			8
<b>Jehu, in 841, assassinated Jehoram of Israel and Ahaziah of Judah and all the house of Ahab; becoming king of Israel, he destroyed all the prophets of Baal, destroying Baal worship in the North.</b>							
	*Jehu	841	28	Bad	Hurrying Jehu	Elisha	9-10
Athaliah (the daughter of Jezebel)		841	6	Bad			11
		835	40	Good	revival - with Jehoiada the high priest	Joel?	12
	Jehoahaz	814	17	Bad			13
	Jehoash	798	16	Bad	War with Judah		13
Amaziah (Ussiah)		796	29	Good	War with Israel- Temple pillaged		14
	Jereboam II	782	41	Bad	Subjugated Syria - Golden Age	Jonah, Amos	14

(Table 01. Cont.)

Unified Kingdom	Date begun	Years Given	Charac-teristics	Contemporary Event	Prophet	Passage	
Azariah (Ussiah)		767	52	Good	Golden Age	Hosea, Isaiah	14
	Zachariah	753	1/2	Bad	Assassinated		15
	*Shallum	752	1 Mo.	Bad	Assassinated		15
	*Menahem	752	10	Bad	Invaded by Pul of Assyria in 745		15
	Pekahiah	742	2	Bad	Assassinated		15
	*Pekah	740	20?	Bad	Invaded by Tiglath-Pilezer of Assyria - 732		15
Jothan (Regent & King)		740	16	Good		Micah	15
Ahaz		732	16	Bad	Attacked by Syria and Israel seeks help from Assyria		16
	*Hoshea	725?	9	Bad	Samaria besieged & carried away		17
<b>Samaria was besieged 3 years by Shalmanezar and deported to Assyria by Sennacherib in 722B.C. The North was re peopled with Chaldeans. (heck the Samaritans of the N.T.)</b>							
Hezekiah (big revival)		716	29	Good	Judah invaded by Sennacherib - 701		18-20
Manasseh		687	55	Bad	He re-established Idolatry in Zion. He killed many of the righteous remnant out of Jerusalem	Isaiah, Nahum	21
Amon		642	2	Bad			21
Josiah(big revival)		640	31	Good	Josiah slain in 609	Zepaniah, Habakkuk, Jeremiah, Huldah (non-writing prophetess)	22-23
Jehoahaz		608	1/4	Bad	Egypt invasion		23
Jehoiakim		608	11	Bad	Nebuchadnezzar invades in 605	Jeremiah	23-24
Jehoiachin		597	1/4	Bad			24
Zedekiah (See Micah 5:1)		597 to 586	11	Bad	Jerusalem destroyed	Jeremiah, Ezekiel	24
<b>There were two deportations of Judah (Southern Kingdom) to Babylon (606 and 597). In 588 Nebuchadnezzar besieged Jerusalem till 586 when He destroyed the Temple and the city.</b>							



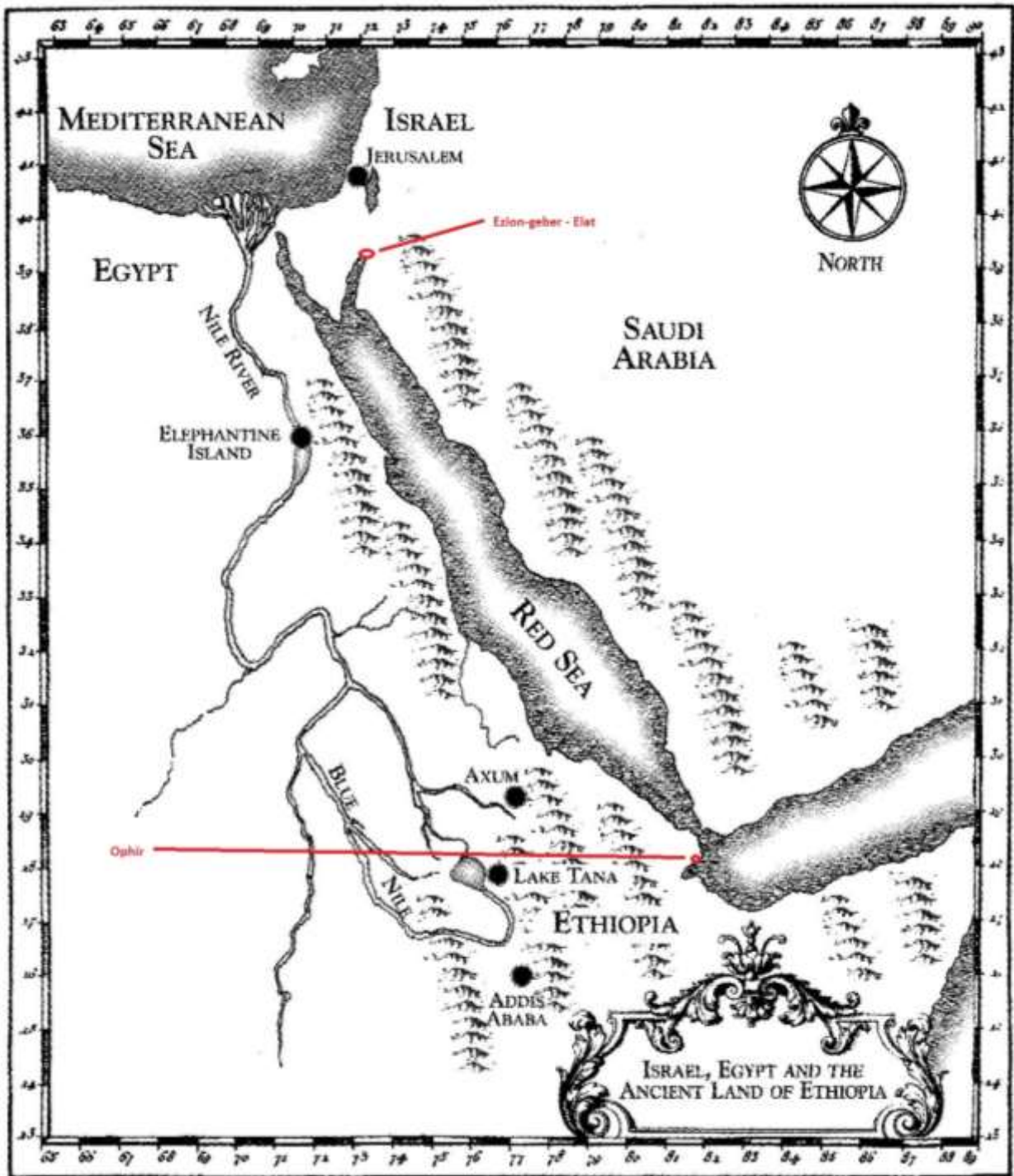
**Figure 01. Solomon’s Expansion - North, South And East, With Possible Queen Of Sheba Origin**

Courtesy - Moody Atlas of Bible Lands - Barry J. Beitzel 1985.

See Map below for alternate origin of the Queen of Sheba.

Or do you suppose she obtained her gold from the (now) country of Yehmen which incidently still has rich deposits of Gold, Silver and Copper.





**Figure 02 An Alternative Origin For The Queen Of Sheba – Ethiopia.**

Map courtesy of BASE Institute, Dr. Bob Cornuke.

There exists, because of modern archaeological investigation, a strong possibility that the Queen of Sheba (QOS) came from the same country that Moses took his Cushite/Ethiopian wife. Num 12. There is a possibility that she had her "residence" in Axum. BASE Institute's, Dr. Bob Cornuke has led several expeditions to Ethiopia and has documented this possibility. Cornuke and Halbrook, "THE LOST ARK OF THE COVENANT" © 2002. Broadman & Holman Publishers, Nashville, Tenn. It may explain further Solomon's Navy established at Ezion-geber in order to get gold from Ophir. IF the QOS journeyed from Axum she would probably combined it with a sea voyage from Ophir to Ezion-geber in order to skirt a journey through Egypt. Remember the heavy gift of gold she "carried." 1 Ki 9.-10. Notice also that According to Ethiopian tradition, Sheba (called Makeda) bore Solomon a son, Menilek I, who founded the royal dynasty of Ethiopia. Her gift of Gold was 120 talents of gold (approx. 10,940 Troy pounds – 5 ½ tons)



**1 Kings 1**

- 1 ¶ Now king David was old and stricken in years; and they covered him with clothes, but he gat no heat.
- 2 Wherefore his servants said unto him, Let there be sought for my lord the king a young virgin: and let her stand before the king, and cherish him; and let her lie in thy bosom, that my lord the king may get heat.
- 3 So they sought for a fair damsel throughout all the borders of Israel, and found Abishag the Shunammite, and brought her to the king.
- 4 And the damsel was very fair; and she cherished the king, and ministered to him; but the king knew her not.
- 5 ¶ Then Adonijah the son of Haggith exalted himself, saying, I will be king: and he prepared him chariots and horsemen, and fifty men to run before him.
- 6 And his father had not displeased him *{1}* at any time in saying, Why hast thou done so? and he was also a very goodly man; and he was born after Absalom. *{1} Or all his life}*
- 7 And he conferred with Joab the son of Zeruiah, and with Abiathar the priest: and they following Adonijah helped him.
- 8 But Zadok the priest, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and Nathan the prophet, and Shimei, and Rei, and the mighty men that belonged to David, were not with Adonijah.
- 9 And Adonijah *{1}* slew sheep and oxen and fatlings by the stone of Zoheleth, which is beside En-rogel; and he called all his brethren, the king's sons, and all the men of Judah, the king's servants: *{1} Or sacrificed}*
- 10 but Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah, and the mighty men, and Solomon his brother, he called not.
- 11 ¶ Then Nathan spake unto Bath-sheba the mother of Solomon, saying, Hast thou not heard that Adonijah the son of Haggith doth reign, and David our lord knoweth it not?
- 12 Now therefore come, let me, I pray thee, give thee counsel, that thou mayest save thine own life, and the life of thy son Solomon.
- 13 Go and get thee in unto king David, and say unto him, Didst not thou, my lord, O king, swear unto thy handmaid, saying, Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne? why then doth Adonijah reign?
- 14 Behold, while thou yet talkest there with the king, I also will come in after thee, and confirm thy words.
- 15 And Bath-sheba went in unto the king into the chamber: and the king was very old; and Abishag the Shunammite was ministering unto the king.
- 16 And Bath-sheba bowed, and did obeisance unto the king. And the king said, What wouldest thou?
- 17 And she said unto him, My lord, thou swarest by Jehovah thy God unto thy handmaid, *saying*, Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne.
- 18 And now, behold, Adonijah reigneth; *{1}* and thou, my lord the king, knowest it not: *{1} Another reading is and now, my lord the king, thou etc}*
- 19 and he hath *{1}* slain oxen and fatlings and sheep in abundance, and hath called all the sons of the king, and Abiathar the priest, and Joab the captain of the host; but Solomon thy servant hath he not called. *{1} Or sacrificed}*
- 20 And *{1}* thou, my lord the king, the eyes of all Israel are upon thee, that thou shouldest tell them who shall sit on the throne of my lord the king after him. *{1} Another reading is now}*
- 21 Otherwise it will come to pass, when my lord the king shall sleep with his fathers, that I and my son Solomon shall be counted *{1}* offenders. *{1} Heb sinners}*
- 22 And, lo, while she yet talked with the king, Nathan the prophet came in.
- 23 And they told the king, saying, Behold, Nathan the prophet. And when he was come in before the king, he bowed himself before the king with his face to the ground.
- 24 And Nathan said, My lord, O king, hast thou said, Adonijah shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne?
- 25 For he is gone down this day, and hath *{1}* slain oxen and fatlings and sheep in abundance, and hath called all the king's sons, and the captains of the host, and Abiathar the priest; and, behold, they are eating and drinking before him, and say, *Long live king Adonijah. {1} Or sacrificed}*
- 26 But me, even me thy servant, and Zadok the priest, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and thy servant Solomon, hath he not called.
- 27 Is this thing done by my lord the king, and thou hast not showed unto thy *{1}* servants who should sit on the throne of my lord the king after him? *{1} Another reading is servant}*
- 28 Then king David answered and said, Call to me Bath-sheba. And she came into the king's presence, and stood before the king.
- 29 And the king sware, and said, As Jehovah liveth, who hath redeemed my soul out of all adversity,
- 30 verily as I sware unto thee by Jehovah, the God of Israel, saying, Assuredly Solomon thy son shall reign after me, and he shall sit upon my throne in my stead; verily so will I do this day.
- 31 Then Bath-sheba bowed with her face to the earth, and did obeisance to the king, and said, Let my lord king David live for ever.
- 32 ¶ And king David said, Call to me Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada.

- And they came before the king.
- 33 And the king said unto them, Take with you the servants of your lord, and cause Solomon my son to ride upon mine own mule, and bring him down to Gihon:
- 34 and let Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet anoint him there king over Israel; and blow ye the trumpet, and say, *Long live king Solomon.*
- 35 Then ye shall come up after him, and he shall come and sit upon my throne; for he shall be king in my stead; and I have appointed him to be *{1}* prince over Israel and over Judah. *{1} Or leader}*
- 36 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada answered the king, and said, Amen: Jehovah, the God of my lord the king, say so *too.*
- 37 As Jehovah hath been with my lord the king, even so be he with Solomon, and make his throne greater than the throne of my lord king David.
- 38 So Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites and the Pelethites, went down, and caused Solomon to ride upon king David's mule, and brought him to Gihon.
- 39 And Zadok the priest took the horn of oil out of the Tent, and anointed Solomon. And they blew the trumpet; and all the people said, *Long live king Solomon.*
- 40 And all the people came up after him, and the people piped with pipes, and rejoiced with great joy, so that the earth rent with the sound of them.
- 41 ¶ And Adonijah and all the guests that were with him heard it as they had made an end of eating. And when Joab heard the sound of the trumpet, he said, Wherefore is this noise of the city being in an uproar?
- 42 While he yet spake, behold, Jonathan the son of Abiathar the priest came: and Adonijah said, Come in; for thou art a worthy man, and bringest good tidings.
- 43 And Jonathan answered and said to Adonijah, Verily our lord king David hath made Solomon king:
- 44 and the king hath sent with him Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and they have caused him to ride upon the king's mule;
- 45 and Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet have anointed him king in Gihon; and they are come up from thence rejoicing, so that the city rang again. This is the noise that ye have heard.
- 46 And also Solomon sitteth on the throne of the kingdom.
- 47 And moreover the king's servants came to bless our lord king David, saying, *{1}* Thy God make the name of Solomon better than thy name, and make his throne greater than thy throne: and the king bowed himself upon the bed. *{1} Another reading omits Thy}*
- 48 And also thus said the king, Blessed be Jehovah, the God of Israel, who hath given one to sit on my throne this day, mine eyes even seeing it.
- 49 And all the guests of Adonijah were afraid, and rose up, and went every man his way.
- 50 And Adonijah feared because of Solomon; and he arose, and went, and caught hold on the horns of the altar.
- 51 And it was told Solomon, saying, Behold, Adonijah feareth king Solomon; for, lo, he hath laid hold on the horns of the altar, saying, Let king Solomon swear unto me *{1}* first that he will not slay his servant with the sword. *{1} Heb to-day}*
- 52 And Solomon said, If he shall show himself a worthy man, there shall not a hair of him fall to the earth; but if wickedness be found in him, he shall die.
- 53 So king Solomon sent, and they brought him down from the altar. And he came and did obeisance to king Solomon; and Solomon said unto him, Go to thy house.

# I. THE UNITED KINGDOM UNDER SOLOMON. (1 Kings 1.-11.)

## A- Solomon's kingdom established. (1.-4.)

- 1- Solomon acquires the throne . (1.)
  - a- David's final illness. vs. 1-4  
Abishag the Shunamite - 1000 BC version of Viagra.  
But it didn't work.
  - b- Adonijah, brother of Absalom, assumes the throne. vs. 5-9  
Aided by Joab and Abiathar.
  - c- Solomon is championed for the throne. vs. 10-38  
By Nathan, Zadok, Bathsheba.
  - d- Solomon is anointed as king. vs. 39-40  
By David, Nathan, Zadok & championed by the LORD. 1 Chr 22.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 11 & 12 are backed up.

## 1 Kings 2

- 1 ¶ Now the days of David drew nigh that he should die; and he charged Solomon his son, saying,
- 2 I am going the way of all the earth: be thou strong therefore, and show thyself a man;
- 3 and keep the charge of Jehovah thy God, to walk in his ways, to keep his statutes, *and* his commandments, and his ordinances, and his testimonies, according to that which is written in the law of Moses, that thou mayest *{1}* prosper in all that thou doest, and whithersoever thou turnest thyself. *{1}*   
*Or do wisely}*
- 4 That Jehovah may establish his word which he spake concerning me, saying, If thy children take heed to their way, to walk before me in truth with all their heart and with all their soul, there shall not fail thee (said he) a man on the throne of Israel.
- 5 Moreover thou knowest also what Joab the son of Zeruiah did unto me, even what he did to the two captains of the hosts of Israel, unto Abner the son of Ner, and unto Amasa the son of Jether, whom he slew, and *{1}* shed the blood of war in peace, and put the blood of war upon his girdle that was about his loins, and in his shoes that were on his feet. *{1}* *Heb set}*
- 6 Do therefore according to thy wisdom, and let not his hoar head go down to Sheol in peace.
- 7 But show kindness unto the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite, and let them be of those that eat at thy table; for so they came to me when I fled from Absalom thy brother.
- 8 And, behold, there is with thee Shimei the son of Gera, the Benjamite, of Bahurim, who cursed me with a grievous curse in the day when I went to Mahanaim; but he came down to meet me at the Jordan, and I swore to him by Jehovah, saying, I will not put thee to death with the sword.
- 9 Now therefore hold him not guiltless, for thou art a wise man; and thou wilt know what thou oughtest to do unto him, and thou shalt bring his hoar head down to Sheol with blood.
- 10 And David slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David.
- 11 And the days that David reigned over Israel were forty years; seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three years reigned he in Jerusalem.
- 12 ¶ And Solomon sat upon the throne of David his father; and his kingdom was established greatly.
- 13 Then Adonijah the son of Haggith came to Bath-sheba the mother of Solomon. And she said, Comest thou peaceably? And he said, Peaceably.
- 14 He said moreover, I have somewhat to say unto thee. And she said, Say on.
- 15 And he said, Thou knowest that the kingdom was mine, and that all Israel set their faces on me, that I should reign: howbeit the kingdom is turned about, and is become my brother's; for it was his from Jehovah.

- 16 And now I ask one petition of thee; *{1}* deny me not. And she said unto him, Say on. *{1}* *Heb turn not away my face}*
- 17 And he said, Speak, I pray thee, unto Solomon the king (for he will not say thee nay), that he give me Abishag the Shunammite to wife.
- 18 And Bath-sheba said, Well; I will speak for thee unto the king.
- 19 Bath-sheba therefore went unto king Solomon, to speak unto him for Adonijah. And the king rose up to meet her, and bowed himself unto her, and sat down on his throne, and caused a throne to be set for the king's mother; and she sat on his right hand.
- 20 Then she said, I ask one small petition of thee; deny me not. And the king said unto her, Ask on, my mother; for I will not deny thee.
- 21 And she said, Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to Adonijah thy brother to wife.
- 22 And king Solomon answered and said unto his mother, And why dost thou ask Abishag the Shunammite for Adonijah? ask for him the kingdom also; for he is mine elder brother; even for him, and for Abiathar the priest, and for Joab the son of Zeruiah.
- 23 Then king Solomon sware by Jehovah, saying, God do so to me, and more also, if Adonijah hath not spoken this word against his own life.
- 24 Now therefore as Jehovah liveth, who hath established me, and set me on the throne of David my father, and who hath made me a house, as he promised, surely Adonijah shall be put to death this day.
- 25 And king Solomon sent by Benaiah the son of Jehoiada; and he fell upon him, so that he died.
- 26 ¶ And unto Abiathar the priest said the king, Get thee to Anathoth, unto thine own fields; for thou art *{1}* worthy of death: but I will not at this time put thee to death, because thou barest the ark of the Lord Jehovah before David my father, and because thou wast afflicted in all wherein my father was afflicted. *{1}* *Heb a man of}*
- 27 So Solomon thrust out Abiathar from being priest unto Jehovah, that he might fulfil the word of Jehovah, which he spake concerning the house of Eli in Shiloh.
- 28 And the tidings came to Joab; for Joab had turned after Adonijah, though he turned not after Absalom. And Joab fled unto the Tent of Jehovah, and caught hold on the horns of the altar.
- 29 And it was told king Solomon, Joab is fled unto the Tent of Jehovah, and, behold, he is by the altar. Then Solomon sent Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, saying, Go, fall upon him.
- 30 And Benaiah came to the Tent of Jehovah, and said unto him, Thus saith the king, Come forth. And he said, Nay; but I will die here. And Benaiah brought the king word again, saying, Thus said Joab, and thus he answered me.
- 31 And the king said unto him, Do as he hath said, and fall upon him, and bury him; that thou mayest take away the blood, which Joab shed without cause, from me and from my father's house.
- 32 And Jehovah will return his blood upon his own head, because he fell upon two men more righteous and better than he, and slew them with the sword, and my father David knew it not, *to wit*, Abner the son of Ner, captain of the host of Israel, and Amasa the son of Jether, captain of the host of Judah.
- 33 So shall their blood return upon the head of Joab, and upon the head of his seed for ever: but unto David, and unto his seed, and unto his house, and unto his throne, shall there be peace for ever from Jehovah.
- 34 Then Benaiah the son of Jehoiada went up, and fell upon him, and slew him; and he was buried in his own house in the wilderness.
- 35 ¶ And the king put Benaiah the son of Jehoiada in his room over the host; and Zadok the priest did the king put in the room of Abiathar.
- 36 And the king sent and called for Shimei, and said unto him, Build thee a house in Jerusalem, and dwell there, and go not forth thence any whither.
- 37 For on the day thou goest out, and passest over the brook Kidron, know thou for certain that thou shalt surely die: thy blood shall be upon thine own head.
- 38 And Shimei said unto the king, The saying is good: as my lord the king hath said, so will thy servant do. And Shimei dwelt in Jerusalem many days.
- 39 And it came to pass at the end of three years, that two of the servants of Shimei ran away unto Achish, son of Maacah, king of Gath. And they told Shimei, saying, Behold, thy servants are in Gath.
- 40 And Shimei arose, and saddled his ass, and went to Gath to Achish, to seek his servants; and Shimei went, and brought his servants from Gath.
- 41 And it was told Solomon that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath, and was come again.

- 42 And the king sent and called for Shimei, and said unto him, Did I not adjure thee by Jehovah, and protest unto thee, saying, Know for certain, that on the day thou goest out, and walkest abroad any whither, thou shalt surely die? and thou saidst unto me, The saying that I have heard is good.
- 43 Why then hast thou not kept the oath of Jehovah, and the commandment that I have charged thee with?
- 44 The king said moreover to Shimei, Thou knowest all the wickedness which thy heart is privy to, that thou didst to David my father: therefore Jehovah shall return thy wickedness upon thine own head.
- 45 But king Solomon shall be blessed, and the throne of David shall be established before Jehovah for ever.
- 46 So the king commanded Benaiah the son of Jehoiada; and he went out, and fell upon him, so that he died. And the kingdom was established in the hand of Solomon.
- 

## 2- David's charge and Solomon's response. (2.)

- a- Keeping the law will condition blessing. vs. 1 -4
- b- He charges him to remember Joab's murders, Barzilai's kindness, and Shimei's cursing.
- c- David's reign is summarized. vs. 10-11
- d- Solomon's initial acts. vs. 12-46
  - 1) Adonijah slain. He requested David's concubine.
  - 2) Abiathar removed from priesthood.  
He had joined against Solomon. Sent back "to the farm". vs. 26
  - 3) Joab slain. by Benaiah, who "slew a Lion in a pit on a snowy day". guy.  
1Ch 11:22.
  - 4) Shimei slain. Benaiah, again the "hatchet man".

**1 Kings 3**

- 1 ¶ And Solomon made affinity with Pharaoh king of Egypt, and took Pharaoh's daughter, and brought her into the city of David, until he had made an end of building his own house, and the house of Jehovah, and the wall of Jerusalem round about.
- 2 Only the people sacrificed in the high places, because there was no house built for the name of Jehovah until those days.
- 3 And Solomon loved Jehovah, walking in the statutes of David his father: only he sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places.
- 4 And the king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there; for that was the great high place: a thousand burnt-offerings did Solomon offer upon that altar.
- 5 ¶ In Gibeon Jehovah appeared to Solomon in a dream by night; and God said, Ask what I shall give thee.
- 6 And Solomon said, Thou hast showed unto thy servant David my father great lovingkindness, according as he walked before thee in truth, and in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart with thee; and thou hast kept for him this great lovingkindness, that thou hast given him a son to sit on his throne, as it is this day.
- 7 And now, O Jehovah my God, thou hast made thy servant king instead of David my father: and I am but a little child; I know not how to go out or come in.
- 8 And thy servant is in the midst of thy people which thou hast chosen, a great people, that cannot be numbered nor counted for multitude.
- 9 Give thy servant therefore an *{1}* understanding heart to judge thy people, that I may discern between good and evil; for who is able to judge this thy *{2}* great people? *{1}* Heb hearing 2) Heb heavy}
- 10 And the speech pleased the Lord, that Solomon had asked this thing.
- 11 And God said unto him, Because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked for thyself *{1}* long life, neither hast asked riches for thyself, nor hast asked the life of thine enemies, but hast asked for thyself understanding to *{2}* discern justice; *{1}* Heb many days 2) Heb hear}
- 12 behold, I have done according to thy word: lo, I have given thee a wise and an *{1}* understanding heart; so that there hath been none like thee before thee, neither after thee shall any arise like unto thee. *{1}* Heb hearing}
- 13 And I have also given thee that which thou hast not asked, both riches and honor, so that there *{1}* shall not be any among the kings like unto thee, all thy days. *{1}* Or hath not been}
- 14 And if thou wilt walk in my ways, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as thy father David did walk, then I will lengthen thy days.
- 15 And Solomon awoke; and, behold, it was a dream: and he came to Jerusalem, and stood before the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, and offered up burnt-offerings, and offered peace-offerings, and made a feast to all his servants.
- 16 ¶ Then there came two women that were harlots, unto the king, and stood before him.
- 17 And the one woman said, Oh, my lord, I and this woman dwell in one house; and I was delivered of a child with her in the house.
- 18 And it came to pass the third day after I was delivered, that this woman was delivered also; and we were together; there was no stranger with us in the house, save we two in the house.
- 19 And this woman's child died in the night, because she lay upon it.
- 20 And she arose at midnight, and took my son from beside me, while thy handmaid slept, and laid it in her bosom, and laid her dead child in my bosom.
- 21 And when I rose in the morning to give my child suck, behold, it was dead; but when I had looked at it in the morning, behold, it was not my son, whom I did bear.
- 22 And the other woman said, Nay; but the living is my son, and the dead is thy son. And this said, No; but the dead is thy son, and the living is my son. Thus they spake before the king.
- 23 Then said the king, The one saith, This is my son that liveth, and thy son is the dead: and the other saith, Nay; but thy son is the dead, and my son is the living.
- 24 And the king said, Fetch me a sword. And they brought a sword before the king.
- 25 And the king said, Divide the living child in two, and give half to the one, and half to the other.
- 26 Then spake the woman whose the living child was unto the king, for her heart yearned over her son, and she said, Oh, my lord, give her the living child, and in no wise slay it. But the other said, It shall be neither mine nor thine; divide it.



27 Then the king answered and said, Give her the living child, and in no wise slay it: she is the mother thereof.

28 And all Israel heard of the judgment which the king had judged; and they feared the king: for they saw that the wisdom of God was in him, to do justice.

---

3- Solomon's wisdom and administration. (3.-4

a- His wisdom. (3.)

1) His humility and request of the Lord. vs. 1-9.  
He ask for wisdom in-order-to judge the Lord's people.

2) His gift of wisdom plus bonus of riches and honor. vs. 10-15.

3) His wisdom illustrated. vs. 16-28.  
His "test of true motherhood".

**1 Kings 4**

- 1 ¶ And king Solomon was king over all Israel.
- 2 And these were the princes whom he had: Azariah the son of Zadok, the priest;
- 3 Elihoreph and Ahijah, the sons of Shisha, *{1}* scribes; Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud, the *{2}* recorder; *{1}* *Or secretaries 2) Or chronicler*;
- 4 and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the host; and Zadok and Abiathar were priests;
- 5 and Azariah the son of Nathan was over the officers; and Zabud the son of Nathan was *{1}* chief minister, *and* the king's friend; *{1}* *Or priest*; See 2 Sa 8:18}
- 6 and Ahishar was over the household; and Adoniram the son of Abda was over the men subject to taskwork.
- 7 And Solomon had twelve officers over all Israel, who provided victuals for the king and his household: each man had to make provision for a month in the year.
- 8 And these are their names: Ben-hur, in the hill-country of Ephraim;
- 9 Ben-deker, in Makaz, and in Shaalbim, and Beth-shemesh, and Elon-beth-hanan;
- 10 Ben-hesed, in Arubboth (to him *pertained* Socoh, and all the land of Hepher);
- 11 Ben-abinadab, in all *{1}* the *{2}* height of Dor (he had Taphath the daughter of Solomon to wife); *{1}* *Or Naphath-dor 2) Or region }*
- 12 Baana the son of Ahilud, in Taanach and Megiddo, and all Beth-shean which is beside Zarethan, beneath Jezreel, from Beth-shean to Abel-meholah, as far as *{1}* beyond Jokmeam; *{1}* *Or over against*;
- 13 Ben-geber, in Ramoth-gilead (to him *pertained* *{1}* the towns of Jair the son of Manasseh, which are in Gilead; *even* to him *pertained* the region of Argob, which is in Bashan, threescore great cities with walls and brazen bars); *{1}* *Or Havvoth-jair*};
- 14 Ahinadab the son of Iddo, in Mahanaim;
- 15 Ahimaaz, in Naphtali (he also took Basemath the daughter of Solomon to wife);
- 16 Baana the son of Hushai, in Asher and *{1}* Bealoth; *{1}* *Or in Aloth*};
- 17 Jehoshaphat the son of Paruah, in Issachar;
- 18 Shimei the son of Ela, in Benjamin;
- 19 Geber the son of Uri, in the land of Gilead, the country of Sihon king of the Amorites and of Og king of Bashan; *{1}* and *he was* the only officer that was in the land. *{1}* *Heb and one officer*};
- 20 ¶ Judah and Israel were many as the sand which is by the sea in multitude, eating and drinking and making merry.
- 21 And Solomon ruled over all the kingdoms from the River unto the land of the Philistines, and unto the border of Egypt: they brought tribute, and served Solomon all the days of his life.
- 22 And Solomon's provision for one day was thirty *{1}* measures of fine flour, and threescore measures of meal, *{1}* *Heb cor*};
- 23 ten fat oxen, and twenty oxen out of the pastures, and a hundred sheep, besides harts, and gazelles, and roebucks, and fatted fowl.
- 24 For he had dominion over all *the region* *{1}* on this side the River, from Tiphseh even to Gaza, over all the kings *{1}* on this side the River: and he had peace on all sides round about him. *{1}* *Or beyond the River*};
- 25 And Judah and Israel dwelt safely, every man under his vine and under his fig-tree, from Dan even to Beer-sheba, all the days of Solomon.
- 26 And Solomon had *{1}* forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen. *{1}* *In 2 Ch 9:25 four thousand*};
- 27 And those officers provided victuals for king Solomon, and for all that came unto king Solomon's table, every man in his month; they let nothing be lacking.
- 28 Barley also and straw for the horses and swift steeds brought they unto the place *{1}* where *the officers* were, every man according to his charge. *{1}* *Or where he (that is, the king) was; Or where it should be*};
- 29 ¶ And God gave Solomon wisdom and understanding exceeding much, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that is on the sea-shore.
- 30 And Solomon's wisdom excelled the wisdom of all the children of the east, and all the wisdom of Egypt.
- 31 For he was wiser than all men; than Ethan the Ezrahite, and Heman, and Calcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol: and his fame was in all the nations round about.
- 32 And he spake three thousand proverbs; and his songs were a thousand and five.
- 33 And he spake of trees, from the cedar that is in Lebanon even unto the hyssop that springeth out of the

wall; he spake also of beasts, and of birds, and of creeping things, and of fishes.

34 And there came of all peoples to hear the wisdom of Solomon, from all kings of the earth, who had heard of his wisdom.

---

- b- His wise administration. (4.)
- 1) His twelve cabinet officers. vs. 1-6
- 2) Twelve officers in charge of provision. vs. 7-29
- 3) His prosperity and peace.
- 4) His wisdom in compositions. vs. 29-34

**1 Kings 5**

- 1 ¶ And Hiram king of Tyre sent his servants unto Solomon; for he had heard that they had anointed him king in the room of his father: for Hiram was ever a lover of David.
- 2 And Solomon sent to Hiram, saying,
- 3 Thou knowest how that David my father could not build a house for the name of Jehovah his God for the wars which were about him on every side, until Jehovah put them under the soles of his feet.
- 4 But now Jehovah my God hath given me rest on every side; there is neither adversary, nor evil occurrence.
- 5 And, behold, I purpose to build a house for the name of Jehovah my God, as Jehovah spake unto David my father, saying, Thy son, whom I will set upon thy throne in thy room, he shall build the house for my name.
- 6 Now therefore command thou that they cut me cedar-trees out of Lebanon; and my servants shall be with thy servants; and I will give thee hire for thy servants according to all that thou shalt say: for thou knowest that there is not among us any that knoweth how to cut timber like unto the Sidonians.
- 7 And it came to pass, when Hiram heard the words of Solomon, that he rejoiced greatly, and said, Blessed be Jehovah this day, who hath given unto David a wise son over this great people.
- 8 And Hiram sent to Solomon, saying, I have heard *the message* which thou hast sent unto me: I will do all thy desire concerning timber of cedar, and concerning timber of {1} fir. {1} Or cypress}
- 9 My servants shall bring them down from Lebanon unto the sea; and I will make them into rafts to go by sea unto the place that thou shalt appoint me, and will cause them to be broken up there, and thou shalt {1} receive them; and thou shalt accomplish my desire, in giving food for my household. {1} Or carry them away}
- 10 ¶ So {1} Hiram gave Solomon timber of cedar and timber of fir according to all his desire. {1} Heb Hiram (and in verse 18)}
- 11 And Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand {1} measures of wheat for food to his household, and twenty measures of {2} pure oil: thus gave Solomon to Hiram year by year. {1} Heb cor 2) Or beaten}
- 12 And Jehovah gave Solomon wisdom, as he promised him; and there was peace between Hiram and Solomon; and they two made a league together.
- 13 And king Solomon raised a {1} levy out of all Israel; and the levy was thirty thousand men. {1} Heb men subject to taskwork}
- 14 And he sent them to Lebanon, ten thousand a month by courses; a month they were in Lebanon, and two months at home; and Adoniram was over the men subject to taskwork.
- 15 And Solomon had threescore and ten thousand that bare burdens, and fourscore thousand that were hewers in the mountains;
- 16 besides Solomon's chief officers that were over the work, three thousand and three hundred, who bare rule over the people that wrought in the work.
- 17 And the king commanded, and they {1} hewed out great stones, costly stones, to lay the foundation of the house with wrought stone. {1} Heb brought away}
- 18 And Solomon's builders and Hiram's builders and the Gebalites did fashion them, and prepared the timber and the stones to build the house.

B- - Solomon's temple constructed and dedicated.

(5.-8.)

1- The preparation to build.

vs. 5

David had begun the accumulation of materials before his death.

a - Tyre (King Hiram) to supply the timber.

vs. 1-12

Note also 7:15 where Hiram cast the molten sea, etc.

b - The labor force of 180,000.

vs. 13- 18)

**1 Kings 6**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass in the four hundred and eightieth year after the children of Israel were come out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month Ziv, which is the second month, that he {1} began to build the house of Jehovah. {1} *Heb built*
- 2 And the house which king Solomon built for Jehovah, the length thereof was threescore cubits, and the breadth thereof twenty *cubits*, and the height thereof thirty cubits.
- 3 And the porch before {1} the temple of the house, twenty cubits was the length thereof, according to the breadth of the house; *and* ten cubits was the breadth thereof before the house. {1} *That is, the holy place*
- 4 And for the house he made {1} windows of fixed lattice-work. {1} *Or windows broad within, and narrow without*
- 5 And against the wall of the house he built stories round about, against the walls of the house round about, both of the temple and of {1} the oracle; and he made side-chambers round about. {1} *That is, the most holy place*
- 6 The nethermost story was five cubits broad, and the middle was six cubits broad, and the third was seven cubits broad; for on the outside he made offsets *in the wall* of the house round about, that *the beams* should not have hold in the walls of the house.
- 7 And the house, when it was in building, was built of stone made ready {1} at the quarry; and there was neither hammer nor axe nor any tool of iron heard in the house, while it was in building. {1} *Or when it was brought away*
- 8 The door for the middle side-chambers was in the right {1} side of the house: and they went up by winding stairs into the middle *story*, and out of the middle into the third. {1} *Heb shoulder*
- 9 So he built the house, and finished it; and he covered the house with beams and {1} planks of cedar. {1} *Heb rows*
- 10 And he built the stories against all the house, each five cubits high: and {1} they rested on the house with timber of cedar. {1} *Or he fastened the house*
- 11 ¶ And the word of Jehovah came to Solomon, saying,
- 12 Concerning this house which thou art building, if thou wilt walk in my statutes, and execute mine ordinances, and keep all my commandments to walk in them; then will I establish my word with thee, which I spake unto David thy father.
- 13 And I will dwell among the children of Israel, and will not forsake my people Israel.
- 14 So Solomon built the house, and finished it.
- 15 ¶ And he built the walls of the house within with boards of cedar: {1} from the floor of the house unto the walls of the ceiling, he covered them on the inside with wood; and he covered the floor of the house with boards of {2} fir. {1} *Or both the floors of the house and the walls etc (and so verse 16) 2) Or cypress*
- 16 And he built twenty cubits on the hinder part of the house with boards of cedar from the floor unto the walls *of the ceiling*: he built *them* for it within, for an oracle, even for the most holy place.
- 17 And the house, that is, the temple before *the oracle*, was forty cubits *long*.
- 18 And there was cedar on the house within, carved with {1} knops and open flowers: all was cedar; there was no stone seen. {1} *Or gourds*
- 19 And he prepared an oracle in the midst of the house within, to set there the ark of the covenant of Jehovah.
- 20 And within the oracle was *a space of* twenty cubits in length, and twenty cubits in breadth, and twenty cubits in the height thereof; and he overlaid it with pure gold: {1} and he covered the altar with cedar. {1} *Or he overlaid the altar also, which was of cedar*
- 21 So Solomon overlaid the house within with pure gold: and he drew chains of gold across before the oracle; and he overlaid it with gold.
- 22 And the whole house he overlaid with gold, until all the house was finished: also the whole altar that belonged to the oracle he overlaid with gold.
- 23 And in the oracle he made two cherubim of olive-wood, each ten cubits high.
- 24 And five cubits was the one wing of the cherub, and five cubits the other wing of the cherub: from the uttermost part of the one wing unto the uttermost part of the other were ten cubits.
- 25 And the other cherub was ten cubits: both the cherubim were of one measure and one form.
- 26 The height of the one cherub was ten cubits, and so was it of the other cherub.
- 27 And he set the cherubim within the inner house; and the wings of the cherubim were stretched forth, so that the wing of the one touched the one wall, and the wing of the other cherub touched the other wall; and their wings touched one another in the midst of the house.

- 28 And he overlaid the cherubim with gold.
- 29 And he carved all the walls of the house round about with carved figures of cherubim and palm-trees and open flowers, within and without.
- 30 And the floor of the house he overlaid with gold, within and without.
- 31 And for the entrance of the oracle he made doors of olive-wood: the *{1}* lintel *and* door-posts were a fifth part *of the wall*. *{1} Or posts}*
- 32 So *he made* two doors of olive-wood; and he carved upon them carvings of cherubim and palm-trees and open flowers, and overlaid them with gold; and he spread the gold upon the cherubim, and upon the palm-trees.
- 33 So also made he for the entrance of the temple door-posts of olive-wood, out of a fourth part *of the wall*;
- 34 and two doors of *{1}* fir-wood: the two leaves of the one door were folding, and the two leaves of the other door were folding. *{1} Or cypress}*
- 35 And he carved *thereon* cherubim and palm-trees and open flowers; and he overlaid them with gold fitted upon the graven work.
- 36 And he built the inner court with three courses of hewn stone, and a course of cedar beams.
- 37 In the fourth year was the foundation of the house of Jehovah laid, in the month Ziv.
- 38 And in the eleventh year, in the month Bul, which is the eighth month, was the house finished *{1}* throughout all the parts thereof, and according to all the fashion of it. So was he seven years in building it. *{1} Or with all the appurtenances thereof, and with all the ordinances thereof}*

## 2- The temple constructed.

(6.-7.)

- a- The date the foundation was laid. vs. 6:1  
4<sup>th</sup> year of Solomon's reign. ≈ 967 BC, 480 years after the exodus.
- b- The dimensions and accommodation vs. 2-22  
90' x 30' x 45'. Twice the size of the Tabernacle.
- c- The materials of stone, cedars, and gold.  
Prefabricated; Brass poured down on the plain of Jordan  
25 miles away and 3500' lower.

Because of length of text, Ch. 7 is backed up.

## 1 Kings 7

- 1 ¶ And Solomon was building his own house thirteen years, and he finished all his house.
- 2 For he built the house of the forest of Lebanon; the length thereof was a hundred cubits, and the breadth thereof fifty cubits, and the height thereof thirty cubits, upon four rows of cedar pillars, with cedar beams upon the pillars.
- 3 And it was covered with cedar above over the forty and five *{1}* beams, that were upon the pillars; fifteen in a row. *{1} Or side-chambers; Heb ribs }*
- 4 And there were *{1}* beams in three rows, and window was over against window in three ranks. *{1} Or frames for the windows}*
- 5 And all the doors and posts were made square with beams: and window was over against window in three ranks.
- 6 And he made the porch of pillars; the length thereof was fifty cubits, and the breadth thereof thirty cubits; and a porch before them; and pillars and a threshold before them.
- 7 And he made the porch of the throne where he was to judge, even the porch of judgment: and it was covered with cedar from floor to floor.
- 8 And his house where he was to dwell, the other court within the porch, was of the like work. He made also a house for Pharaoh's daughter (whom Solomon had taken to wife), like unto this porch.
- 9 All these were of costly stones, even of hewn stone, *{1}* according to measure, sawed with saws, within and without, even from the foundation unto the coping, and so on the outside unto the great court. *{1} Or after divers measures}*

- 10 And the foundation was of costly stones, even great stones, stones of ten cubits, and stones of eight cubits.
- 11 And above were costly stones, even hewn stone, according to measure, and cedar-wood.
- 12 And the great court round about had three courses of hewn stone, and a course of cedar beams; *{1}* like as the inner court of the house of Jehovah, and the porch of the house. *{1}* Or both for...and for}
- 13 ¶ **And king Solomon sent and fetched Hiram out of Tyre.**
- 14 **He was the son of a widow of the tribe of Naphtali, and his father was a man of Tyre, a worker in brass; and he was filled with wisdom and understanding and skill, to work all works in brass. And he came to king Solomon, and wrought all his work.**
- 15 For he fashioned the two pillars of brass, *{1}* eighteen cubits high apiece: and a line of twelve cubits compassed *{2}* either of them about. *{1}* Heb eighteen cubits was the height of one pillar 2) Heb the other pillar}
- 16 And he made two capitals of molten brass, to set upon the tops of the pillars: the height of the one capital was five cubits, and the height of the other capital was five cubits.
- 17 There were nets of checker-work, and wreaths of chain-work, for the capitals which were upon the top of the pillars; seven for the one capital, and seven for the other capital.
- 18 So he made the pillars; and there were two rows round about upon the one network, to cover the capitals that were upon the top of the *{1}* pillars: and so did he for the other capital. *{1}* So the Syr; The Heb has pomegranates}
- 19 And the capitals that were upon the top of the pillars in the porch were of lily-work, four cubits.
- 20 And there were capitals above also upon the two pillars, close by the belly which was beside the network: and the pomegranates were two hundred, in rows round about upon the other capital.
- 21 And he set up the pillars at the porch of the temple: and he set up the right pillar, and called the name thereof *{1}* Jachin; and he set up the left pillar, and called the name thereof *{2}* Boaz. *{1}* That is He shall establish 2) That is perhaps In it is strength}
- 22 And upon the top of the pillars was lily-work: so was the work of the pillars finished.
- 23 And he made the molten sea of ten cubits from brim to brim, round in compass, and the height thereof was five cubits; and a line of thirty cubits compassed it round about.
- 24 And under the brim of it round about there were knops which did compass it, *{1}* for ten cubits, compassing the sea round about: the knops were in two rows, cast when it was cast. *{1}* Or ten in a cubit}
- 25 It stood upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, and three looking toward the west, and three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east; and the sea was set upon them above, and all their hinder parts were inward.
- 26 And it was a handbreadth thick: and the brim thereof was wrought like the brim of a cup, like the flower of a lily: it held two thousand baths.
- 27 And he made the ten bases of brass; four cubits was the length of one base, and four cubits the breadth thereof, and three cubits the height of it.
- 28 And the work of the bases was on this manner: they had panels; *{1}* and there were panels between the ledges; *{1}* Or even borders}
- 29 and on the panels that were between the ledges were lions, oxen, and cherubim; and upon the ledges *{1}* there was a pedestal above; and beneath the lions and oxen were wreaths of hanging work. *{1}* Or it was in like manner above}
- 30 And every base had four brazen wheels, and axles of brass; and the four feet thereof had *{1}* undersetters: beneath the laver were the undersetters molten, with wreaths at the side of each. *{1}* Heb shoulders}
- 31 And the mouth of it within the capital and above was a cubit: and the mouth thereof was round after the work of a pedestal, a cubit and a half; and also upon the mouth of it were gravings, and their panels were foursquare, not round.
- 32 And the four wheels were underneath the panels; and the axletrees of the wheels were in the base: and the height of a wheel was a cubit and half a cubit.
- 33 And the work of the wheels was like the work of a chariot wheel: their axletrees, and their felloes, and their spokes, and their naves, were all molten.
- 34 And there were four undersetters at the four corners of each base: the undersetters thereof were of the base itself.
- 35 And in the top of the base was there a round compass half a cubit high; and on the top of the base the *{1}* stays thereof and the panels thereof were of the same. *{1}* Heb hands}
- 36 And on the plates of the stays thereof, and on the panels thereof, he graved cherubim, lions, and palm-



- trees, according to the space of each, with wreaths round about.
- 37 After this manner he made the ten bases: all of them had one casting, one measure, and one form.
- 38 And he made ten lavers of brass: one laver contained forty baths; and every laver was four cubits; and upon very one of the ten bases one laver.
- 39 And he set the bases, five on the right *{1}* side of the house, and five on the left side of the house: and he set the sea on the right side of the house eastward, toward the south. *{1}* *Heb shoulder*}
- 40 And *{1}* Hiram made the *{2}* lavers, and the shovels, and the basins. So Hiram made an end of doing all the work that he wrought for king Solomon in the house of Jehovah: *{1}* *Heb Hirom 2*) In 2 Ch 4:11 *pots*}
- 41 the two pillars, and the two bowls of the capitals that were on the top of the pillars; and the two networks to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the top of the pillars;
- 42 and the four hundred pomegranates for the two networks; two rows of pomegranates for each network, to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were *{1}* upon the pillars; *{1}* *Heb upon the face of the pillars*}
- 43 and the ten bases, and the ten lavers on the bases;
- 44 and the one sea, and the twelve oxen under the sea;
- 45 and the pots, and the shovels, and the basins: even all *{1}* these vessels, which Hiram made for king Solomon, in the house of Jehovah, were of burnished brass. *{1}* *Another reading is the vessels of the Tent*}
- 46 In the plain of the Jordan did the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zarethan.
- 47 And Solomon left all the vessels *unweighed*, because they were exceeding many: the weight of the brass *{1}* could not be found out. *{1}* *Or was not searched out* }
- 48 ¶ And Solomon made all the vessels that were in the house of Jehovah: the golden altar, and the table whereupon the showbread was, of gold;
- 49 and the candlesticks, five on the right side, and five on the left, before the oracle, of pure gold; and the flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs, of gold;
- 50 and the cups, and the snuffers, and the basins, and the spoons, and the firepans, of pure gold; and the hinges, both for the doors of the inner house, the most holy place, and for the doors of the house, *to wit* , of the temple, of gold.
- 51 Thus all the work that king Solomon wrought in the house of Jehovah was finished. And Solomon brought in the things which David his father had dedicated, *even* the silver, and the gold, and the vessels, and put them in the treasuries of the house of Jehovah.

- 
- d- The furniture constructed. (7.)  
 Molten sea; 25 tons, stood on 12 Lions.  
 It was cast as well as the columns in the valley of Jordan vs. 46
- e- The estimated value:  
 \$600,000,000 - 1 Chr 22 ≈ 4.5 billion provided!  
 See Ref. K&D on 1Ch 22:14.
- 

Because of length of text, Ch. 8 is backed up.

## 1 Kings 8

- 1 ¶ Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, and all the heads of the tribes, the princes of the fathers' *houses* of the children of Israel, unto king Solomon in Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of Jehovah out of the city of David, which is Zion.
- 2 And all the men of Israel assembled themselves unto king Solomon at the feast, in the month Ethanim, which is the seventh month.
- 3 And all the elders of Israel came, and the priests took up the ark.
- 4 And they brought up the ark of Jehovah, and the tent of meeting, and all the holy vessels that were in the Tent; even these did the priests and the Levites bring up.
- 5 And king Solomon and all the congregation of Israel, that were assembled unto him, were with him before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen, that could not be counted nor numbered for multitude.
- 6 And the priests brought in the ark of the covenant of Jehovah unto its place, into the oracle of the house, to the most holy place, even under the wings of the cherubim.
- 7 For the cherubim spread forth their wings over the place of the ark, and the cherubim covered the ark and the staves thereof above.
- 8 And *{1}* the staves were so long that the ends of the staves were seen from the holy place before the oracle; but they were not seen without: and there they are unto this day. *{1}* *Or they drew out the staves, so that etc*}
- 9 There was nothing in the ark save the two tables of stone which Moses put there at Horeb, *{1}* when Jehovah made a covenant with the children of Israel, when they came out of the land of Egypt. *{1}* *Or where*}

- 10 And it came to pass, when the priests were come out of the holy place, that the cloud filled the house of Jehovah,  
 11 so that the priests could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud; for the glory of Jehovah filled the house of Jehovah.  
 12 ¶ Then spake Solomon, Jehovah hath said that he would dwell in the thick darkness.  
 13 I have surely built thee a house of habitation, a place for thee to dwell in for ever.  
 14 And the king turned his face about, and blessed all the assembly of Israel: and all the assembly of Israel stood.  
 15 And he said, Blessed be Jehovah, the God of Israel, who spake with his mouth unto David thy father, and hath with his hand fulfilled it, saying,  
 16 Since the day that I brought forth my people Israel out of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel to build a house, that my name might be there; but I chose David to be over my people Israel.  
 17 Now it was in the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of Jehovah, the God of Israel.  
 18 But Jehovah said unto David my father, Whereas it was in thy heart to build a house for my name, thou didst well that it was in thy heart:  
 19 nevertheless thou shalt not build the house; but thy son that shall come forth out of thy loins, he shall build the house for my name.  
 20 And Jehovah hath established his word that he spake; for I am risen up in the room of David my father, and sit on the throne of Israel, as Jehovah promised, and have built the house for the name of Jehovah, the God of Israel.  
 21 And there have I set a place for the ark, wherein is the covenant of Jehovah, which he made with our fathers, when he brought them out of the land of Egypt.  
 22 ¶ And Solomon stood before the altar of Jehovah in the presence of all the assembly of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven;  
 23 and he said, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, there is no God like thee, in heaven above, or on earth beneath; who keepest covenant and lovingkindness *{1}* with thy servants, that walk before thee with all their heart; *{1}* Or for  
 24 who hast kept with thy servant David my father that which thou didst promise him: yea, thou spakest with thy mouth, and hast fulfilled it with thy hand, as it is this day.  
 25 Now therefore, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, keep with thy servant David my father that which thou hast promised him, saying, *{1}* There shall not fail thee a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel, if only thy children take heed to their way, to walk before me as thou hast walked before me. *{1}* Heb There shall not be cut off unto thee a man from my sight  
 26 Now therefore, O God of Israel, let thy word, I pray thee, be verified, which thou spakest unto thy servant David my father.  
 27 But will God in very deed dwell on the earth? behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded!  
 28 Yet have thou respect unto the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O Jehovah my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer which thy servant prayeth before thee this day;  
 29 that thine eyes may be open toward this house night and day, even toward the place whereof thou hast said, My name shall be there; to hearken unto the prayer which thy servant shall pray toward this place.  
 30 And hearken thou to the supplication of thy servant, and of thy people Israel, when they shall pray toward this place: yea, hear thou in heaven thy dwelling-place; and when thou hearest, forgive.  
 31 *{1}* If a man sin against his neighbor, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and he come and swear before thine altar in this house; *{1}* Or Whereinsoever a man shall sin  
 32 then hear thou in heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, condemning the wicked, to bring his way upon his own head, and justifying the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness.  
 33 When thy people Israel are smitten down before the enemy, because they have sinned against thee; if they turn again to thee, and confess thy name, and pray and make supplication unto thee in this house:  
 34 then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy people Israel, and bring them again unto the land which thou gavest unto their fathers.  
 35 When heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against thee; if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, *{1}* when thou *{2}* dost afflict them: *{1}* Or because 2) Or answerest  
 36 then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, *{1}* when thou teachest them the good way wherein they should walk; and send rain upon thy land, which thou hast given to thy people for an inheritance. *{1}* Or because  
 37 If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence, if there be blasting or mildew, locust or caterpillar; if their enemy besiege them in the land of their *{1}* cities; whatsoever plague, whatsoever sickness there be; *{1}* Heb gates  
 38 what prayer and supplication soever be made by any man, or by all thy people Israel, who shall know every man the plague of his own heart, and spread forth his hands toward this house:  
 39 then hear thou in heaven thy dwelling-place, and forgive, and do, and render unto every man according to all his ways, whose heart thou knowest; (for thou, even thou only, knowest the hearts of all the children of men;)  
 40 that they may fear thee all the days that they live in the land which thou gavest unto our fathers.  
 41 Moreover concerning the foreigner, that is not of thy people Israel, when he shall come out of a far country for thy name's sake  
 42 (for they shall hear of thy great name, and of thy mighty hand, and of thine outstretched arm); when he shall come and pray toward this house;  
 43 hear thou in heaven thy dwelling-place, and do according to all that the foreigner calleth to thee for; that all the peoples of the earth may know thy name, to fear thee, as doth thy people Israel, and that they may know that *{1}* this house which I have built is called by my name. *{1}* Or they name is called upon this house etc  
 44 If thy people go out to battle against their enemy, by whatsoever way thou shalt send them, and they pray unto Jehovah toward the city which thou hast chosen, and toward the house which I have built for thy name;  
 45 then hear thou in heaven their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their *{1}* cause. *{1}* Or right  
 46 If they sin against thee (for there is no man that sinneth not), and thou be angry with them, and deliver them to the enemy, so

- that {1} they carry them away captive unto the land of the enemy, far off or near; {1} *Heb they that take them captive carry them away*}
- 47 yet if they shall bethink themselves in the land whither they are carried captive, and turn again, and make supplication unto thee in the land of them that carried them captive, saying, We have sinned, and have done perversely, we have dealt wickedly;
- 48 if they return unto thee with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their enemies, who carried them captive, and pray unto thee toward their land, which thou gavest unto their fathers, the city which thou hast chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name:
- 49 then hear thou their prayer and their supplication in heaven thy dwelling-place, and maintain their {1} cause; {1} *Or right*}
- 50 and forgive thy people who have sinned against thee, and all their transgressions wherein they have transgressed against thee; and give them {1} compassion before those who carried them captive, that they may have compassion on them {1} *Heb to be for compassion*}
- 51 (for they are thy people, and thine inheritance, which thou broughtest forth out of Egypt, from the midst of the furnace of iron);
- 52 that thine eyes may be open unto the supplication of thy servant, and unto the supplication of thy people Israel, to hearken unto them whensoever they cry unto thee.
- 53 For thou didst separate them from among all the peoples of the earth, to be thine inheritance, as thou spakest by Moses thy servant, when thou broughtest our fathers out of Egypt, O Lord Jehovah.
- 54 ¶ And it was so, that, when Solomon had made an end of praying all this prayer and supplication unto Jehovah, he arose from before the altar of Jehovah, from kneeling on his knees with his hands spread forth toward heaven.
- 55 And he stood, and blessed all the assembly of Israel with a loud voice, saying,
- 56 Blessed be Jehovah, that hath given rest unto his people Israel, according to all that he promised: there hath not {1} failed one word of all his good promise, which he promised by Moses his servant. {1} *Heb fallen*}
- 57 Jehovah our God be with us, as he was with our fathers: let him not leave us, nor forsake us;
- 58 that he may incline our hearts unto him, to walk in all his ways, and to keep his commandments, and his statutes, and his ordinances, which he commanded our fathers.
- 59 And let these my words, wherewith I have made supplication before Jehovah, be nigh unto Jehovah our God day and night, that he maintain the cause of his servant, and the cause of his people Israel, {1} as every day shall require; {1} *Heb the thing of a day in its day*}
- 60 that all the peoples of the earth may know that Jehovah, he is God; there is none else.
- 61 Let your heart therefore be perfect with Jehovah our God, to walk in his statutes, and to keep his commandments, as at this day.
- 62 ¶ And the king, and all Israel with him, offered sacrifice before Jehovah.
- 63 And Solomon offered for the sacrifice of peace-offerings, which he offered unto Jehovah, two and twenty thousand oxen, and a hundred and twenty thousand sheep. So the king and all the children of Israel dedicated the house of Jehovah.
- 64 The same day did the king hallow the middle of the court that was before the house of Jehovah; for there he offered the burnt-offering, and the meal-offering, and the fat of the peace-offerings, because the brazen altar that was before Jehovah was too little to receive the burnt-offering, and the meal-offering, and the fat of the peace-offerings.
- 65 So Solomon held the feast at that time, and all Israel with him, a great assembly, from the entrance of Hamath unto the brook of Egypt, before Jehovah our God, seven days and seven days, even fourteen days.
- 66 On the eighth day he sent the people away; and they blessed the king, and went unto their tents joyful and glad of heart for all the goodness that Jehovah had showed unto David his servant, and to Israel his people.

### 3- The temple dedicated.

(8.)

- a- The ark installed in holy of holies. vs 1-9
- b- The Glory of the Lord fills the temple. vs. 10-11
- c- Solomon' s address. vs. 12-21
- d- Solomon's dedicatory prayer. vs. 22-53
  - 1) Note the eightfold request.
  - 2) Note Israel's mission to the world
- e- Israel's 14-day feast.

**1 Kings 9**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when Solomon had finished the building of the house of Jehovah, and the king's house, and all Solomon's *{1}* desire which he was pleased to do, *{1}* Or *delight*
- 2 that Jehovah appeared to Solomon the second time, as he had appeared unto him at Gibeon.
- 3 And Jehovah said unto him, I have heard thy prayer and thy supplication, that thou hast made before me: I have hallowed this house, which thou hast built, to put my name there for ever; and mine eyes and my heart shall be there perpetually.
- 4 And as for thee, if thou wilt walk before me, as David thy father walked, in integrity of heart, and in uprightness, to do according to all that I have commanded thee, and wilt keep my statutes and mine ordinances;
- 5 then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom over Israel for ever, according as I *{1}* promised to David thy father, saying, There shall not fail thee a man upon the throne of Israel. *{1}* Or *spake concerning*
- 6 But if ye shall turn away from following me, ye or your children, and not keep my commandments and my statutes which I have set before you, but shall go and serve other gods, and worship them;
- 7 then will I cut off Israel out of the land which I have given them; and this house, which I have hallowed for my name, will I cast out of my sight; and Israel shall be a proverb and a byword among all peoples.
- 8 *{1}* And though this house is so high, yet shall every one that passeth by it be astonished, and shall hiss; and they shall say, Why hath Jehovah done thus unto this land, and to this house? *{1}* Or *and this house shall be high; every one etc*
- 9 and they shall answer, Because they forsook Jehovah their God, who brought forth their fathers out of the land of Egypt, and laid hold on other gods, and worshipped them, and served them: therefore hath Jehovah brought all this evil upon them.
- 10 ¶ And it came to pass at the end of twenty years, wherein Solomon had built the two houses, the house of Jehovah and the king's house
- 11 (now Hiram the king of Tyre had furnished Solomon with cedar-trees and fir-trees, and with gold, according to all his desire), that then king Solomon gave Hiram twenty cities in the land of Galilee.
- 12 And Hiram came out from Tyre to see the cities which Solomon had given him; and they pleased him not.
- 13 And he said, What cities are these which thou hast given me, my brother? And *{1}* he called them the land of Cabul unto this day. *{1}* Or *they were called*
- 14 And Hiram sent to the king sixscore talents of gold.
- 15 ¶ And this is the *{1}* reason of the *{2}* levy which king Solomon raised, to build the house of Jehovah, and his own house, and Millo, and the wall of Jerusalem, and Hazor, and Megiddo, and Gezer. *{1}* Or *account*  
*2) Heb men subject to taskwork*
- 16 Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up, and taken Gezer, and burnt it with fire, and slain the Canaanites that dwelt in the city, and given it for a portion unto his daughter, Solomon's wife.
- 17 And Solomon built Gezer, and Beth-horon the nether,
- 18 and Baalath, and *{1}* Tamar in the wilderness, in the land, *{1}* Another reading is *Tadmor*; So 2 Ch 8:4
- 19 and all the store-cities that Solomon had, and the cities for his chariots, and the cities for his horsemen, and that which Solomon desired to build for his pleasure in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and in all the land of his dominion.
- 20 As for all the people that were left of the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, who were not of the children of Israel;
- 21 their children that were left after them in the land, whom the children of Israel were not able *{1}* utterly to destroy, of them did Solomon raise *{2}* a levy of bondservants unto this day. *{1}* Heb *to devote* 2) Heb *men subject to servile taskwork*
- 22 But of the children of Israel did Solomon make no bondservants; but they were the men of war, and his servants, and his princes, and his captains, and rulers of his chariots and of his horsemen.
- 23 These were the chief officers that were over Solomon's work, five hundred and fifty, who bare rule over the people that wrought in the work.
- 24 But Pharaoh's daughter came up out of the city of David unto her house which *Solomon* had built for her: then did he build Millo.
- 25 And three times a year did Solomon offer burnt-offerings and peace-offerings upon the altar which he built unto Jehovah, burning incense therewith, *upon the altar* that was before Jehovah. So he finished

- 26 And king Solomon made a navy of ships in Ezion-geber, which is beside Eloth, on the shore of the Red Sea, in the land of Edom.
- 27 And Hiram sent in the navy his servants, shipmen that had knowledge of the sea, with the servants of Solomon.
- 28 And **they came to Ophir, and fetched from thence gold, four hundred and twenty talents**, and brought it to king Solomon.
- 

C- Solomon's glory and apostasy<sup>a</sup>. (9.-11.)

1- Solomon's glory. (9.-10.)

a- The Lord's warning (9:1-9)

1) Promise of blessing for obedience.

2) Promise of destruction for idolatry.

b- Solomon's trade and tax programs. vs. 10-28

1) Traded cities of Galilee for timber.

2) Built temple (7 yrs.), palace (13 yrs), and Jerusalem walls.

3) Levied heavy taxes on tributaries. vs. 18-25.  
Also taxed Israel very heavily.

4) Built a navy at Ezion-geber. vs. 26-28.  
In order to get on gold trade with Ophir.

---

<sup>a</sup> This word transliterated from Greek APOSTISIA, in Liddel and Scott Lexicon of the LXX, meant simply "departure". In order to connote religious departure it had to either be modified i.e. spiritual apostacy, or be in context with that concept. Ref. 2 Th 2:3a; in that case the departure has reference to the "gathering together unto Him", i.e., "the rapture", vs. 1.

**1 Kings 10**

- 1 ¶ And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon concerning the name of Jehovah, she came to prove him with hard questions.
- 2 And she came to Jerusalem with a very great train, with camels that bare spices, and very much gold, and precious stones; and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart.
- 3 And Solomon told her all her questions: there was not anything hid from the king which he told her not.
- 4 And when the queen of Sheba had seen all the wisdom of Solomon, and the house that he had built,
- 5 and the food of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the *{1}* attendance of his ministers, and their apparel, and his cupbearers, and *{2}* his ascent by which he went up unto the house of Jehovah; there was no more spirit in her. *{1}* Heb standing *{2}* Or his burnt-offering which he offered in etc
- 6 And she said to the king, It was a true report that I heard in mine own land of thine *{1}* acts, and of thy wisdom. *{1}* Or sayings
- 7 Howbeit I believed not the words, until I came, and mine eyes had seen it: and, behold, the half was not told me; *{1}* thy wisdom and prosperity exceed the fame which I heard. *{1}* Heb thou hast added wisdom and goodness to the fame
- 8 Happy are thy men, happy are these thy servants, that stand continually before thee, and that hear thy wisdom.
- 9 Blessed be Jehovah thy God, who delighted in thee, to set thee on the throne of Israel: because Jehovah loved Israel for ever, therefore made he thee king, to do justice and righteousness.
- 10 And she gave the king a hundred and twenty talents of gold (approx. 10,940 troy pounds – 5 ½ tons), and of spices very great store, and precious stones: there came no more such abundance of spices as these which the queen of Sheba gave to king Solomon.
- 11 And the navy also of Hiram, that brought gold from Ophir, brought in from Ophir great plenty of *{1}* almug-trees and precious stones. *{1}* In 2 Ch 2:8, 9, 10 *algum-trees* ; Perhaps *sandal-wood*
- 12 And the king made of the almug-trees *{1}* pillars for the house of Jehovah, and for the king's house, harps also and psalteries for the singers: there came no such almug-trees, nor were seen, unto this day. *{1}* Or a railing; Heb a prop
- 13 And king Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatsoever she asked, besides that *{1}* which Solomon gave her of his royal bounty. So she turned, and went to her own land, she and her servants. *{1}* Heb which he gave her according to the hand of king Solomon
- 14 ¶ Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred threescore and six talents of gold, (Approximately 60,700 Troy pounds – nearly 30 ½ Troy tons.)
- 15 besides that which the traders brought, and the traffic of the merchants, and of all the kings of *{1}* the mingled people, and of the governors of the country. *{1}* In 2 Ch 9:14 *Arabia*
- 16 And king Solomon made two hundred bucklers of beaten gold; six hundred *shekels* of gold went to one buckler.
- 17 And he made three hundred shields of beaten gold; three *{1}* pounds of gold went to one shield: and the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon. *{1}* Heb *maneh*
- 18 Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with the finest gold.
- 19 There were six steps to the throne, and the top of the throne was round behind; and there were *{1}* stays on either side by the place of the seat, and two lions standing beside the stays. *{1}* Or arms; Heb hands
- 20 And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other upon the six steps: there was not the like made in any kingdom.
- 21 And all king Solomon's drinking vessels were of gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon were of pure gold: none were of silver; it was nothing accounted of in the days of Solomon.
- 22 For the king had at sea a navy of Tarshish with the navy of Hiram: once every three years came the navy of Tarshish, bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.
- 23 So king Solomon exceeded all the kings of the earth in riches and in wisdom.
- 24 And all the earth sought the presence of Solomon, to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart.
- 25 And they brought every man his tribute, vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and raiment, and armor, and spices, horses, and mules, a rate year by year.
- 26 And Solomon gathered together chariots and horsemen: and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, that he bestowed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem.

- 27 And the king made silver to be in Jerusalem as stones, and cedars made he to be as the sycamore-trees that are in the lowland, for abundance.
- 28 And the horses which Solomon had were brought out of Egypt; and the king's merchants received them in droves, each drove at a price.
- 29 And a chariot came up and went out of Egypt for six hundred *shekels* of silver, and a horse for a hundred and fifty; and so for all the kings of the Hittites, and for the kings of Syria, did they bring them out *{1}* by their means. *{1} Heb in their hand}*
- 

- c- The visit of the Queen of Sheba. vs. 10:1-13
- 1) Her amazement.  
"Behold, the half was not told."
  - 2) The exchange of gifts.  
She gave Solomon gold! (Almost 5 1/2 Troy tons) vs. 10  
Note: the Map of Solomon's Expansion - North, South and East:  
The origin of Sheba is more likely to be Ethiopia. See map, above,  
An Alternative Origin For The Queen Of Sheba. See also Solomon's  
navy in 9:26-28, above.
- d- Solomon's acquisitions and splendour. vs. 14-29
- 1) Acquiring gold. vs. 14  
35,000,000 in gold a year - even made shields of gold!
  - 2) His ivory throne.
  - 3) His riches exceeded all the kings.  
So great that silver was like gravel. vs. 27

**1 Kings 11**

- 1 ¶ Now king Solomon loved many foreign women, *{1}* together with the daughter of Pharaoh, women of the Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, and Hittites; *{1} Or besides }*
- 2 of the nations concerning which Jehovah said unto the children of Israel, Ye shall not go among them, neither shall they come among you; for surely they will turn away your heart after their gods: Solomon clave unto these in love.
- 3 And he had seven hundred wives, princesses, and three hundred concubines; and his wives turned away his heart.
- 4 For it came to pass, when Solomon was old, that his wives turned away his heart after other gods; and his heart was not perfect with Jehovah his God, as was the heart of David his father.
- 5 For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, and after Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites.
- 6 And Solomon did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and went not fully after Jehovah, as did David his father.
- 7 Then did Solomon build a high place for Chemosh the abomination of Moab, in the mount that is before Jerusalem, and for Molech the abomination of the children of Ammon.
- 8 And so did he for all his foreign wives, who burnt incense and sacrificed unto their gods.
- 9 ¶ And Jehovah was angry with Solomon, because his heart was turned away from Jehovah, the God of Israel, who had appeared unto him twice,
- 10 and had commanded him concerning this thing, that he should not go after other gods: but he kept not that which Jehovah commanded.
- 11 Wherefore Jehovah said unto Solomon, Forasmuch as this *{1}* is done of thee, and thou hast not kept my covenant and my statutes, which I have commanded thee, I will surely rend the kingdom from thee, and will give it to thy servant. *{1} Heb is with thee}*
- 12 Notwithstanding in thy days I will not do it, for David thy father's sake: but I will rend it out of the hand of thy son.
- 13 Howbeit I will not rend away all the kingdom; but I will give one tribe to thy son, for David my servant's sake, and for Jerusalem's sake which I have chosen.
- 14 ¶ And Jehovah raised up an adversary unto Solomon, Hadad the Edomite: he was of the king's seed in Edom.
- 15 For it came to pass, when David was in Edom, and Joab the captain of the host was gone up to bury the slain, and had smitten every male in Edom
- 16 (for Joab and all Israel remained there six months, until he had cut off every male in Edom);
- 17 that Hadad fled, he and certain Edomites of his father's servants with him, to go into Egypt, Hadad being yet a little child.
- 18 And they arose out of Midian, and came to Paran; and they took men with them out of Paran, and they came to Egypt, unto Pharaoh king of Egypt, who gave him a house, and appointed him victuals, and gave him land.
- 19 And Hadad found great favor in the sight of Pharaoh, so that he gave him to wife the sister of his own wife, the sister of Tahpenes the queen.
- 20 And the sister of Tahpenes bare him Genubath his son, whom Tahpenes weaned in Pharaoh's house; and Genubath was in Pharaoh's house among the sons of Pharaoh.
- 21 And when Hadad heard in Egypt that David slept with his fathers, and that Joab the captain of the host was dead, Hadad said to Pharaoh, Let me depart, that I may go to mine own country.
- 22 Then Pharaoh said unto him, But what hast thou lacked with me, that, behold, thou seekest to go to thine own country? And he answered, Nothing: howbeit only let me depart.
- 23 And God raised up *another* adversary unto him, Rezon the son of Eliada, who had fled from his lord Hadadezer king of Zobah.
- 24 And he gathered men unto him, and became captain over a troop, when David slew them *of Zobah*: and they went to Damascus, and dwelt therein, and reigned in Damascus.
- 25 And he was an adversary to Israel all the days of Solomon, besides the mischief that Hadad *did*: and he abhorred Israel, and reigned over Syria.
- 26 ¶ And Jeroboam the son of Nebat, an Ephraimite of Zeredah, a servant of Solomon, whose mother's name was Zeruah, a widow, he also lifted up his hand against the king.



- 27 And this was the reason why he lifted up his hand against the king: Solomon built Millo, and *{1}* repaired the breach of the city of David his father. *{1}* *Heb closed up }*
- 28 And the man Jeroboam was a mighty man of valor; and Solomon saw the young man that he was industrious, and he gave him charge over all the *{1}* labor of the house of Joseph. *{1}* *Heb burden}*
- 29 And it came to pass at that time, when Jeroboam went out of Jerusalem, that the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite found him in the way; now *Ahijah* had clad himself with a new garment; and they two were alone in the field.
- 30 And Ahijah laid hold of the new garment that was on him, and rent it in twelve pieces.
- 31 And he said to Jeroboam, Take thee ten pieces; for thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, Behold, I will rend the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and will give ten tribes to thee
- 32 (but he shall have one tribe, for my servant David's sake and for Jerusalem's sake, the city which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel);
- 33 because that they have forsaken me, and have worshipped Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, Chemosh the god of Moab, and Milcom the god of the children of Ammon; and they have not walked in my ways, to do that which is right in mine eyes, and *to keep* my statutes and mine ordinances, as did David his father.
- 34 Howbeit I will not take the whole kingdom out of his hand; but I will make him prince all the days of his life, for David my servant's sake whom I chose, *{1}* who kept my commandments and my statutes; *{1}* *Or because he kept}*
- 35 but I will take the kingdom out of his son's hand, and will give it unto thee, even ten tribes.
- 36 And unto his son will I give one tribe, that David my servant may have a lamp always before me in Jerusalem, the city which I have chosen me to put my name there.
- 37 And I will take thee, and thou shalt reign *{1}* according to all that thy soul desireth, and shalt be king over Israel. *{1}* *Or over all}*
- 38 And it shall be, if thou wilt hearken unto all that I command thee, and wilt walk in my ways, and do that which is right in mine eyes, to keep my statutes and my commandments, as David my servant did; that I will be with thee, and will build thee a sure house, as I built for David, and will give Israel unto thee.
- 39 And I will for this afflict the seed of David, but not for ever.
- 40 Solomon sought therefore to kill Jeroboam; but Jeroboam arose, and fled into Egypt, unto Shishak king of Egypt, and was in Egypt until the death of Solomon.
- 41 ¶ Now the rest of the *{1}* acts of Solomon, and all that he did, and his wisdom, are they not written in the book of the acts of Solomon? *{1}* *Or words; Or matters}*
- 42 And the time that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel was forty years.
- 43 And Solomon slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David his father: and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead.

- 
- 2- Solomon's departure from sound faith and practice. (11.)  
     Same mistakes as David, only compounded
- a- He acquired many heathen wives. vs. 1-4  
     From Ammon, Moab, Hittites, Edomites.
- b- He worshipped heathen gods. vs. 5-8  
     These wives turned him to other gods.
- c- His judgment for idolatry. vs. 9-13  
     The kingdom will be divided.
- d- The grooming of Jeroboam. vs. 26-40  
     An officer over the house of Joseph - will have 10 tribes.
- e- Solomon's death after 40 years' of reign. vs. 41-43  
     REMEMBER! Deu 17:16-17. Kings not to multiply horses, silver&gold, or wives!!!!

**1 Kings 12**

- 1 ¶ And Rehoboam went to Shechem: for all Israel were come to Shechem to make him king.
- 2 And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat heard of it (for he was yet in Egypt, whither he had fled from the presence of king Solomon, and Jeroboam dwelt in Egypt,
- 3 and they sent and called him), that Jeroboam and all the assembly of Israel came, and spake unto Rehoboam, saying,
- 4 Thy father made our yoke grievous: now therefore make thou the grievous service of thy father, and his heavy yoke which he put upon us, lighter, and we will serve thee.
- 5 And he said unto them, Depart yet for three days, then come again to me. And the people departed.
- 6 And king Rehoboam took counsel with the old men, that had stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, saying, What counsel give ye me to return answer to this people?
- 7 And they spake unto him, saying, If thou wilt be a servant unto this people this day, and wilt serve them, and answer them, and speak good words to them, then they will be thy servants for ever.
- 8 But he forsook the counsel of the old men which they had given him, and took counsel with the young men that were grown up with him, that stood before him.
- 9 And he said unto them, What counsel give ye, that we may return answer to this people, who have spoken to me, saying, Make the yoke that thy father did put upon us lighter?
- 10 And the young men that were grown up with him spake unto him, saying, Thus shalt thou say unto this people that spake unto thee, saying, Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make thou it lighter unto us; thus shalt thou speak unto them, My little finger is thicker than my father's loins.
- 11 And now whereas my father did lade you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke: my father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions.
- 12 So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam the third day, as the king bade, saying, Come to me again the third day.
- 13 And the king answered the people roughly, and forsook the counsel of the old men which they had given him,
- 14 and spake to them after the counsel of the young men, saying, My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add to your yoke: my father chastised you with whips, but I will chastise you with scorpions.
- 15 So the king hearkened not unto the people; for it was a thing brought about of Jehovah, that he might establish his word, which Jehovah spake by Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat.
- 16 ¶ And when all Israel saw that the king hearkened not unto them, the people answered the king, saying, What portion have we in David? neither have we inheritance in the son of Jesse: to your tents, O Israel: now see to thine own house, David. So Israel departed unto their tents.
- 17 But as for the children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them.
- 18 Then king Rehoboam sent Adoram, who was over the men subject to taskwork; and all Israel stoned him to death with stones. And king Rehoboam made speed to get him up to his chariot, to flee to Jerusalem.
- 19 So Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day.
- 20 And it came to pass, when all Israel heard that Jeroboam was returned, that they sent and called him unto the congregation, and made him king over all Israel: there was none that followed the house of David, but the tribe of Judah only.
- 21 And when Rehoboam was come to Jerusalem, he assembled all the house of Judah, and the tribe of Benjamin, a hundred and fourscore thousand chosen men, that were warriors, to fight against the house of Israel, to bring the kingdom again to Rehoboam the son of Solomon.
- 22 But the word of God came unto Shemaiah the man of God, saying,
- 23 Speak unto Rehoboam the son of Solomon, king of Judah, and unto all the house of Judah and Benjamin, and to the rest of the people, saying,
- 24 Thus saith Jehovah, Ye shall not go up, nor fight against your brethren the children of Israel: return every man to his house; for this thing is of me. So they hearkened unto the word of Jehovah, and returned and went their way, according to the word of Jehovah.
- 25 ¶ Then Jeroboam built Shechem in the hill-country of Ephraim, and dwelt therein; and he went out from thence, and built Penuel.
- 26 And Jeroboam said in his heart, Now will the kingdom return to the house of David:
- 27 if this people go up to offer sacrifices in the house of Jehovah at Jerusalem, then will the heart of this

- people turn again unto their lord, even unto Rehoboam king of Judah; and they will kill me, and return to Rehoboam king of Judah.
- 28 Whereupon the king took counsel, and made two calves of gold; and he said unto them, *{1}* It is too much for you to go up to Jerusalem: behold thy gods, O Israel, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt. *{1}* Or *Ye have gone up long enough*
- 29 And he set the one in Beth-el, and the other put he in Dan.
- 30 And this thing became a sin; for the people went *to worship* before *{1}* the one, even unto Dan. *{1}* Or *each of them*
- 31 And he made houses of high places, and made priests from among all the people, that were not of the sons of Levi.
- 32 And Jeroboam ordained a feast in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month, like unto the feast that is in Judah, and he *{1}* went up unto the altar; so did he in Beth-el, *{2}* sacrificing unto the calves that he had made: and he placed in Beth-el the priests of the high places that he had made. *{1}* Or *offered upon 2* Or *to sacrifice*
- 33 And he *{1}* went up unto the altar which he had made in Beth-el on the fifteenth day in the eighth month, even in the month which he had devised *{2}* of his own heart: and he ordained a feast for the children of Israel, and *{1}* went up unto the altar, to burn incense. *{1}* Or *offered upon 2* Another reading is *apart*
- 

## II. THE DIVIDED KINGDOMS OF ISRAEL AND JUDAH.

(1 Kings 12 - 2 Kings 17.)

- A- Period of strife between Israel and Judah. (12.-16.)
- 1- Israel's revolt under Jeroboam. vs. 12:1-24
- a- Rehoboam's folly. vs. 1-15.
- b- Jeroboam's revolt. vs. 16-24
- 2- Israel's apostasy under Jeroboam. (12:24. - 14:20.)
- a- The golden calves set up at Bethel and Dan. vs. 24-30
- b- The vile priest set up. vs. 31-33

**1 Kings 13**

- 1 ¶ And, behold, there came a man of God out of Judah by the word of Jehovah unto Beth-el: and Jeroboam was standing by the altar to burn incense.
- 2 And he cried against the altar by the word of Jehovah, and said, O altar, altar, thus saith Jehovah: Behold, a son shall be born unto the house of David, Josiah by name; and upon thee shall he sacrifice the priests of the high places that burn incense upon thee, and men's bones shall they burn upon thee.
- 3 And he gave a sign the same day, saying, This is the sign which Jehovah hath spoken: Behold, the altar shall be rent, and the ashes that are upon it shall be poured out.
- 4 And it came to pass, when the king heard the saying of the man of God, which he cried against the altar in Beth-el, that Jeroboam put forth his hand from the altar, saying, Lay hold on him. And his hand, which he put forth against him, dried up, so that he could not draw it back again to him.
- 5 The altar also was rent, and the ashes poured out from the altar, according to the sign which the man of God had given by the word of Jehovah.
- 6 And the king answered and said unto the man of God, Entreat now the favor of Jehovah thy God, and pray for me, that my hand may be restored me again. And the man of God entreated Jehovah, and the king's hand was restored him again, and became as it was before.
- 7 And the king said unto the man of God, Come home with me, and refresh thyself, and I will give thee a reward.
- 8 And the man of God said unto the king, If thou wilt give me half thy house, I will not go in with thee, neither will I eat bread nor drink water in this place;
- 9 for so was it charged me by the word of Jehovah, saying, Thou shalt eat no bread, nor drink water, neither return by the way that thou camest.
- 10 So he went another way, and returned not by the way that he came to Beth-el.
- 11 ¶ Now there dwelt an old prophet in Beth-el; and {1} one of his sons came and told him all the works that the man of God had done that day in Beth-el: the words which he had spoken unto the king, them also they told unto their father. {1} *Heb his son*
- 12 And their father said unto them, What way went he? Now his sons had {1} seen what way the man of God went, that came from Judah. {1} *Or as otherwise read showed him*
- 13 And he said unto his sons, Saddle me the ass. So they saddled him the ass; and he rode thereon.
- 14 And he went after the man of God, and found him sitting under an {1} oak; and he said unto him, Art thou the man of God that camest from Judah? And he said, I am. {1} *Or terebinth*
- 15 Then he said unto him, Come home with me, and eat bread.
- 16 And he said, I may not return with thee, nor go in with thee; neither will I eat bread nor drink water with thee in this place:
- 17 for it was said to me by the word of Jehovah, Thou shalt eat no bread nor drink water there, nor turn again to go by the way that thou camest.
- 18 And he said unto him, I also am a prophet as thou art; and an angel spake unto me by the word of Jehovah, saying, Bring him back with thee into thy house, that he may eat bread and drink water. *But* he lied unto him.
- 19 So he went back with him, and did eat bread in his house, and drank water.
- 20 And it came to pass, as they sat at the table, that the word of Jehovah came unto the prophet that brought him back;
- 21 and he cried unto the man of God that came from Judah, saying, Thus saith Jehovah, Forasmuch as thou hast {1} been disobedient unto the mouth of Jehovah, and hast not kept the commandment which Jehovah thy God commanded thee, {1} *Or rebelled against the word*
- 22 but camest back, and hast eaten bread and drunk water in the place of which he said to thee, Eat no bread, and drink no water; thy body shall not come unto the sepulchre of thy fathers.
- 23 ¶ And it came to pass, after he had eaten bread, and after he had drunk, that he saddled for him the ass, *to wit*, for the prophet whom he had brought back.
- 24 And when he was gone, a lion met him by the way, and slew him: and his body was cast in the way, and the ass stood by it; the lion also stood by the body.
- 25 And, behold, men passed by, and saw the body cast in the way, and the lion standing by the body; and they came and told it in the city where the old prophet dwelt.
- 26 And when the prophet that brought him back from the way heard thereof, he said, It is the man of God,

who {1} was disobedient unto the mouth of Jehovah: therefore Jehovah hath delivered him unto the lion, which hath torn him, and slain him, according to the word of Jehovah, which he spake unto him.

*{1} Or rebelled against the word}*

- 27 And he spake to his sons, saying, Saddle me the ass. And they saddled it.
- 28 And he went and found his body cast in the way, and the ass and the lion standing by the body: the lion had not eaten the body, nor torn the ass.
- 29 And the prophet took up the body of the man of God, and laid it upon the ass, and brought it back; and he came to the city of the old prophet, to mourn, and to bury him.
- 30 And he laid his body in his own grave; and they mourned over him, *saying*, Alas, my brother!
- 31 And it came to pass, after he had buried him, that he spake to his sons, saying, When I am dead, then bury me in the sepulchre wherein the man of God is buried; lay my bones beside his bones.
- 32 For the saying which he cried by the word of Jehovah against the altar in Beth-el, and against all the houses of the high places which are in the cities of Samaria, shall surely come to pass.
- 33 After this thing Jeroboam returned not from his evil way, but made again from among all the people priests of the high places: *{1}* whosoever would, he consecrated him, that there might be priests of the high places. *{1} Or whomsoever he would}*
- 34 And *{1}* this thing became sin unto the house of Jeroboam, even to cut it off, and to destroy it from off the face of the earth. *{1} Or by this thing he became}*

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| c- The prophecy against Jeroboam.                                       | (13.)      |
| 1) The prophecy of Josiah's conquest.<br>Named 300 years ahead of time! | vs. 1-10.  |
| 2) The prophet is tested and dies.                                      | vs. 11-32. |
| 3) Jeroboam persists in evil.   | vs. 33-34. |

**1 Kings 14**

- 1 ¶ At that time Abijah the son of Jeroboam fell sick.
- 2 And Jeroboam said to his wife, Arise, I pray thee, and disguise thyself, that thou be not known to be the wife of Jeroboam; and get thee to Shiloh: behold, there is Ahijah the prophet, who spake concerning me that I should be king over this people.
- 3 And take with thee ten loaves, and cakes, and a *{1}* cruse of honey, and go to him: he will tell thee what shall become of the child. *{1} Or bottle}*
- 4 And Jeroboam's wife did so, and arose, and went to Shiloh, and came to the house of Ahijah. Now Ahijah could not see; for his eyes were set by reason of his age.
- 5 And Jehovah said unto Ahijah, Behold, the wife of Jeroboam cometh to inquire of thee concerning her son; for he is sick: thus and thus shalt thou say unto her; for it will be, when she cometh in, that she will feign herself to be another woman.
- 6 And it was so, when Ahijah heard the sound of her feet, as she came in at the door, that he said, Come in, thou wife of Jeroboam; why feignest thou thyself to be another? for I am sent to thee with heavy tidings.
- 7 ¶ Go, tell Jeroboam, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel: Forasmuch as I exalted thee from among the people, and made thee *{1}* prince over my people Israel, *{1} Or leader }*
- 8 and rent the kingdom away from the house of David, and gave it thee; and yet thou hast not been as my servant David, who kept my commandments, and who followed me with all his heart, to do that only which was right in mine eyes,
- 9 but hast done evil above all that were before thee, and hast gone and made thee other gods, and molten images, to provoke me to anger, and hast cast me behind thy back:
- 10 therefore, behold, I will bring evil upon the house of Jeroboam, and will cut off from Jeroboam every man-child, him that is shut up and him that is left at large in Israel, and will utterly sweep away the house of Jeroboam, as a man sweepeth away dung, till it be all gone.
- 11 Him that dieth of Jeroboam in the city shall the dogs eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the birds of the heavens eat: for Jehovah hath spoken it.
- 12 Arise thou therefore, get thee to thy house: *and* when thy feet enter into the city, the child shall die.
- 13 And all Israel shall mourn for him, and bury him; for he only of Jeroboam shall come to the grave, because in him there is found some good thing toward Jehovah, the God of Israel, in the house of Jeroboam.
- 14 Moreover Jehovah will raise him up a king over Israel, who shall cut off the house of Jeroboam that day: *{1}* but what? even now. *{1} Or and what even now?}*
- 15 For Jehovah will smite Israel, as a reed is shaken in the water; and he will root up Israel out of this good land which he gave to their fathers, and will scatter them beyond the River, because they have made their Asherim, provoking Jehovah to anger.
- 16 And he will give Israel up because of the sins of Jeroboam, *{1}* which he hath sinned, and wherewith he hath made Israel to sin. *{1} Or who did sin, and who made etc}*
- 17 And Jeroboam's wife arose, and departed, and came to Tirzah: *and* as she came to the threshold of the house, the child died.
- 18 And all Israel buried him, and mourned for him, according to the word of Jehovah, which he spake by his servant Ahijah the prophet.
- 19 And the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, how he warred, and how he reigned, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.
- 20 And the days which Jeroboam reigned were two and twenty years: and he slept with his fathers, and Nadab his son reigned in his stead.
- 21 ¶ And Rehoboam the son of Solomon reigned in Judah. Rehoboam was forty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which Jehovah had chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, to put his name there: and his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess.
- 22 And Judah did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and they provoked him to jealousy with their sins which they committed, above all that their fathers had done.
- 23 For they also built them high places, and *{1}* pillars, and Asherim, on every high hill, and under every green tree; *{1} Or obelisks}*
- 24 and there were also sodomites in the land: they did according to all the abominations of the nations

- which Jehovah drove out before the children of Israel.
- 25 And it came to pass in the fifth year of king Rehoboam, that Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem;
- 26 and he took away the treasures of the house of Jehovah, and the treasures of the king's house; he even took away all: and he took away all the shields of gold which Solomon had made.
- 27 And king Rehoboam made in their stead shields of brass, and committed them to the hands of the captains of the *{1}* guard, who kept the door of the king's house. *{1}* Heb runners}
- 28 And it was so, that, as oft as the king went into the house of Jehovah, the guard bare them, and brought them back into the guard-chamber.
- 29 Now the rest of the acts of Rehoboam, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 30 And there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam continually.
- 31 And Rehoboam slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David: and his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess. And *{1}* Abijam his son reigned in his stead. *{1}* In 2 Ch 12:16 Abijah}

- d- The judgment against Jeroboam. 14:1-20.
- 1) His house to be destroyed.
- 2) Israel to go into captivity. vs. 15  
1<sup>st</sup> mention of captivity beyond the Euphrates
- 3- Judah's apostasy. (14:21.-15:8.)
- a- Rehoboam's idolatry. vs. 21-24  
Idolatry led to immorality -  
Sodomites in the land. Lev 18:22, Rom 1:24-28.
- b- Egypt's invasion by Shishak. vs. 25-29  
Ransacked Gold of Temple.
- c- The constant war with Israel. vs. 30

**1 Kings 15**

- 1 ¶ Now in the eighteenth year of king Jeroboam the son of Nebat began Abijam to reign over Judah.
- 2 Three years reigned he in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was *{1}* Maacah the daughter of *{2}* Abishalom. *{1}* In 2 Ch 13:2 Micaiah the daughter of Uriel 2) In 2 Ch 11:20, 21 Absalom}
- 3 And he walked in all the sins of his father, which he had done before him; and his heart was not perfect with Jehovah his God, as the heart of David his father.
- 4 Nevertheless for David's sake did Jehovah his God give him a lamp in Jerusalem, to set up his son after him, and to establish Jerusalem;
- 5 because David did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, and turned not aside from anything that he commanded him all the days of his life, save only in the matter of Uriah the Hittite.
- 6 Now there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days of his life.
- 7 And the rest of the acts of Abijam, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? And there was war between Abijam and Jeroboam.
- 8 And Abijam slept with his fathers; and they buried him in the city of David: and Asa his son reigned in his stead.
- 9 ¶ And in the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel began Asa to reign over Judah.
- 10 And forty and one years reigned he in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Maacah the daughter of Abishalom.
- 11 And Asa did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, as did David his father.
- 12 And he put away the sodomites out of the land, and removed all the idols that his fathers had made.
- 13 And also Maacah his mother he removed from being *{1}* queen, because she had made an abominable image *{2}* for an Asherah; and Asa cut down her image, and burnt it at the brook Kidron. *{1}* Or queen mother 2) Or for Asherah}
- 14 But the high places were not taken away: nevertheless the heart of Asa was perfect with Jehovah all his days.
- 15 And he brought into the house of Jehovah the things that his father had dedicated, and the things that himself had dedicated, silver, and gold, and vessels.
- 16 And there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days.
- 17 And Baasha king of Israel went up against Judah, and built Ramah, that he might not suffer any one to go out or come in to Asa king of Judah.
- 18 Then Asa took all the silver and the gold that were left in the treasures of the house of Jehovah, and the treasures of the king's house, and delivered them into the hand of his servants; and king Asa sent them to Ben-hadad, the son of Tabrimmon, the son of Hezion, king of Syria, that dwelt at Damascus, saying,
- 19 *{1}* *There is a league between me and thee, between my father and thy father: behold, I have sent unto thee a present of silver and gold; go, break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me.* *{1}* Or, *Let there be}*
- 20 And Ben-hadad hearkened unto king Asa, and sent the captains of his armies against the cities of Israel, and smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abel-beth-maacah, and all Chinneroth, with all the land of Naphtali.
- 21 And it came to pass, when Baasha heard thereof, that he left off building Ramah, and dwelt in Tirzah.
- 22 Then king Asa made a proclamation unto all Judah; none was exempted: and they carried away the stones of Ramah, and the timber thereof, wherewith Baasha had builded; and king Asa built therewith Geba of Benjamin, and Mizpah.
- 23 Now the rest of all the acts of Asa, and all his might, and all that he did, and the cities which he built, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah? But in the time of his old age he was diseased in his feet.
- 24 And Asa slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his father; and Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his stead.
- 25 ¶ And Nadab the son of Jeroboam began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa king of Judah; and he reigned over Israel two years.
- 26 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and walked in the way of his father, and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin.
- 27 And Baasha the son of Ahijah, of the house of Issachar, conspired against him; and Baasha smote him



- at Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines; for Nadab and all Israel were laying siege to Gibbethon.
- 28 Even in the third year of Asa king of Judah did Baasha slay him, and reigned in his stead.
- 29 And it came to pass that, as soon as he was king, he smote all the house of Jeroboam: he left not to Jeroboam any that breathed, until he had destroyed him; according unto the saying of Jehovah, which he spake by his servant Ahijah the Shilonite;
- 30 for the sins of Jeroboam which he sinned, and wherewith he made Israel to sin, because of his provocation wherewith he provoked Jehovah, the God of Israel, to anger.
- 31 Now the rest of the acts of Nadab, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 32 And there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel all their days.

- d- The evil three-year reign of Abijam. vs. 15:1-8
- 4- Judah's righteous reign under Asa. vs. 15:9-24  
 (Brother of Abijam) Reigned 41 years - a good king.
- a- Idols destroyed and blessings enjoyed. vs. 9-15
- b- Civil war with Israel. vs. 16-26
- c- League with Syria began his downfall.  
 League purchased with funds from Temple treasury. vs. 18.
- d- Prophetic word rejected.  
 Asa through a prophet rebuked by the Lord for league with Syria.  
 Asa locked up that prophet.
- 5- Israel's second evil dynasty. (15:25. - 16:20.)
- a- Nadab is slain by Baasha after two years. vs. 25-31

**1 Kings 15 (cont.)**

- 33 In the third year of Asa king of Judah began Baasha the son of Ahijah to reign over all Israel in Tirzah, *and reigned* twenty and four years.
- 34 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and walked in the way of Jeroboam, and in his sin wherewith he made Israel to sin.

**1 Kings 16**

- 1 ¶ And the word of Jehovah came to Jehu the son of Hanani against Baasha, saying,
- 2 Forasmuch as I exalted thee out of the dust, and made thee *{1}* prince over my people Israel, and thou hast walked in the way of Jeroboam, and hast made my people Israel to sin, to provoke me to anger with their sins; *{1} Or leader*
- 3 behold, I will utterly sweep away Baasha and his house; and I will make thy house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat.
- 4 Him that dieth of Baasha in the city shall the dogs eat; and him that dieth of his in the field shall the birds of the heavens eat.
- 5 Now the rest of the acts of Baasha, and what he did, and his might, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 6 And Baasha slept with his fathers, and was buried in Tirzah; and Elah his son reigned in his stead.
- 7 And moreover by the prophet Jehu the son of Hanani came the word of Jehovah against Baasha, and against his house, both because of all the evil that he did in the sight of Jehovah, to provoke him to anger with the work of his hands, in being like the house of Jeroboam, and because he smote *{1}* him. *{1} Or it*
- 8 In the twenty and sixth year of Asa king of Judah began Elah the son of Baasha to reign over Israel in Tirzah, *and reigned* two years.
- 9 And his servant Zimri, captain of half his chariots, conspired against him. Now he was in Tirzah, drinking himself drunk in the house of Arza, who was over the household in Tirzah:
- 10 and Zimri went in and smote him, and killed him, in the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah, and reigned in his stead.
- 11 And it came to pass, when he began to reign, as soon as he sat on his throne, that he smote all the house of Baasha: he left him not a single man-child, neither of his kinsfolks, nor of his friends.
- 12 Thus did Zimri destroy all the house of Baasha, according to the word of Jehovah, which he spake against Baasha by Jehu the prophet,
- 13 for all the sins of Baasha, and the sins of Elah his son, which they sinned, and wherewith they made Israel to sin, to provoke Jehovah, the God of Israel, to anger with their vanities.
- 14 Now the rest of the acts of Elah, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 15 ¶ In the twenty and seventh year of Asa king of Judah did Zimri reign seven days in Tirzah. Now the people were encamped against Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines.
- 16 And the people that were encamped heard say, Zimri hath conspired, and hath also smitten the king: wherefore all Israel made Omri, the captain of the host, king over Israel that day in the camp.
- 17 And Omri went up from Gibbethon, and all Israel with him, and they besieged Tirzah.
- 18 And it came to pass, when Zimri saw that the city was taken, that he went into the *{1}* castle of the king's house, and burnt the king's house over him with fire, and died, *{1} Or palace*
- 19 for his sins which he sinned in doing that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, in walking in the way of Jeroboam, and in his sin which he did, to make Israel to sin.
- 20 Now the rest of the acts of Zimri, and his treason that he wrought, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 21 Then were the people of Israel divided into two parts: half of the people followed Tibni the son of Ginath, to make him king; and half followed Omri.
- 22 But the people that followed Omri prevailed against the people that followed Tibni the son of Ginath: so Tibni died, and Omri reigned.
- 23 In the thirty and first year of Asa king of Judah began Omri to reign over Israel, *and reigned* twelve years: six years reigned he in Tirzah.
- 24 And he bought the hill *{1}* Samaria of Shemer for two talents of silver; and he *{2}* built on the hill, and called the name of the city which he built, after the name of Shemer, the owner of the hill, *{1}*

Samaria. {1} Heb Shomeron 2) Or, fortified the hill}

- 25 And Omri did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and dealt wickedly above all that were before him.
- 26 For he walked in all the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and in his sins wherewith he made Israel to sin, to provoke Jehovah, the God of Israel, to anger with their vanities.
- 27 Now the rest of the acts of Omri which he did, and his might that he showed, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 28 So Omri slept with his fathers, and was buried in Samaria; and Ahab his son reigned in his stead.
- 29 ¶ And in the thirty and eighth year of Asa king of Judah began Ahab the son of Omri to reign over Israel: and Ahab the son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty and two years.
- 30 And Ahab the son of Omri did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah above all that were before him.
- 31 And it came to pass, as if it had been a light thing for him to walk in the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, that he took to wife {1} Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal king of the Sidonians, and went and served Baal, and worshipped him. {1} Heb Izebel}
- 32 And he reared up an altar for Baal in the house of Baal, which he had built in Samaria.
- 33 And Ahab made the Asherah; and Ahab did yet more to provoke Jehovah, the God of Israel, to anger than all the kings of Israel that were before him.
- 34 In his days did Hiel the Beth-elite build Jericho: he laid the foundation thereof with the loss of Abiram his first-born, and set up the gates thereof with the loss of his youngest son Segub, according to the word of Jehovah, which he spake by Joshua the son of Nun.

- b- Baasha--evil reign of 24 years. vs. (15:32.-16:7.)
- c- Elah is slain by Zimri after two-year evil reign. vs. 8-10.
- d- Zimri reigned one week-evil. vs. 10-20.
- 6- Israel's fourth evil dynasty. (16:20.-22:53.)
- a- Omri is made king by the army. vs. 20-27
- b- Omri built Samaria and transferred capital from Shechem.
- c- Ahab's evil reign begun. vs. 28-34

**1 Kings 17**

- 1 ¶ And Elijah the Tishbite, who was of the sojourners of Gilead, said unto Ahab, As Jehovah, the God of Israel, liveth, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years, but according to my word.
- 2 And the word of Jehovah came unto him, saying,
- 3 Get thee hence, and turn thee eastward, and hide thyself by the brook Cherith, that is before the Jordan.
- 4 And it shall be, that thou shalt drink of the brook; and I have commanded the ravens to feed thee there.
- 5 So he went and did according unto the word of Jehovah; for he went and dwelt by the brook Cherith, that is before the Jordan.
- 6 And the ravens brought him bread and flesh in the morning, and bread and flesh in the evening; and he drank of the brook.
- 7 And it came to pass after a while, that the brook dried up, because there was no rain in the land.
- 8 ¶ And the word of Jehovah came unto him, saying,
- 9 Arise, get thee to Zarephath, which belongeth to Sidon, and dwell there: behold, I have commanded a widow there to sustain thee.
- 10 So he arose and went to Zarephath; and when he came to the gate of the city, behold, a widow was there gathering sticks: and he called to her, and said, Fetch me, I pray thee, a little water in a vessel, that I may drink.
- 11 And as she was going to fetch it, he called to her, and said, Bring me, I pray thee, a morsel of bread in thy hand.
- 12 And she said, As Jehovah thy God liveth, I have not a cake, but a handful of meal in the jar, and a little oil in the cruse: and, behold, I am gathering two sticks, that I may go in and dress it for me and my son, that we may eat it, and die.
- 13 And Elijah said unto her, Fear not; go and do as thou hast said; but make me thereof a little cake first, and bring it forth unto me, and afterward make for thee and for thy son.
- 14 For thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, The jar of meal shall not waste, neither shall the cruse of oil fail, until the day that Jehovah sendeth rain upon the earth.
- 15 And she went and did according to the saying of Elijah: and she, and he, and her house, did eat *many* days.
- 16 The jar of meal wasted not, neither did the cruse of oil fail, according to the word of Jehovah, which he spake by Elijah.
- 17 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, that the son of the woman, the mistress of the house, fell sick; and his sickness was so sore, that there was no breath left in him.
- 18 And she said unto Elijah, What have I to do with thee, O thou man of God? *{1}* thou art come unto me to bring my sin to remembrance, and to slay my son! *{1} Or art thou etc }*
- 19 And he said unto her, Give me thy son. And he took him out of her bosom, and carried him up into the chamber, where he abode, and laid him upon his own bed.
- 20 And he cried unto Jehovah, and said, O Jehovah my God, hast thou also brought evil upon the widow with whom I sojourn, by slaying her son?
- 21 And he stretched himself upon the child three times, and cried unto Jehovah, and said, O Jehovah my God, I pray thee, let this child's soul come into him again.
- 22 And Jehovah hearkened unto the voice of Elijah; and the soul of the child came into him again, and he revived.
- 23 And Elijah took the child, and brought him down out of the chamber into the house, and delivered him unto his mother; and Elijah said, See, thy son liveth.
- 24 And the woman said to Elijah, Now I know that thou art a man of God, and that the word of Jehovah in thy mouth is truth.

**1 Kings 18**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after many days, that the word of Jehovah came to Elijah, in the third year, saying, Go, show thyself unto Ahab; and I will send rain upon the earth.
- 2 And Elijah went to show himself unto Ahab. And the famine was sore in Samaria.
- 3 And Ahab called Obadiah, who was over the household. (Now Obadiah feared Jehovah greatly:
- 4 for it was so, when Jezebel cut off the prophets of Jehovah, that Obadiah took a hundred prophets, and hid them by fifty in a cave, and fed them with bread and water.)

- 5 And Ahab said unto Obadiah, Go through the land, unto all the fountains of water, and unto all the brooks: peradventure we may find grass and save the horses and mules alive, {1} that we lose not all the beasts. {1} Or and lose none of}
- 6 So they divided the land between them to pass throughout it: Ahab went one way by himself, and Obadiah went another way by himself.
- 7 And as Obadiah was in the way, behold, Elijah met him: and he knew him, and fell on his face, and said, Is it thou, my lord Elijah?
- 8 And he answered him, It is I: go, tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah *is here*.
- 9 And he said, Wherein have I sinned, that thou wouldest deliver thy servant into the hand of Ahab, to slay me?
- 10 As Jehovah thy God liveth, there is no nation or kingdom, whither my lord hath not sent to seek thee: and when they said, He is not here, he took an oath of the kingdom and nation, that they found thee not.
- 11 And now thou sayest, Go, tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah *is here*.
- 12 And it will come to pass, as soon as I am gone from thee, that the Spirit of Jehovah will carry thee whither I know not; and so when I come and tell Ahab, and he cannot find thee, he will slay me: but I thy servant fear Jehovah from my youth.
- 13 Was it not told my lord what I did when Jezebel slew the prophets of Jehovah, how I hid a hundred men of Jehovah's prophets by fifty in a cave, and fed them with bread and water?
- 14 And now thou sayest, Go, tell thy lord, Behold, Elijah *is here*; and he will slay me.
- 15 And Elijah said, As Jehovah of hosts liveth, before whom I stand, I will surely show myself unto him to-day.
- 16 So Obadiah went to meet Ahab, and told him; and Ahab went to meet Elijah.
- 17 ¶ And it came to pass, when Ahab saw Elijah, that Ahab said unto him, Is it thou, thou troubler of Israel?
- 18 And he answered, I have not troubled Israel; but thou, and thy father's house, in that ye have forsaken the commandments of Jehovah, and thou hast followed the Baalim.

## B- Period of friendship between Israel and Judah.

(17.-22.)

(Period of struggle between Baal and Jehovah worship)

- 1- Elijah and the three-year famine. (17:1,-18:18.)
- a- He predicts famine and flees. vs. 1
- b- At the Jordan he is fed by ravens. vs. 2-7  
Pay careful attention to his route.
- c- At Zerephath in Zidon, he raises the dead. vs. 8-24
- d- He confronts Ahab. vs. 18:1-18  
Blames Ahab for the worship of Baalim.

**1 Kings 18 (cont.)**

- 19 Now therefore send, and gather to me all Israel unto mount Carmel, and the prophets of Baal four hundred and fifty, and the prophets of the Asherah four hundred, that eat at Jezebel's table.
- 20 So Ahab sent unto all the children of Israel, and gathered the prophets together unto mount Carmel.
- 21 ¶ And Elijah came near unto all the people, and said, How long go ye limping between the two sides? if Jehovah be God, follow him; but if Baal, then follow him. And the people answered him not a word.
- 22 Then said Elijah unto the people, I, even I only, am left a prophet of Jehovah; but Baal's prophets are four hundred and fifty men.
- 23 Let them therefore give us two bullocks; and let them choose one bullock for themselves, and cut it in pieces, and lay it on the wood, and put no fire under; and I will dress the other bullock, and lay it on the wood, and put no fire under.
- 24 And call ye on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of Jehovah; and the God that answereth by fire, let him be God. And all the people answered and said, It is well spoken.
- 25 And Elijah said unto the prophets of Baal, Choose you one bullock for yourselves, and dress it first; for ye are many; and call on the name of your god, but put no fire under.
- 26 And they took the bullock which was given them, and they dressed it, and called on the name of Baal from morning even until noon, saying, O Baal, *{1}* hear us. But there was no voice, nor any that answered. And they *{2}* leaped about the altar which was made. *{1} Or answer 2) Or limped}*
- 27 And it came to pass at noon, that Elijah mocked them, and said, Cry aloud; for he is a god: either he is musing, or he is gone aside, or he is on a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth and must be awaked.
- 28 And they cried aloud, and cut themselves after their manner with *{1}* knives and lances, till the blood gushed out upon them. *{1} Or swords}*
- 29 And it was so, when midday was past, that they prophesied until the time of the offering of the *evening* oblation; but there was neither voice, nor any to answer, nor any *{1}* that regarded. *{1} Heb attention}*
- 30 And Elijah said unto all the people, Come near unto me; and all the people came near unto him. And he repaired the altar of Jehovah that was thrown down.
- 31 And Elijah took twelve stones, according to the number of the tribes of the sons of Jacob, unto whom the word of Jehovah came, saying, Israel shall be thy name.
- 32 And with the stones he built an altar in the name of Jehovah; and he made a trench about the altar, as great as would contain *{1}* two measures of seed. *{1} Or a two-seah measure}*
- 33 And he put the wood in order, and cut the bullock in pieces, and laid it on the wood. And he said, Fill four jars with water, and pour it on the burnt-offering, and on the wood.
- 34 And he said, Do it the second time; and they did it the second time. And he said, Do it the third time; and they did it the third time.
- 35 And the water ran round about the altar; and he filled the trench also with water.
- 36 And it came to pass at the time of the offering of the *evening* oblation, that Elijah the prophet came near, and said, O Jehovah, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that thou art God in Israel, and that I am thy servant, and that I have done all these things at thy word.
- 37 Hear me, O Jehovah, hear me, that this people may know that thou, Jehovah, art God, *{1}* and *that* thou hast turned their heart back again. *{1} Or for thou didst turn their heart backward}*
- 38 Then the fire of Jehovah fell, and consumed the burnt-offering, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.
- 39 And when all the people saw it, they fell on their faces: and they said, Jehovah, he is God; Jehovah, he is God.
- 40 and Elijah said unto them, Take the prophets of Baal; let not one of them escape. And they took them; and Elijah brought them down to the brook Kishon, and slew them there.
- 41 ¶ And Elijah said unto Ahab, Get thee up, eat and drink; for there is the sound of abundance of rain.
- 42 So Ahab went up to eat and to drink. And Elijah went up to the top of Carmel; and he bowed himself down upon the earth, and put his face between his knees.
- 43 And he said to his servant, Go up now, look toward the sea. And he went up, and looked, and said, There is nothing. And he said, Go again seven times.
- 44 And it came to pass at the seventh time, that he said, Behold, there ariseth a cloud out of the sea, as small as a man's hand. And he said, Go up, say unto Ahab, *{1}* Make ready *thy chariot*, and get thee down, that the rain stop thee not. *{1} Or Yoke}*

45 And it came to pass in a little while, that the heavens grew black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain. And Ahab rode, and went to Jezreel:

46 and the hand of Jehovah was on Elijah; and he girded up his loins, and ran before Ahab to the entrance of Jezreel.

---

- 2- Elijah and the 450 prophets of Baal. vs. 18:19-40
  - a- He challenges the prophets of Baal on Mt. Carmel. vs. 19-25
  - b- He ridicules Baal. vs. 26-29
  - c- He calls fire from heaven. vs. 30-41
  - d- The prophets are destroyed and the drought ends. vs. 42-46
    - Israel confesses "Jehovah, He is God". vs 39
    - The first miracle working prophet since Moses.

**1 Kings 19**

- 1 ¶ And Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah had done, and withal how he had slain all the prophets with the sword.
- 2 Then Jezebel send a messenger unto Elijah, saying, So let the gods do to me, and more also, if I make not thy life as the life of one of them by to-morrow about this time.
- 3 And when he saw that, he arose, and went for his life, and came to Beer-sheba, which belongeth to Judah, and left his servant there.
- 4 But he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness, and came and sat down under a {1} juniper-tree: and he requested for himself that he might die, and said, It is enough; now, O Jehovah, take away my life; for I am not better than my fathers. {1} Or broom-tree}
- 5 And he lay down and slept under a juniper-tree; and, behold, an angel touched him, and said unto him, Arise and eat.
- 6 And he looked, and, behold, there was at his head a cake baken on the {1} coals, and a cruse of water. And he did eat and drink, and laid him down again. {1} Or hot stones }
- 7 And the angel of Jehovah came again the second time, and touched him, and said, Arise and eat, because the journey is too great for thee.
- 8 And he arose, and did eat and drink, and went in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights unto Horeb the mount of God.
- 9 ¶ And he came thither unto a cave, and lodged there; and, behold, the word of Jehovah came to him, and he said unto him, What doest thou here, Elijah?
- 10 And he said, I have been very jealous for Jehovah, the God of hosts; for the children of Israel have forsaken thy covenant, thrown down thine altars, and slain thy prophets with the sword: and I, even I only, am left; and they seek my life, to take it away.
- 11 And he said, Go forth, and stand upon the mount before Jehovah. And, behold, Jehovah passed by, and a great and strong wind rent the mountains, and brake in pieces the rocks before Jehovah; but Jehovah was not in the wind: and after the wind an earthquake; but Jehovah was not in the earthquake:
- 12 and after the earthquake a fire; but Jehovah was not in the fire: and after the fire {1} a still small voice. {1} Heb a sound of gentle stillness}
- 13 And it was so, when Elijah heard it, that he wrapped his face in his mantle, and went out, and stood in the entrance of the cave. And, behold, there came a voice unto him, and said, What doest thou here, Elijah?
- 14 And he said, I have been very jealous for Jehovah, the God of hosts; for the children of Israel have forsaken thy covenant, thrown down thine altars, and slain thy prophets with the sword; and I, even I only, am left; and they seek my life, to take it away.
- 15 And Jehovah said unto him, Go, return on thy way {1} to the wilderness of Damascus: and when thou comest, thou shalt anoint Hazael to be king over Syria; {1} Or by the wilderness to}
- 16 and Jehu the son of Nimshi shalt thou anoint to be king over Israel; and Elisha the son of Shaphat of Abel-meholah shalt thou anoint to be prophet in thy room.
- 17 And it shall come to pass, that him that escapeth from the sword of Hazael shall Jehu slay; and him that escapeth from the sword of Jehu shall Elisha slay.
- 18 Yet will I leave *me* seven thousand in Israel, all the knees which have not bowed unto Baal, and every mouth which hath not kissed him.
- 19 ¶ So he departed thence, and found Elisha the son of Shaphat, who was plowing, with twelve yoke of oxen before him, and he with the twelfth: and Elijah passed over unto him, and cast his mantle upon him.
- 20 And he left the oxen, and ran after Elijah, and said, Let me, I pray thee, kiss my father and my mother, and then I will follow thee. And he said unto him, Go back again; for what have I done to thee?
- 21 And he returned from following him, and took the yoke of oxen, and slew them, and {1} boiled their flesh with the instruments of the oxen, and gave unto the people, and they did eat. Then he arose, and went after Elijah, and ministered unto him. {1} Or roasted}



3- Elijah flees from Jezebel.

(19.)

- a- Under a juniper tree at Beer-shebah. vs. 1-7
- b- On Mt. Horeb the Lord speaks to him. See Figure 01. vs. 8-14
- c- The Lord's three-fold commission for Elijah. vs. 15-18
  - 1) Anoint Hazeel king of Syria.
  - 2) Anoint Jehu king of Israel.
  - 3) Anoint Elisha as Prophet, before you die.  
He also was given instruction on destroying Baal worship.
- d- The call of Elisha. vs. 19-21

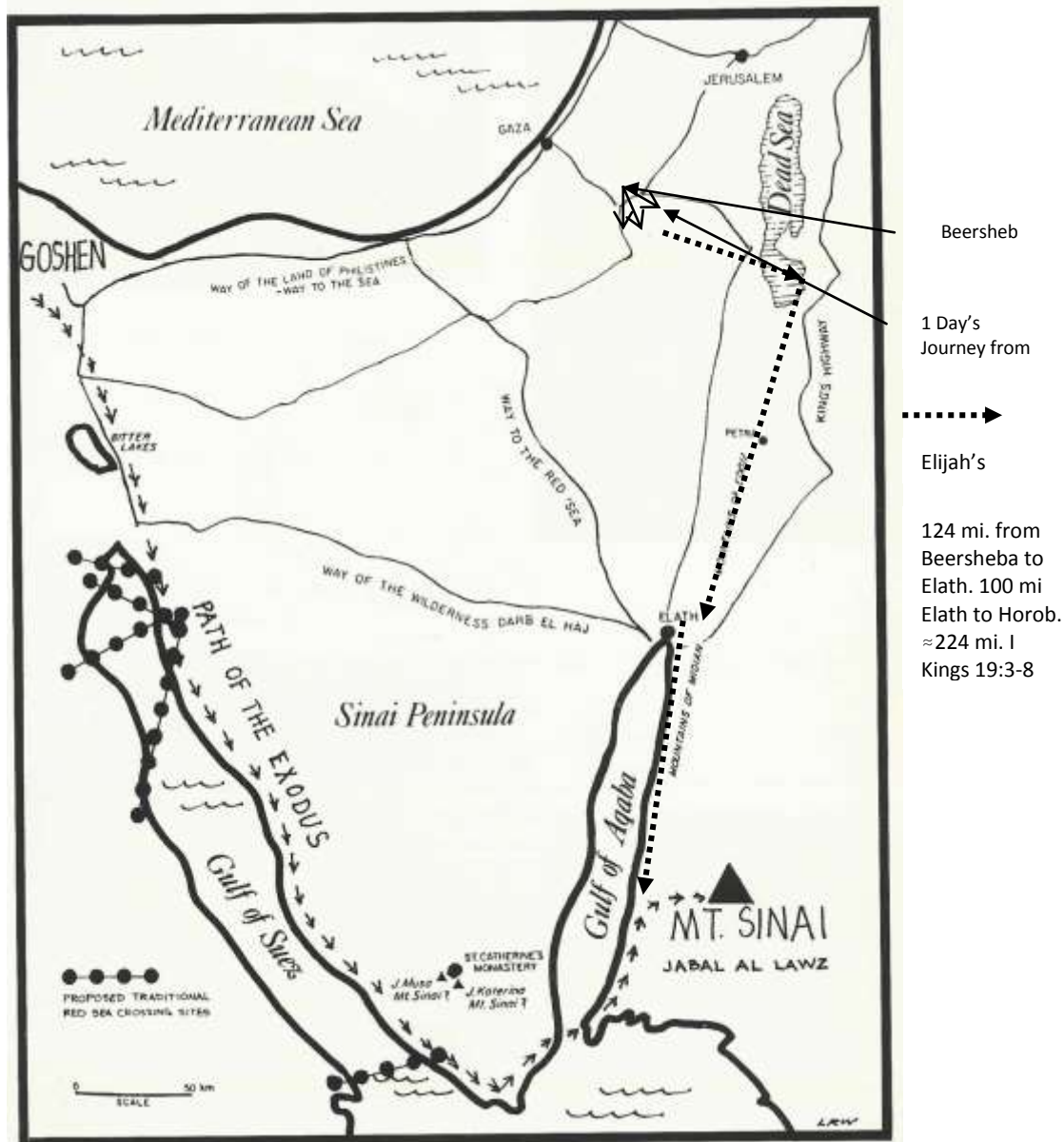


Figure 01. The Route Of The Exodus and Elijah's Journey To Jabal Al Lawz –Mt. Horeb.

## 1 Kings 20

- 1 ¶ And Ben-hadad the king of Syria gathered all his host together; and there were thirty and two kings with him, and horses and chariots: and he went up and besieged Samaria, and fought against it.
- 2 And he sent messengers to Ahab king of Israel, into the city, and said unto him, Thus saith Ben-hadad,
- 3 Thy silver and thy gold is mine; thy wives also and thy children, even the goodliest, are mine.
- 4 And the king of Israel answered and said, It is according to thy saying, my lord, O king; I am thine, and all that I have.
- 5 And the messengers came again, and said, Thus speaketh Ben-hadad, saying, I sent indeed unto thee, saying, Thou shalt deliver me thy silver, and thy gold, and thy wives, and thy children;
- 6 but I will send my servants unto thee to-morrow about this time, and they shall search thy house, and the houses of thy servants; and it shall be, that *{1}* whatsoever is pleasant in thine eyes, they shall put it in their hand, and take it away. *{1}* Heb all the desire of thine eyes}
- 7 Then the king of Israel called all the elders of the land, and said, Mark, I pray you, and see how this man seeketh mischief: for he sent unto me for my wives, and for my children, and for my silver, and for my gold; and I denied him not.
- 8 And all the elders and all the people said unto him, Hearken thou not, neither consent.
- 9 Wherefore he said unto the messengers of Ben-hadad, Tell my lord the king, All that thou didst send for to thy servant at the first I will do; but this thing I may not do. And the messengers departed, and brought him word again.
- 10 And Ben-hadad sent unto him, and said, The gods do so unto me, and more also, if the dust of Samaria shall suffice for handfuls for all the people that *{1}* follow me. *{1}* Heb are at my feet}
- 11 And the king of Israel answered and said, Tell him, Let not him that girdeth on *his armor* boast himself as he that putteth it off.
- 12 ¶ And it came to pass, when *Ben-hadad* heard this message, as he was drinking, he and the kings, in the *{1}* pavilions, that he said unto his servants, *{2}* Set yourselves in array. And they set themselves in array against the city. *{1}* Or huts 2) Or Place the engines. And they placed the engines}
- 13 And, behold, a prophet came near unto Ahab king of Israel, and said, Thus saith Jehovah, Hast thou seen all this great multitude? behold, I will deliver it into thy hand this day; and thou shalt know that I am Jehovah.
- 14 And Ahab said, By whom? And he said, Thus saith Jehovah, By the *{1}* young men of the princes of the provinces. Then he said, Who shall *{2}* begin the battle? And he answered, Thou. *{1}* Or servants 2) Heb bind}
- 15 Then he mustered the young men of the princes of the provinces, and they were two hundred and thirty-two: and after them he mustered all the people, even all the children of Israel, being seven thousand.
- 16 And they went out at noon. But Ben-hadad was drinking himself drunk in the *{1}* pavilions, he and the kings, the thirty and two kings that helped him. *{1}* Or huts}
- 17 And the young men of the princes of the provinces went out first; and Ben-hadad sent out, and they told him, saying, There are men come out from Samaria.
- 18 And he said, Whether they are come out for peace, take them alive, or whether they are come out for war, take them alive.
- 19 So these went out of the city, the young men of the princes of the provinces, and the army which followed them.
- 20 And they slew every one his man; and the Syrians fled, and Israel pursued them: and Ben-hadad the king of Syria escaped *{1}* on a horse with horsemen. *{1}* Or with horse and horsemen}
- 21 And the king of Israel went out, and smote the horses and chariots, and slew the Syrians with a great slaughter.
- 22 ¶ And the prophet came near to the king of Israel, and said unto him, Go, strengthen thyself, and mark, and see what thou doest; for at the return of the year the king of Syria will come up against thee.

- 23 And the servants of the king of Syria said unto him, Their god is a god of the hills; therefore they were stronger than we: but let us fight against them in the plain, and surely we shall be stronger than they.
- 24 And do this thing: take the kings away, every man out of his place, and put *{1}* captains in their room; *{1}* *Or governors; See 1 Ki 10:15}*
- 25 and number thee an army, like the army that thou hast lost, horse for horse, and chariot for chariot; and we will fight against them in the plain, and surely we shall be stronger than they. And he hearkened unto their voice, and did so.
- 26 And it came to pass at the return of the year, that Ben-hadad mustered the Syrians, and went up to Aphek, to fight against Israel.
- 27 And the children of Israel were mustered, and were victualled, and went against them: and the children of Israel encamped before them like two little flocks of kids; but the Syrians filled the country.
- 28 And *{1}* a man of God came near and spake unto the king of Israel, and said, Thus saith Jehovah, Because the Syrians have said, Jehovah is a god of the hills, but he is not a god of the valleys; therefore will I deliver all this great multitude into thy hand, and ye shall know that I am Jehovah. *{1}* *Or the}*
- 29 And they encamped one over against the other seven days. And so it was, that in the seventh day the battle was joined; and the children of Israel slew of the Syrians a hundred thousand footmen in one day.
- 30 But the rest fled to Aphek, into the city; and the wall fell upon twenty and seven thousand men that were left. And Ben-hadad fled, and came into the city, *{1}* into an inner chamber. *{1}* *Or from chamber to chamber}*
- 31 ¶ And his servants said unto him, Behold now, we have heard that the kings of the house of Israel are merciful kings: let us, we pray thee, put sackcloth on our loins, and ropes upon our heads, and go out to the king of Israel: peradventure he will save thy life.
- 32 So they girded sackcloth on their loins, and *put* ropes on their heads, and came to the king of Israel, and said, Thy servant Ben-hadad saith, I pray thee, let me live. And he said, Is he yet alive? he is my brother.
- 33 Now the men *{1}* observed diligently, and hasted *{2}* to catch whether it were *{3}* his mind; and they said, Thy brother Ben-hadad. Then he said, Go ye, bring him. Then Ben-hadad came forth to him; and he caused him to come up into the chariot. *{1}* *Or took it as an omen (Heb divined), and hasted 2) Another reading is to catch it from him 3) Heb from him}*
- 34 And *Ben-hadad* said unto him, The cities which my father took from thy father I will restore; and thou shalt make streets for thee in Damascus, as my father made in Samaria. And I, *said Ahab*, will let thee go with this covenant. So he made a covenant with him, and let him go.
- 35 And a certain man of the sons of the prophets said unto his fellow by the word of Jehovah, Smite me, I pray thee. And the man refused to smite him.
- 36 Then said he unto him, Because thou hast not obeyed the voice of Jehovah, behold, as soon as thou art departed from me, a lion shall slay thee. And as soon as he was departed from him, a lion found him, and slew him.
- 37 Then he found another man, and said, Smite me, I pray thee. And the man smote him, smiting and wounding him.
- 38 So the prophet departed, and waited for the king by the way, and disguised himself with his headband over his eyes.
- 39 And as the king passed by, he cried unto the king; and he said, Thy servant went out into the midst of the battle; and, behold, a man turned aside, and brought a man unto me, and said, Keep this man: if by any means he be missing, then shall thy life be for his life, or else thou shalt pay a talent of silver.
- 40 And as thy servant was busy here and there, he was gone. And the king of Israel said unto him, So shall thy judgment be; thyself hast decided it.
- 41 And he hasted, and took the headband away from his eyes; and the king of Israel discerned him that he was of the prophets.
- 42 And he said unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Because thou hast let go out of thy hand the man whom I had devoted to destruction, therefore thy life shall go for his life, and thy people for his people.
- 43 And the king of Israel went to his house heavy and displeased, and came to Samaria.

- 4- Ahab's campaign against Syria. (20.-22.)
  - a- His failure to destroy Ben-hadad. (20.)
    - 1) Two victories by the Lord. vs. 1-34
    - 2) Ahab's judgment for failure. vs. 35-45

**1 Kings 21**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after these things, that Naboth the Jezreelite had a vineyard, which was in Jezreel, hard by the palace of Ahab king of Samaria.
- 2 And Ahab spake unto Naboth, saying, Give me thy vineyard, that I may have it for a garden of herbs, because it is near unto my house; and I will give thee for it a better vineyard than it: or, if it seem good to thee, I will give thee the worth of it in money.
- 3 And Naboth said to Ahab, Jehovah forbid it me, that I should give the inheritance of my fathers unto thee.
- 4 And Ahab came into his house heavy and displeased because of the word which Naboth the Jezreelite had spoken to him; for he had said, I will not give thee the inheritance of my fathers. And he laid him down upon his bed, and turned away his face, and would eat no bread.
- 5 ¶ But Jezebel his wife came to him, and said unto him, Why is thy spirit so sad, that thou eatest no bread?
- 6 And he said unto her, Because I spake unto Naboth the Jezreelite, and said unto him, Give me thy vineyard for money; or else, if it please thee, I will give thee *another* vineyard for it: and he answered, I will not give thee my vineyard.
- 7 And Jezebel his wife said unto him, Dost thou now govern the kingdom of Israel? arise, and eat bread, and let thy heart be merry: I will give thee the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite.
- 8 So she wrote *{1}* letters in Ahab's name, and sealed them with his seal, and sent the letters unto the elders and to the nobles that were in his city, *and* that dwelt with Naboth. *{1}* Or a letter
- 9 And she wrote in the letters, saying, Proclaim a fast, and set Naboth *{1}* on high among the people: *{1}* Or at the head of
- 10 and set two men, base fellows, before him, and let them bear witness against him, saying, Thou didst *{1}* curse God and the king. And then carry him out, and stone him to death. *{1}* Or renounce
- 11 And the men of his city, even the elders and the nobles who dwelt in his city, did as Jezebel had sent unto them, according as it was written in the letters which she had sent unto them.
- 12 They proclaimed a fast, and set Naboth *{1}* on high among the people. *{1}* Or at the head of
- 13 And the two men, the base fellows, came in and sat before him: and the base fellows bare witness against him, even against Naboth, in the presence of the people, saying, Naboth did *{1}* curse God and the king. Then they carried him forth out of the city, and stoned him to death with stones. *{1}* Or renounce
- 14 Then they sent to Jezebel, saying, Naboth is stoned, and is dead.
- 15 And it came to pass, when Jezebel heard that Naboth was stoned, and was dead, that Jezebel said to Ahab, Arise, take possession of the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, which he refused to give thee for money; for Naboth is not alive, but dead.
- 16 And it came to pass, when Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, that Ahab rose up to go down to the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, to take possession of it.
- 17 ¶ And the word of Jehovah came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,
- 18 Arise, go down to meet Ahab king of Israel, who dwelleth in Samaria: behold, he is in the vineyard of Naboth, whither he is gone down to take possession of it.
- 19 And thou shalt speak unto him, saying, Thus saith Jehovah, Hast thou killed and also taken possession? And thou shalt speak unto him, saying, Thus saith Jehovah, In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth shall dogs lick thy blood, even thine.
- 20 And Ahab said to Elijah, Hast thou found me, O mine enemy? And he answered, I have found thee, because thou hast sold thyself to do that which is evil in the sight of Jehovah.
- 21 Behold, I will bring evil upon thee, and will utterly sweep thee away and will cut off from Ahab every man-child, and him that is shut up and him that is left at large in Israel:
- 22 and I will make thy house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah for the provocation wherewith thou hast provoked me to anger, and hast made Israel to sin.
- 23 And of Jezebel also spake Jehovah, saying, The dogs shall eat Jezebel by the rampart of Jezreel.
- 24 Him that dieth of Ahab in the city the dogs shall eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the birds of the heavens eat.
- 25 (But there was none like unto Ahab, who did sell himself to do that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, whom Jezebel his wife stirred up.

- 26 And he did very abominably in following idols, according to all that the Amorites did, whom Jehovah cast out before the children of Israel.)
- 27 And it came to pass, when Ahab heard those words, that he rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his flesh, and fasted, and lay in sackcloth, and went softly.
- 28 And the word of Jehovah came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,
- 29 Seest thou how Ahab humbleth himself before me? because he humbleth himself before me, I will not bring the evil in his days; but in his son's days will I bring the evil upon his house.
- 

- b- Jezebel's criminal action against Naboth. (21.)
- 1) The murder and stealing. vs. 1-16  
Naboth refuses to sell his land to Ahab.
- 2) Elijah's judgment. vs. 17-26
- 3) Ahab's temporary repentance. vs. 27-29

**1 Kings 22**

- 1 ¶ And they continued three years without war between Syria and Israel.
- 2 And it came to pass in the third year, that Jehoshaphat the king of Judah came down to the king of Israel.
- 3 And the king of Israel said unto his servants, Know ye that Ramoth-gilead is ours, and we *{1}* are still, and take it not out of the hand of the king of Syria? *{1}* Or keep silence}
- 4 And he said unto Jehoshaphat, Wilt thou go with me to battle to Ramoth-gilead? And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, I am as thou art, my people as thy people, my horses as thy horses.
- 5 And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel, Inquire *{1}* first, I pray thee, for the word of Jehovah. *{1}* Heb today}
- 6 Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, about four hundred men, and said unto them, Shall I go against Ramoth-gilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And they said, Go up; for the Lord will deliver it into the hand of the king.
- 7 But Jehoshaphat said, Is there not here a prophet of Jehovah besides, that we may inquire of him?
- 8 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, there is yet one man by whom we may inquire of Jehovah, Micaiah the son of Imlah: but I hate him; for he doth not prophesy good concerning me, but evil. And Jehoshaphat said, Let not the king say so.
- 9 Then the king of Israel called an *{1}* officer, and said, Fetch quickly Micaiah the son of Imlah. *{1}* Or eunuch}
- 10 Now the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting each on his throne, arrayed in their robes, in *{1}* an open place at the entrance of the gate of Samaria; and all the prophets were prophesying before them. *{1}* Heb a threshing-floor}
- 11 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah made him horns of iron, and said, Thus saith Jehovah, With these shalt thou push the Syrians, until they be consumed.
- 12 And all the prophets prophesied so, saying, Go up to Ramoth-gilead, and prosper; for Jehovah will deliver it into the hand of the king.
- 13 And the messenger that went to call Micaiah spake unto him, saying, Behold now, the words of the prophets declare good unto the king with one mouth: let thy word, I pray thee, be like the word of one of them, and speak thou good.
- 14 And Micaiah said, As Jehovah liveth, what Jehovah saith unto me, that will I speak.
- 15 ¶ And when he was come to the king, the king said unto him, Micaiah, shall we go to Ramoth-gilead to battle, or shall we forbear? And he answered him, Go up and prosper; and Jehovah will deliver it into the hand of the king.
- 16 And the king said unto him, How many times shall I adjure thee that thou speak unto me nothing but the truth in the name of Jehovah?
- 17 And he said, I saw all Israel scattered upon the mountains, as sheep that have no shepherd: and Jehovah said, These have no master; let them return every man to his house in peace.
- 18 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, Did I not tell thee that he would not prophesy good concerning me, but evil?
- 19 And Micaiah said, Therefore hear thou the word of Jehovah: I saw Jehovah sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven standing by him on his right hand and on his left.
- 20 And Jehovah said, Who shall *{1}* entice Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead? And one said on this manner; and another said on that manner. *{1}* Or deceive }
- 21 And there came forth *{1}* a spirit, and stood before Jehovah, and said, I will entice him. *{1}* Heb the spirit}
- 22 And Jehovah said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt entice him, and shalt prevail also: go forth, and do so.
- 23 Now therefore, behold, Jehovah hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these thy prophets; and Jehovah hath spoken evil concerning thee.
- 24 Then Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah came near, and smote Micaiah on the cheek, and said, Which way went the Spirit of Jehovah from me to speak unto thee?
- 25 And Micaiah said, Behold, thou shalt see on that day, when thou shalt go *{1}* into an inner chamber to hide thyself. *{1}* Or from chamber to chamber}
- 26 And the king of Israel said, Take Micaiah, and carry him back unto Amon the governor of the city, and to Joash the king's son;
- 27 and say, Thus saith the king, Put this fellow in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I come in peace.
- 28 And Micaiah said, If thou return at all in peace, Jehovah hath not spoken by me. And he said, Hear, ye peoples, all of you.
- 29 ¶ So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramoth-gilead.
- 30 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, I will disguise myself, and go into the battle; but put thou on thy robes. And the king of Israel disguised himself, and went into the battle.
- 31 Now the king of Syria had commanded the thirty and two captains of his chariots, saying, Fight neither with



- small nor great, save only with the king of Israel.
- 32 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, that they said, Surely it is the king of Israel; and they turned aside to fight against him: and Jehoshaphat cried out.
- 33 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw that it was not the king of Israel, that they turned back from pursuing him.
- 34 And a certain man drew his bow *{1}* at a venture, and smote the king of Israel between *{2}* the joints of the armor: wherefore he said unto the driver of his chariot, Turn thy hand, and carry me out of the host; for I am sore wounded. *{1}* *Heb in his simplicity* 2) *Or the lower armor and the breastplate* }
- 35 And the battle increased that day: and the king was stayed up in his chariot against the Syrians, and died at even; and the blood ran out of the wound into the bottom of the chariot.
- 36 And there went a cry throughout the host about the going down of the sun, saying, Every man to his city, and every man to his country.
- 37 So the king died, and was brought to Samaria; and they buried the king in Samaria.
- 38 And they washed the chariot by the pool of Samaria; and the dogs licked up his blood *{1}* (now the harlots washed themselves *there*); according unto the word of Jehovah which he spake. *{1}* *Or and they washed the armor* }
- 39 Now the rest of the acts of Ahab, and all that he did, and the ivory house which he built, and all the cities that he built, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 40 So Ahab slept with his fathers; and Ahaziah his son reigned in his stead.
- 41 ¶ And Jehoshaphat the son of Asa began to reign over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab king of Israel.
- 42 Jehoshaphat was thirty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Azubah the daughter of Shilhi.
- 43 And he walked in all the way of Asa his father; He turned not aside from it, doing that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah: howbeit the high places were not taken away; the people still sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places.
- 44 And Jehoshaphat made peace with the king of Israel.
- 45 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, and his might that he showed, and how he warred, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 46 And the remnant of the sodomites, that remained in the days of his father Asa, he put away out of the land.
- 47 And there was no king in Edom: a deputy was king.
- 48 Jehoshaphat made ships of Tarshish to go to Ophir for gold: but they went not; for the ships were broken at Ezion-geber.
- 49 Then said Ahaziah the son of Ahab unto Jehoshaphat, Let my servants go with thy servants in the ships. But Jehoshaphat would not.
- 50 And Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his father; And Jehoram his son reigned in his stead.
- 51 Ahaziah the son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria in the seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and he reigned two years over Israel.
- 52 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and walked in the way of his father, and in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, *{1}* wherein he made Israel to sin. *{1}* *Or who made* }
- 53 And he served Baal, and worshipped him, and provoked to anger Jehovah, the God of Israel, according to all that his father had done.

- 
- c- Israel units with Judah against Syria. (22.)
- 1) Jehoshaphat and Ahab ally. vs. 1-4
- 2) Micaiah's prediction of defeat. vs. 5-28
- 3) Ahab is slain in battle. vs. 29-40.
- 5- The reign of Jehoshaphat (over Judah) and Ahaziah (Israel). vs. 41-53
- a- Jehoshaphat reigns 25 years over Judah. vs. 41-50
- b- Ahaziah reigns two years over Israel. vs. 51-53

**2 Kings 1**

- 1 ¶ And Moab rebelled against Israel after the death of Ahab.
- 2 And Ahaziah fell down through the lattice in his upper chamber that was in Samaria, and was sick: and he sent messengers, and said unto them, Go, inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron, whether I shall recover of this sickness.
- 3 But the angel of Jehovah said to Elijah the Tishbite, Arise, go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria, and say unto them, Is it because there is no God in Israel, that ye go to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron?
- 4 Now therefore thus saith Jehovah, Thou shalt not come down from the bed whither thou art gone up, but shalt surely die. And Elijah departed.
- 5 And the messengers returned unto him, and he said unto them, Why is it that ye are returned?
- 6 And they said unto him, There came up a man to meet us, and said unto us, Go, turn again unto the king that sent you, and say unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Is it because there is no God in Israel, that thou sendest to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron? therefore thou shalt not come down from the bed whither thou art gone up, but shalt surely die.
- 7 And he said unto them, What manner of man was he that came up to meet you, and told you these words?
- 8 And they answered him, He was a *{1}* hairy man, and girt with a girdle of leather about his loins. And he said, It is Elijah the Tishbite. *{1}* Or a man with a garment of hair
- 9 ¶ Then *the king* sent unto him a captain of fifty with his fifty. And he went up to him: and, behold, he was *{1}* sitting on the top of the hill. And he spake unto him, O man of God, the king hath said, Come down. *{1}* Or dwelling
- 10 And Elijah answered and said to the captain of fifty, If I be a man of God, let fire come down from heaven, and consume thee and thy fifty. And there came down fire from heaven, and consumed him and his fifty.
- 11 And again he sent unto him another captain of fifty and his fifty. And he answered and said unto him, O man of God, thus hath the king said, Come down quickly.
- 12 And Elijah answered and said unto them, If I be a man of God, let fire come down from heaven, and consume thee and thy fifty. And the fire of God came down from heaven, and consumed him and his fifty.
- 13 And again he sent the captain of a third fifty with his fifty. And the third captain of fifty went up, and came and fell on his knees before Elijah, and besought him, and said unto him, O man of God, I pray thee, let my life, and the life of these fifty thy servants, be precious in thy sight.
- 14 Behold, there came fire down from heaven, and consumed the two former captains of fifty with their fifties; but now let my life be precious in thy sight.
- 15 And the angel of Jehovah said unto Elijah, Go down with him: be not afraid of him. And he arose, and went down with him unto the king.
- 16 And he said unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Forasmuch as thou hast sent messengers to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron, is it because there is no God in Israel to inquire of his word? therefore thou shalt not come down from the bed whither thou art gone up, but shalt surely die.
- 17 So he died according to the word of Jehovah which Elijah had spoken. And Jehoram began to reign in his stead in the second year of Jehoram the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah; because he had no son.
- 18 Now the rest of the acts of Ahaziah which he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?

C- Period of friendship continues.  
(Ministry of Elisha emphasized)

- 1- Elijah's judgment on Ahaziah. (1.)
  - a- Ahaziah seeks counsel through Baal-zebub. vs. 1-2
  - b- The Lord's judgment through Elijah. vs. 3-8
  - c- Elijah calls down fire from heaven on adversaries. vs. 9-16
  - d- Death of Ahaziah and reign of Jehoram. vs. 17-18

**2 Kings 2**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when Jehovah would take up Elijah<sup>a</sup> by a whirlwind into heaven, that Elijah went with Elisha from Gilgal.
- 2 And Elijah said unto Elisha, Tarry here, I pray thee; for Jehovah hath sent me as far as Beth-el. And Elisha said, As Jehovah liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee. So they went down to Beth-el.
- 3 And the sons of the prophets that were at Beth-el came forth to Elisha, and said unto him, Knowest thou that Jehovah will take away thy master from thy head to-day? And he said, Yea, I know it; hold ye your peace.
- 4 And Elijah said unto him, Elisha, tarry here, I pray thee; for Jehovah hath sent me to Jericho. And he said, As Jehovah liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee. So they came to Jericho.
- 5 And the sons of the prophets that were at Jericho came near to Elisha, and said unto him, Knowest thou that Jehovah will take away thy master from thy head to-day? And he answered, Yea, I know it; hold ye your peace.
- 6 And Elijah said unto him, Tarry here, I pray thee; for Jehovah hath sent me to the Jordan. And he said, As Jehovah liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee. And they two went on.
- 7 And fifty men of the sons of the prophets went, and stood over against them afar off: and they two stood by the Jordan.
- 8 And Elijah took his mantle, and wrapped it together, and smote the waters, and they were divided hither and thither, so that they two went over on dry ground.
- 9 ¶ And it came to pass, *{1}* when they were gone over, that Elijah said unto Elisha, Ask what I shall do for thee, before I am taken from thee. And Elisha said, I pray thee, let *{2}* a double portion of thy spirit be upon me. *{1}* Or as they went *2}* That is, the portion of the first-born; See De 21:17}
- 10 And he said, Thou hast asked a hard thing: *nevertheless*, if thou see me when I am taken from thee, it shall be so unto thee; but if not, it shall not be so.
- 11 And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, *there appeared* *{1}* a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, which parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven. *{1}* Or chariots}
- 12 And Elisha saw it, and he cried, My father, my father, the *{1}* chariots of Israel and the horsemen thereof! And he saw him no more: and he took hold of his own clothes, and rent them in two pieces. *{1}* Or chariot}
- 13 ¶ He took up also the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and went back, and stood by the bank of the Jordan.
- 14 And he took the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and smote the waters, and said, Where is Jehovah, *{1}* the God of Elijah? and when he also had smitten the waters, they were divided hither and thither; and Elisha went over. *{1}* Or the God of Elijah, even he? and when he had smitten etc}
- 15 And when the sons of the prophets that were at Jericho over against him saw him, they said, The spirit of Elijah doth rest on Elisha. And they came to meet him, and bowed themselves to the ground before him.
- 16 And they said unto him, Behold now, there are with thy servants fifty strong men; let them go, we pray thee, and seek thy master, lest the Spirit of Jehovah hath taken him up, and cast him upon some mountain, or into some valley. And he said, Ye shall not send.
- 17 And when they urged him till he was ashamed, he said, Send. They sent therefore fifty men; and they sought three days, but found him not.
- 18 And they came back to him, while he tarried at Jericho; and he said unto them, Did I not say unto you, Go not?
- 19 ¶ And the men of the city said unto Elisha, Behold, we pray thee, the situation of this city is pleasant, as my lord seeth: but the water is bad, and the land *{1}* miscarrieth. *{1}* Or casteth its fruit}
- 20 And he said, Bring me a new cruse, and put salt therein. And they brought it to him.
- 21 And he went forth unto the spring of the waters, and cast salt therein, and said, Thus saith Jehovah, I have healed these waters; there shall not be from thence any more death or *{1}* miscarrying. *{1}* Or casting

<sup>a</sup> {He may be one of the two Witnesses of Re 11:3 And I will give unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred and threescore days, clothed in sackcloth. NEC }

- 22 So the waters were healed unto this day, according to the word of Elisha which he spake.  
23 And he went up from thence unto Beth-el; and as he was going up by the way, there came forth young lads out of the city, and mocked him, and said unto him, Go up, thou baldhead; go up, thou baldhead.  
24 And he looked behind him and saw them, and cursed them in the name of Jehovah. And there came forth two she-bears out of the wood, and tare forty and two lads of them.  
25 And he went from thence to mount Carmel, and from thence he returned to Samaria.
- 

2- Elijah's translation and Elisha's faith. (2.)  
(Ministry of Elisha emphasized.)

- a- Elisha's discipleship tested. vs. 1-6  
b- His request for a double portion. vs. 9-10  
c- Elijah is translated by a chariot of fire. vs. 11-12  
d- Elisha's initial powers. vs. 13-25  
    1) The Jordan is parted.  
    2) Waters of Jericho are healed.  
    3) Irreverent sons of Bethel are slain. vs. 23-25

**2 Kings 3**

- 1 ¶ Now Jehoram the son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and reigned twelve years.
- 2 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, but not like his father, and like his mother; for he put away the *{1}* pillar of Baal that his father had made. *{1} Or obelisk*
- 3 Nevertheless he cleaved unto the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin; he departed not therefrom.
- 4 Now Mesha king of Moab was a sheep-master; and he rendered unto the king of Israel *{1}* the wool of a hundred thousand lambs, and of a hundred thousand rams. *{1} Or a hundred thousand lambs, and a hundred thousand rams, with the wool*
- 5 But it came to pass, when Ahab was dead, that the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel.
- 6 ¶ And king Jehoram went out of Samaria at that time, and mustered all Israel.
- 7 And he went and sent to Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, saying, The king of Moab hath rebelled against me: wilt thou go with me against Moab to battle? And he said, I will go up: I am as thou art, my people as thy people, my horses as thy horses.
- 8 And he said, Which way shall we go up? And he answered, The way of the wilderness of Edom.
- 9 So the king of Israel went, and the king of Judah, and the king of Edom; and they made a circuit of seven days' journey: and there was no water for the host, nor for the beasts that followed them.
- 10 And the king of Israel said, Alas! for Jehovah hath called these three kings together to deliver them into the hand of Moab.
- 11 But Jehoshaphat said, Is there not here a prophet of Jehovah, that we may inquire of Jehovah by him? And one of the king of Israel's servants answered and said, Elisha the son of Shaphat is here, who poured water on the hands of Elijah.
- 12 And Jehoshaphat said, The word of Jehovah is with him. So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat and the king of Edom went down to him.
- 13 And Elisha said unto the king of Israel, What have I to do with thee? get thee to the prophets of thy father, and to the prophets of thy mother. And the king of Israel said unto him, Nay; for Jehovah hath called these three kings together to deliver them into the hand of Moab.
- 14 And Elisha said, As Jehovah of hosts liveth, before whom I stand, surely, were it not that I regard the presence of Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, I would not look toward thee, nor see thee.
- 15 But now bring me a minstrel. And it came to pass, when the minstrel played, that the hand of Jehovah came upon him.
- 16 And he said, Thus saith Jehovah, Make this valley full of trenches.
- 17 For thus saith Jehovah, Ye shall not see wind, neither shall ye see rain; yet that valley shall be filled with water, and ye shall drink, both ye and your cattle and your beasts.
- 18 And this is but a light thing in the sight of Jehovah: he will also deliver the Moabites into your hand.
- 19 And ye shall smite every fortified city, and every choice city, and shall fell every good tree, and stop all fountains of water, and mar every good piece of land with stones.
- 20 ¶ And it came to pass in the morning, about the time of offering the oblation, that, behold, there came water by the way of Edom, and the country was filled with water.
- 21 Now when all the Moabites heard that the kings were come up to fight against them, they *{1}* gathered themselves together, all that were able to *{2}* put on armor, and upward, and stood on the border. *{1} Or were called together 2) Heb gird themselves with a girdle*
- 22 And they rose up early in the morning, and the sun shone upon the water, and the Moabites saw the water over against them as red as blood:
- 23 and they said, This is blood; the kings *{1}* are surely destroyed, and they have smitten each man his fellow: now therefore, Moab, to the spoil. *{1} Or have surely fought together*
- 24 And when they came to the camp of Israel, the Israelites rose up and smote the Moabites, so that they fled before them; and they went forward *{1}* into the land smiting the Moabites. *{1} Heb into it*
- 25 And they beat down the cities; and on every good piece of land they cast every man his stone, and filled it; and they stopped all the fountains of water, and felled all the good trees, until in Kir-hareseth *only* they left the stones thereof; howbeit the slingers went about it, and smote it.
- 26 And when the king of Moab saw that the battle was too sore for him, he took with him seven hundred men that drew sword, to break through unto the king of Edom; but they could not.
- 27 Then he took his eldest son that should have reigned in his stead, and offered him for a burnt-offering

upon the wall. And {1} there was great wrath against Israel: and they departed from him, and returned to their own land. {1} Or there came great wrath upon Israel}

---

3- The ministry of Elisha. (3.-8.)

a- He counsels Jehoram and Jehoshaphat. (3.)

1) A new alliance against Moab, vs. 1-10

2) Elisha's prophecy of victory. vs. 11-20

**2 Kings 4**

- 1 ¶ Now there cried a certain woman of the wives of the sons of the prophets unto Elisha, saying, Thy servant my husband is dead; and thou knowest that thy servant did fear Jehovah: and the creditor is come to take unto him my two children to be bondmen.
- 2 And Elisha said unto her, What shall I do for thee? tell me; what hast thou in the house? And she said, Thy handmaid hath not anything in the house, save a pot of oil.
- 3 Then he said, Go, borrow thee vessels abroad of all thy neighbors, even empty vessels; borrow not a few.
- 4 And thou shalt go in, and shut the door upon thee and upon thy sons, and pour out into all those vessels; and thou shalt set aside that which is full.
- 5 So she went from him, and shut the door upon her and upon her sons; they brought *the vessels* to her, and she poured out.
- 6 And it came to pass, when the vessels were full, that she said unto her son, Bring me yet a vessel. And he said unto her, There is not a vessel more. And the oil stayed.
- 7 Then she came and told the man of God. And he said, Go, sell the oil, and pay thy debt, and live thou and thy sons of the rest.
- 8 ¶ And it fell on a day, that Elisha passed to Shunem, where was a great woman; and she constrained him to eat bread. And so it was, that as oft as he passed by, he turned in thither to eat bread.
- 9 And she said unto her husband, Behold now, I perceive that this is a holy man of God, that passeth by us continually.
- 10 Let us make, I pray thee, a little chamber *{1}* on the wall; and let us set for him there a bed, and a table, and a seat, and a candlestick: and it shall be, when he cometh to us, that he shall turn in thither. *{1} Or with walls}*
- 11 And it fell on a day, that he came thither, and he turned into the chamber and lay there.
- 12 And he said to Gehazi his servant, Call this Shunammite. And when he had called her, she stood before him.
- 13 And he said unto him, Say now unto her, Behold, thou hast *{1}* been careful for us with all this care; what is to be done for thee? wouldest thou be spoken for to the king, or to the captain of the host? And she answered, I dwell among mine own people. *{1} Or showed us all this reverence}*
- 14 And he said, What then is to be done for her? And Gehazi answered, Verily she hath no son, and her husband is old.
- 15 And he said, Call her. And when he had called her, she stood in the door.
- 16 And he said, At this season, when the time *{1}* cometh round, thou shalt embrace a son. And she said, Nay, my lord, thou man of God, do not lie unto thy handmaid. *{1} Heb liveth (or reviveth)}*
- 17 And the woman conceived, and bare a son at that season, when the time came round, as Elisha had said unto her.
- 18 ¶ And when the child was grown, it fell on a day, that he went out to his father to the reapers.
- 19 And he said unto his father, My head, my head. And he said to his servant, Carry him to his mother.
- 20 And when he had taken him, and brought him to his mother, he sat on her knees till noon, and then died.
- 21 And she went up and laid him on the bed of the man of God, and shut *the door* upon him, and went out.
- 22 And she called unto her husband, and said, Send me, I pray thee, one of the servants, and one of the asses, that I may run to the man of God, and come again.
- 23 And he said, Wherefore wilt thou go to him to-day? it is neither new moon nor sabbath. And she said, *{1}* It shall be well. *{1} Heb Peace}*
- 24 Then she saddled an ass, and said to her servant, Drive, and go forward; slacken me not the riding, except I bid thee.
- 25 So she went, and came unto the man of God to mount Carmel. And it came to pass, when the man of God saw her afar off, that he said to Gehazi his servant, Behold, yonder is the Shunammite:
- 26 run, I pray thee, now to meet her, and say unto her, Is it well with thee? is it well with thy husband? is it well with the child? And she answered, It is well.
- 27 And when she came to the man of God to the hill, she caught hold of his feet. And Gehazi came near to thrust her away; but the man of God said, Let her alone: for her soul is *{1}* vexed within her; and Jehovah hath hid it from me, and hath not told me. *{1} Heb bitter}*



- 28 Then she said, Did I desire a son of my lord? did I not say, Do not deceive me?
- 29 Then he said to Gehazi, Gird up thy loins, and take my staff in thy hand, and go thy way: if thou meet any man, salute him not; and if any salute thee, answer him not again: and lay my staff upon the face of the child.
- 30 And the mother of the child said, As Jehovah liveth, and as thy soul liveth, I will not leave thee. And he arose, and followed her.
- 31 And Gehazi passed on before them, and laid the staff upon the face of the child; but there was neither voice, nor *{1}* hearing. Wherefore he returned to meet him, and told him, saying, The child is not awaked. *{1}* *Heb attention*}
- 32 And when Elisha was come into the house, behold, the child was dead, and laid upon his bed.
- 33 He went in therefore, and shut the door upon them twain, and prayed unto Jehovah.
- 34 And he went up, and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands: and he *{1}* stretched himself upon him; and the flesh of the child waxed warm. *{1}* *Or bowed himself*;
- 35 Then he returned, and walked in the house once to and fro; and went up, and *{1}* stretched himself upon him: *{2}* and the child sneezed seven times, and the child opened his eyes. *{1}* *Or bowed himself 2) Or and embraced the child*}
- 36 And he called Gehazi, and said, Call this Shunammite. So he called her. And when she was come in unto him, he said, Take up thy son.
- 37 Then she went in, and fell at his feet, and bowed herself to the ground; and she took up her son, and went out.
- 38 ¶ And Elisha came again to Gilgal. And there was a dearth in the land; and the sons of the prophets were sitting before him; and he said unto his servant, Set on the great pot, and boil pottage for the sons of the prophets.
- 39 And one went out into the field to gather herbs, and found a wild vine, and gathered thereof wild gourds his lap full, and came and shred them into the pot of pottage; for they knew them not.
- 40 So they poured out for the men to eat. And it came to pass, as they were eating of the pottage, that they cried out, and said, O man of God, there is death in the pot. And they could not eat thereof.
- 41 But he said, Then bring meal. And he cast it into the pot; and he said, Pour out for the people, that they may eat. And there was no *{1}* harm in the pot. *{1}* *Heb evil thing }*
- 42 And there came a man from Baal-shalishah, and brought the man of God bread of the first-fruits, twenty loaves of barley, and fresh ears of grain in *{1}* his sack. And he said, Give unto the people, that they may eat. *{1}* *Or the husk thereof*;
- 43 And his *{1}* servant said, What, should I set this before a hundred men? But he said, Give the people, that they may eat; for thus saith Jehovah, They shall eat, and shall leave thereof. *{1}* *Or minister*}
- 44 So he set it before them, and they did eat, and left thereof, according to the word of Jehovah.

- b- He shows mercy to individuals. (4.)
- 1) He gives economic aid to seminary student's wife. vs. 1-7
  - 2) Son of a Shunamite is raised. vs. 8-37
  - 3) Poisonous pottage at Seminary at Gilgal purified. vs. 38-41
  - 4) He feeds 100 men by miracle. vs. 42-44

**2 Kings 5**

- 1 ¶ Now Naaman, captain of the host of the king of Syria, was a great man {1} with his master, and honorable, because by him Jehovah had given {2} victory unto Syria: he was also a mighty man of valor, *but he was a leper.* {1} *Heb before* 2) *Heb salvation*
- 2 And the Syrians had gone out in bands, and had brought away captive out of the land of Israel a little maiden; and she {1} waited on Naaman's wife. {1} *Heb was before* }
- 3 And she said unto her mistress, Would that my lord were {1} with the prophet that is in Samaria! then would he recover him of his leprosy. {1} *Heb before*}
- 4 And {1} one went in, and told his lord, saying, Thus and thus said the maiden that is of the land of Israel. {1} *Or he*}
- 5 And the king of Syria said, Go now, and I will send a letter unto the king of Israel. And he departed, and took with him ten talents of silver, and six thousand {1} *pieces* of gold, and ten changes of raiment. {1} *Or, shekels*}
- 6 And he brought the letter to the king of Israel, saying, And now when this letter is come unto thee, behold, I have sent Naaman my servant to thee, that thou mayest recover him of his leprosy.
- 7 And it came to pass, when the king of Israel had read the letter, that he rent his clothes, and said, Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man doth send unto me to recover a man of his leprosy? but consider, I pray you, and see how he seeketh {1} a quarrel against me. {1} *Or an occasion*}
- 8 And it was so, when Elisha the man of God heard that the king of Israel had rent his clothes, that he sent to the king, saying, Wherefore hast thou rent thy clothes? let him come now to me, and he shall know that there is a prophet in Israel.
- 9 ¶ So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariots, and stood at the door of the house of Elisha.
- 10 And Elisha sent a messenger unto him, saying, Go and wash in the Jordan seven times, and thy flesh shall come again to thee, and {1} thou shalt be clean. {1} *Heb be thou clean*}
- 11 But Naaman was wroth, and went away, and said, Behold, I thought, He will surely come out to me, and stand, and call on the name of Jehovah his God, and wave his hand over the place, and recover the leper.
- 12 Are not {1} Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel? may I not wash in them, and be clean? So he turned and went away in a rage. {1} *Another reading is Amanah; See So 4:8*}
- 13 And his servants came near, and spake unto him, and said, My father, if the prophet had bid thee do some great thing, wouldest thou not have done it? how much rather then, when he saith to thee, Wash, and be clean?
- 14 Then went he down, and dipped *himself* seven times in the Jordan, according to the saying of the man of God; and his flesh came again like unto the flesh of a little child, and he was clean.
- 15 ¶ And he returned to the man of God, he and all his company, and came, and stood before him; and he said, Behold now, I know that there is no God in all the earth, but in Israel: now therefore, I pray thee, take a {1} present of thy servant. {1} *Heb blessing*}
- 16 But he said, As Jehovah liveth, before whom I stand, I will receive none. And he urged him to take it; but he refused.
- 17 And Naaman said, If not, yet, I pray thee, let there be given to thy servant two mules' burden of earth; for thy servant will henceforth offer neither burnt-offering nor sacrifice unto other gods, but unto Jehovah.
- 18 In this thing Jehovah pardon thy servant: when my master goeth into the house of Rimmon to worship there, and he leaneth on my hand, and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, when I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, Jehovah pardon thy servant in this thing.
- 19 And he said unto him, Go in peace. So he departed from him {1} a little way. {1} *Or some distance*}
- 20 ¶ But Gehazi the servant of Elisha the man of God, said, Behold, my master hath spared this Naaman the Syrian, in not receiving at his hands that which he brought: as Jehovah liveth, I will run after him, and take somewhat of him.
- 21 So Gehazi followed after Naaman. And when Naaman saw one running after him, he alighted from the chariot to meet him, and said, Is all well?
- 22 And he said, All is well. My master hath sent me, saying, Behold, even now there are come to me from the hill-country of Ephraim two young men of the sons of the prophets; give them, I pray thee, a talent of silver, and two changes of raiment.
- 23 And Naaman said, Be pleased to take two talents. And he urged him, and bound two talents of silver in

- two bags, with two changes of raiment, and laid them upon two of his servants; and they bare them before him.
- 24 And when he came to the *{1}* hill, he took them from their hand, and bestowed them in the house; and he let the men go, and they departed. *{1}* *Heb Ophel*
- 25 But he went in, and stood before his master. And Elisha said unto him, Whence comest thou, Gehazi? And he said, Thy servant went no whither.
- 26 And he said unto him, *{1}* Went not my heart *with thee*, when the man turned from his chariot to meet thee? Is it a time to receive money, and to receive garments, and oliveyards and vineyards, and sheep and oxen, and men-servants and maid-servants? *{1}* *Or My heart went not from me, when etc*
- 27 The leprosy therefore of Naaman shall cleave unto thee, and unto thy seed for ever. And he went out from his presence a leper *as white* as snow.
- 

- c- He causes Naaman to be healed. (5.)
- 1) The healing by faith and obedience. vs. 1-14
- 2) Naaman's faith in Jehovah. vs. 15-19
- 3) The greed and Leprosy of Gehazi. vs. 20-27

**2 Kings 6**

- 1 ¶ And the sons of the prophets said unto Elisha, Behold now, the place where we dwell before thee is too strait for us.
- 2 Let us go, we pray thee, unto the Jordan, and take thence every man a beam, and let us make us a place there, where we may dwell. And he answered, Go ye.
- 3 And one said, Be pleased, I pray thee, to go with thy servants. And he answered, I will go.
- 4 So he went with them. And when they came to the Jordan, they cut down wood.
- 5 But as one was felling a beam, the axe-head fell into the water; and he cried, and said, Alas, my master! for it was borrowed.
- 6 And the man of God said, Where fell it? And he showed him the place. And he cut down a stick, and cast it in thither, and *{1}* made the iron to swim. *{1}* Or the iron did swim
- 7 And he said, Take it up to thee. So he put out his hand, and took it.
- 8 ¶ Now the king of Syria was warring against Israel; and he took counsel with his servants, saying, In such and such a place shall be my *{1}* camp. *{1}* Or encamping
- 9 And the man of God sent unto the king of Israel, saying, Beware that thou pass not such a place; for thither the Syrians are coming down.
- 10 And the king of Israel sent to the place which the man of God told him and warned him of; and he saved himself there, not once nor twice.
- 11 And the heart of the king of Syria was sore troubled for this thing; and he called his servants, and said unto them, Will ye not show me which of us is for the king of Israel?
- 12 And one of his servants said, Nay, my lord, O king; but Elisha, the prophet that is in Israel, telleth the king of Israel the words that thou speakest in thy bedchamber.
- 13 ¶ And he said, Go and see where he is, that I may send and fetch him. And it was told him, saying, Behold, he is in Dothan.
- 14 Therefore sent he thither horses, and chariots, and a great host: and they came by night, and compassed the city about.
- 15 And when the *{1}* servant of the man of God was risen early, and gone forth, behold, a host with horses and chariots was round about the city. And his servant said unto him, Alas, my master! how shall we do? *{1}* Or minister
- 16 And he answered, Fear not; for they that are with us are more than they that are with them.
- 17 And Elisha prayed, and said, Jehovah, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And Jehovah opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.
- 18 And when they came down to him, Elisha prayed unto Jehovah, and said, Smite this *{1}* people, I pray thee, with blindness. And he smote them with blindness according to the word of Elisha. *{1}* Heb nation
- 19 And Elisha said unto them, This is not the way, neither is this the city: follow me, and I will bring you to the man whom ye seek. And he led them to Samaria.
- 20 And it came to pass, when they were come into Samaria, that Elisha said, Jehovah, open the eyes of these men, that they may see. And Jehovah opened their eyes, and they saw; and, behold, they were in the midst of Samaria.
- 21 And the king of Israel said unto Elisha, when he saw them, My father, shall I smite them? shall I smite them?
- 22 And he answered, Thou shalt not smite them: wouldest thou smite those whom thou hast taken captive with thy sword and with thy bow? set bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink, and go to their master.
- 23 And he prepared great provision for them; and when they had eaten and drunk, he sent them away, and they went to their master. And the bands of Syria came no more into the land of Israel.
- 24 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that Benhadad king of Syria gathered all his host, and went up, and besieged Samaria.
- 25 And there was a great famine in Samaria: and, behold, they besieged it, until an ass's head was sold for fourscore *{1}* pieces of silver, and the fourth part of a kab of dove's dung for five *{1}* pieces of silver. *{1}* Or, shekels
- 26 And as the king of Israel was passing by upon the wall, there cried a woman unto him, saying, Help, my lord, O king.

- 27 And he said, *{1}* If Jehovah do not help thee, whence shall I help thee? out of the threshing-floor, or out of the winepress? *{1}* Or Nay, let Jehovah help thee!
- 28 And the king said unto her, What aileth thee? And she answered, This woman said unto me, Give thy son, that we may eat him to-day, and we will eat my son to-morrow.
- 29 So we boiled my son, and did eat him: and I said unto her on the next day, Give thy son, that we may eat him; and she hath hid her son.
- 30 And it came to pass, when the king heard the words of the woman, that he rent his clothes (now he was passing by upon the wall); and the people looked, and, behold, he had sackcloth within upon his flesh.
- 31 Then he said, God do so to me, and more also, if the head of Elisha the son of Shaphat shall stand on him this day.
- 32 But Elisha was sitting in his house, and the elders were sitting with him; and *the king* sent a man from before him: but ere the messenger came to him, he said to the elders, See ye how this son of a murderer hath sent to take away my head? look, when the messenger cometh, shut the door, and *{1}* hold the door fast against him: is not the sound of his master's feet behind him? *{1}* Heb thrust him back with the door
- 33 And while he was yet talking with them, behold, the messenger came down unto him: and he said, Behold, this evil is of Jehovah; why should I wait for Jehovah any longer?

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| d- Elisha builds faith in the sons of the prophets. | vs. 6:1-7    |
| e- Elisha confounds the Syrians.                    | vs. 8-23     |
| 1) The Syrian strategy revealed by Elisha.          | vs. 8-12     |
| 2) The Syrians surround Elisha at Dothan.           | vs. 13-16    |
| 3) Elisha's servant's eyes are opened.              | vs. 17       |
| 4) The Syrians are blinded but preserved.           | vs. 18-23    |
| f- The Syrian siege and deliverance.                | (6:24-7:20.) |
| 1) Elisha's blame and his prediction of plenty.     | vs. 24-33    |

**2 Kings 7**

- 1 ¶ And Elisha said, Hear ye the word of Jehovah: thus saith Jehovah, To-morrow about this time shall a {1} measure of fine flour be *sold* for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, in the gate of Samaria. {1} *Heb seah*}
- 2 Then the captain on whose hand the king leaned answered the man of God, and said, Behold, if Jehovah should make windows in heaven, might this thing be? And he said, Behold, thou shalt see it with thine eyes, but shalt not eat thereof.
- 3 ¶ Now there were four leprous men at the entrance of the gate: and they said one to another, Why sit we here until we die?
- 4 If we say, We will enter into the city, then the famine is in the city, and we shall die there; and if we sit still here, we die also. Now therefore come, and let us fall unto the host of the Syrians: if they save us alive, we shall live; and if they kill us, we shall but die.
- 5 And they rose up in the twilight, to go unto the camp of the Syrians; and when they were come to the outermost part of the camp of the Syrians, behold, there was no man there.
- 6 For the Lord had made the host of the Syrians to hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses, even the noise of a great host: and they said one to another, Lo, the king of Israel hath hired against us the kings of the Hittites, and the kings of the Egyptians, to come upon us.
- 7 Wherefore they arose and fled in the twilight, and left their tents, and their horses, and their asses, even the camp as it was, and fled for their life.
- 8 And when these lepers came to the outermost part of the camp, they went into one tent, and did eat and drink, and carried thence silver, and gold, and raiment, and went and hid it; and they came back, and entered into another tent, and carried thence also, and went and hid it.
- 9 Then they said one to another, We do not well; this day is a day of good tidings, and we hold our peace: if we tarry till the morning light, {1} punishment will overtake us; now therefore come, let us go and tell the king's household. {1} *Or our iniquity will find us out*}
- 10 So they came and called unto the {1} porter of the city; and they told them, saying, We came to the camp of the Syrians, and, behold, there was no man there, neither voice of man, but the horses tied, and the asses tied, and the tents as they were. {1} *Or porters*}
- 11 And {1} he called the porters; and they told it to the king's household within. {1} *Or the porters called*}
- 12 ¶ And the king arose in the night, and said unto his servants, I will now show you what the Syrians have done to us. They know that we are hungry; therefore are they gone out of the camp to hide themselves in the field, saying, When they come out of the city, we shall take them alive, and get into the city.
- 13 And one of his servants answered and said, Let some take, I pray thee, five of the horses that remain, which are left {1} in the city (behold, they are as all the multitude of Israel that are left in it; behold, they are as all the multitude of Israel that are consumed); and let us send and see. {1} *Heb in it*}
- 14 They took therefore two chariots with horses; and the king sent after the host of the Syrians, saying, Go and see.
- 15 And they went after them unto the Jordan: and, lo, all the way was full of garments and vessels, which the Syrians had cast away in their haste. And the messengers returned, and told the king.
- 16 And the people went out, and plundered the camp of the Syrians. So a measure of fine flour was *sold* for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, according to the word of Jehovah.
- 17 And the king appointed the captain on whose hand he leaned to have the charge of the gate: and the people trod upon him in the gate, and he died as the man of God had said, who spake when the king came down to him.
- 18 And it came to pass, as the man of God had spoken to the king, saying, Two measures of barley for a shekel, and a measure of fine flour for a shekel, shall be to-morrow about this time in the gate of Samaria;
- 19 and that captain answered the man of God, and said, Now, behold, if Jehovah should make windows in heaven, might such a thing be? and he said, Behold, thou shalt see it with thine eyes, but shalt not eat thereof:
- 20 it came to pass even so unto him; for the people trod upon him in the gate, and he died.

- 2) The lepers' probe and report of the Syrian camp. vs. 7:1-11
- 3) The Syrians are routed and unbelief is judged. vs. 12-20

**2 Kings 8**

- 1 ¶ Now Elisha had spoken unto the woman, whose son he had restored to life, saying, Arise, and go thou and thy household, and sojourn wheresoever thou canst sojourn: for Jehovah hath called for a famine; and it shall also come upon the land seven years.
- 2 And the woman arose, and did according to the word of the man of God; and she went with her household, and sojourned in the land of the Philistines seven years.
- 3 And it came to pass at the seven years' end, that the woman returned out of the land of the Philistines: and she went forth to cry unto the king for her house and for her land.
- 4 Now the king was talking with Gehazi the servant of the man of God, saying, Tell me, I pray thee, all the great things that Elisha hath done.
- 5 And it came to pass, as he was telling the king how he had restored to life him that was dead, that, behold, the woman, whose son he had restored to life, cried to the king for her house and for her land. And Gehazi said, My lord, O king, this is the woman, and this is her son, whom Elisha restored to life.
- 6 And when the king asked the woman, she told him. So the king appointed unto her a certain <sup>{1}</sup> officer, saying, Restore all that was hers, and all the fruits of the field since the day that she left the land, even until now. <sup>{1}</sup> Or eunuch
- 7 ¶ And Elisha came to Damascus; and Benhadad the king of Syria was sick; and it was told him, saying, The man of God is come hither.
- 8 And the king said unto Hazael, Take a present in thy hand, and go, meet the man of God, and inquire of Jehovah by him, saying, Shall I recover of this sickness?
- 9 So Hazael went to meet him, and took a present <sup>{1}</sup> with him, <sup>{2}</sup> even of every good thing of Damascus, forty camels' burden, and came and stood before him, and said, Thy son Benhadad king of Syria hath sent me to thee, saying, Shall I recover of this sickness? <sup>{1}</sup> Heb in his hand 2) Or and
- 10 And Elisha said unto him, Go, <sup>{1}</sup> say unto him, Thou shalt surely recover; howbeit Jehovah hath showed me that he shall surely die. <sup>{1}</sup> Another reading is say, Thou shalt not recover; for Jehovah etc
- 11 And he settled his countenance stedfastly upon him, until he was ashamed: and the man of God wept.
- 12 And Hazael said, Why weepeth my lord? And he answered, Because I know the evil that thou wilt do unto the children of Israel: their strongholds wilt thou set on fire, and their young men wilt thou slay with the sword, and wilt dash in pieces their little ones, and rip up their women with child.
- 13 And Hazael said, But what is thy servant, who is but a dog, that he should do this great thing? And Elisha answered, Jehovah hath showed me that thou shalt be king over Syria.
- 14 Then he departed from Elisha, and came to his master; who said to him, What said Elisha to thee? And he answered, He told me that thou wouldest surely recover.
- 15 And it came to pass on the morrow, that he took the coverlet, and dipped it in water, and spread it on his face, so that he died: and Hazael reigned in his stead.
- 16 ¶ And in the fifth year of Joram the son of Ahab king of Israel, Jehoshaphat being then king of Judah, Jehoram the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah began to reign.
- 17 Thirty and two years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem.
- 18 And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, as did the house of Ahab: for he had the daughter of Ahab to wife; and he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah.
- 19 Howbeit Jehovah would not destroy Judah, for David his servant's sake, as he promised him to give unto him a lamp <sup>{1}</sup> for his children alway. <sup>{1}</sup> Another reading is and to his children
- 20 In his days Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah, and made a king over themselves.
- 21 Then Joram passed over to Zair, and all his chariots with him: and he rose up by night, and smote the Edomites that compassed him about, and the captains of the chariots; and the people fled to their tents.
- 22 So Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah unto this day. Then did Libnah revolt at the same time.
- 23 And the rest of the acts of Joram, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 24 And Joram slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David; and Ahaziah his son reigned in his stead.
- 25 ¶ In the twelfth year of Joram the son of Ahab king of Israel did Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of



- Judah begin to reign.
- 26 Two and twenty years old was Ahaziah when he began to reign; and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Athaliah the *{1}* daughter of Omri king of Israel. *{1}* Or granddaughter; See verse 18}
- 27 And he walked in the way of the house of Ahab, and did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, as did the house of Ahab; for he was the son-in-law of the house of Ahab.
- 28 And he went with Joram the son of Ahab to war against Hazael king of Syria at Ramoth-gilead: and the Syrians wounded Joram.
- 29 And king Joram returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds which the Syrians had given him at Ramah, when he fought against Hazael king of Syria. And Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to see Joram the son of Ahab in Jezreel, because he was sick.

- 
- |    |   |            |
|----|---|------------|
| g- | Elisha predicts Hazael's reign over Syria.    | vs. 8:1-15 |
|    | 1) Elisha at Damascus is sought by Ben-hadad. | vs. 1-9    |
|    | 2) Elisha's prediction and sorrow.            | vs. 10-15  |
| h- | Reign of the two Jorams and Ahaziah.          | vs. 16-29  |

**2 Kings 9**

- 1 ¶ And Elisha the prophet called one of the sons of the prophets, and said unto him, Gird up thy loins, and take this vial of oil in thy hand, and go to Ramoth-gilead.
- 2 And when thou comest thither, look out there Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi, and go in, and make him arise up from among his brethren, and carry him to an inner chamber.
- 3 Then take the vial of oil, and pour it on his head, and say, Thus saith Jehovah, I have anointed thee king over Israel. Then open the door, and flee, and tarry not.
- 4 So the young man, even the young man the prophet, went to Ramoth-gilead.
- 5 And when he came, behold, the captains of the host were sitting; and he said, I have an errand to thee, O captain. And Jehu said, Unto which of us all? And he said, To thee, O captain.
- 6 And he arose, and went into the house; and he poured the oil on his head, and said unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, I have anointed thee king over the people of Jehovah, even over Israel.
- 7 And thou shalt smite the house of Ahab thy master, that I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of Jehovah, at the hand of Jezebel.
- 8 For the whole house of Ahab shall perish; and I will cut off from Ahab every man-child, and him that is shut up and him that is left at large in Israel.
- 9 And I will make the house of Ahab like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah.
- 10 And the dogs shall eat Jezebel in the portion of Jezreel, and there shall be none to bury her. And he opened the door, and fled.
- 11 ¶ Then Jehu came forth to the servants of his lord: and one said unto him, Is all well? wherefore came this mad fellow to thee? And he said unto them, Ye know the man and what his talk was.
- 12 And they said, It is false; tell us now. And he said, Thus and thus spake he to me, saying, Thus saith Jehovah, I have anointed thee king over Israel.
- 13 Then they hastened, and took every man his garment, and put it under him *{1}* on the top of the stairs, and blew the trumpet, saying, Jehu is king. *{1} Or on the bare steps }*
- 14 So Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi conspired against Joram. (Now Joram was keeping Ramoth-gilead, he and all Israel, because of Hazael king of Syria;
- 15 but king *{1}* Joram was returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds which the Syrians had given him, when he fought with Hazael king of Syria.) And Jehu said, If this be your mind, then let none escape and go forth out of the city, to go to tell it in Jezreel. *{1} Heb Jehoram (and in verses 17, 21, 22, 23, 24)}*
- 16 ¶ So Jehu rode in a chariot, and went to Jezreel; for Joram lay there. And Ahaziah king of Judah was come down to see Joram.
- 17 Now the watchman was standing on the tower in Jezreel, and he spied the company of Jehu as he came, and said, I see a company. And Joram said, Take a horseman, and send to meet them, and let him say, *{1}* Is it peace? *{1} Or Is all well?}*
- 18 So there went one on horseback to meet him, and said, Thus saith the king, Is it peace? And Jehu said, What hast thou to do with peace? turn thee behind me. And the watchman told, saying, The messenger came to them, but he cometh not back.
- 19 Then he sent out a second on horseback, who came to them, and said, Thus saith the king, Is it peace? And Jehu answered, What hast thou to do with peace? turn thee behind me.
- 20 And the watchman told, saying, He came even unto them, and cometh not back: and the driving is like the driving of Jehu the son of Nimshi; for he driveth furiously.
- 21 And Joram said, *{1}* Make ready. And they made ready his chariot. And Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah king of Judah went out, each in his chariot, and they went out to meet Jehu, and found him in the portion of Naboth the Jezreelite. *{1} Or Yoke}*
- 22 And it came to pass, when Joram saw Jehu, that he said, Is it peace, Jehu? And he answered, What peace, so long as the whoredoms of thy mother Jezebel and her witchcrafts are so many?
- 23 And Joram turned his hands, and fled, and said to Ahaziah, There is treachery, O Ahaziah.
- 24 And Jehu *{1}* drew his bow with his full strength, and smote Joram between his arms; and the arrow went out at his heart, and he sunk down in his chariot. *{1} Heb filled his hand with the bow}*
- 25 Then said *Jehu* to Bidkar his captain, Take up, and cast him in the portion of the field of Naboth the Jezreelite; for remember how that, when I and thou rode together after Ahab his father, Jehovah *{1}* laid this burden upon him: *{1} Or uttered this oracle against him}*

- 26 Surely I have seen yesterday the blood of Naboth, and the blood of his sons, saith Jehovah; and I will requite thee in this *{1}* plat, saith Jehovah. Now therefore take and cast him into the plat *of ground*, according to the word of Jehovah. *{1} Or portion*
- 27 But when Ahaziah the king of Judah saw this, he fled by the way of the garden-house. And Jehu followed after him, and said, Smite him also in the chariot: *and they smote him* at the ascent of Gur, which is by Ibleam. And he fled to Megiddo, and died there.
- 28 And his servants carried him in a chariot to Jerusalem, and buried him in his sepulchre with his fathers in the city of David.
- 29 And in the eleventh year of Joram the son of Ahab began Ahaziah to reign over Judah.
- 30 ¶ And when Jehu was come to Jezreel, Jezebel heard of it; and she painted her eyes, and attired her head, and looked out at the window.
- 31 And as Jehu entered in at the gate, she said, *{1}* Is it peace, thou Zimri, thy master's murderer? *{1} Or Is it well*
- 32 And he lifted up his face to the window, and said, Who is on my side? who? And there looked out to him two or three eunuchs.
- 33 And he said, Throw her down. So they threw her down; and some of her blood was sprinkled on the wall, and on the horses: and he trod her under foot.
- 34 And when he was come in, he did eat and drink; and he said, See now to this cursed woman, and bury her; for she is a king's daughter.
- 35 And they went to bury her; but they found no more of her than the skull, and the feet, and the palms of her hands.
- 36 Wherefore they came back, and told him. And he said, This is the word of Jehovah, which he spake by his servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying, In the portion of Jezreel shall the dogs eat the flesh of Jezebel; and the body of Jezebel shall be as dung upon the face of the field in the portion of Jezreel, so that they shall not say, This is Jezebel.

- D- Period of strife renewed. (9.-17.)**
- 1- Jehu inaugurates Israel's fifth d nasty. (9.-10.)
- a- Elisha commissions Jehu to destroy house of Ahab. vs. 1-13
- b- Jehu slays Jehoram (of Israel) and Ahaziah (Judah). vs. 14-29
- c- Jehu causes Jezebel to be slain. vs. 30-37

**2 Kings 10**

- 1 ¶ Now Ahab had seventy sons in Samaria. And Jehu wrote letters, and sent to Samaria, unto the rulers of Jezreel, even the elders, and unto them that brought up *the sons of Ahab*, saying,
- 2 And now as soon as this letter cometh to you, seeing your master's sons are with you, and there are with you chariots and horses, a fortified city also, and armor;
- 3 look ye out the best and meetest of your master's sons, and set him on his father's throne, and fight for your master's house.
- 4 But they were exceedingly afraid, and said, Behold, the two kings stood not before him: how then shall we stand?
- 5 And he that was over the household, and he that was over the city, the elders also, and they that brought up *the children*, sent to Jehu, saying, We are thy servants, and will do all that thou shalt bid us; we will not make any man king: do thou that which is good in thine eyes.
- 6 Then he wrote a letter the second time to them, saying, If ye be on my side, and if ye will hearken unto my voice, take ye the heads of the men your master's sons, and come to me to Jezreel by to-morrow this time. Now the king's sons, being seventy persons, were with the great men of the city, who brought them up.
- 7 And it came to pass, when the letter came to them, that they took the king's sons, and slew them, even seventy persons, and put their heads in baskets, and sent them unto him to Jezreel.
- 8 And there came a messenger, and told him, saying, They have brought the heads of the king's sons. And he said, Lay ye them in two heaps at the entrance of the gate until the morning.
- 9 And it came to pass in the morning, that he went out, and stood, and said to all the people, Ye are righteous: behold, I conspired against my master, and slew him; but who smote all these?
- 10 Know now that there shall fall unto the earth nothing of the word of Jehovah, which Jehovah spake concerning the house of Ahab: for Jehovah hath done that which he spake by his servant Elijah.
- 11 So Jehu smote all that remained of the house of Ahab in Jezreel, and all his great men, and his familiar friends, and his priests, until he left him none remaining.
- 12 And he arose and departed, and went to Samaria. And as he was at the *{1}* shearing-house of the shepherds in the way, *{1} Or house of gathering*
- 13 Jehu met with the brethren of Ahaziah king of Judah, and said, Who are ye? And they answered, We are the brethren of Ahaziah: and we go down to salute the children of the king and the children of the queen.
- 14 And he said, Take them alive. And they took them alive, and slew them at the *{1}* pit of the *{1}* shearing-house, even two and forty men; neither left he any of them. *{1} Or cistern 2) Or house of gathering*
- 15 ¶ And when he was departed thence, he lighted on Jehonadab the son of Rechab coming to meet him; and he saluted him, and said to him, Is thy heart right, as my heart is with thy heart? And Jehonadab answered, It is. If it be, give me thy hand. And he gave him his hand; and he took him up to him into the chariot.
- 16 And he said, Come with me, and see my zeal for Jehovah. So they made him ride in his chariot.
- 17 And when he came to Samaria, he smote all that remained unto Ahab in Samaria, till he had destroyed him, according to the word of Jehovah, which he spake to Elijah.
- 18 And Jehu gathered all the people together, and said unto them, Ahab served Baal a little; but Jehu will serve him much.
- 19 Now therefore call unto me all the prophets of Baal, all his worshippers, and all his priests; let none be wanting: for I have a great sacrifice *to do* to Baal; whosoever shall be wanting, he shall not live. But Jehu did it in subtlety, to the intent that he might destroy the worshippers of Baal.
- 20 And Jehu said, Sanctify a solemn assembly for Baal. And they proclaimed it.
- 21 And Jehu sent through all Israel: and all the worshippers of Baal came, so that there was not a man left that came not. And they came into the house of Baal; and the house of Baal was filled from one end to another.
- 22 And he said unto him that was over the vestry, Bring forth vestments for all the worshippers of Baal. And he brought them forth vestments.
- 23 And Jehu went, and Jehonadab the son of Rechab, into the house of Baal; and he said unto the worshippers of Baal, Search, and look that there be here with you none of the servants of Jehovah, but the worshippers of Baal only.

- 24 And they went in to offer sacrifices and burnt-offerings. Now Jehu had appointed him fourscore men without, and said, If any of the men whom I bring into your hands escape, *he that letteth him go*, his life shall be for the life of him.
- 25 And it came to pass, as soon as he had made an end of offering the burnt-offering, that Jehu said to the *{1}* guard and to the captains, Go in, and slay them; let none come forth. And they smote them with the edge of the sword; and the guard and the captains cast them out, and went to the city of the house of Baal. *{1} Heb runners}*
- 26 And they brought forth the *{1}* pillars that were in the house of Baal, and burned them. *{1} Or obelisks}*
- 27 And they brake down the pillar of Baal, and brake down the house of Baal, and made it a draught-house, unto this day.
- 28 Thus Jehu destroyed Baal out of Israel.
- 29 ¶ Howbeit from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, *{1}* wherewith he made Israel to sin, Jehu departed not from after them, *to wit*, the golden calves that were in Beth-el, and that were in Dan. *{1} Or who}*
- 30 And Jehovah said unto Jehu, Because thou hast *{1}* done well in executing that which is right in mine eyes, *and* hast done unto the house of Ahab according to all that was in my heart, thy sons of the fourth generation shall sit on the throne of Israel. *{1} Or executed well}*
- 31 But Jehu took no heed to walk in the law of Jehovah, the God of Israel, with all his heart: he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam, wherewith he made Israel to sin.
- 32 In those days Jehovah began to cut off from Israel: and Hazael smote them in all the borders of Israel; from the Jordan eastward, all the land of Gilead, the Gadites, and the Reubenites, and the Manassites, from Aroer, which is by the valley of the Arnon, even Gilead and Bashan.
- 34 Now the rest of the acts of Jehu, and all that he did, and all his might, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 35 And Jehu slept with his fathers; and they buried him in Samaria. And Jehoahaz his son reigned in his stead.
- 36 And the time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty and eight years.

d- He destroys Ahab's 70 sons in Jezreel. vs. 10:1-14  
(42 in Samaria).

e- Destroys all the prophets of Baal. vs. 15-28

f- Jehu's promise of four generations of reigning.

**2 Kings 11**

- 1 ¶ Now when Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah saw that her son was dead, she arose and destroyed all the seed royal.
- 2 But Jehosheba, the daughter of king Joram, sister of Ahaziah, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and stole him away from among the king's sons that were slain, even him and his nurse, *{1}* and put them in the *{2}* bedchamber; and they hid him from Athaliah, so that he was not slain; *{1}* Or, who were *2}* Or chamber for the beds
- 3 And he was with her hid in the house of Jehovah six years. And Athaliah reigned over the land.
- 4 ¶ And in the seventh year Jehoiada sent and fetched the captains over hundreds of the *{1}* Carites and of the *{2}* guard, and brought them to him into the house of Jehovah; and he made a covenant with them, and took an oath of them in the house of Jehovah, and showed them the king's son. *{1}* Or executioners *2}* Heb runners
- 5 And he commanded them, saying, This is the thing that ye shall do: a third part of you, that come in on the sabbath, shall be keepers of the watch of the king's house;
- 6 And a third part shall be at the gate Sur; and a third part at the gate behind the guard: so shall ye keep the watch of the house, and be a barrier.
- 7 And the two companies of you, even all that go forth on the sabbath, shall keep the watch of the house of Jehovah about the king.
- 8 And ye shall compass the king round about, every man with his weapons in his hand; and he that cometh within the ranks, let him be slain: and be ye with the king when he goeth out, and when he cometh in.
- 9 And the captains over hundreds did according to all that Jehoiada the priest commanded; and they took every man his men, those that were to come in on the sabbath, with those that were to go out on the sabbath, and came to Jehoiada the priest.
- 10 And the priest delivered to the captains over hundreds the spears and shields that had been king David's, which were in the house of Jehovah.
- 11 And the guard stood, every man with his weapons in his hand, from the right *{1}* side of the house to the left side of the house, along by the altar and the house, by the king round about. *{1}* Heb shoulder
- 12 Then he brought out the king's son, and *{1}* put the crown upon him, and gave him the testimony; and they made him king, and anointed him; and they clapped their hands, and said, Long live the king. *{1}* Or put upon him the crown and the testimony
- 13 ¶ And when Athaliah heard the noise of the guard and of the people, she came to the people into the house of Jehovah:
- 14 and she looked, and, behold, the king stood *{1}* by the pillar, as the manner was, and the captains and the trumpets by the king; and all the people of the land rejoiced, and blew trumpets. Then Athaliah rent her clothes, and cried, Treason! treason! *{1}* Or on the platform
- 15 And Jehoiada the priest commanded the captains of hundreds that were set over the host, and said unto them, Have her forth between the ranks; and him that followeth her slay with the sword. For the priest said, Let her not be slain in the house of Jehovah.
- 16 So they made way for her; and she went by the way of the horses' entry to the king's house: and there was she slain.
- 17 ¶ And Jehoiada made a covenant between Jehovah and the king and the people, that they should be Jehovah's people; between the king also and the people.
- 18 And all the people of the land went to the house of Baal, and brake it down; his altars and his images brake they in pieces thoroughly, and slew Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. And the priest appointed *{1}* officers over the house of Jehovah. *{1}* Heb offices
- 19 And he took the captains over hundreds, and the Carites, and the guard, and all the people of the land; and they brought down the king from the house of Jehovah, and came by the way of the gate of the guard unto the king's house. And he sat on the throne of the kings.
- 20 So all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet. And Athaliah they had slain with the sword at the king's house.
- 21 Jehoash was seven years old when he began to reign.

- 2- Athaliah and Joash reign over Judah. (11.-12.)
- a- Athalia murder al royal seed and reigns 6 years. vs. 1  
    Except for baby Joash who was kept by his sister.
  - b- Jehoiada makes Joash king at age 7. vs. 2-16
  - c- Baal worship is destroyed in Judah. vs. 17-21

**2 Kings 12**

- 1 ¶ In the seventh year of Jehu began Jehoash to reign; and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Zibiah of Beer-sheba.
- 2 And Jehoash did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah all his days wherein Jehoiada the priest instructed him.
- 3 Howbeit the high places were not taken away; the people still sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places.
- 4 ¶ And Jehoash said to the priests, All the money of the hallowed things that is brought into the house of Jehovah, *{1}* in current money, *{2}* the money of the persons for whom each man is rated, and all the money that it cometh into any man's heart to bring into the house of Jehovah, *{1}* Or, *even the money of every one that passeth the numbering; See Ex 30:13. 2) Heb each man the money of the souls of his estimation; See Le 27:2}*
- 5 let the priests take it to them, every man from his acquaintance; and they shall repair the breaches of the house, wheresoever any breach shall be found.
- 6 But it was so, that in the three and twentieth year of king Jehoash the priests had not repaired the breaches of the house.
- 7 Then king Jehoash called for Jehoiada the priest, and for the *other* priests, and said unto them, Why repair ye not the breaches of the house? now therefore take no *more* money from your acquaintance, but deliver it for the breaches of the house.
- 8 And the priests consented that they should take no *more* money from the people, neither repair the breaches of the house.
- 9 But Jehoiada the priest took a chest, and bored a hole in the lid of it, and set it beside the altar, on the right side as one cometh into the house of Jehovah: and the priests that kept the threshold put therein all the money that was brought into the house of Jehovah.
- 10 And it was so, when they saw that there was much money in the chest, that the king's *{1}* scribe and the high priest came up, and they *{2}* put up in bags and counted the money that was found in the house of Jehovah. *{1} Or secretary 2) Heb bound up and etc}*
- 11 And they gave the money that was weighed out into the hands of them that did the work, that had the oversight of the house of Jehovah: and they *{1}* paid it out to the carpenters and the builders, that wrought upon the house of Jehovah, *{1} Heb brought it forth}*
- 12 and to the masons and the hewers of stone, and for buying timber and hewn stone to repair the breaches of the house of Jehovah, and for all that *{1}* was laid out for the house to repair it. *{1} Heb went forth}*
- 13 But there were not made for the house of Jehovah cups of silver, snuffers, basins, trumpets, any vessels of gold, or vessels of silver, of the money that was brought into the house of Jehovah;
- 14 for they gave that to them that did the work, and repaired therewith the house of Jehovah.
- 15 Moreover they reckoned not with the men, into whose hand they delivered the money to give to them that did the work; for they dealt faithfully.
- 16 The money for the trespass-offerings, and the money for the sin-offerings, was not brought into the house of Jehovah: it was the priests'.
- 17 ¶ Then Hazael king of Syria went up, and fought against Gath, and took it; and Hazael set his face to go up to Jerusalem.
- 18 And Jehoash king of Judah took all the hallowed things that Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, his fathers, kings of Judah, had dedicated, and his own hallowed things, and all the gold that was found in the treasures of the house of Jehovah, and of the king's house, and sent it to Hazael king of Syria: and he went away from Jerusalem.
- 19 Now the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 20 And his servants arose, and made a conspiracy, and smote Joash at the house of Millo, *on the way that goeth down to Silla*.
- 21 For Jozacar the son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad the son of Shomer, his servants, smote him, and he died; and they buried him with his fathers in the city of David: and Amaziah his son reigned in his stead.



- d- The temple is repaired by Joash. vs. 12:1-16
- e- Temple riches are given to appease Hazael of Syria. vs. 17-21

**2 Kings 13**

- 1 ¶ In the three and twentieth year of Joash the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, Jehoahaz the son of Jehu began to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* seventeen years.
- 2 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and followed the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin; he departed not therefrom.
- 3 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel, and he delivered them into the hand of Hazael king of Syria, and into the hand of Benhadad the son of Hazael, *{1} continually. {1} Heb all the days}*
- 4 And Jehoahaz besought Jehovah, and Jehovah hearkened unto him; for he saw the oppression of Israel, how that the king of Syria oppressed them.
- 5 (And Jehovah gave Israel a saviour, so that they went out from under the hand of the Syrians; and the children of Israel dwelt in their tents as beforetime.
- 6 Nevertheless they departed not from the sins of the house of Jeroboam, wherewith he made Israel to sin, but *{1} walked therein: and there remained the Asherah also in Samaria.) {1} Heb he walked}*
- 7 For he left not to Jehoahaz of the people save fifty horsemen, and ten chariots, and ten thousand footmen; for the king of Syria destroyed them, and made them like the dust *{1} in threshing. {1} Or to trample on}*
- 8 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoahaz, and all that he did, and his might, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 9 And Jehoahaz slept with his fathers; and they buried him in Samaria: and Joash his son reigned in his stead.
- 10 ¶ In the thirty and seventh year of Joash king of Judah began Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* sixteen years.
- 11 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah; he departed not from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin; but he walked therein.
- 12 Now the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, and his might wherewith he fought against Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 13 And Joash slept with his fathers; and Jeroboam sat upon his throne: and Joash was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel.
- 14 Now Elisha was fallen sick of his sickness whereof he died: and Joash the king of Israel came down unto him, and wept over *{1} him, and said, My father, my father, the {2} chariots of Israel and the horsemen thereof! {1} Heb his face 2) Or chariot}*
- 15 And Elisha said unto him, Take bow and arrows; and he took unto him bow and arrows.
- 16 And he said to the king of Israel, Put thy hand upon the bow; and he put his hand *upon it*. And Elisha laid his hands upon the king's hands.
- 17 And he said, Open the window eastward; and he opened it. Then Elisha said, Shoot; and he shot. And he said, Jehovah's arrow of *{1} victory, even the arrow of {1} victory {2} over Syria; for thou shalt smite the Syrians in Aphek, till thou have consumed them. {1} Heb salvation 2) Or against}*
- 18 And he said, Take the arrows; and he took them. And he said unto the king of Israel, Smite upon the ground; and he smote thrice, and stayed.
- 19 And the man of God was wroth with him, and said, Thou shouldest have smitten five or six times: then hadst thou smitten Syria till thou hadst consumed it, whereas now thou shalt smite Syria but thrice.
- 20 ¶ And Elisha died, and they buried him. Now the bands of the Moabites invaded the land at the coming in of the year.
- 21 And it came to pass, as they were burying a man, that, behold, they spied a band; and they cast the man into the sepulchre of Elisha: and *{1} as soon as the man touched the bones of Elisha, he revived, and stood up on his feet. {1} Heb when the man went and touched}*
- 22 And Hazael king of Syria oppressed Israel all the days of Jehoahaz.
- 23 But Jehovah was gracious unto them, and had compassion on them, and had respect unto them, because of his covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and would not destroy them, neither cast he them from his presence *{1} as yet. {1} Heb until now}*
- 24 And Hazael king of Syria died; and Benhadad his son reigned in his stead.
- 25 And Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz took again out of the hand of Benhadad the son of Hazael the cities which he had taken out of the hand of Jehoahaz his father by war. Three times did Joash smite him, and recovered the cities of Israel.

3- Israel's fifth dynasty continued. (13.)

- a. Jehoahaz--17 years' evil reign vs. 1-9
- b. Joash--16 years' evil reign vs. 10-13
- c. The miracle of resurrection by Elisha's bones.

**2 Kings 14**

- 1 ¶ In the second year of Joash son of Joahaz king of Israel began Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah to reign.
- 2 He was twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Jehoaddin of Jerusalem.
- 3 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, yet not like David his father: he did according to all that Joash his father had done.
- 4 Howbeit the high places were not taken away: the people still sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places.
- 5 And it came to pass, as soon as the kingdom was established in his hand, that he slew his servants who had slain the king his father:
- 6 but the children of the murderers he put not to death; according to that which is written in the book of the law of Moses, as Jehovah commanded, saying, The fathers shall not be put to death for the children, nor the children be put to death for the fathers; but every man shall die for his own sin.
- 7 He slew of Edom in the Valley of Salt ten thousand, and took *{1}* Sela by war, and called the name of it Joktheel, unto this day. *{1} Or the rock}*
- 8 ¶ Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash, the son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, Come, let us look one another in the face.
- 9 And Jehoash the king of Israel sent to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, The *{1}* thistle that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar that was in Lebanon, saying, Give thy daughter to my son to wife: and there passed by a wild beast that was in Lebanon, and trod down the thistle. *{1} Or thorn}*
- 10 Thou hast indeed smitten Edom, and thy heart hath lifted thee up: glory thereof, and abide at home; for why shouldst thou *{1}* meddle to *thy* hurt, that thou shouldst fall, even thou, and Judah with thee? *{1} Or provoke calamity}*
- 11 But Amaziah would not hear. So Jehoash king of Israel went up; and he and Amaziah king of Judah looked one another in the face at Beth-shemesh, which belongeth to Judah.
- 12 And Judah was put to the worse before Israel; and they fled every man to his tent.
- 13 And Jehoash king of Israel took Amaziah king of Judah, the son of Jehoash the son of Ahaziah, at Beth-shemesh, and came to Jerusalem, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim unto the corner gate, four hundred cubits.
- 14 And he took all the gold and silver, and all the vessels that were found in the house of Jehovah, and in the treasures of the king's house, the hostages also, and returned to Samaria.
- 15 ¶ Now the rest of the acts of Jehoash which he did, and his might, and how he fought with Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 16 And Jehoash slept with his fathers, and was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel; and Jeroboam his son reigned in his stead.
- 17 And Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah lived after the death of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel fifteen years.
- 18 Now the rest of the acts of Amaziah, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 19 And they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem; and he fled to Lachish: but they sent after him to Lachish, and slew him there.
- 20 And they brought him upon horses; and he was buried at Jerusalem with his fathers in the city of David.
- 21 And all the people of Judah took *{1}* Azariah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in the room of his father Amaziah. *{1} In 2 Ki 15:13 and 2 Ch 26:1 Uziah}*
- 22 He built Elath, and restored it to Judah, after that the king slept with his fathers.
- 23 ¶ In the fifteenth year of Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah Jeroboam the son of Joash king of Israel began to reign in Samaria, *and reigned* forty and one years.
- 24 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah: he departed not from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin.
- 25 He restored the border of Israel from the entrance of Hamath unto the sea of the Arabah, according to the word of Jehovah, the God of Israel, which he spake by his servant Jonah the son of Amittai, the prophet, who was of Gath-hepher.

- 26 For Jehovah saw the affliction of Israel, that it was very bitter; for there was none shut up nor left at large, neither was there any helper for Israel.
- 27 And Jehovah said not that he would blot out the name of Israel from under heaven; but he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam the son of Joash.
- 28 Now the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, and all that he did, and his might, how he warred, and how he recovered Damascus, and Hamath, *which had belonged to Judah*, for Israel, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 29 And Jeroboam slept with his fathers, even with the kings of Israel; and Zechariah his son reigned in his stead.

## 2 Kings 15

- 1 ¶ In the twenty and seventh year of Jeroboam king of Israel began {1} Azariah son of Amaziah king of Judah to reign. {1} *In verses 13, 30, etc Uzziah*
- 2 Sixteen years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned two and fifty years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Jecoliah of Jerusalem.
- 3 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, according to all that his father Amaziah had done.
- 4 Howbeit the high places were not taken away: the people still sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places.
- 5 And Jehovah smote the king, so that he was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a {1} separate house. And Jotham the king's son was over the household, judging the people of the land. {1} *Or infirmary*;
- 6 Now the rest of the acts of Azariah, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 7 And Azariah slept with his fathers; and they buried him with his fathers in the city of David: and Jotham his son reigned in his stead.

- 
- 4- Judah under Amaziah and Azariah. (14:1-22.-15:1-7.)
- a- Amaziah's war with Israel. vs. 1-15
- 1) Victory over Edom.
  - 2) The temple ransacked.
  - 3) His assassination.
- b- Azariah's (Uzziah) 52-year golden reign. vs. 15:1-7
- 1) His prosperity and expansion.
  - 2) His judgment of leprosy for usurping priestly office.  
Ref. 2 Chr 26.

**2 Kings 15 (cont.)**

- 8 ¶ In the thirty and eighth year of Azariah king of Judah did Zechariah the son of Jeroboam reign over Israel in Samaria six months.
- 9 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, as his fathers had done: he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin.
- 10 And Shallum the son of Jabesh conspired against him, and smote him before the people, and slew him, and reigned in his stead.
- 11 Now the rest of the acts of Zechariah, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.
- 12 This was the word of Jehovah which he spake unto Jehu, saying, Thy sons to the fourth generation shall sit upon the throne of Israel. And so it came to pass.
- 13 Shallum the son of Jabesh began to reign in the nine and thirtieth year of Uzziah king of Judah; and he reigned the space of a month in Samaria.
- 14 And Menahem the son of Gadi went up from Tirzah, and came to Samaria, and smote Shallum the son of Jabesh in Samaria, and slew him, and reigned in his stead.
- 15 Now the rest of the acts of Shallum, and his conspiracy which he made, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.
- 16 Then Menahem smote Tiphseh, and all that were therein, and the borders thereof, from Tirzah: because they opened not to him, therefore he smote it; and all the women therein that were with child he ripped up.
- 17 In the nine and thirtieth year of Azariah king of Judah began Menahem the son of Gadi to reign over Israel, *and reigned* ten years in Samaria.
- 18 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah: he departed not all his days from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin.
- 19 There came against the land Pul the king of Assyria; and Menahem gave Pul a thousand talents of silver, that his hand might be with him to confirm the kingdom in his hand.
- 20 And Menahem exacted the money of Israel, even of all the mighty men of wealth, of each man fifty shekels of silver, to give to the king of Assyria. So the king of Assyria turned back, and stayed not there in the land.
- 21 Now the rest of the acts of Menahem, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel?
- 22 And Menahem slept with his fathers; and Pekahiah his son reigned in his stead.
- 23 In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah Pekahiah the son of Menahem began to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* two years.
- 24 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah: he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin.
- 25 And Pekah the son of Remaliah, his captain, conspired against him, and smote him in Samaria, in the *{1}* castle of the king's house, with Argob and Arieah; and with him were fifty men of the Gileadites: and he slew him, and reigned in his stead. *{1} Or palace*
- 26 Now the rest of the acts of Pekahiah, and all that he did, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.
- 27 In the two and fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah Pekah the son of Remaliah began to reign over Israel in Samaria, *and reigned* twenty years.
- 28 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah: he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, wherewith he made Israel to sin.
- 29 In the days of Pekah king of Israel came Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria, and took Ijon, and Abel-beth-maacah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali; and he carried them captive to Assyria.
- 30 And Hoshea the son of Elah made a conspiracy against Pekah the son of Remaliah, and smote him, and slew him, and reigned in his stead, in the twentieth year of Jotham the son of Uzziah.
- 31 Now the rest of the acts of Pekah, and all that he did, behold, they are written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Israel.
- 32 ¶ In the second year of Pekah the son of Remaliah king of Israel began Jotham the son of Uzziah king of Judah to reign.

- 33 Five and twenty years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Jerusha the daughter of Zadok.
- 34 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah; he did according to all that his father Uzziah had done.
- 35 Howbeit the high places were not taken away: the people still sacrificed and burned incense in the high places. He built the upper gate of the house of Jehovah.
- 36 Now the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 37 In those days Jehovah began to send against Judah Rezin the king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah.
- 38 And Jotham slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his father: and Ahaz his son reigned in his stead.
- 

5- Israel's fifth dynasty continued (Jeroboam and Zachariah). (14:23-29. 15:8-12.)

- a- Jeroboam's 41 years' evil reign--golden age. vs. 14:23-29  
 Check back for 14:23-29.
- 1) Great prosperity and great expansion.
- b- Zachariah's six-month evil reign. vs. 15:8-12

6- Israel's four final dynasties of chaos. (15:13-31.)

- a- Shallum's one-month reign--slain by Menahem. vs. 13-15
- b- Menahem's ten-year evil reign. vs. 16-22
- c- Pekahiah's two-year evil reign--slain by Pekah. vs. 23-26
- d- Pekah's 20-year evil reign--slain by Hoshea. vs. 27-31

7- Judah under Jotham and Ahaz. (15:32.-16:20.)

- a- Jotham's 16-year righteous reign. vs. 32-38  
 During the reign of us leperous father, Azariah.

**2 Kings 16**

- 1 ¶ In the seventeenth year of Pekah the son of Remaliah Ahaz the son of Jotham king of Judah began to reign.
- 2 Twenty years old was Ahaz when he began to reign; and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: and he did not that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah his God, like David his father.
- 3 But he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, yea, and made his son to pass through the fire, according to the abominations of the nations, whom Jehovah cast out from before the children of Israel.
- 4 And he sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree.
- 5 ¶ Then Rezin king of Syria and Pekah son of Remaliah king of Israel came up to Jerusalem to war: and they besieged Ahaz, but could not overcome him.
- 6 At that time Rezin king of Syria recovered Elath to Syria, and drove the Jews from <sup>{1}</sup> Elath; and the <sup>{2}</sup> Syrians came to Elath, and dwelt there, unto this day. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb Eloth <sup>2}</sup> According to another reading Edomites
- 7 So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria, saying, I am thy servant and thy son: come up, and save me out of the hand of the king of Syria, and out of the hand of the king of Israel, who rise up against me.
- 8 And Ahaz took the silver and gold that was found in the house of Jehovah, and in the treasures of the king's house, and sent it for a present to the king of Assyria.
- 9 And the king of Assyria hearkened unto him; and the king of Assyria went up against Damascus, and took it, and carried *the people of it* captive to Kir, and slew Rezin.
- 10 ¶ And king Ahaz went to Damascus to meet Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria, and saw the altar that was at Damascus; and king Ahaz sent to Urijah the priest the fashion of the altar, and the pattern of it, according to all the workmanship thereof.
- 11 And Urijah the priest built an altar: according to all that king Ahaz had sent from Damascus, so did Urijah the priest make it against the coming of king Ahaz from Damascus.
- 12 And when the king was come from Damascus, the king saw the altar: and the king drew near unto the altar, and <sup>{1}</sup> offered thereon. <sup>{1}</sup> Or went up unto it
- 13 And he burnt his burnt-offering and his meal-offering, and poured his drink-offering, and sprinkled the blood of <sup>{1}</sup> his peace-offerings, upon the altar. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb the peace-offerings which were his
- 14 And the brazen altar, which was before Jehovah, he brought from the forefront of the house, from between his altar and the house of Jehovah, and put it on the north side of his altar.
- 15 And king Ahaz commanded Urijah the priest, saying, Upon the great altar burn the morning burnt-offering, and the evening meal-offering, and the king's burnt-offering, and his meal-offering, with the burnt-offering of all the people of the land, and their meal-offering, and their drink-offerings; and sprinkle upon it all the blood of the burnt-offering, and all the blood of the sacrifice: but the brazen altar shall be for me to inquire by.
- 16 Thus did Urijah the priest, according to all that king Ahaz commanded.
- 17 ¶ And king Ahaz cut off the panels of the bases, and removed the laver from off them, and took down the sea from off the brazen oxen that were under it, and put it upon a pavement of stone.
- 18 And the <sup>{1}</sup> covered way for the sabbath that they had built in the house, and the king's entry without, turned he <sup>{2}</sup> unto the house of Jehovah, because of the king of Assyria. <sup>{1}</sup> Or covered place <sup>2}</sup> Or round
- 19 Now the rest of the acts of Ahaz which he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 20 And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David: and Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead.



- b- Ahaz' 16-year evil reign. (16.)
  - 1) Besieged by Israel and Syria.
  - 2) He seeks aid of Tiglath-pilezer.
  - 3) Heathen altar is set up in Jerusalem.

**2 Kings 17**

- 1 ¶ In the twelfth year of Ahaz king of Judah began Hoshea the son of Elah to reign in Samaria over Israel, and reigned nine years.
- 2 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, yet not as the kings of Israel that were before him.
- 3 Against him came up Shalmaneser king of Assyria; and Hoshea became his servant, and brought him tribute.
- 4 And the king of Assyria found conspiracy in Hoshea; for he had sent messengers to So king of Egypt, and offered no tribute to the king of Assyria, as he had done year by year: therefore the king of Assyria shut him up, and bound him in prison.
- 5 Then the king of Assyria came up throughout all the land, and went up to Samaria, and besieged it three years.
- 6 In the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away unto Assyria, and placed them in Halah, and on the Habor, the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.
- 7 ¶ And it was so, because the children of Israel had sinned against Jehovah their God, who brought them up out of the land of Egypt from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and had feared other gods, and walked in the statutes of the nations, whom Jehovah cast out from before the children of Israel, and of the kings of Israel, which they *{1}* made. *{1} Or practised }*
- 8 And the children of Israel did secretly things that were not right against Jehovah their God: and they built them high places in all their cities, from the tower of the watchmen to the fortified city;
- 9 and they set them up *{1}* pillars and Asherim upon every high hill, and under every green tree; *{1} Or obelisks }*
- 10 and there they burnt incense in all the high places, as did the nations whom Jehovah carried away before them; and they wrought wicked things to provoke Jehovah to anger;
- 11 and they served idols, whereof Jehovah had said unto them, Ye shall not do this thing.
- 12 Yet Jehovah testified unto Israel, and unto Judah, by every prophet, and every seer, saying, Turn ye from your evil ways, and keep my commandments and my statutes, according to all the law which I commanded your fathers, and which I sent to you by my servants the prophets.
- 13 Notwithstanding, they would not hear, but hardened their neck, like to the neck of their fathers, who believed not in Jehovah their God.
- 14 And they rejected his statutes, and his covenant that he made with their fathers, and his testimonies which he testified unto them; and they followed vanity, and became vain, and *went* after the nations that were round about them, concerning whom Jehovah had charged them that they should not do like them.
- 15 And they forsook all the commandments of Jehovah their God, and made them molten images, even two calves, and made an Asherah, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served Baal.
- 16 And they caused their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire, and used divination and enchantments, and sold themselves to do that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, to provoke him to anger.
- 17 Therefore Jehovah was very angry with Israel, and removed them out of his sight: there was none left but the tribe of Judah only.
- 18 Also Judah kept not the commandments of Jehovah their God, but walked in the statutes of Israel which they *{1}* made. *{1} Or practised }*
- 19 And Jehovah rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and delivered them into the hand of spoilers, until he had cast them out of his sight.
- 20 For he rent Israel from the house of David; and they made Jeroboam the son of Nebat king: and Jeroboam *{1}* drove Israel from following Jehovah, and made them sin a great sin. *{1} According to another reading drew Israel away }*
- 21 And the children of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam which he did; they departed not from them;
- 22 until Jehovah removed Israel out of his sight, as he spake by all his servants the prophets. So Israel was carried away out of their own land to Assyria unto this day.
- 23 ¶ And the king of Assyria brought men from Babylon, and from Cuthah, and from Avva, and from Hamath and Sepharvaim, and placed them in the cities of Samaria instead of the children of Israel; and they possessed Samaria, and dwelt in the cities thereof.

- 25 And so it was, at the beginning of their dwelling there, that they feared not Jehovah: therefore Jehovah sent lions among them, which killed some of them.
- 26 Wherefore they spake to the king of Assyria, saying, The nations which thou hast carried away, and placed in the cities of Samaria, know not the law of the god of the land: therefore he hath sent lions among them, and, behold, they slay them, because they know not the law of the god of the land.
- 27 Then the king of Assyria commanded, saying, Carry thither one of the priests whom ye brought from thence; and let them go and dwell there, and let him teach them the law of the god of the land.
- 28 So one of the priests whom they had carried away from Samaria came and dwelt in Beth-el, and taught them how they should fear Jehovah.
- 29 Howbeit every nation made gods of their own, and put them in the houses of the high places which the Samaritans had made, every nation in their cities wherein they dwelt.
- 30 And the men of Babylon made Succoth-benoth, and the men of Cuth made Nergal, and the men of Hamath made Ashima,
- 31 and the Avvites made Nibhaz and Tartak; and the Sepharvites burnt their children in the fire to Adrammelech and Anammelech, the *{1}* gods of Sepharvaim. *{1}* Or god}
- 32 So they feared Jehovah, and made unto them from among themselves priests of the high places, who sacrificed for them in the houses of the high places.
- 33 They feared Jehovah, and served their own gods, after the manner of the nations from among whom they had been carried away.
- 34 Unto this day they do after the former manner: they fear not Jehovah, neither do they after their statutes, or after their ordinances, or after the law or after the commandment which Jehovah commanded the children of Jacob, whom he named Israel;
- 35 with whom Jehovah had made a covenant, and charged them, saying, Ye shall not fear other gods, nor bow yourselves to them, nor serve them, nor sacrifice to them:
- 36 but Jehovah, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt with great power and with an outstretched arm, him shall ye fear, and unto him shall ye bow yourselves, and to him shall ye sacrifice:
- 37 and the statutes and the ordinances, and the law and the commandment, which he wrote for you, ye shall observe to do for evermore; and ye shall not fear other gods:
- 38 and the covenant that I have made with you ye shall not forget; neither shall ye fear other gods:
- 39 but Jehovah your God shall ye fear; and he will deliver you out of the hand of all your enemies.
- 40 Howbeit they did not hearken, but they did after their former manner.
- 41 So these nations feared Jehovah, and served their graven images; their children likewise, and their children's children, as did their fathers, so do they unto this day.

---

8- Israel's collapse under Hoshea. (17.)

- a- Joshea's evil reign of 9 years. vs. 1-2
- b- Shalmaneser's siege of Samaria (724-722 B.C.). vs. 5-6
- c- Israel is carried to Assyria.
- d- The captivity explained. vs. 7-23
  - 1) Served idols.
  - 2) Rejected the warnings of the prophets.
- e- Spiritual condition of the north after captivity. vs. 24-41
  - 1) Half-breed population - Shalmaneser imported foreigners.
  - 2) Served a variety of gods.
  - 3) Feared the Lord, but served idols.

**2 Kings 18**

- 1 ¶ Now it came to pass in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, that Hezekiah the son of Ahaz king of Judah began to reign.
- 2 Twenty and five years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Abi the daughter of Zechariah.
- 3 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, according to all that David his father had done.
- 4 He removed the high places, and brake the pillars, and cut down the Asherah: and he brake in pieces the brazen serpent that Moses had made; for unto those days the children of Israel did burn incense to it; and <sup>{1}</sup> he called it <sup>{2}</sup> Nehushtan. <sup>{1}</sup> Or it was called <sup>{2}</sup> That is A piece of brass
- 5 He trusted in Jehovah, the God of Israel; so that after him was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor *among them* that were before him.
- 6 For he clave to Jehovah; he departed not from following him, but kept his commandments, which Jehovah commanded Moses.
- 7 And Jehovah was with him; whithersoever he went forth he prospered: and he rebelled against the king of Assyria, and served him not.
- 8 He smote the Philistines unto Gaza and the borders thereof, from the tower of the watchmen to the fortified city.
- 9 ¶ And it came to pass in the fourth year of king Hezekiah, which was the seventh year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, that Shalmaneser king of Assyria came up against Samaria, and besieged it.
- 10 And at the end of three years they took it: in the sixth year of Hezekiah, which was the ninth year of Hoshea king of Israel, Samaria was taken.
- 11 And the king of Assyria carried Israel away unto Assyria, and put them in Halah, and on the Habor, the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes,
- 12 because they obeyed not the voice of Jehovah their God, but transgressed his covenant, even all that Moses the servant of Jehovah commanded, and would not hear it, nor do it.
- 13 Now in the fourteenth year of king Hezekiah did <sup>{1}</sup> Sennacherib king of Assyria come up against all the fortified cities of Judah, and took them. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb Sanherib
- 14 And Hezekiah king of Judah sent to the king of Assyria to Lachish, saying, I have offended; return from me: that which thou puttest on me will I bear. And the king of Assyria appointed unto Hezekiah king of Judah three hundred talents of silver and thirty talents of gold.
- 15 And Hezekiah gave *him* all the silver that was found in the house of Jehovah, and in the treasures of the king's house.
- 16 At that time did Hezekiah cut off *the gold from* the doors of the temple of Jehovah, and *from* the <sup>{1}</sup> pillars which Hezekiah king of Judah had overlaid, and gave it to the king of Assyria. <sup>{1}</sup> Or doorposts
- 17 ¶ And the king of Assyria sent <sup>{1}</sup> Tartan and <sup>{1}</sup> Rab-saris and <sup>{1}</sup> Rabshakeh from Lachish to king Hezekiah with a great army unto Jerusalem. And they went up and came to Jerusalem. And when they were come up, they came and stood by the conduit of the upper pool, which is in the highway of the fuller's field. <sup>{1}</sup> The titles of Assyrian officers.
- 18 And when they had called to the king, there came out to them Eliakim the son of Hilkiyah, who was over the household, and Shebna the <sup>{1}</sup> scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the <sup>{2}</sup> recorder. <sup>{1}</sup> Or secretary <sup>{2}</sup> Or chronicler
- 19 And Rabshakeh said unto them, Say ye now to Hezekiah, Thus saith the great king, the king of Assyria, What confidence is this wherein thou trustest?
- 20 Thou sayest (but they are but <sup>{1}</sup> vain words), *There is* counsel and strength for the war. Now on whom dost thou trust, that thou hast rebelled against me? <sup>{1}</sup> Heb a word of the lips
- 21 Now, behold, thou trustest upon the staff of this bruised reed, even upon Egypt; whereon if a man lean, it will go into his hand, and pierce it: so is Pharaoh king of Egypt unto all that trust on him.
- 22 But if ye say unto me, We trust in Jehovah our God; is not that he, whose high places and whose altars Hezekiah hath taken away, and hath said to Judah and to Jerusalem, Ye shall worship before this altar in Jerusalem?
- 23 Now therefore, I pray thee, <sup>{1}</sup> give pledges to my master the king of Assyria, and I will give thee two thousand horses, if thou be able on thy part to set riders upon them. <sup>{1}</sup> Or make a wager with
- 24 How then canst thou turn away the face of one captain of the least of my master's servants, and put thy trust on Egypt for chariots and for horsemen?

- 25 Am I now come up without Jehovah against this place to destroy it? Jehovah said unto me, Go up against this land, and destroy it.
- 26 Then said Eliakim the son of Hilkiyah, and Shebnah, and Joah, unto Rabshakeh, Speak, I pray thee, to thy servants in the *{1}* Syrian language; for we understand it: and speak not with us in the Jews' language, in the ears of the people that are on the wall. *{1}* *Heb Aramean*}
- 27 But Rabshakeh said unto them, Hath my master sent me to thy master, and to thee, to speak these words? *hath he not sent me to the men that sit on the wall, to eat their own dung, and to drink their own water with you?*
- 28 Then Rabshakeh stood, and cried with a loud voice in the Jews' language, and spake, saying, Hear ye the word of the great king, the king of Assyria.
- 29 Thus saith the king, Let not Hezekiah deceive you; for he will not be able to deliver you out of his hand:
- 30 neither let Hezekiah make you trust in Jehovah, saying, Jehovah will surely deliver us, and this city shall not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.
- 31 Harken not to Hezekiah: for thus saith the king of Assyria, *{1}* Make your peace with me, and come out to me; and eat ye every one of his vine, and every one of his fig-tree, and drink ye every one the waters of his own cistern; *{1}* *Heb Make with me a blessing*}
- 32 Until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of olive-trees and of honey, that ye may live, and not die: and hearken not unto Hezekiah, when he persuadeth you, saying, Jehovah will deliver us.
- 33 Hath any of the gods of the nations ever delivered his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria?
- 34 Where are the gods of Hamath, and of Arpad? where are the gods of Sepharvaim, of Hena, and Ivvah? have they delivered Samaria out of my hand?
- 35 Who are they among all the gods of the countries, that have delivered their country out of my hand, that Jehovah should deliver Jerusalem out of my hand?
- 36 But the people held their peace, and answered him not a word; for the king's commandment was, saying, Answer him not.
- 37 Then came Eliakim the son of Hilkiyah, who was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder, to Hezekiah with their clothes rent, and told him the words of Rabshakeh.

### III. THE SOLITARY KINGDOM OF JUDAH. (2 Kings 18.-25.)

- A- The good reign of Hezekiah. (18. - 20.)
- 1- His successful beginning. vs. 18:1-12
- a- Religious revival. vs. 1-7
- b- Political expansion. vs. 8
- 2- Hezekiah's confrontation with Sennacharib. (18:13.-19:37.)
- a- Sennacharib invades Judah. vs. 13-16  
        14<sup>th</sup> year, 714 BC.
- b- Sennacharib threatens Jerusalem. vs. 17-37
- 1) The futility of Egypt's help. vs. 23
- 2) The example of Samaria exhibited. vs 34

**2 Kings 19**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when king Hezekiah heard it, that he rent his clothes, and covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of Jehovah.
- 2 And he sent Eliakim, who was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, covered with sackcloth, unto Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz.
- 3 And they said unto him, Thus saith Hezekiah, This day is a day of trouble, and of rebuke, and of contumely; for the children are come to the birth, and there is not strength to bring forth.
- 4 It may be Jehovah thy God will hear all the words of Rabshakeh, *{1}* whom the king of Assyria his master hath sent to defy the living God, and will rebuke the words which Jehovah thy God hath heard: wherefore lift up thy prayer for the remnant that is left. *{1} Or wherewith the king of Assyria hath sent him}*
- 5 So the servants of king Hezekiah came to Isaiah.
- 6 And Isaiah said unto them, Thus shall ye say to your master, Thus saith Jehovah, Be not afraid of the words that thou hast heard, wherewith the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me.
- 7 Behold, I will put a spirit in him, and he shall hear tidings, and shall return to his own land; and I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.
- 8 ¶ So Rabshakeh returned, and found the king of Assyria warring against Libnah; for he had heard that he was departed from Lachish.
- 9 And when he heard say of Tirhakah king of Ethiopia, Behold, he is come out to fight against thee, he sent messengers again unto Hezekiah, saying,
- 10 Thus shall ye speak to Hezekiah king of Judah, saying, Let not thy God in whom thou trustest deceive thee, saying, Jerusalem shall not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.
- 11 Behold, thou hast heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands, by *{1}* destroying them utterly: and shalt thou be delivered? *{1} Heb devoting them}*
- 12 Have the gods of the nations delivered them, which my fathers have destroyed, Gozan, and Haran, and Rezep, and the children of Eden that were in Telassar?
- 13 Where is the king of Hamath, and the king of Arpad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, of Hena, and Ivvah?
- 14 And Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the messengers, and read it; and Hezekiah went up unto the house of Jehovah, and spread it before Jehovah.
- 15 And Hezekiah prayed before Jehovah, and said, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, that *{1}* sittest *above* the cherubim, thou art the God, even thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth; thou hast made heaven and earth. *{1} Or art enthroned}*
- 16 Incline thine ear, O Jehovah, and hear; open thine eyes, O Jehovah, and see; and hear the words of Sennacherib, wherewith he hath sent him to defy the living God.
- 17 Of a truth, Jehovah, the kings of Assyria have laid waste the nations and their lands,
- 18 and have cast their gods into the fire; for they were no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone; therefore they have destroyed them.
- 19 Now therefore, O Jehovah our God, save thou us, I beseech thee, out of his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that thou Jehovah art God alone.
- 20 ¶ Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent to Hezekiah, saying, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, Whereas thou hast prayed to me against Sennacherib king of Assyria, I have heard *thee*.
- 21 This is the word that Jehovah hath spoken concerning him: The virgin daughter of Zion hath despised thee and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head *{1}* at thee. *{1} Heb after}*
- 22 Whom hast thou defied and blasphemed? and against whom hast thou exalted thy voice and lifted up thine eyes on high? *even* against the Holy One of Israel.
- 23 By thy messengers thou hast defied the Lord, and hast said, With the *{1}* multitude of my chariots am I come up to the height of the mountains, to the innermost parts of Lebanon; and I will cut down the tall cedars thereof, and the choice *{2}* fir-trees thereof; and I will enter into his farthest lodging-place, the forest of his fruitful field. *{1} According to another reading driving 2} Or cypress}*
- 24 I have digged and drunk strange waters, and with the sole of my feet will I dry up all the rivers of *{1}* Egypt. *{1} Or defence; Heb Mazon}*
- 25 Hast thou not heard how I have done it long ago, and formed it of ancient times? now have I brought it to pass, that it should be thine to lay waste fortified cities into ruinous heaps.
- 26 Therefore their inhabitants were of small power, they were dismayed and confounded; they were as the

- grass of the field, and as the green herb, as the grass on the housetops, and as grain blasted before it is grown up.
- 27 But I know thy sitting down, and thy going out, and thy coming in, and thy raging against me.
- 28 Because of thy raging against me, and because {1} thine arrogance is come up into mine ears, therefore will I put my hook in thy nose, and my bridle in thy lips, and I will turn thee back by the way by which thou camest. {1} Or thy careless ease}
- 29 And this shall be the sign unto thee: Ye shall eat this year that which groweth of itself, and in the second year that which springeth of the same; and in the third year sow ye, and reap, and plant vineyards, and eat the fruit thereof.
- 30 And {1} the remnant that is escaped of the house of Judah shall again take root downward, and bear fruit upward. {1} Heb the escaped of the house of Judah that remain }
- 31 For out of Jerusalem shall go forth a remnant, and out of mount Zion they that shall escape: the zeal of {1} Jehovah shall perform this. {1} According to another reading Jehovah of hosts; and so in Isa 37:32}
- 32 Therefore thus saith Jehovah concerning the king of Assyria, He shall not come unto this city, nor shoot an arrow there, neither shall he come before it with shield, nor cast up a mound against it.
- 33 By the way that he came, by the same shall he return, and he shall not come unto this city, saith Jehovah.
- 34 For I will defend this city to save it, for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake.
- 35 ¶ And it came to pass that night, that the angel of Jehovah went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when men arose early in the morning, behold, these were all dead bodies.
- 36 So Sennacherib king of Assyria departed, and went and returned, and dwelt at Nineveh.
- 37 And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that {1} Adrammelech and Sharezer smote him with the sword: and they escaped into the land of Ararat. And Esar-haddon his son reigned in his stead. {1} According to another reading Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons (and so in Isa 37:38)}

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| c- Hezekiah seeks the prophet Isaiah.                  | vs. 19:1-37 |
| d- Hezekiah seeks the Lord after Sennacharib's return. | vs. 8-19    |
| e- Promise of deliverance through Isaiah.              | vs. 20-34   |
| f- 185,000 Assyrians are smitten.<br>701 BC.           | vs. 35-37   |

**2 Kings 20**

- 1 ¶ In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz came to him, and said unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Set thy house in order: for thou shalt die, and not live.
- 2 Then he turned his face to the wall, and prayed unto Jehovah, saying,
- 3 Remember now, O Jehovah, I beseech thee, how I have walked before thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in thy sight. And Hezekiah wept sore.
- 4 And it came to pass, before Isaiah was gone *{1}* out into *{2}* the middle part of the city, that the word of Jehovah came to him, saying, *{1}* Or out of *{2}* According to another reading *the middle court*
- 5 Turn back, and say to Hezekiah the *{1}* prince of my people, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will heal thee; on the third day thou shalt go up unto the house of Jehovah. *{1}* Or leader
- 6 And I will add unto thy days fifteen years; and I will deliver thee and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria; and I will defend this city for mine own sake, and for my servant David's sake.
- 7 And Isaiah said, Take a cake of figs. And they took and laid it on the boil, and he recovered.
- 8 And Hezekiah said unto Isaiah, What shall be the sign that Jehovah will heal me, and that I shall go up unto the house of Jehovah the third day?
- 9 And Isaiah said, This shall be the sign unto thee from Jehovah, that Jehovah will do the thing that he hath spoken: *{1}* shall the shadow go forward ten *{2}* steps, or go back ten steps? *{1}* Or the shadow is gone forward ten steps, shall it go back etc *{2}* Or degrees
- 10 And Hezekiah answered, It is a light thing for the shadow to decline ten steps: nay, but let the shadow return backward ten steps.
- 11 And Isaiah the prophet cried unto Jehovah; and he brought the shadow ten steps backward, by which it had gone down on the *{1}* dial of Ahaz. *{1}* Heb steps
- 12 ¶ At that time *{1}* Berodach-baladan the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present unto Hezekiah; for he had heard that Hezekiah had been sick. *{1}* In Isa 39:1 Merodach-baladan
- 13 And Hezekiah hearkened unto them, and showed them all the house of his *{1}* precious things, the silver, and the gold, and the spices, and the precious oil, and *{2}* the house of his *{3}* armor, and all that was found in his treasures: there was nothing in his house, nor in all his dominion, that Hezekiah showed them not. *{1}* Or spicery *{2}* Another reading is all the house *{3}* Or jewels
- 14 Then came Isaiah the prophet unto king Hezekiah, and said unto him, What said these men? and from whence came they unto thee? And Hezekiah said, They are come from a far country, even from Babylon.
- 15 And he said, What have they seen in thy house? And Hezekiah answered, All that is in my house have they seen: there is nothing among my treasures that I have not showed them.
- 16 And Isaiah said unto Hezekiah, Hear the word of Jehovah.
- 17 Behold, the days come, that all that is in thy house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store unto this day, shall be carried to Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith Jehovah.
- 18 And of thy sons that shall issue from thee, whom thou shalt beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.
- 19 Then said Hezekiah unto Isaiah, Good is the word of Jehovah which thou hast spoken. He said moreover, Is it not so, if peace and truth shall be in my days?
- 20 Now the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and all his might, and how he made the pool, and the conduit, and brought water into the city, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 21 And Hezekiah slept with his fathers; and Manasseh his son reigned in his stead.



- 3- Hezekiah's illness and grant of 15 years. (20.)
- a- Note the date of this illness. vs. 6  
716 BC start of reign. Reigned 29 years. He lived after sickness for 15 years. He took sick in his 14<sup>th</sup> year of his reign, which was 702 BC.
  - b- His prayer and God's response. vs. 1-11  
Hezekiah's sign: sun going backwards 10 degrees on the dial of Ahaz!  
Is Isaiah a true prophet or what?!!!
  - c- His hospitality to the Babylonians. vs. 12-13  
He shows all his "stuff" to Barodach-Baladan the son of the king of Babylon.
  - d- Isaiah's prophecy of captivity in Babylon. vs. 14-19  
Ref. Is 39:7.
  - e- Hezekiah's ingenious water project. vs. 20

**2 Kings 21**

- 1 ¶ Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign; and he reigned five and fifty years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Hephzibah.
- 2 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, after the abominations of the nations whom Jehovah cast out before the children of Israel.
- 3 For he built again the high places which Hezekiah his father had destroyed; and he reared up altars for Baal, and made an Asherah, as did Ahab king of Israel, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served them.
- 4 And he built altars in the house of Jehovah, whereof Jehovah said, In Jerusalem will I put my name.
- 5 And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of Jehovah.
- 6 And he made his son to pass through the fire, and practised augury, and used enchantments, and <sup>{1}</sup> dealt with them that had familiar spirits, and with wizards: he wrought much evil in the sight of Jehovah, to provoke him to anger. <sup>{1}</sup> Or appointed; Heb made}
- 7 And he set the graven image of Asherah, that he had made, in the house of which Jehovah said to David and to Solomon his son, In this house, and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, will I put my name for ever;
- 8 neither will I cause the feet of Israel to wander any more out of the land which I gave their fathers, if only they will observe to do according to all that I have commanded them, and according to all the law that my servant Moses commanded them.
- 9 But they hearkened not: and Manasseh seduced them to do that which is evil more than did the nations whom Jehovah destroyed before the children of Israel.
- 10 ¶ And Jehovah spake by his servants the prophets, saying,
- 11 Because Manasseh king of Judah hath done these abominations, and hath done wickedly above all that the Amorites did, that were before him, and hath made Judah also to sin with his idols;
- 12 therefore thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel, Behold, I bring such evil upon Jerusalem and Judah, that whosoever heareth of it, both his ears shall tingle.
- 13 And I will stretch over Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the plummet of the house of Ahab; and I will wipe Jerusalem as a man wipeth a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down.
- 14 And I will cast off the remnant of mine inheritance, and deliver them into the hand of their enemies; and they shall become a prey and a spoil to all their enemies;
- 15 because they have done that which is evil in my sight, and have provoked me to anger, since the day their fathers came forth out of Egypt, even unto this day.
- 16 Moreover Manasseh shed innocent blood very much, till he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another; besides his sin wherewith he made Judah to sin, in doing that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah.
- 17 Now the rest of the acts of Manasseh, and all that he did, and his sin that he sinned, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 18 And Manasseh slept with his fathers, and was buried in the garden of his own house, in the garden of Uzza: and Amon his son reigned in his stead.
- 19 ¶ Amon was twenty and two years old when he began to reign; and he reigned two years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Meshullemeth the daughter of Haruz of Jotbah.
- 20 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, as did Manasseh his father.
- 21 And he walked in all the way that his father walked in, and served the idols that his father served, and worshipped them:
- 22 and he forsook Jehovah, the God of his fathers, and walked not in the way of Jehovah.
- 23 And the servants of Amon conspired against him, and put the king to death in his own house.
- 24 But the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against king Amon; and the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his stead.
- 25 Now the rest of the acts of Amon which he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 26 And he was buried in his sepulchre in the garden of Uzza: and Josiah his son reigned in his stead.

- B- The evil reigns of Manasseh and Amon. (21.)
- 1- Manasseh--55 years' evil reign. vs. 1-18
    - a- His idolatry. vs. 1-9
    - b- His bloodshed. vs. 16
    - c- The Lord's judgment. vs. 10-15
  - 2- Amon--2 years' evil reign'. vs. 19-26
    - He did, however, have a 'good' son, Josiah.

**2 Kings 22**

- 1 ¶ Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign; and he reigned thirty and one years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Jedidah the daughter of Adaiah of Bozkath.
- 2 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, and walked in all the way of David his father, and turned not aside to the right hand or to the left.
- 3 And it came to pass in the eighteenth year of king Josiah, that the king sent Shaphan, the son of Azaliah the son of Meshullam, the scribe, to the house of Jehovah, saying,
- 4 Go up to Hilkiyah the high priest, that he may sum the money which is brought into the house of Jehovah, which the keepers of the threshold have gathered of the people:
- 5 and let them deliver it into the hand of the workmen that have the oversight of the house of Jehovah; and let them give it to the workmen that are in the house of Jehovah, to repair the breaches of the house,
- 6 unto the carpenters, and to the builders, and to the masons, and for buying timber and hewn stone to repair the house.
- 7 Howbeit there was no reckoning made with them of the money that was delivered into their hand; for they dealt faithfully.
- 8 And Hilkiyah the high priest said unto Shaphan the scribe, I have found the book of the law in the house of Jehovah. And Hilkiyah delivered the book to Shaphan, and he read it.
- 9 And Shaphan the scribe came to the king, and brought the king word again, and said, Thy servants have *{1}* emptied out the money that was found in the house, and have delivered it into the hand of the workmen that have the oversight of the house of Jehovah. *{1} Or poured out}*
- 10 And Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying, Hilkiyah the priest hath delivered me a book. And Shaphan read it before the king.
- 11 ¶ And it came to pass, when the king had heard the words of the book of the law, that he rent his clothes.
- 12 And the king commanded Hilkiyah the priest, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Achbor the son of Micaiah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah the king's servant, saying,
- 13 Go ye, inquire of Jehovah for me, and for the people, and for all Judah, concerning the words of this book that is found; for great is the wrath of Jehovah that is kindled against us, because our fathers have not hearkened unto the words of this book, to do according unto all that which is *{1}* written concerning us. *{1} Or enjoined us}*
- 14 So Hilkiyah the priest, and Ahikam, and Achbor, and Shaphan, and Asaiah, went unto Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of Tikvah, the son of Harhas, keeper of the wardrobe (now she dwelt in Jerusalem in the *{1}* second quarter); and they communed with her. *{1} Heb Mishneh}*
- 15 And she said unto them, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel: Tell ye the man that sent you unto me,
- 16 Thus saith Jehovah, Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, even all the words of the book which the king of Judah hath read.
- 17 Because they have forsaken me, and have burned incense unto other gods, that they might provoke me to anger with all the work of their hands, therefore my wrath shall be kindled against this place, and it shall not be quenched.
- 18 But unto the king of Judah, who sent you to inquire of Jehovah, thus shall ye say to him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel: As touching the words which thou hast heard,
- 19 because thy heart was tender, and thou didst humble thyself before Jehovah, when thou heardest what I spake against this place, and against the inhabitants thereof, that they should become *{1}* a desolation and a curse, and hast rent thy clothes, and wept before me; I also have heard thee, saith Jehovah. *{1} Or an astonishment}*
- 20 Therefore, behold, I will gather thee to thy fathers, and thou shalt be gathered to thy grave in peace, neither shall thine eyes see all the evil which I will bring upon this place. And they brought the king word again.

- C- The good reign of Josiah. 31-years. (22.-23.)
- 1- His temple repairs. vs. 1-7  
Started at age 18.
  - 2- The book of the law is found. vs. 8-19  
Quite possibly the entire Pentateuch,  
placed in the cornerstone of Temple by Solomon.

**2 Kings 23**

- 1 ¶ And the king sent, and they gathered unto him all the elders of Judah and of Jerusalem.
- 2 And the king went up to the house of Jehovah, and all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with him, and the priests, and the prophets, and all the people, both small and great: and he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant which was found in the house of Jehovah.
- 3 And the king stood {1} by the pillar, and made a covenant before Jehovah, to walk after Jehovah, and to keep his commandments, and his testimonies, and his statutes, with all *his* heart, and all *his* soul, to {2} confirm the words of this covenant that were written in this book: and all the people stood to the covenant. {1} Or on the platform 2) Or perform }
- 4 ¶ And the king commanded Hilkiah the high priest, and the priests of the second order, and the keepers of the threshold, to bring forth out of the temple of Jehovah all the vessels that were made for Baal, and for the Asherah, and for all the host of heaven, and he burned them without Jerusalem in the fields of the Kidron, and carried the ashes of them unto Beth-el.
- 5 And he put down the {1} idolatrous priests, whom the kings of Judah had ordained to burn incense in the high places in the cities of Judah, and in the places round about Jerusalem; them also that burned incense unto Baal, to the sun, and to the moon, and to the {2} planets, and to all the host of heaven. {1} Heb Chemarim; See Ho 10:5; Zep 1:4. 2) Or twelve signs }
- 6 And he brought out the Asherah from the house of Jehovah, without Jerusalem, unto the brook Kidron, and burned it at the brook Kidron, and beat it to dust, and cast the dust thereof upon the graves of the {1} common people. {1} Heb children of the people }
- 7 And he brake down the houses of the sodomites, that were in the house of Jehovah, where the women wove {1} hangings for the Asherah. {1} Or tents; Heb houses }
- 8 And he brought all the priests out of the cities of Judah, and defiled the high places where the priests had burned incense, from Geba to Beer-sheba; and he brake down the high places of the gates that were at the entrance of the gate of Joshua the governor of the city, which were on a man's left hand at the gate of the city.
- 9 Nevertheless the priests of the high places came not up to the altar of Jehovah in Jerusalem, but they did eat unleavened bread among their brethren.
- 10 And he defiled Topheth, which is in the valley of the {1} children of Hinnom, that no man might make his son or his daughter to pass through the fire to Molech. {1} According to another reading son }
- 11 And he took away the horses that the kings of Judah had given to the sun, at the entrance of the house of Jehovah, by the chamber of Nathan-melech the chamberlain, which was in the precincts; and he burned the chariots of the sun with fire.
- 12 And the altars that were on the roof of the upper chamber of Ahaz, which the kings of Judah had made, and the altars which Manasseh had made in the two courts of the house of Jehovah, did the king break down, and {1} beat *them* down from thence, and cast the dust of them into the brook Kidron. {1} Or ran from thence }
- 13 And the high places that were before Jerusalem, which were on the right hand of the mount of {1} corruption, which Solomon the king of Israel had builded for Ashtoreth the abomination of the Sidonians, and for Chemosh the abomination of Moab, and for Milcom the abomination of the children of Ammon, did the king defile. {1} Or destruction }
- 14 And he brake in pieces the {1} pillars, and cut down the Asherim, and filled their places with the bones of men. {1} Or obelisks }
- 15 Moreover the altar that was at Beth-el, and the high place which Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made Israel to sin, had made, even that altar and the high place he brake down; and he burned the high place and beat it to dust, and burned the Asherah.
- 16 And as Josiah turned himself, he spied the sepulchres that were there in the mount; and he sent, and took the bones out of the sepulchres, and burned them upon the altar, and defiled it, according to the word of Jehovah which the man of God proclaimed, who proclaimed these things.
- 17 Then he said, What monument is that which I see? And the men of the city told him, It is the sepulchre of the man of God, who came from Judah, and proclaimed these things that thou hast done against the altar of Beth-el.
- 18 And he said, Let him be; let no man move his bones. So they let his bones alone, with the bones of the prophet that came out of Samaria.
- 19 And all the houses also of the high places that were in the cities of Samaria, which the kings of Israel

- had made to provoke *Jehovah* to anger, Josiah took away, and did to them according to all the acts that he had done in Beth-el.
- 20 And he {1} slew all the priests of the high places that were there, upon the altars, and burned men's bones upon them; and he returned to Jerusalem. {1} Or *sacrificed* }
- 21 And the king commanded all the people, saying, Keep the passover unto *Jehovah* your God, as it is written in this book of the covenant.
- 22 Surely there was not kept such a passover from the days of the judges that judged Israel, {1} nor in all the days of the kings of Israel, nor of the kings of Judah; {1} Or *even in all...and of* }
- 23 but in the eighteenth year of king Josiah was this passover kept to *Jehovah* in Jerusalem.
- 24 Moreover them that had familiar spirits, and the wizards, and the teraphim, and the idols, and all the abominations that were seen in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, did Josiah put away, that he might {1} confirm the words of the law which were written in the book that Hilkiah the priest found in the house of *Jehovah*. {1} Or *perform* }
- 25 ¶ And like unto him was there no king before him, that turned to *Jehovah* with all his heart, and with all his soul, and with all his might, according to all the law of Moses; neither after him arose there any like him.
- 26 Notwithstanding, *Jehovah* turned not from the fierceness of his great wrath, wherewith his anger was kindled against Judah, because of all the provocations wherewith Manasseh had provoked him.
- 27 And *Jehovah* said, I will remove Judah also out of my sight, as I have removed Israel, and I will cast off this city which I have chosen, even Jerusalem, and the house of which I said, My name shall be there.
- 28 Now the rest of the acts of Josiah, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?
- 29 In his days Pharaoh-nechoh king of Egypt went up against the king of Assyria to the river Euphrates: and king Josiah went against him; and *Pharaoh-nechoh* slew him at Megiddo, when he had seen him.
- 30 And his servants carried him in a chariot dead from Megiddo, and brought him to Jerusalem, and buried him in his own sepulchre. And the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah, and anointed him, and made him king in his father's stead.

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 3- The cities of Judah are purged of idolatry.   | vs. 23:1-14 |
| 4- Idolatry in Samaria purged.   | vs. 15-20   |
| 5- The Passover is kept.<br>The greatest in 650 years! In 18 <sup>th</sup> year of Josiah's reign. | vs. 21-27   |
| 6- The judgment of God yet remained on Judah.  | vs 26-27    |
| 7- The death of Josiah in pursuing Pharaoh-nechoh.<br>In 609 BC.                                   | vs 28-30    |

**2 Kings 23 (cont.)**

- 31 ¶ Jehoahaz was twenty and three years old when he began to reign; and he reigned three months in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Hamutal the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.
- 32 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, according to all that his fathers had done.
- 33 And Pharaoh-necoh put him in bonds at Riblah in the land of Hamath, *{1}* that he might not reign in Jerusalem; and put the land to a *{2}* tribute of a hundred talents of silver, and a talent of gold. *{1}*  
*According to another reading when he reigned 2) Or fine}*
- 34 And Pharaoh-necoh made Eliakim the son of Josiah king in the room of Josiah his father, and changed his name to Jehoiakim: but he took Jehoahaz away; and he came to Egypt, and died there.
- 35 And Jehoiakim gave the silver and the gold to Pharaoh; but he taxed the land to give the money according to the commandment of Pharaoh: he exacted the silver and the gold of the people of the land, of every one according to his taxation, to give it unto Pharaoh-necoh.
- 36 Jehoiakim was twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Zebidah the daughter of Pedaiah of Rumah.
- 37 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, according to all that his fathers had done.

**2 Kings 24**

- 1 ¶ In his days Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up, and Jehoiakim became his servant three years: then he turned and rebelled against him.
- 2 And Jehovah sent against him bands of the Chaldeans, and bands of the Syrians, and bands of the Moabites, and bands of the children of Ammon, and sent them against Judah to destroy it, according to the word of Jehovah, which he spake by his servants the prophets.
- 3 Surely at the commandment of Jehovah came this upon Judah, to remove them out of his sight, for the sins of Manasseh, according to all that he did,
- 4 and also for the innocent blood that he shed; for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood: and Jehovah would not pardon.
- 5 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Judah?



D- The evil reigns of Josiah s sons and the captivity. (23:31.-25:30.)

- 1- Jehoahaz-- 3 months vs. 31-33  
Dethroned by Pharaoh and taken to Egypt.
- 2- Jehoiakim--11 years. (Eliakim). vs. 34-24:5.  
Invasion by Nebuchadnezzar in 605 B.C.

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 24:6 to 25:30 are backed up.

**2 Kings 24 (cont.)**

- 6 So Jehoiakim slept with his fathers; and Jehoiachin his son reigned in his stead.
- 7 And the king of Egypt came not again any more out of his land; for the king of Babylon had taken, from the brook of Egypt unto the river Euphrates, all that pertained to the king of Egypt.
- 8 ¶ Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he began to reign; and he reigned in Jerusalem three months: and his mother's name was Nehushta the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem.
- 9 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, according to all that his father had done.
- 10 At that time the servants of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up to Jerusalem, and the city was besieged.
- 11 And Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came unto the city, while his servants were besieging it;
- 12 and Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, and his mother, and his servants, and his princes, and his *{1}* officers: and the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reign. *{1} Or eunuchs*
- 13 And he carried out thence all the treasures of the house of Jehovah, and the treasures of the king's house, and cut in pieces all the vessels of gold, which Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of Jehovah, as Jehovah had said.
- 14 And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the princes, and all the mighty men of valor, even ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and the smiths; none remained, save the poorest sort of the people of the land.
- 15 And he carried away Jehoiachin to Babylon; and the king's mother, and the king's wives, and his *{1}* officers, and the *{2}* chief men of the land, carried he into captivity from Jerusalem to Babylon. *{1} Or eunuchs 2) Or mighty*
- 16 And all the men of might, even seven thousand, and the craftsmen and the smiths a thousand, all of them strong and apt for war, even them the king of Babylon brought captive to Babylon.
- 17 And the king of Babylon made Mattaniah, *Jehoiachin's* father's brother, king in his stead, and changed his name to Zedekiah.
- 18 Zedekiah was twenty and one years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was *{1}* Hamutal the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. *{1} Heb Hamital*
- 19 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, according to all that Jehoiakim had done.
- 20 For through the anger of Jehovah did it come to pass in Jerusalem and Judah, until he had cast them out from his presence. And Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

**2 Kings 25**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth day of the month, that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came, he and all his army, against Jerusalem, and encamped against it; and they built forts against it round about.
- 2 So the city was besieged unto the eleventh year of king Zedekiah.
- 3 On the ninth day of the *fourth* month the famine was sore in the city, so that there was no bread for the people of the land.
- 4 Then a breach was made in the city, and all the men of war *fled* by night by the way of the gate between the two walls, which was by the king's garden (now the Chaldeans were against the city round about); and *the king* went by the way of the Arabah.

- 5 But the army of the Chaldeans pursued after the king, and overtook him in the plains of Jericho; and all his army was scattered from him.
- 6 Then they took the king, and carried him up unto the king of Babylon to Riblah; and they *{1}* gave judgment upon him. *{1} Or spake with him of judgment}*
- 7 And they slew the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and put out the eyes of Zedekiah, and bound him in fetters, and carried him to Babylon.
- 8 ¶ Now in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month, which was the nineteenth year of king Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, came Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard, a servant of the king of Babylon, unto Jerusalem.
- 9 And he burnt the house of Jehovah, and the king's house; and all the houses of Jerusalem, even every great house, burnt he with fire.
- 10 And all the army of the Chaldeans, that were *with* the captain of the guard, brake down the walls of Jerusalem round about.
- 11 And the residue of the people that were left in the city, and those that fell away, that fell to the king of Babylon, and the residue of the multitude, did Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard carry away captive.
- 12 But the captain of the guard left of the poorest of the land to be vinedressers and husbandmen.
- 13 And the pillars of brass that were in the house of Jehovah, and the bases and the brazen sea that were in the house of Jehovah, did the Chaldeans break in pieces, and carried the brass of them to Babylon.
- 14 And the pots, and the shovels, and the snuffers, and the spoons, and all the vessels of brass wherewith they ministered, took they away.
- 15 And the firepans, and the basins, that which was of gold, in gold, and that which was of silver, in silver, the captain of the guard took away.
- 16 The two pillars, the one sea, and the bases, which Solomon had made for the house of Jehovah, the brass of all these vessels was without weight.
- 17 The height of the one pillar was eighteen cubits, and a capital of brass was upon it; and the height of the capital was three cubits, with network and pomegranates upon the capital round about, all of brass: and like unto these had the second pillar with network.
- 18 And the captain of the guard took Seraiah the chief priest, and Zephaniah the second priest, and the three keepers of the threshold:
- 19 and out of the city he took an *{1}* officer that was set over the men of war; and five men of them that saw the king's face, who were found in the city; and the *{2}* scribe, the captain of the host, who mustered the people of the land; and threescore men of the people of the land, that were found in the city. *{1} Or eunuch 2) Or scribe of the captain of the host }*
- 20 And Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard took them, and brought them to the king of Babylon to Riblah.
- 21 And the king of Babylon smote them, and put them to death at Riblah in the land of Hamath. So Judah was carried away captive out of his land.
- 22 ¶ And as for the people that were left in the land of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had left, even over them he made Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, governor.
- 23 Now when all the captains of the forces, they and their men, heard that the king of Babylon had made Gedaliah governor, they came to Gedaliah to Mizpah, even Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and Johanan the son of Kareah, and Seraiah the son of Tanhumeth the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah the son of the Maacathite, they and their men.
- 24 And Gedaliah sware to them and to their men, and said unto them, Fear not because of the servants of the Chaldeans: dwell in the land, and serve the king of Babylon, and it shall be well with you.
- 25 But it came to pass in the seventh month, that Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama, of the seed royal, came, and ten men with him, and smote Gedaliah, so that he died, and the Jews and the Chaldeans that were with him at Mizpah.
- 26 And all the people, both small and great, and the captains of the forces, arose, and came to Egypt; for they were afraid of the Chaldeans.
- 27 And it came to pass in the seven and thirtieth year of the captivity of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the seven and twentieth day of the month, that Evil-merodach king of Babylon, in the year that he began to reign, did lift up the head of Jehoiachin king of Judah out of prison;

28 and he spake kindly to him, and set his throne above the throne of the kings that were with him in  
Babylon,  
29 and changed his prison garments. And *Jehoiachin* did eat bread before him continually all the days of  
his life:  
30 and for his allowance, there was a continual allowance given him of the king, every day a portion, all  
the days of his life.

---

- 3- Jehoiachin--3 months. vs. 24:6-16  
    The first deportation (597) and ransacking of temple.
- 4- Zedekiah--11 years. vs. 24:17-20
  - a- His rebellion and Nebuchadnezzar's siege (2 years).
  - b- Jerusalem destroyed and the final deportation.
- 5- Gedaliah is made governor over Judah. vs. 25:22-26
  - a- Gedaliah is slain as a traitor to Judah.
  - b- The residue flees to Egypt.  
    They take Jeremiah with them.
- 6- Jehoiachin's favor in Babylon. vs. 27-30

## Questions On The Books Of Kings

- 1- Who instituted the campaign to put Solomon on the Throne?
- 2- Who became Solomon's high priest?
- 3- Why was Abiathar removed from the priesthood?
- 4- Why was Joab slain and where?
- 5- What did Solomon ask of the Lord and what did he receive?
- 6- How far did Solomon's dominion extend?
- 7- When was the Temple begun and how long was it under construction?
- 8- How was the temple furniture different from the tabernacle furniture?
- 9- What three vents climaxed the building of the temple?.
- 10- Name several of Solomon's building projects.
- 11- Name the three restrictions for a king in Deu. 17 which Solomon violated.
- 12- What was the cause of Solomon's idolatry?
- 13- What was the judgment on his idolatry?
- 14- Name the first kings of the divided kingdoms.

- 15- Describe the feeling of the people toward the close of Solomon's reign .
- 16- Why was judgment pronounced against Jeroboam by the Lord?
- 17- Characterize the relations between Judah and Israel in the first 50 years.
- 18- Who was the first good king of Judah? How long did he reign?
- 19- Name the two longest reigning dynasties of Israel.
- 20- Who introduced Baal worship as a national religion in the Northern Kingdom?
- 21- Who purged Israel of Baal worship?
- 22- Who introduced Baal worship to Judah?
- 23- Which two kings of Israel and Judah became friendly and became linked by their children's marriage?
- 24- Name the four kings of Judah under whose reigns revivals took place.
- 25- At whose reigns does the book of 1 Kings end?
- 26- At what point does Elijah appear on the scene?
- 27- Who built Samaria and moved the capital there?
- 28- What particular sin was Elijah raised up to condemn?

29 Where do you think Mt. Horeb is?

30. Where might Elijah be mentioned as one of the two Witnesses (Bible Verse)

## II Kings

- 1- Name the three kings of Israel during whose reigns Elijah and Elisha prophesied
- 2- Characterize the ministry of Elisha.
- 3- What king did Elisha anoint as king over Israel and what command did he give him?
- 4- What dynasty reigned the longest over Israel, and give the approximate dates?
- 5- Characterize the reign of the one queen of Judah. What was her name?
- 6- Characterize the reign of Amaziah over Judah.
- 7- Characterize the reign of Jeroboam II over Israel.
- 8- Characterize the period in Israel following the Jehu dynasty.
- 9- At what points did the Assyrians begin to invade Israel and what brought about the second invasion?
- 10- State the significance of 2 Kings 17.
- 11- When was the northern kingdom taken captive, where were they taken, and what brought it about?

- 12- When did Hezekiah come to the throne of Judah and for what was he famous?
- 13- Who was Judah's most wicked king and how did his reign end?
- 14- To whom was The Babylonian captivity of Judah first revealed and approximately at what date?
- 15- For what was Josiah famous?
- 16- What event further inspired Josiah's revival efforts?
- 17- Describe the death of Josiah.
- 18- Characterize the reigns of the four sons of Josiah.
- 19- What shift in world power took place from 625 to 600 B.C.?
- 20- Name the kings that were taken to Babylon.
- 21- Describe the fall of Jerusalem.





**THE BOOKS OF CHRONICLES**  
**INTRODUCTION**  
**PRINCIPLES**  
**TEXT**  
**OUTLINE**  
**QUESTIONS**

Adapted from the larger work (under contract - prior his home-going) of  
**Dr. Stanley A. Ellisen, Beloved Professor of English Bible**  
**And Interpretation**  
**At The Western Baptist Theological Seminary.**

This Monograph was prepared for Seminary,  
Bible College, Church and Home Bible studies.  
Also contained in each book is an Introduction and  
on opposing pages the associated Biblical text taken from  
the ASV Version of 1901; and a list of  
Class Questions.

## Introduction

### I. Authorship.

A- The title "Chronicles" dates from the Vulgate as being "a chronicles of the entire divine history."

The Hebrews called them "Journals." The Septuagint referred to them as "Omissions" as though these books were supplementary to the books of Samuel and Kings, (4 books of Kings).

B - Though anonymous, they are often assigned to Ezra for the following reasons:

- 1- Hebrew tradition linked them and assigned them a common authorship.
- 2- The last verses of II Chronicles are the same as the first verses of Ezra.
- 3- The literary style is very similar to that of Ezra.
- 4- The point of view is priestly as is that of Ezra.
- 5- No one was more preeminently qualified to compose such a work as Ezra in the post-captivity period.

C- The author is rather a compiler than a composer, using about 14 sources (i.e., extant chronicles of the kings and records of the prophets).

### II. Historical Setting.

A- Date:.

I and II Chronicles were probably written by Ezra between 445 and 420, i.e., after the return to establish worship in the temple.

B- Circumstance:

The remnant had returned and the temple was rebuilt. While the people waited for the establishment of the promised Messianic Kingdom, sin and defection set in and worship was neglected. The books then form an ecclesiastical history emphasizing the prominence of worship, the centrality of the Jerusalem temple, and the sovereignty of God over the nation.

### III. The Purpose and Theme of the Books of Chronicles.

The purpose of Chronicles was to meet the need of the post-exilic returned remnant. They look to the past, tracing God's selection of and faithfulness to Israel and their own apostasy. They also look to the future with the prophetic promises for the Davidic line. Although the throne was vacant, the Davidic line was still intact. They look to the present, pointing to the presence of Jehovah and His readiness to bless when His conditions are met. The purpose is not so much to castigate for past sins but to encourage to present faithfulness for a bright new era ahead.

It is to be noted that Chronicles is not a continuation of Israel's history but a new beginning, giving the complete cycle of Hebrew History from the divine viewpoint.

This divine viewpoint is everywhere seen. Some examples of this emphasis may be noted, below:

- 1- The people of the Lord are traced (I Chronicles 1 - 9).
- 2- The anointed of the Lord are specified (10 - 12),
- 3- The ark of the Lord is emphasized (13 - 16).
- 4- The covenant of the Lord (17 - 21).
- 5- The temple of the Lord (I Chronicles 22 - II Chronicles 7).
- 6- The throne is called the throne of the Lord (II Chronicles 9:8).

Note several distinctions between, chronicles and the books of Samuel and Kings:

- 1- Chronicles is priestly rather than from the prophet's viewpoint.
- 2- Chronicles gives the ecclesiastical rather than the political picture.
- 3- Chronicles concerns the Judaic line, which was true to the temple rather than the northern kingdom of Israel which had forsaken the temple.
- 4- Chronicles emphasizes the faithfulness of the Davidic line rather than their sins. For instance, David's great sin is not recorded; Solomon's idolatry is omitted; though the great sins of Manasseh are depicted, the chronicler also relates his final repentance in captivity and his reform efforts.
- 5- Whereas the book of Kings is more indictive to guilt (written during the captivity to remonstrate), Chronicles is more incitive to loyalty for the new beginning.

## An Outline Of The Books Of Chronicles

---

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| I. The genealogies from Adam to David.              | 1 Chronicles 1-9.  |
| II. The history of David's reign.                   | 10.-29.            |
| III. The history of Solomon's reign                 | 2 Chronicles 1.-9. |
| IV. The history of the kings of Judah - Good Kings. | 10.-36.            |
-

**1 Chronicles 1**

- 1 ¶ Adam, Seth, Enosh,
- 2 Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared,
- 3 Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech,
- 4 Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth.
- 5 The sons of Japheth: Gomer, and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras.
- 6 And the sons of Gomer: Ashkenaz, and *{1}* Diphath, and Togarmah. *{1}* *In Ge 10:3 Riphath}*
- 7 And the sons of Javan: Elishah, and Tarshish, Kittim, and *{1}* Rodanim. *{1}* *In Ge 10:4 Dodanim}*
- 8 The sons of Ham: Cush, and Mizraim, Put, and Canaan.
- 9 And the sons of Cush: Seba, and Havilah, and Sabta, and Raama, and Sabteca. And the sons of Raamah: Sheba, and Dedan.
- 10 And Cush begat Nimrod; he began to be a mighty one in the earth.
- 11 And Mizraim begat Ludim, and Anamim, and Lehabim, and Naphtuhim,
- 12 and Pathrusim, and Casluhim (from whence came *{1}* the Philistines), and Caphtorim. *{1}* *Heb Pelishtim}*
- 13 And Canaan begat Sidon his first-born, and Heth,
- 14 and the Jebusite, and the Amorite, and the Girgashite,
- 15 and the Hivite, and the Arkite, and the Sinite,
- 16 and the Arvadite, and the Zemarite, and the Hamathite.
- 17 The sons of Shem: Elam, and Asshur, and Arpachshad, and Lud, and Aram, and Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and *{1}* Meshech. *{1}* *In Ge 10:23 Mash}*
- 18 And Arpachshad begat Shelah, and Shelah begat Eber.
- 19 And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of the one was Peleg; for in his days the earth was divided; and his brother's name was Joktan.
- 20 And Joktan begat Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah,
- 21 and Hadoram, and Uzal, and Diklah,
- 22 and *{1}* Ebal, and Abimael, and Sheba, *{1}* *In Ge 10:28 Obal}*
- 23 and Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab. All these were the sons of Joktan.
- 24 Shem, Arpachshad, Shelah,
- 25 Eber, Peleg, Reu,
- 26 Serug, Nahor, Terah,
- 27 Abram (the same is Abraham).
- 28 ¶ The sons of Abraham: Isaac, and Ishmael.
- 29 These are their generations: the first-born of Ishmael, Nebaioth; then Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam,
- 30 Mishma, and Dumah, Massa, Hadad, and Tema,
- 31 Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. These are the sons of Ishmael.
- 32 And the sons of Keturah, Abraham's concubine: she bare Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah. And the sons of Jokshan: Sheba, and Dedan.
- 33 And the sons of Midian: Ephah, and Epher, and Hanoch, and Abida, and Eldaah. All these were the sons of Keturah.
- 34 And Abraham begat Isaac. The sons of Isaac: Esau, and Israel.
- 35 The sons of Esau: Eliphaz, Reuel, and Jeush, and Jalam, and Korah.
- 36 The sons of Eliphaz: Teman, and Omar, *{1}* Zephi, and Gatam, Kenaz, and Timna, and Amalek. *{1}* *In Ge 36:11 Zepho}*
- 37 The sons of Reuel: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.
- 38 And the sons of Seir: Lotan, and Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah, and Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan.
- 39 And the sons of Lotan: Hori, and *{1}* Homam; and Timna was Lotan's sister. *{1}* *In Ge 36:22 Hemam}*
- 40 The sons of Shobal: *{1}* Alian, and Manahath, and Ebal, *{2}* Shephi, and Onam. And the sons of Zibeon: Aiah, and Anah. *{1}* *In Ge 36:23 Alvan 2) In Ge 36:23 Shepho}*
- 41 The sons of Anah: Dishon. And the sons of Dishon: *{1}* Hamran, and Eshban, and Ithran, and Cheran. *{1}* *In Ge 36:26 Hemdan}*
- 42 The sons of Ezer: Bilhan, and Zaavan, *{1}* Jaakan. The sons of Dishan: Uz, and Aran. *{1}* *In Ge 36:27 and Akan}*
- 43 Now these are the kings that reigned in the land of Edom, before there resigned any king over the children of Israel: Bela the son of Beor; and the name of his city was Dinhabah.
- 44 And Bela died, and Jobab the son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his stead.
- 45 And Jobab died, and Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his stead.

- 46 And Husham died, and Hadad the son of Bedad, who smote Midian in the field of Moab, reigned in his stead; and the name of his city was Avith.
- 47 And Hadad died, and Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his stead.
- 48 And Samlah died, and Shaul of Rehoboth by the River reigned in his stead.
- 49 And Shaul died, and Baal-hanan the son of Achbor reigned in his stead.
- 50 And Baal-hanan died, and <sup>{1}</sup> Hadad reigned in his stead; and the name of his city was <sup>{2}</sup> Pai: and his wife's name was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Me-zahab. <sup>{1}</sup> In Ge 36:39 Hadar 2) In Ge 36:39 Pau}
- 51 And Hadad died. And the chiefs of Edom were: chief Timna, chief <sup>{1}</sup> Aliah, chief Jetheth, <sup>{1}</sup> In Ge 36:40 Alvah}
- 52 chief Oholibamah, chief Elah, chief Pinon,
- 53 chief Kenaz, chief Teman, chief Mibzar,
- 54 chief Magdiel, chief Iram. These are the chiefs of Edom.

## I. THE GENEALOGIES FROM ADAM TO DAVID. (1 Chronicles 1-9.

Note the Prominent features of Chronicles.

- 1- The supplemental character of the book.  
Some things not included in "Kings", much like John's Gospel contrasted with the Synoptics.
- 2- The priestly viewpoint.
- 3- The political orientation. (of Judah)
- 4- The distinctive purpose of encouraging.
- 5- The revival emphasis. (even under evil Kings)

### A- The primeval period--Adam to Abraham. vs. 1:1-28

- 1- The sons of Adam vs. 1-4
- 2- The sons of Japheth vs. 5-7
- 3- The sons of Ham vs. 8-16
- 4- The sons of Shem vs. 17-28

### B- The patriarchal period. vs. 29-54

- 1- The sons of Ishmael vs. 29-31
- 2- The sons of Keturah vs. 32-33
- 3- The sons of Esau vs. 34-54

**1 Chronicles 2**

- 1 ¶ These are the sons of Israel: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun,  
2 Dan, Joseph, and Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.
- 3 The sons of Judah: Er, and Onan, and Shelah; which three were born unto him of Shua's daughter the  
Canaanitess. And Er, Judah's first-born, was wicked in the sight of Jehovah; and he slew him.  
4 And Tamar his daughter-in-law bare him Perez and Zerah. All the sons of Judah were five.  
5 The sons of Perez: Hezron, and Hamul.
- 6 And the sons of Zerah: <sup>{1}</sup> Zimri, and Ethan, and Heman, and Calcol, and <sup>{2}</sup> Dara; five of them in all. <sup>{1}</sup>  
In Jos 7:1 Zabdi 2) In 1 Ki 4:31 Darda}
- 7 And the sons of Carmi: <sup>{1}</sup> Achar, the troubler of Israel, who committed a trespass in the devoted thing.  
{1} In Jos 7:1 Achan}
- 8 And the sons of Ethan: Azariah.
- 9 The sons also of Hezron, that were born unto him: Jerahmeel, and Ram, and Chelubai.
- 10 And Ram begat Amminadab, and Amminadab begat Nahshon, prince of the children of Judah;  
11 and Nahshon begat Salma, and Salma begat Boaz,  
12 and Boaz begat Obed, and Obed begat Jesse;  
13 and Jesse begat his first-born Eliab, and Abinadab the second, and Shimea the third,  
14 Nethanel the fourth, Raddai the fifth,  
15 Ozem the sixth, David the seventh;  
16 and their sisters were Zeruiah and Abigail. And the sons of Zeruiah: <sup>{1}</sup> Abishai, and Joab, and Asahel,  
three. <sup>{1}</sup> Heb Abshai}
- 17 And Abigail bare Amasa; and the father of Amasa was Jether the Ishmaelite.
- 18 ¶ And Caleb the son of Hezron begat *children* of Azubah *his* wife, and of Jerioth; and these were her  
sons: Jeshur, and Shobab, and Ardon.
- 19 And Azubah died, and Caleb took unto him Ephrath, who bare him Hur.
- 20 And Hur begat Uri, and Uri begat Bezalel.
- 21 And afterward Hezron went in to the daughter of Machir the father of Gilead, whom he took *to wife*  
when he was threescore years old; and she bare him Segub.
- 22 And Segub begat Jair, who had three and twenty cities in the land of Gilead.
- 23 And Geshur and Aram took <sup>{1}</sup> the towns of Jair from them, with Kenath, and the <sup>{2}</sup> villages thereof,  
even threescore cities. All these were the sons of Machir the father of Gilead. <sup>{1}</sup> Or Havvoth-jair 2) Heb  
daughters}
- 24 And after that Hezron was dead in Caleb-ephrathah, then Abijah Hezron's wife bare him Ashhur the  
father of Tekoa.
- 25 And the sons of Jerahmeel the first-born of Hezron were Ram the first-born, and Bunah, and Oren, and  
Ozem, Ahijah.
- 26 And Jerahmeel had another wife, whose name was Atarah; she was the mother of Onam.
- 27 And the sons of Ram the first-born of Jerahmeel were Maaz, and Jamin, and Eker.
- 28 And the sons of Onam were Shammai, and Jada. And the sons of Shammai: Nadab, and Abishur.
- 29 And the name of the wife of Abishur was Abihail; and she bare him Ahban, and Molid.
- 30 And the sons of Nadab: Seled, and Appaim; but Seled died without <sup>{1}</sup> children. <sup>{1}</sup> Or sons}
- 31 And the sons of Appaim: Ishi. And the sons of Ishi: Sheshan. And the sons of Sheshan: Ahlai.
- 32 And the sons of Jada the brother of Shammai: Jether, and Jonathan; and Jether died without <sup>{1}</sup>  
children. <sup>{1}</sup> Or sons}
- 33 And the sons of Jonathan: Peleth, and Zaza. These were the sons of Jerahmeel.
- 34 Now Sheshan had no sons, but daughters. And Sheshan had a servant, an Egyptian, whose name was  
Jarha.
- 35 And Sheshan gave his daughter to Jarha his servant to wife; and she bare him Attai.
- 36 And Attai begat Nathan, and Nathan begat Zabad,  
37 and Zabad begat Ephlal, and Ephlal begat Obed,  
38 and Obed begat Jehu, and Jehu begat Azariah,  
39 and Azariah begat Helez, and Helez begat Eleasah,  
40 and Eleasah begat Sismai, and Sismai begat Shallum,  
41 and Shallum begat Jekamiah, and Jekamiah begat Elishama.
- 42 And the sons of Caleb the brother of Jerahmeel were Mesha his first-born, who was the father of Ziph;  
and the sons of Mareshah the father of Hebron.

- 43 And the sons of Hebron: Korah, and Tappuah, and Rekem, and Shema.  
 44 And Shema begat Raham, the father of Jorkeam; and Rekem begat Shammai.  
 45 And the son of Shammai was Maon; and Maon was the father of Beth-zur.  
 46 And Ephah, Caleb's concubine, bare Haran, and Moza, and Gazez; and Haran begat Gazez.  
 47 And the sons of Jahdai: Regem, and Jothan, and Geshan, and Pelet, and Ephah, and Shaaph.  
 48 Maacah, Caleb's concubine, bare Sheber and Tirhanah.  
 49 She bare also Shaaph the father of Madmannah, Sheva the father of Machbena, and the father of Gibeaz; and the daughter of Caleb was Achsah.  
 50 These were the sons of Caleb, the son of Hur, the first-born of Ephrathah: Shobal the father of Kiriath-jearim,  
 51 Salma the father of Beth-lehem, Hareph the father of Beth-gader.  
 52 And Shobal the father of Kiriath-jearim had sons: Haroeh, half of the Menuhoth.  
 53 And the families of Kiriath-jearim: The Ithrites, and the Puthites, and the Shumathites, and the Mishraites; of them came the Zorathites and the Eshtaolites.  
 54 The sons of Salma: Beth-lehem, and the Netophathites, Atroth-beth-joab, and half of the Manahathites, the Zorites.  
 55 And the families of scribes that dwelt at Jabez: the Tirathites, the Shimeathites, the Sucathites. These are the Kenites that came of Hammath, the father of the house of Rechab.
- 

C- The tribal period. (2.-9.)

1- The line of Judah. (2. - 4. )

a- Judah to David. vs,2:1-55

Emphasis is on Caleb's posterity.

Note also their sister Tamar and other sons by concubines.

**1 Chronicles 3**

- 1 ¶ Now these were the sons of David, that were born unto him in Hebron: the first-born, Amnon, of Ahinoam the Jezreelitess; the second, Daniel, of Abigail the Carmelitess;
- 2 the third, Absalom the son of Maacah the daughter of Talmai king of Geshur; the fourth, Adonijah the son of Haggith;
- 3 the fifth, Shephatiah of Abital; the sixth, Ithream by Eglah his wife:
- 4 six were born unto him in Hebron; and there he reigned seven years and six months. And in Jerusalem he reigned thirty and three years;
- 5 and these were born unto him in Jerusalem: Shimea, and Shobab, and Nathan, and Solomon, four, of Bath-shua the daughter of Ammiel;
- 6 and Ibhar, and Elishama, and Eliphelet,
- 7 and Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,
- 8 and Elishama, and Eliada, and Eliphelet, nine.
- 9 All these were the sons of David, besides the sons of the concubines; and Tamar was their sister.
- 10 ¶ And Solomon's son was Rehoboam, Abijah his son, Asa his son, Jehoshaphat his son,
- 11 Joram his son, Ahaziah his son, Joash his son,
- 12 Amaziah his son, Azariah his son, Jotham his son,
- 13 Ahaz his son, Hezekiah his son, Manasseh his son,
- 14 Amon his son, Josiah his son.
- 15 And the sons of Josiah: the first-born Johanan, the second Jehoiakim, the third Zedekiah, the fourth Shallum.
- 16 And the sons of Jehoiakim: Jeconiah his son, Zedekiah his son.
- 17 And the sons of Jeconiah, *{1}* the captive: Shealtiel his son, *{1} Or Assir*
- 18 and Malchiram, and Pedaiah, and Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.
- 19 And the sons of Pedaiah: Zerubbabel, and Shimei. And the *{1}* sons of Zerubbabel: Meshullam, and Hananiah; and Shelomith was their sister; *{1} Heb son*
- 20 and Hashubah, and Ohel, and Berechiah, and Hasadiah, Jushab-hesed, five.
- 21 And the *{1}* sons of Hananiah: Pelatiah, and Jeshaiah; the sons of Rephaiah, the sons of Arnan, the sons of Obadiah, the sons of Shecaniah. *{1} Heb son*
- 22 And the sons of Shecaniah: Shemaiah. And the sons of Shemaiah: Hattush, and Igal, and Bariah, and Neariah, and Shaphat, six.
- 23 And the *{1}* sons of Neariah: Elioenai, and Hizkiah, and Azrikam, three. *{1} Heb son*
- 24 And the sons of Elioenai: Hodaviah, and Eliashib, and Pelaiah, and Akkub, and Johanan, and Delaiah, and Anani, seven.



- b- David's children enumerated (3:1-9)
  - 1) David's six sons born in Hebron. vs. 3:1-4
  - 2) David's 13 son's born in Jerusalem. vs. 5-9
  
- c- Solomon to Zedekiah vs.10-16
  
- d- The sons of Jechoniah vs. 17-24
  - Line of Jeconiah - the captive.

**1 Chronicles 4**

- 1 ¶ The sons of Judah: Perez, Hezron, and Carmi, and Hur, and Shobal.
- 2 And Reaiah the son of Shobal begat Jahath; and Jahath begat Ahumai and Lahad. These are the families of the Zorathites.
- 3 And these were *the sons of* the father of Etam: Jezreel, and Ishma, and Idbash; and the name of their sister was Hazzelelponi;
- 4 and Penuel the father of Gedor, and Ezer the father of Hushah. These are the sons of Hur, the first-born of Ephrathah, the father of Beth-lehem.
- 5 And Ashhur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah.
- 6 And Naarah bare him Ahuzzam, and Hephher, and Temeni, and Haahashtari. These were the sons of Naarah.
- 7 And the sons of Helah were Zereth, {1} Izhar, and Ethnan. {1} *Another reading is and Zohar*
- 8 And Hakkoz begat Anub, and Zobebah, and the families of Aharhel the son of Harum.
- 9 And Jabez was more honorable than his brethren: and his mother called his name Jabez, saying, Because I bare him with sorrow.
- 10 And Jabez called on the God of Israel, saying, Oh that thou wouldest bless me indeed, and enlarge my border, and that thy hand might be with me, and that thou wouldest keep me from evil, that it be not to my sorrow! And God granted him that which he requested.
- 11 ¶ And Chelub the brother of Shuhah begat Mehir, who was the father of Eshton.
- 12 And Eshton begat Beth-rapha, and Paseah, and Tehinnah the father of {1} Ir-nahash. These are the men of Recah. {1} *Or the city of Nahash*
- 13 And the sons of Kenaz: Othniel, and Seraiah. And the sons of Othniel: Hathath.
- 14 And Meonothai begat Ophrah: and Seraiah begat Joab the father of {1} Ge-harashim; for they were craftsmen. {1} *Or the valley of craftsmen*
- 15 And the sons of Caleb the son of Jephunneh: Iru, Elah, and Naam; and the sons of Elah; and Kenaz.
- 16 And the sons of Jehallelel: Ziph, and Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.
- 17 And the sons of Ezrah: Jether, and Mered, and Epher, and Jalon; and she bare Miriam, and Shammai, and Ishbah the father of Eshtemoa.
- 18 And his wife {1} the Jewess bare Jered the father of Gedor, and Heber the father of Soco, and Jekuthiel the father of Zanoah. And these are the sons of Bithiah the daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered took. {1} *Or Ha-jehudijah*
- 19 And the sons of the wife of Hodiah, the sister of Naham, were the father of Keilah the Garmite, and Eshtemoa the Maacathite.
- 20 And the sons of Shimon: Amnon, and Rinnah, Ben-hanan, and Tilon. And the sons of Ishi: Zoheth, and Ben-zoheth.
- 21 The sons of Shelah the son of Judah: Er the father of Lecah, and Laadah the father of Mareshah, and the families of the house of them that wrought fine linen, of the house of Ashbea;
- 22 and Jokim, and the men of Cozeba, and Joash, and Saraph, who had dominion in Moab, and Jashubilehem. And the {1} records are ancient. {1} *Heb words*
- 23 These were the potters, and {1} the inhabitants of Netaim and Gederah: there they dwelt with the king for his work. {1} *Or those that dwelt among plantations and hedges*
- 24 ¶ The sons of Simeon: {1} Nemuel, and Jamin, {2} Jarib, {3} Zerah, Shaul; {1} *In Ge 46:10; Ex 6:15 Jemuel* 2) *In Ge 46:10 Jachin* 3) *In Ge 46:10 Zohar*
- 25 Shallum his son, Mibsam his son, Mishma his son.
- 26 And the sons of Mishma: Hammuel his son, Zaccur his son, Shimei his son.
- 27 And Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters; but his brethren had not many children, neither did all their family multiply like to the children of Judah.
- 28 And they dwelt at Beer-sheba, and Moladah, and Hazarshual,
- 29 and at Bilhah, and at Ezem, and at Tolad,
- 30 and at Bethuel, and at Hormah, and at Ziklag,
- 31 and at Beth-marcaboth, and Hazar-susim, and at Beth-biri, and at Shaaraim. These were their cities unto the reign of David.
- 32 And their villages were Etam, and Ain, Rimmon, and Tochen, and Ashan, five cities;
- 33 and all their villages that were round about the same cities, unto Baal. These were their habitations, and they have their genealogy.

- 34 And Meshobab, and Jamlech, and Joshah the son of Amaziah,  
 35 and Joel, and Jehu the son of Joshibiah, the son of Seraiah, the son of Asiel,  
 36 and Elioenai, and Jaakobah, and Jeshohaiah, and Asaiah, and Adiel, and Jesimiel, and Benaiah,  
 37 and Ziza the son of Shiphi, the son of Allon, the son of Jedaiah, the son of Shimri, the son of  
 Shemaiah—  
 38 these mentioned by name were princes in their families: and their fathers' houses increased greatly.  
 39 And they went to the entrance of Gedor, even unto the east side of the valley, to seek pasture for their  
 flocks.  
 40 And they found fat pasture and good, and the land was wide, and quiet, and peaceable; for they that  
 dwelt there aforetime were of Ham.  
 41 And these written by name came in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah, and smote their tents, and the  
 Meunim that were found there, and *{1}* destroyed them utterly unto this day, and dwelt in their stead;  
 because there was pasture there for their flocks. *{1} Heb devoted them*  
 42 And some of them, even of the sons of Simeon, five hundred men, went to mount Seir, having for their  
 captains Pelatiah, and Neariah, and Rephaiah, and Uzziel, the sons of Ishi.  
 43 And they smote the remnant of the Amalekites that escaped, and have dwelt there unto this day.
- 

e- the sons of Judah

vs. 4:1-23

2- The line of Simeon.

vs. 4:24-43

Note their relocation east of Mt. Seir.

**1 Chronicles 5**

- 1 ¶ And the sons of Reuben the first-born of Israel (for he was the first-born; but, forasmuch as he defiled his father's couch, his birthright was given unto the sons of Joseph the son of Israel; and the genealogy is not to be reckoned after the birthright.
- 2 For Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him came the *{1}* prince; but the birthright was Joseph's), *{1} Or leader*
- 3 the sons of Reuben the first-born of Israel: Hanoch, and Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi.
- 4 The sons of Joel: Shemaiah his son, Gog his son, Shimei his son,
- 5 Micah his son, Reaiah his son, Baal his son,
- 6 Beerah his son, whom *{1}* Tilgath-pilneser king of Assyria carried away captive: he was prince of the Reubenites. *{1} In 2 Ki 15:29; 16:7 Tiglath-pileser*
- 7 And his brethren by their families, when the genealogy of their generations was reckoned: the chief, Jeiel, and Zechariah,
- 8 and Bela the son of Azaz, the son of Shema, the son of Joel, who dwelt in Aroer, even unto Nebo and Baal-meon:
- 9 and eastward he dwelt even unto the entrance of the wilderness from the river Euphrates, because their cattle were multiplied in the land of Gilead.
- 10 And in the days of Saul, they made war with the Hagrites, who fell by their hand; and they dwelt in their tents throughout all the *land* east of Gilead.
- 11 And the sons of Gad dwelt over against them, in the land of Bashan unto Salecah:
- 12 Joel the chief, and Shapham the second, and Janai, and Shaphat in Bashan.
- 13 And their brethren of their fathers' houses: Michael, and Meshullam, and Sheba, and Jorai, and Jacan, and Zia, and Eber, seven.
- 14 These were the sons of Abihail, the son of Huri, the son of Jaroah, the son of Gilead, the son of Michael, the son of Jeshishai, the son of Jahdo, the son of Buz;
- 15 Ahi the son of Abdiel, the son of Guni, chief of their fathers' houses.
- 16 And they dwelt in Gilead in Bashan, and in its *{1}* towns, and in all the *{2}* suburbs of Sharon, as far as their *{3}* borders. *{1} Heb daughters 2) Or pasture lands 3) Heb goings forth*
- 17 All these were reckoned by genealogies in the days of Jotham king of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam king of Israel.
- 18 ¶ The sons of Reuben, and the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh, of valiant men, men able to bear buckler and sword, and to shoot with bow, and skilful in war, were forty and four thousand seven hundred and threescore, that were able to go forth to war.
- 19 And they made war with the Hagrites, with Jetur, and Naphish, and Nodab.
- 20 And they were helped against them, and the Hagrites were delivered into their hand, and all that were with them; for they cried to God in the battle, and he was entreated of them, because they put their trust in him.
- 21 And they took away their cattle; of their camels fifty thousand, and of sheep two hundred and fifty thousand, and of asses two thousand, and of *{1}* men a hundred thousand. *{1} Heb souls of men*
- 22 For there fell many slain, because the war was of God. And they dwelt in their stead until the captivity.
- 23 And the children of the half-tribe of Manasseh dwelt in the land: they increased from Bashan unto Baal-hermon and Senir and mount Hermon.
- 24 And these were the heads of their fathers' houses: even Ephraim, and Ishi, and Eliel, and Azriel, and Jeremiah, and Hodaviah, and Jahdiel, mighty men of valor, famous men, heads of their fathers' houses.
- 25 And they trespassed against the God of their fathers, and played the harlot after the gods of the peoples of the land, whom God destroyed before them.
- 26 And the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria, and the spirit of Tilgath-pilneser king of Assyria, and he carried them away, even the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh, and brought them unto Halah, and Habor, and Hara, and to the river of Gozan, unto this day.

- 3- The lines of Reuben), Gad, and Manasseh. (5.)
- a- Reuben's loss of birthright and Messianic line. vs. 1
- b- their conquests in trans-Jordan. vs. 9-24
- c- Their captivity for idolatry. vs. 25-26

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 6 is backed up.

## 1 Chronicles 6

- 1 ¶ The sons of Levi: {1} Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. {1} In verse 16 Gershom}
- 2 And the sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel.
- 3 And the children of Amram: Aaron, and Moses, and Miriam. And the sons of Aaron: Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.
- 4 Eleazar begat Phinehas, Phinehas begat Abishua,
- 5 and Abishua begat Bukki, and Bukki begat Uzzi,
- 6 and Uzzi begat Zerahiah, and Zerahiah begat Meraioth,
- 7 Meraioth begat Amariah, and Amariah begat Ahitub,
- 8 and Ahitub begat Zadok, and Zadok begat Ahimaaz,
- 9 and Ahimaaz begat Azariah, and Azariah begat Johanan,
- 10 and Johanan begat Azariah, (he it is that executed the priest's office in the house that Solomon built in Jerusalem),
- 11 and Azariah begat Amariah, and Amariah begat Ahitub,
- 12 and Ahitub begat Zadok, and Zadok begat {1} Shallum, {1} In 1 Ch 9:11 Meshullam}
- 13 and Shallum begat Hilkiah, and Hilkiah begat Azariah,
- 14 and Azariah begat Seraiah, and Seraiah begat Jehozadak;
- 15 And Jehozadak went *into captivity*, when Jehovah carried away Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.
- 16 The sons of Levi: {1} Gershom, Kohath, and Merari. {1} In verse 1 Gershon}
- 17 And these are the names of the sons of Gershom: Libni and Shimei.
- 18 And the sons of Kohath were Amram, and Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel.
- 19 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. And these are the families of the Levites according to their fathers' houses.
- 20 Of Gershom: Libni his son, Jahath his son, Zimmah his son,
- 21 {1} Joah his son, {2} Iddo his son, Zerah his son, {3} Jeatherai his son. {1} In verse 42 Ethan 2) In verse 41 Adaiah 3) In verse 41 Ethni}
- 22 The sons of Kohath: {1} Amminadab his son, Korah his son, Assir his son, {1} In verses 2, 18, 38 Izhar}
- 23 Elkanah his son, and Ebiasaph his son, and Assir his son,
- 24 Tahath his son, {1} Uriel his son, Uzziyah his son, and Shaul his son. {1} In verse 36 Zephaniah, Azariah, Joel}
- 25 And the sons of Elkanah: Amasai, and Ahimoth.

- 26 As for Elkanah, the sons of Elkanah: {1} Zophai his son, and {2} Nahath his son, {1} In verse 35 Zuph 2) In verse 34 Toah }
- 27 {1} Eliab his son, Jeroham his son, Elkanah his son. {1} In verse 34 Eliel}
- 28 And the sons of Samuel: the first-born, {1} Joel, and the second Abijah. {1} See verse 33 and 1 Sa 8:2; The Hebrew text has Vashni, and Abiah }
- 29 The sons of Merari: Mahli, Libni his son, Shimei his son, Uzzah his son,
- 30 Shimea his son, Haggiah his son, Asaiah his son.
- 31 ¶ And these are they whom David set over the service of song in the house of Jehovah, after that the ark had rest.
- 32 And they ministered with song before the tabernacle of the tent of meeting, until Solomon had built the house of Jehovah in Jerusalem: and they {1} waited on their office according to their order. {1} Heb stood }
- 33 And these are they that {1} waited, and their sons. Of the sons of the Kohathites: Heman the singer, the son of Joel, the son of Samuel, {1} Heb stood }
- 34 the son of Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Eliel, the son of {1} Toah, {1} In verse 26 Nahath }
- 35 the son of {1} Zuph, the son of Elkanah, the son of Mahath, the son of Amasai, {1} In verse 26 Zophai }
- 36 the son of Elkanah, the son of {1} Joel, the son of Azariah, the son of Zephaniah, {1} In verse 24 Shaul, Uziah, Uriel }
- 37 the son of Tahath, the son of Assir, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah,
- 38 the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, the son of Israel.
- 39 And his brother Asaph, who stood on his right hand, even Asaph the son of Berechiah, the son of Shimea,
- 40 the son of Michael, the son of Baaseiah, the son of Malchijah,
- 41 the son of Ethni, the son of Zerah, the son of Adaiah,
- 42 the son of Ethan, the son of Zimmah, the son of Shimei,
- 43 the son of Jahath, the son of Gershon, the son of Levi.
- 44 And on the left hand their brethren the sons of Merari: {1} Ethan the son of {2} Kishi, the son of Abdi, the son of Malluch, {1} In 1 Ch 9:16 Jeduthun 2) In 1 Ch 15:17 Kushaiah }
- 45 the son of Hashabiah, the son of Amaziah, the son of Hilkiah,
- 46 the son of Amzi, the son of Bani, the son of Shemer,
- 47 the son of Mahli, the son of Mushi, the son of Merari, the son of Levi.
- 48 And their brethren the Levites were {1} appointed for all the service of the tabernacle of the house of God. {1} Heb given; See Nu 3:9 }
- 49 But Aaron and his sons {1} offered upon the altar of burnt-offering, and upon the altar of incense, for all the work of the most holy place, and to make atonement for Israel, according to all that Moses the servant of God had commanded. {1} Or burnt incense }
- 50 And these are the sons of Aaron: Eleazar his son, Phinehas his son, Abishua his son,
- 51 Bukki his son, Uzzi his son, Zerahiah his son,
- 52 Meraioth his son, Amariah his son, Ahitub his son,
- 53 Zadok his son, Ahimaaz his son.
- 54 ¶ Now these are their dwelling-places according to their encampments in their borders: to the sons of Aaron, of the families of the Kohathites (for theirs was the *first* lot),
- 55 to them they gave Hebron in the land of Judah, and the suburbs thereof round about it;
- 56 but the fields of the city, and the villages thereof, they gave to Caleb the son of Jephunneh.
- 57 And to the sons of Aaron they gave the cities of refuge, Hebron; Libnah also with its suburbs, and Jattir, and Eshtemoa with its suburbs,
- 58 and {1} Hilen with its suburbs, Debir with its suburbs, {1} In Jos 21:15 Holon }
- 59 and {1} Ashan with its suburbs, and Beth-shemesh with its suburbs; {1} In Jos 21:16 Ain }
- 60 and out of the tribe of Benjamin, Geba with its suburbs, and {1} Allemeth with its suburbs, and Anathoth with its suburbs. All their cities throughout their families were thirteen cities. {1} In Jos 21:18 Almon }
- 61 And unto the rest of the sons of Kohath *were given* by lot, out of the family of the tribe, out of the half-tribe, the half of Manasseh, ten cities.
- 62 And to the sons of Gershon, according to their families, out of the tribe of Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher, and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and out of the tribe of Manasseh in Bashan, thirteen cities.
- 63 Unto the sons of Merari *were given* by lot, according to their families, out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.
- 64 And the children of Israel gave to the Levites the cities with their suburbs.
- 65 And they gave by lot out of the tribe of the children of Judah, and out of the tribe of the children of Simeon, and out of the tribe of the children of Benjamin, these cities which are mentioned by name.
- 66 And some of the families of the sons of Kohath had cities of their borders out of the tribe of Ephraim.
- 67 And they gave unto them the cities of refuge, Shechem in the hill-country of Ephraim with its suburbs; Gezer also with its suburbs,
- 68 {1} and Jokmeam with its suburbs, and Beth-horon with its suburbs, {1} See Jos 21:22-29 where some of the names are different. }

- 69 and Aijalon with its suburbs, and Gath-rimmon with its suburbs;  
 70 and out of the half-tribe of Manasseh, Aner with its suburbs, and Bileam with its suburbs, for the rest of the family of the sons of Kohath.  
 71 Unto the sons of Gershom *were given*, out of the family of the half-tribe of Manasseh, Golan in Bashan with its suburbs, and Ashtaroth with its suburbs;  
 72 and out of the tribe of Issachar, Kedesh with its suburbs, Daberath with its suburbs,  
 73 and Ramoth with its suburbs, and Anem with its suburbs;  
 74 and out of the tribe of Asher, Mashal with its suburbs, and Abdon with its suburbs,  
 75 and Hukok with its suburbs, and Rehob with its suburbs;  
 76 and out of the tribe of Naphtali, Kedesh in Galilee with its suburbs, and Hammon with its suburbs, and Kiriathaim with its suburbs.  
 77 Unto the rest of *the Levites*, the sons of Merari, *were given*, out of the tribe of Zebulun, Rimmono with its suburbs, Tabor with its suburbs;  
 78 and beyond the Jordan at Jericho, on the east side of the Jordan, *were given them*, out of the tribe of Reuben, Bezer in the wilderness with its suburbs, and Jahzah with its suburbs,  
 79 and Kedemoth with its suburbs, and Mephaath with its suburbs;  
 80 and out of the tribe of Gad, Ramoth in Gilead with its suburbs, and Mahanaim with its suburbs,  
 81 and Heshbon with its suburbs, and Jazer with its suburbs.
- 

- 4- The line of Levi. (6.)
- a- The priestly line from Aaron to fall of Jerusalem. vs.1-15
  - b- The sons of Gershom, Kohath, and Merari traced. vs. 16-53
  - c- The Levitical cities named. vs. 54-81

**1 Chronicles 7**

- 1 ¶ And of the sons of Issachar: Tola, and {1} Puah, Jashub, and Shimron, four. {1} *In Ge 46:13 Puvah and Job*
- 2 And the sons of Tola: Uzzi, and Rephaiah, and Jeriel, and Jahmai, and Ibsam, and Shemuel, heads of their fathers' houses, *to wit*, of Tola; mighty men of valor in their generations: their number in the days of David was two and twenty thousand and six hundred.
- 3 And the sons of Uzzi: Izrahiah. And the sons of Izrahiah: Michael, and Obadiah, and Joel, Isshiah, five; all of them chief men.
- 4 And with them, by their generations, after their fathers' houses, were bands of the host for war, six and thirty thousand; for they had many wives and sons.
- 5 And their brethren among all the families of Issachar, mighty men of valor, reckoned in all by genealogy, were fourscore and seven thousand.
- 6 *The sons of Benjamin*: Bela, and Becher, and Jediael, three.
- 7 And the sons of Bela: Ezbon, and Uzzi, and Uzziel, and Jerimoth, and Iri, five; heads of fathers' houses, mighty men of valor; and they were reckoned by genealogy twenty and two thousand and thirty and four.
- 8 And the sons of Becher: Zemirah, and Joash, and Eliezer, and Elioenai, and Omri, and Jeremoth, and Abijah, and Anathoth, and Alemeth. All these were the sons of Becher.
- 9 And they were reckoned by genealogy, after their generations, heads of their fathers' houses, mighty men of valor, twenty thousand and two hundred.
- 10 And the sons of Jediael: Bilhan. And the sons of Bilhan: Jeush, and Benjamin, and Ehud, and Chenaanah, and Zethan, and Tarshish, and Ahishahar.
- 11 All these were sons of Jediael, according to the heads of their fathers' *houses*, mighty men of valor, seventeen thousand and two hundred, that were able to go forth in the host for war.
- 12 {1} Shuppim also, and {1} Huppim, the sons of {2} Ir, Hushim, the sons of {3} Aher. {1} *In Nu 26:39 Shephupham and Hupham* 2) *In verse 7 Iri* 3) *In Nu 26:38 Ahiram*}
- 13 The sons of Naphtali: {1} Jahziel, and Guni, and Jezer, and {2} Shallum, the sons of Bilhah. {1} *In Ge 46:24 Jahzeel* 2) *In Ge 46:24 Shillem*}
- 14 The sons of Manasseh: Asriel, whom his concubine the Aramitess bare: she bare Machir the father of Gilead:
- 15 and Machir took a wife {1} of Huppim and Shuppim, {2} whose sister's name was Maacah; and the name of the second was Zelophehad: and Zelophehad had daughters. {1} *Or for 2) Or and his*}
- 16 And Maacah the wife of Machir bare a son, and she called his name Peresh; and the name of his brother was Sheresh; and his sons were Ulam and Rakem.
- 17 And the sons of Ulam: Bedan. These were the sons of Gilead the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh.
- 18 And his sister Hammolecheth bare Ishhod, and {1} Abiezer, and Mahlah. {1} *In Nu 26:30 Jezer*}
- 19 And the sons of Shemida were Ahian, and Shechem, and Likhi, and Aniam.
- 20 ¶ And the sons of Ephraim: Shuthelah, and Bered his son, and Tahath his son, and Eleadah his son, and Tahath his son,
- 21 and Zabad his son, and Shuthelah his son, and Ezer, and Elead, whom the men of Gath that were born in the land slew, because they came down to take away their cattle.
- 22 And Ephraim their father mourned many days, and his brethren came to comfort him.
- 23 And he went in to his wife, and she conceived, and bare a son, and he called his name Beriah, because it went evil with his house.
- 24 And his daughter was Sheerah, who built Beth-horon the nether and the upper, and Uzen-sheerah.
- 25 And Rephah was his son, and Resheph, and Telah his son, and Tahan his son,
- 26 Ladan his son, Ammihud his son, Elishama his son,
- 27 {1} Nun his son, Joshua his son. {1} *Heb Non*}
- 28 And their possessions and habitations were Beth-el and the {1} towns thereof, and eastward {2} Naaran, and westward Gezer, with the towns thereof; Shechem also and the towns thereof, unto {3} Azzah and the towns thereof; {1} *Heb daughters* 2) *In Jos 16:7 Naarah* 3) *Many MSS read Ayyah*}
- 29 and by the borders of the children of Manasseh, Beth-shean and its towns, Taanach and its towns, Megiddo and its towns, Dor and its towns. In these dwelt the children of Joseph the son of Israel.
- 30 The sons of Asher: Imnah, and Ishvah, and Ishvi, and Beriah, and Serah their sister.
- 31 And the sons of Beriah: Heber, and Malchiel, who was the father of Birzaith.
- 32 And Heber begat Japhlet, and {1} Shomer, and Hotham, and Shua their sister. {1} *In verse 34 Shemer*}



- 33 And the sons of Japhlet: Pasach, and Bimhal, and Ashvath. These are the children of Japhlet.
- 34 And the sons of {1} Shemer: Ahi, and Rohgah, Jehubbah, and Aram. {1} *In verse 32 Shomer*
- 35 And the {1} sons of Helem his brother: Zophah, and Imna, and Shelesh, and Amal. {1} *Heb son*
- 36 The sons of Zophah: Suah, and Harnepher, and Shual, and Beri, and Imrah,  
37 Bezer, and Hod, and Shamma, and Shilshah, and Ithran, and Beera.
- 38 And the sons of Jether: Jephunneh, and Pispah, and Ara.
- 39 And the sons of Ulla: Arah, and Hanniel, and Rizia.
- 40 All these were the children of Asher, heads of the fathers' houses, choice and mighty men of valor,  
chief of the princes. And the number of them reckoned by genealogy for service in war was twenty  
and six thousand men.
- 

5- The lines of Issachar, Benjamin, Naphtali, West Manasseh, Ephraim,  
and Asher traced.

(7.)

**1 Chronicles 8**

- 1 ¶ And Benjamin begat Bela his first-born, Ashbel the second, and Aharah the third,  
2 Nohah the fourth, and Rapha the fifth.  
3 And Bela had sons: *{1}* Addar, and Gera, and Abihud, *{1}* *In Ge 46:21 Ard*  
4 and Abishua, and Naaman, and Ahoah,  
5 and Gera, and *{1}* Shephuphan, and Hiram. *{1}* *In Nu 26:39 Shephupham*  
6 And these are the sons of Ehud: these are the heads of fathers' *houses* of the inhabitants of Geba, and they carried them captive to Manahath:  
7 and Naaman, and Ahijah, and Gera, he carried them captive: and he begat Uzza and Ahihud.  
8 And Shaharaim begat children in the field of Moab, after he had *{1}* sent them away; Hushim and Baara were his wives. *{1}* *Or sent away Hushim and Baara his wives*  
9 And he begat of Hodesh his wife, Jobab, and Zibia, and Mesha, and Malcam,  
10 and Jeuz, and Shachia, and Mirmah. These were his sons, heads of fathers' *houses*.  
11 And of Hushim he begat Abitub and Elpaal.  
12 And the sons of Elpaal: Eber, and Misham, and Shemed, who built Ono and Lod, with the towns thereof;  
13 and Beriah, and Shema, who were heads of fathers' *houses* of the inhabitants of Aijalon, who put to flight the inhabitants of Gath;  
14 and Ahio, Shashak, and Jeremoth,  
15 and Zebadiah, and Arad, and Eder,  
16 and Michael, and Ishpah, and Joha, the sons of Beriah,  
17 and Zebadiah, and Meshullam, and Hizki, and Heber,  
18 and Ishmerai, and Izliah, and Jobab, the sons of Elpaal,  
19 and Jakim, and Zichri, and Zabdi,  
20 and Elienai, and Zillethai, and Eliel,  
21 and Adaiah, and Beraiah, and Shimrath, the sons of *{1}* Shimei, *{1}* *In verse 13 Shema*  
22 and Ishpan, and Eber, and Eliel,  
23 and Abdon, and Zichri, and Hanan,  
24 and Hananiah, and Elam, and Anthothijah,  
25 and Iphdeiah, and Penuel, the sons of Shashak,  
26 and Shamsheraï, and Shehariah, and Athaliah,  
27 and Jareshiah, and Elijah, and Zichri, the sons of Jeroham.  
28 These were heads of fathers' *houses* throughout their generations, chief men: these dwelt in Jerusalem.  
29 And in Gibeon there dwelt the father of Gibeon, *Jeiel*, whose wife's name was Maacah;  
30 and his first-born son Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Nadab,  
31 and Gedor, and Ahio, and *{1}* Zecher. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 9:37 Zechariah*  
32 And Mikloth begat *{1}* Shimeah. And they also dwelt with their brethren in Jerusalem, over against their brethren. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 9:38 Shimeam*  
33 ¶ And Ner begat Kish; and Kish begat Saul; and Saul begat Jonathan, and Malchi-shua, and *{1}* Abinadab, and *{2}* Eshbaal. *{1}* *In 1 Sa 14:49 Ishvi* *2) In 2 Sa 2:8 Ishbosheth*  
34 And the son of Jonathan was *{1}* Merib-baal; and Merib-baal begat Micah. *{1}* *In 2 Sa 4:4; 9:6, 10 Mephibosheth*  
35 And the sons of Micah: Pithon, and Melech, and *{1}* Tarea, and Ahaz. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 9:41 Tahrea*  
36 And Ahaz begat *{1}* Jehoaddah; and Jehoaddah begat Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri begat Moza. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 9:42 Jarah*  
37 And Moza begat Binea; *{1}* Raphah was his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 9:43 Rephaiah*  
38 And Azel had six sons, whose names are these: Azrikam, Bocheru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan. All these were the sons of Azel.  
39 And the sons of Eshek his brother: Ulam his first-born, Jeush the second, and Eliphelet the third.  
40 And the sons of Ulam were mighty men of valor, archers, and had many sons, and sons' sons, a hundred and fifty. All these were of the sons of Benjamin.

6- Saul's genealogy traced.

(8.)

**1 Chronicles 9**

- 1 ¶ So all Israel were reckoned by genealogies; and, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel: and Judah was carried away captive to Babylon for their transgression.
- 2 Now the first inhabitants that dwelt in their possessions in their cities were Israel, the priests, the Levites, and the Nethinim.
- 3 And in Jerusalem dwelt of the children of Judah, and of the children of Benjamin, and of the children of Ephraim and Manasseh:
- 4 Uthai the son of Ammihud, the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani, of the children of Perez the son of Judah.
- 5 And of the Shilonites: Asaiah the first-born, and his sons.
- 6 And of the sons of Zerah: Jeuel, and their brethren, six hundred and ninety.
- 7 And of the sons of Benjamin: Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Hodaviah, the son of Hassenuah, and Ibneiah the son of Jeroham, and Elah the son of Uzzi, the son of Michri, and Meshullam the son of Shephatiah, the son of Reuel, the son of Ibnijah;
- 9 and their brethren, according to their generations, nine hundred and fifty and six. All these men were heads of fathers' *houses* by their fathers' houses.
- 10 And of the priests: Jedaiah, and Jehoiarib, Jachin,
- 11 and <sup>{1}</sup> Azariah the son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, the ruler of the house of God; <sup>{1}</sup> *In Ne 11:11 Seraiah* }
- 12 and Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pashhur, the son of Malchijah, and Maasai the son of Adiel, the son of Jahzerah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Meshillemith, the son of Immer;
- 13 and their brethren, heads of their fathers' houses, a thousand and seven hundred and threescore; very able men for the work of the service of the house of God.
- 14 ¶ And of the Levites: Shemaiah the son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, of the sons of Merari;
- 15 and Bakbakkar, Heresh, and Galal, and Mattaniah the son of Mica, the son of <sup>{1}</sup> Zichri, the son of Asaph, <sup>{1}</sup> *In Ne 11:17 Zabdi* }
- 16 and <sup>{1}</sup> Obadiah the son of <sup>{2}</sup> Shemaiah, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun, and Berechiah the son of Asa, the son of Elkanah, that dwelt in the villages of the Netophathites. <sup>{1}</sup> *In Ne 11:17 Abda 2* } *In Ne 11:17 Shammua* }
- 17 And the porters: Shallum, and Akkub, and Talmon, and Ahiman, and their brethren (Shallum was the chief),
- 18 who hitherto *waited* in the king's gate eastward: they were the porters for the camp of the children of Levi.
- 19 And Shallum the son of Kore, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah, and his brethren, of his father's house, the Korahites, were over the work of the service, keepers of the thresholds of the tent: and their fathers had been over the camp of Jehovah, keepers of the entry.
- 20 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar was ruler over them in time past, *and* Jehovah was with him.
- 21 Zechariah the son of Meshelemiah was porter of the door of the tent of meeting.
- 22 All these that were chosen to be porters in the thresholds were two hundred and twelve. These were reckoned by genealogy in their villages, whom David and Samuel the seer did ordain in their office of trust.
- 23 So they and their children had the oversight of the gates of the house of Jehovah, even the house of the tent, by wards.
- 24 <sup>{1}</sup> *On the four sides were the porters, toward the east, west, north, and south. {1} Heb Towards the four winds* }
- 25 And their brethren, in their villages, were to come in every seven days from time to time to be with them:
- 26 for the four chief porters, who were Levites, were in an office of trust, and were over the chambers and over the treasuries in the house of God.
- 27 And they lodged round about the house of God, because the charge *thereof* was upon them; and to them pertained the opening thereof morning by morning.
- 28 And certain of them had charge of the vessels of service; for by count were these brought in and by count were these taken out.
- 29 Some of them also were appointed over the furniture, and over all the vessels of the sanctuary, and over the fine flour, and the wine, and the oil, and the frankincense, and the spices.

- 30 And some of the sons of the priests prepared the confection of the spices.
- 31 And Mattithiah, one of the Levites, who was the first-born of Shallum the Korahite, had the office of trust over the things that were baked in pans.
- 32 And some of their brethren, of the sons of the Kohathites, were over the showbread, to prepare it every sabbath.
- 33 And these are the singers, heads of fathers' *houses* of the Levites, *who dwelt* in the chambers *and were free from other service*; for they were employed in their work day and night.
- 34 These were heads of fathers' *houses* of the Levites, throughout their generations, chief men: these dwelt at Jerusalem.
- 35 ¶ And in Gibeon there dwelt the father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maacah:
- 36 and his first-born son Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Ner, and Nadab,
- 37 and Gedor, and Ahio, and Zechariah, and Mikloth.
- 38 And Mikloth begat Shimeam. And they also dwelt with their brethren in Jerusalem, over against their brethren.
- 39 And Ner begat Kish; and Kish begat Saul; and Saul begat Jonathan, and Malchi-shua, and Abinadab, and Eshbaal.
- 40 And the son of Jonathan was Merib-baal; and Merib-baal begat Micah.
- 41 And the sons of Micah: Pithon, and Melech, and Tahrea, *and Ahaz*.
- 42 And Ahaz begat Jarah; and Jarah begat Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri begat Moza; and Moza begat Binea; and Rephaiah his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son.
- 44 And Azel had six sons, whose names are these: Azrikam, Bocheru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan: these were the sons of Azel.

7- Service of the Levites.

vs. 9:1-34

8- Ancestry and descendents of Saul and Jonathon.

vs. 35-44

**1 Chronicles 10**

- 1 ¶ Now the Philistines fought against Israel: and the men of Israel fled from before the Philistines, and fell down *{1}* slain in mount Gilboa. *{1}* *Or wounded*
- 2 And the Philistines followed hard after Saul and after his sons; and the Philistines slew Jonathan, and *{1}* Abinadab, and Malchi-shua, the sons of Saul. *{1}* *In 1 Sa 14:49 Ishvi*
- 3 And the battle went sore against Saul, and the archers overtook him; and he was distressed by reason of the archers.
- 4 Then said Saul unto his armorbearer, Draw thy sword, and thrust me through therewith, lest these uncircumcised come and *{1}* abuse me. But his armorbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. Therefore Saul took his sword, and fell upon it. *{1}* *Or make a mock of me*
- 5 And when his armorbearer saw that Saul was dead, he likewise fell upon his sword, and died.
- 6 So Saul died, and his three sons; and all his house died together.
- 7 And when all the men of Israel that were in the valley saw that they fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they forsook their cities, and fled; and the Philistines came and dwelt in them.
- 8 ¶ And it came to pass on the morrow, when the Philistines came to strip the slain, that they found Saul and his sons fallen in mount Gilboa.
- 9 And they stripped him, and took his head, and his armor, and sent into the land of the Philistines round about, to carry the tidings unto their idols, and to the people.
- 10 And they put his armor in the house of their gods, and fastened his head in the house of Dagon.
- 11 And when all Jabesh-gilead heard all that the Philistines had done to Saul,
- 12 all the valiant men arose, and took away the body of Saul, and the bodies of his sons, and brought them to Jabesh, and buried their bones under the *{1}* oak in Jabesh, and fasted seven days. *{1}* *Or terebinth*
- 13 So Saul died *{1}* for his trespass which he committed against Jehovah, because of the word of Jehovah, which he kept not; and also for that he asked counsel of one that had a familiar spirit, to inquire *thereby*, *{1}* *Or in*
- 14 and inquired not of Jehovah: therefore he slew him, and turned the kingdom unto David the son of Jesse.

## **II. THE HISTORY OF DAVID'S REIGN.**

**(10.-29.)**

### A- The conclusion of Saul's reign.

(10.)

1- Note Saul's introduction in 9:35-44.

2- Saul's defeat by Philistia and his death.

vs. 10:1-12

3- The reason for Saul's rejection.

vs. 13-14

**1 Chronicles 11**

- 1 ¶ Then all Israel gathered themselves to David unto Hebron, saying, Behold, we are thy bone and thy flesh.
- 2 In times past, even when Saul was king, it was thou that leddest out and broughtest in Israel: and Jehovah thy God said unto thee, Thou shalt be shepherd of my people Israel, and thou shalt be *{1}* prince over my people Israel. *{1}* Or leader
- 3 So all the elders of Israel came to the king to Hebron; and David made a covenant with them in Hebron before Jehovah; and they anointed David king over Israel, according to the word of Jehovah by Samuel.
- 4 And David and all Israel went to Jerusalem (the same is Jebus); and the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land, were there.
- 5 And the inhabitants of Jebus said to David, Thou shalt not come in hither. Nevertheless David took the stronghold of Zion; the same is the city of David.
- 6 And David said, Whosoever smiteth the Jebusites first shall be chief and captain. And Joab the son of Zeruiah went up first, and was made chief.
- 7 And David dwelt in the stronghold; therefore they called it the city of David.
- 8 And he built the city round about, from Millo even round about; and Joab *{1}* repaired the rest of the city. *{1}* Heb revived
- 9 And David waxed greater and greater; for Jehovah of hosts was with him.
- 10 ¶ Now these are the chief of the mighty men whom David had, who *{1}* showed themselves strong with him in his kingdom, together with all Israel, to make him king, according to the word of Jehovah concerning Israel. *{1}* Or held strongly with him
- 11 And this is the number of the mighty men whom David had: Jashobeam, the son of a Hachmonite, the chief of the *{1}* thirty; he lifted up his spear against three hundred *{2}* and slew them at one time. *{1}* Another reading is captains 2) Heb slain
- 12 And after him was Eleazar the son of Dodo, the Ahohite, who was one of the three mighty men.
- 13 He was with David at *{1}* Pasdammim, and there the Philistines were gathered together to battle, where was a plot of ground full of barley; and the people fled from before the Philistines. *{1}* In 1 Sa 17:1 Ephesdammim
- 14 And they stood in the midst of the plot, and defended it, and slew the Philistines; and Jehovah saved them by a great *{1}* victory. *{1}* Heb salvation
- 15 And three of the thirty chief men went down to the rock to David, into the cave of Adullam; and the host of the Philistines were encamped in the valley of Rephaim.
- 16 And David was then in the stronghold, and the garrison of the Philistines was then in Beth-lehem.
- 17 And David longed, and said, Oh that one would give me water to drink of the well of Beth-lehem, which is by the gate!
- 18 And the three brake through the host of the Philistines, and drew water out of the well of Beth-lehem, that was by the gate, and took it, and brought it to David: but David would not drink thereof, but poured it out unto Jehovah,
- 19 and said, My God forbid it me, that I should do this: shall I drink the blood of these men *{1}* that have put their lives in jeopardy? for with *the jeopardy* of their lives they brought it. Therefore he would not drink it. These things did the three mighty men. *{1}* Heb with their lives
- 20 And *{1}* Abishai, the brother of Joab, he was chief of the three; for he lifted up his spear against three hundred *{2}* and slew them, and had a name among the three. *{1}* Heb Abshai 2) Heb slain
- 21 *{1}* Of the three, he was more honorable than the two, and was made their captain: howbeit he attained not to the *first* three. *{1}* Or Of the three in the second rank he was the most honorable
- 22 Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the son of a valiant man of Kabzeel, who had done mighty deeds, he slew the two *sons of* Ariel of Moab: he went down also and slew a lion in the midst of a pit in time of snow.
- 23 And he slew an Egyptian, a man of great stature, five cubits high; and in the Egyptian's hand was a spear like a weaver's beam; and he went down to him with a staff, and plucked the spear out of the Egyptian's hand, and slew him with his own spear.
- 24 These things did Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and had a name among the three mighty men.
- 25 Behold, he was more honorable than the thirty, but he attained not to the *first* three: and David set him over his *{1}* guard. *{1}* Or council



- 26 Also the mighty men of the armies: Asahel the brother of Joab, Elhanan the son of Dodo of Bethlehem,
- 27 {1} Shammoth the Harorite, Helez the {2} Pelonite, {1} In 2 Sa 23:25 Shammath the Harodite 2) In 2 Sa 23:26 Palitite}
- 28 Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite, Abiezer the Anathothite,
- 29 {1} Sibbecai the Hushathite, {2} Ilai the Ahoite, {1} In 2 Sa 23:27 Mebunnai 2) In 2 Sa 23:28 Zalmon}
- 30 Maharai the Netophathite, {1} Heled the son of Baanah the Netophathite, {1} In 2 Sa 23:29 Heleb}
- 31 Ithai the son of Ribai of Gibeah of the children of Benjamin, Benaiah the Pirathonite,
- 32 {1} Hurai of the brooks of Gaash, {2} Abiel the Arbathite, {1} In 2 Sa 23:30 Hiddai 2) In 2 Sa 23:31 Abi-albon}
- 33 Azmaveth the Baharumite, Eliahba the Shaalbonite,
- 34 the sons of {1} Hashem the Gizonite, Jonathan the son of Shagee the Hararite, {1} In 2 Sa 23:32 Jashen}
- 35 Ahiam the son of {1} Sacar the Hararite, {2} Eliphal the son of Ur, {1} In 2 Sa 23:33 Sharar 2) In 2 Sa 23:34 Eliphelet the son of Ahasbai}
- 36 Hopher the Mecherathite, Ahijah the Pelonite,
- 37 Hezro the Carmelite, {1} Naarai the son of Ezbai, {1} In 2 Sa 23:35 Paarai the Arbite}
- 38 Joel the brother of Nathan, Mibhar the son of Hagri,
- 39 Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Berothite, the armorbearer of Joab the son of Zeruiah,
- 40 Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,
- 41 Uriah the Hittite, Zabad the son of Ahlai,
- 42 Adina the son of Shiza the Reubenite, a chief of the Reubenites, and thirty with him,
- 43 Hanan the son of Maacah, and Joshaphat the Mithnite,
- 44 Uzzia the Ashterathite, Shama and Jeiel the sons of Hotham the Aroerite,
- 45 Jediahel the son of Shimri, and Joha his brother, the Tizite,
- 46 Eliel the Mahavite, and Jeribai, and Joshaviah, the sons of Elnaam, and Ithmah the Moabite,
- 47 Eliel, and Obed, and Jaasiel the Mezobaite.

## B- David becomes king.

(11. -12.)

- 1- He is made king at Hebron, then at Jerusalem. vs. 1-9  
     No mention of civil war 2 Sam 2.-4. and 2 Sam 5:6-10.
- 2- Notice again the list of David's mighty men. vs. 11-47

## 1 Chronicles 12

- 1 ¶ Now these are they that came to David to Ziklag, *{1}* while he yet kept himself close because of Saul the son of Kish; and they were among the mighty men, his helpers in war. *{1} Heb. being yet shut up*
- 2 They *{1}* were armed with bows, and could use both the right hand and the left in slinging stones and in shooting arrows from the bow: they were of Saul's brethren of Benjamin. *{1} Or drew the bow*
- 3 The chief was Ahiezer; then Joash, the sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite, and Jeziel, and Pelet, the sons of Azmaveth, and Beracah, and Jehu the Anathothite,
- 4 and Ishmaiah the Gibeonite, a mighty man among the thirty, and over the thirty, and Jeremiah, and Jahaziel, and Johanan, and Jozabad the Gederathite,
- 5 Eluzai, and Jerimoth, and Bealiah, and Shemariah, and Shephatiah the Haruphite,
- 6 Elkanah, and Isshiah, and Azarel, and Joezer, and Jashobeam, the Korahites,
- 7 and Joelah, and Zebadiah, the sons of Jeroham of Gedor.
- 8 And of the Gadites there separated themselves unto David to the stronghold in the wilderness, mighty men of valor, men trained for war, that could handle shield and spear; whose faces were like the faces of lions, and they were as swift as the roes upon the mountains;
- 9 Ezer the chief, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third,
- 10 Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth,
- 11 Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh,
- 12 Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth,
- 13 Jeremiah the tenth, Machbannai the eleventh.
- 14 These of the sons of Gad were captains of the host: he that was least was *{1}* equal to a hundred, and the greatest *{1}* to a thousand. *{1} Or over*
- 15 These are they that went over the Jordan in the first month, when it had overflowed all its banks; and they put to flight all them of the valleys, both toward the east, and toward the west.
- 16 And there came of the children of Benjamin and Judah to the stronghold unto David.
- 17 And David went out to meet them, and answered and said unto them, If ye be come peaceably unto me to help me, my heart shall be knit unto you; but if *ye be come* to betray me to mine adversaries, seeing there is no *{1}* wrong in my hands, the God of our fathers look thereon, and rebuke it. *{1} Or violence*
- 18 Then the Spirit *{1}* came upon Amasai, who was chief of the *{2}* thirty, *and he said*, Thine are we, David, and on thy side, thou son of Jesse: peace, peace be unto thee, and peace be to thy helpers; for thy God helpeth thee. Then David received them, and made them captains of the band. *{1} Heb clothed 2*  
Another reading is *captains*
- 19 Of Manasseh also there fell away some to David, when he came with the Philistines against Saul to battle: but they helped them not; for the lords of the Philistines upon advisement sent him away, saying, He will fall away to his master Saul to the jeopardy of our heads.
- 20 As he went to Ziklag, there fell to him of Manasseh, Adnah, and Jozabad, and Jediahel, and Michael, and Jozabad, and Elihu, and Zillethai, captains of thousands that were of Manasseh.
- 21 And they helped David against the band of rovers: for they were all mighty men of valor, and were captains in the host.
- 22 For from day to day men came to David to help him, until there was a great host, like the host of God.
- 23 ¶ And these are the numbers of the heads of them that were armed for war, who came to David to Hebron, to turn the kingdom of Saul to him, according to the word of Jehovah.
- 24 The children of Judah that bare shield and spear were six thousand and eight hundred, armed for war.
- 25 Of the children of Simeon, mighty men of valor for the war, seven thousand and one hundred.
- 26 Of the children of Levi four thousand and six hundred.
- 27 And Jehoiada was the leader of *the house of Aaron*; and with him were three thousand and seven hundred,
- 28 and Zadok, a young man mighty of valor, and of his father's house twenty and two captains.
- 29 And of the children of Benjamin, the brethren of Saul, three thousand: for hitherto the greatest part of them had *{1}* kept their allegiance to the house of Saul. *{1} Heb kept the charge of the house*
- 30 And of the children of Ephraim twenty thousand and eight hundred, mighty men of valor, famous men in their fathers' houses.
- 31 And of the half-tribe of Manasseh eighteen thousand, who were mentioned by name, to come and make David king.

- 32 And of the children of Issachar, men that had understanding of the times, to know what Israel ought to do, the heads of them were two hundred; and all their brethren were at their commandment.
- 33 Of Zebulun, such as were able to go out in the host, that could set the battle in array, with all manner of instruments of war, fifty thousand, and that could order *the battle array*, and were not of double heart.
- 34 And of Naphtali a thousand captains, and with them with shield and spear thirty and seven thousand.
- 35 And of the Danites that could set the battle in array, twenty and eight thousand and six hundred.
- 36 And of Asher, such as were able to go out in the host, that could set the battle in array, forty thousand.
- 37 And on the other side of the Jordan, of the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and of the half-tribe of Manasseh, with all manner of instruments of war for the battle, a hundred and twenty thousand.
- 38 All these being men of war, that could order the battle array, came with a perfect heart to Hebron, to make David king over all Israel: and all the rest also of Israel were of one heart to make David king.
- 39 And they were there with David three days, eating and drinking; for their brethren had made preparation for them.
- 40 Moreover they that were nigh unto them, *even* as far as Issachar and Zebulun and Naphtali, brought bread on asses, and on camels, and on mules, and on oxen, victuals of meal, cakes of figs, and clusters of raisins, and wine, and oil, and oxen, and sheep in abundance: for there was joy in Israel.
- 

2- David's mighty men are listed.

vs. 11:10 - 12:40

**1 Chronicles 13**

- 1 ¶ And David consulted with the captains of thousands and of hundreds, even with every leader.
- 2 And David said unto all the assembly of Israel, If it seem good unto you, and if it be of Jehovah our God, let us send abroad every where unto our brethren that are left in all the *{1}* land of Israel, *{2}* with whom the priests and Levites are in their cities that have *{3}* suburbs, that they may gather themselves unto us; *{1}* *Heb lands* 2) *Or and with them to the priests and Levites that are etc* 3) *Or pasture lands*
- 3 and let us bring again the ark of our God to us: for we sought not unto it in the days of Saul.
- 4 And all the assembly said that they would do so; for the thing was right in the eyes of all the people.
- 5 So David assembled all Israel together, from the Shihor *the brook* of Egypt even unto the entrance of Hamath, to bring the ark of God from Kiriath-jearim.
- 6 And David went up, and all Israel, to Baalah, *that is*, to Kiriath-jearim, which belonged to Judah, to bring up from thence the ark of God Jehovah that *{1}* sitteth above the cherubim, *{2}* that is called by the Name. *{1}* *Or is enthroned* 2) *Or where the Name is called on*
- 7 And they carried the ark of God upon a new cart, *and brought it* out of the house of Abinadab: and Uzza and Ahio drove the cart.
- 8 And David and all Israel played before God with all their might, even with songs, and with harps, and with psalteries, and with timbrels, and with cymbals, and with trumpets.
- 9 ¶ And when they came unto the threshing-floor of Chidon, Uzza put forth his hand to hold the ark; for the oxen *{1}* stumbled. *{1}* *Or were restive; Or threw it down*
- 10 And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Uzza, and he smote him, because he put forth his hand to the ark; and there he died before God.
- 11 And David was displeased, because Jehovah had broken forth upon Uzza; and he called that place *{1}* Perez-uzza, unto this day. *{1}* *That is The breach of Uzza*
- 12 And David was afraid of God that day, saying, How shall I bring the ark of God home to me?
- 13 So David removed not the ark unto him into the city of David, but carried it aside into the house of Obed-edom the Gittite.
- 14 And the ark of God remained with the family of Obed-edom in his house three months: and Jehovah blessed the house of Obed-edom, and all that he had.

**1 Chronicles 14**

- 1 ¶ And Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar-trees, and masons, and carpenters, to build him a house.
- 2 And David perceived that Jehovah had established him king over Israel; for his kingdom was exalted on high, for his people Israel's sake.
- 3 And David took more wives at Jerusalem; and David begat more sons and daughters.
- 4 And these are the names of the children whom he had in Jerusalem: Shammua, and Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon,
- 5 and Ibhar, and Elishua, and Elpelet,
- 6 and Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,
- 7 and Elishama, and Beeliada, and Eliphelet.
- 8 ¶ And when the Philistines heard that David was anointed king over all Israel, all the Philistines went up to seek David: and David heard of it, and went out *{1}* against them. *{1}* *Or before*
- 9 Now the Philistines had come and made a raid in the valley of Rephaim.
- 10 And David inquired of God, saying, Shall I go up against the Philistines? and wilt thou deliver them into my hand? And Jehovah said unto him, Go up; for I will deliver them into thy hand.
- 11 So they came up to Baal-perazim, and David smote them there; and David said, God hath *{1}* broken mine enemies by my hand, like the breach of waters. Therefore they called the name of that place *{2}* Baal-perazim. *{1}* *Or broken forth upon mine enemies* 2) *That is The place of breakings forth*
- 12 And they left their gods there; and David gave commandment, and they were burned with fire.
- 13 And the Philistines yet again made a raid in the valley.
- 14 And David inquired again of God; and God said unto him, Thou shalt not go up after them: turn away from them, and come upon them over against the *{1}* mulberry-trees. *{1}* *Or balsam-trees*
- 15 And it shall be, when thou hearest the sound of marching in the tops of the mulberry-trees, that then thou shalt go out to battle; for God is gone out before thee to smite the host of the Philistines.

16 And David did as God commanded him: and they smote the host of the Philistines from {1} Gibeon even to Gezer. {1} In 2 Sa 5:25 Geba}

17 And the fame of David went out into all lands; and Jehovah brought the fear of him upon all nations.

## C- David returns the ark to Jerusalem. (13.-16.)

1- The unsuccessful attempt. (13.)

2- David defeats the Philistines. (14.)

Because of length of text, Ch. 15 & 16 are backed up.

## 1 Chronicles 15

- 1 ¶ And David made him houses in the city of David; and he prepared a place for the ark of God, and pitched for it a tent.
- 2 Then David said, None ought to carry the ark of God but the Levites: for them hath Jehovah chosen to carry the ark of God, and to minister unto him for ever.
- 3 And David assembled all Israel at Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of Jehovah unto its place, which he had prepared for it.
- 4 And David gathered together the sons of Aaron, and the Levites:
  - 5 of the sons of Kohath, Uriel the chief, and his brethren a hundred and twenty;
  - 6 of the sons of Merari, Asaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred and twenty;
  - 7 of the sons of Gershom, Joel the chief, and his brethren a hundred and thirty;
  - 8 of the sons of Elizaphan, Shemaiah the chief, and his brethren two hundred;
  - 9 of the sons of Hebron, Eliel the chief, and his brethren fourscore;
  - 10 of the sons of Uzziel, Amminadab the chief, and his brethren a hundred and twelve.
- 11 And David called for Zadok and Abiathar the priests, and for the Levites, for Uriel, Asaiah, and Joel, Shemaiah, and Eliel, and Amminadab,
- 12 and said unto them, Ye are the heads of the fathers' houses of the Levites: sanctify yourselves, both ye and your brethren, that ye may bring up the ark of Jehovah, the God of Israel, unto *the place* that I have prepared for it.
- 13 For because ye *bare it* not at the first, Jehovah our God made a breach upon us, for that we sought him not according to the ordinance.
- 14 So the priests and the Levites sanctified themselves to bring up the ark of Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 15 And the children of the Levites bare the ark of God upon their shoulders with the staves thereon, as Moses commanded according to the word of Jehovah.
- 16 And David spake to the chief of the Levites to appoint their brethren the singers, with instruments of music, psalteries and harps and cymbals, sounding aloud and lifting up the voice with joy.
- 17 So the Levites appointed Heman the son of Joel; and of his brethren, Asaph the son of Berechiah; and of the sons of Merari their brethren, Ethan the son of Kushaiah;
- 18 and with them their brethren of the second degree, Zechariah, Ben, and Jaaziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, Eliab, and Benaiah, and Maaseiah, and Mattithiah, and Eliphelehu, and Mikneiah, and Obed-edom, and Jeiel, the doorkeepers.

- 19 So the singers, Heman, Asaph, and Ethan, were appointed with cymbals of brass to sound aloud;  
 20 and Zechariah, and Aziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, and Eliab, and Maaseiah, and Benaiah, with psalteries set to Alamoth;  
 21 and Mattithiah, and Eliphelehu, and Mikneiah, and Obed-edom, and Jeiel, and Azaziah, with harps set to the Sheminith, to lead.  
 22 And Chenaniah, chief of the Levites, was over *{1}* the song: he instructed about *{1}* the song, because he was skilful. *{1}* Or the carrying of the ark; Heb the lifting up  
 23 And Berechiah and Elkanah were doorkeepers for the ark.  
 24 And Shebaniah, and Joshaphat, and Nethanel, and Amasai, and Zechariah, and Benaiah, and Eliezer, the priests, did blow the trumpets before the ark of God: and Obed-edom and Jehiah were doorkeepers for the ark.  
 25 ¶ So David, and the elders of Israel, and the captains over thousands, went to bring up the ark of the covenant of Jehovah out of the house of Obed-edom with joy.  
 26 And it came to pass, when God helped the Levites that bare the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, that they sacrificed seven bullocks and seven rams.  
 27 And David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, and all the Levites that bare the ark, and the singers, and Chenaniah the master of *{1}* the song with the singers: and David had upon him an ephod of linen. *{1}* Or the carrying of the ark; Heb the lifting up  
 28 Thus all Israel brought up the ark of the covenant of Jehovah with shouting, and with sound of the cornet, and with trumpets, and with cymbals, sounding aloud with psalteries and harps.  
 29 And it came to pass, as the ark of the covenant of Jehovah came to the city of David, that Michal the daughter of Saul looked out at the window, and saw king David dancing and playing; and she despised him in her heart.

## 1 Chronicles 16

- 1 ¶ And they brought in the ark of God, and set it in the midst of the tent that David had pitched for it: and they offered burnt-offerings and peace-offerings before God.  
 2 And when David had made an end of offering the burnt-offering and the peace-offerings, he blessed the people in the name of Jehovah.  
 3 And he dealt to every one of Israel, both man and woman, to every one a loaf of bread, and a portion *{1}* of flesh, and a cake of raisins. *{1}* Or, of wine  
 4 And he appointed certain of the Levites to minister before the ark of Jehovah, and to celebrate and to thank and praise Jehovah, the God of Israel:  
 5 Asaph the chief, and second to him Zechariah, *{1}* Jeiel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Mattithiah, and Eliab, and Benaiah, and Obed-edom, and Jeiel, with psalteries and with harps; and Asaph with cymbals, sounding aloud; *{1}* In 1 Ch 15:18 Jaaziel  
 6 and Benaiah and Jahaziel the priests with trumpets continually, before the ark of the covenant of God.  
 7 ¶ Then on that day did David *{1}* first ordain to give thanks unto Jehovah, by the hand of Asaph and his brethren. *{1}* Or make it the chief work  
 8 O give thanks unto Jehovah, call upon his name; Make known his doings among the peoples.  
 9 Sing unto him, sing praises unto him; *{1}* Talk ye of all his marvellous works. *{1}* Or Meditate  
 10 Glory ye in his holy name; Let the heart of them rejoice that seek Jehovah.  
 11 Seek ye Jehovah and his strength; Seek his face evermore.  
 12 Remember his marvellous works that he hath done, His wonders, and the judgments of his mouth,  
 13 O ye seed of Israel his servant, Ye children of Jacob, his chosen ones.  
 14 He is Jehovah our God; His judgments are in all the earth.  
 15 Remember his covenant for ever, The word which he commanded to a thousand generations,  
 16 The covenant which he made with Abraham, And his oath unto Isaac,  
 17 And confirmed the same unto Jacob for a statute, To Israel for an everlasting covenant,  
 18 Saying, Unto thee will I give the land of Canaan, The *{1}* lot of your inheritance; *{1}* Heb cord, or line  
 19 When ye were but a few men in number, Yea, very few, and sojourners in it;  
 20 And they went about from nation to nation, And from one kingdom to another people.  
 21 He suffered no man to do them wrong; Yea, he reprov'd kings for their sakes,  
 22 Saying, Touch not mine anointed ones, And do my prophets no harm.  
 23 Sing unto Jehovah, all the earth; Show forth his salvation from day to day.  
 24 Declare his glory among the nations, His marvellous works among all the peoples.  
 25 For great is Jehovah, and greatly to be praised: He also is to be feared above all gods.  
 26 For all the gods of the peoples are *{1}* idols: But Jehovah made the heavens. *{1}* Or things of nought  
 27 Honor and majesty are before him: Strength and gladness are in his place.  
 28 Ascribe unto Jehovah, ye kindreds of the peoples, Ascribe unto Jehovah glory and strength;  
 29 Ascribe unto Jehovah the glory due unto his name: Bring an offering, and come before him: Worship Jehovah *{1}* in holy array. *{1}* Or in the beauty of holiness  
 30 Tremble before him, all the earth: The world also is established that it cannot be moved.

- 31 Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice; And let them say among the nations, Jehovah reigneth.  
 32 Let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof; Let the field exult, and all that is therein;  
 33 Then shall the trees of the wood sing for joy before Jehovah; For he cometh to judge the earth.  
 34 O give thanks unto Jehovah; for he is good; For his lovingkindness *endureth* for ever.  
 35 And say ye, Save us, O God of our salvation, And gather us together and deliver us from the nations, To give thanks unto thy holy name, And to triumph in thy praise.  
 36 Blessed be Jehovah, the God of Israel, From everlasting even to everlasting. And all the people said, Amen, and praised Jehovah.  
 37 ¶ So he left there, before the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, Asaph and his brethren, to minister before the ark continually, as every day's work required;  
 38 and Obed-edom with their brethren, threescore and eight; Obed-edom also the son of Jeduthun and Hosah to be doorkeepers;  
 39 and Zadok the priest, and his brethren the priests, before the tabernacle of Jehovah in the high place that was at Gibeon,  
 40 to offer burnt-offerings unto Jehovah upon the altar of burnt-offering continually morning and evening, even according to all that is written in the law of Jehovah, which he commanded unto Israel;  
 41 and with them Heman and Jeduthun, and the rest that were chosen, who were mentioned by name, to give thanks to Jehovah, because his lovingkindness *endureth* for ever;  
 42 and with them Heman and Jeduthun *with* trumpets and cymbals for those that should sound aloud, and *with* instruments for the songs of God; and the sons of Jeduthun to be at the gate.  
 43 And all the people departed every man to his house: and David returned to bless his house.

- 3- The ark is properly returned. (15.-16.)
- a- The Levites bore the ark properly. (15.)
  - b- David's offerings and community feast. vs. 16:1-6
  - c- The Levites appointed as singers.
  - d- David's Psalm of praise. vs. 16:7-43.

**1 Chronicles 17**

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when David dwelt in his house, that David said to Nathan the prophet, Lo, I dwell in a house of cedar, but the ark of the covenant of Jehovah *dwelleth* under curtains.
- 2 And Nathan said unto David, Do all that is in thy heart; for God is with thee.
- 3 And it came to pass the same night, that the word of God came to Nathan, saying,
- 4 Go and tell David my servant, Thus saith Jehovah, Thou shalt not build me a house to dwell in:
- 5 for I have not dwelt in a house since the day that I brought up Israel, unto this day, but *{1}* have gone from tent to tent, and from *one* tabernacle *to another*. *{1} Heb have been}*
- 6 In all places wherein I have walked with all Israel, spake I a word with any of the judges of Israel, whom I commanded to be shepherd of my people, saying, Why have ye not built me a house of cedar?
- 7 Now therefore thus shalt thou say unto my servant David, Thus saith Jehovah of hosts, I took thee from the *{1}* sheepcote, from following the sheep, that thou shouldest be *{2}* prince over my people Israel: *{1} Or pasture 2) Or leader}*
- 8 and I have been with thee whithersoever thou hast gone, and have cut off all thine enemies from before thee; and I will make thee a name, like unto the name of the great ones that are in the earth.
- 9 And I will appoint a place for my people Israel, and will plant them, that they may dwell in their own place, and be moved no more; neither shall the children of wickedness waste them any more, as at the first,
- 10 and *as* from the day that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel; and I *{1}* will subdue all thine enemies. Moreover I tell thee that Jehovah will build thee a house. *{1} Or have subdued}*
- 11 And it shall come to pass, when thy days are fulfilled that thou must go to be with thy fathers, that I will set up thy seed after thee, who shall be of thy sons; and I will establish his kingdom.
- 12 He shall build me a house, and I will establish his throne for ever.
- 13 I will be his father, and he shall be my son: and I will not take my lovingkindness away from him, as I took it from him that was before thee;
- 14 but I will settle him in my house and in my kingdom for ever; and his throne shall be established for ever.
- 15 According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David.
- 16 ¶ Then David the king went in, and sat before Jehovah; and he said, Who am I, O Jehovah God, and what is my house, that thou hast brought me thus far?
- 17 And this was a small thing in thine eyes, O God; but thou hast spoken of thy servant's house for a great while to come, and hast regarded me according to the estate of a man of high degree, O Jehovah God.
- 18 What can David *say* yet more unto thee concerning the honor which is done to thy servant? for thou knowest thy servant.
- 19 O Jehovah, for thy servant's sake, and according to thine own heart, hast thou wrought all this greatness, to make known all *these* great things.
- 20 O Jehovah, there is none like thee, neither is there any God besides thee, according to all that we have heard with our ears.
- 21 *{1}* And what one nation in the earth is like thy people Israel, whom God went to redeem unto himself for a people, to make thee a name by great and terrible things, in driving out nations from before thy people, whom thou redeemest out of Egypt? *{1} Or And who is like thy people Israel, a nation that is alone in the earth etc}*
- 22 For thy people Israel didst thou make thine own people for ever; and thou, Jehovah, becamest their God.
- 23 And now, O Jehovah, let the word that thou hast spoken concerning thy servant, and concerning his house, be established for ever, and do as thou hast spoken.
- 24 *{1}* And let thy name be established and magnified for ever, saying, Jehovah of hosts is the God of Israel, even a God to Israel: and the house of David thy servant is established before thee. *{1} Or Yea, let it be established, and let thy name be magnified etc}*
- 25 For thou, O my God, hast revealed to thy servant that thou wilt build him a house: therefore hath thy servant found *in his heart* to pray before thee.
- 26 And now, O Jehovah, thou art God, and hast promised this good thing unto thy servant:
- 27 and now it hath pleased thee to bless the house of thy servant, that it may continue for ever before thee: for thou, O Jehovah, hast blessed, and it is blessed for ever.



D- David's desire and the Davidic covenant.	(17.)
1- David's concern for the house of the Lord.	vs. 1-2
2- He is forbidden through Nathan to build a temple.	vs. 3-6
3- The Davidic covenant is given.	vs. 7-15
4- David's prayer.	vs. 16-27

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 18 to 20 are backed up.

## 1 Chronicles 18

- 1 ¶ And after this it came to pass, that David smote the Philistines, and subdued them, and took Gath and its towns out of the hand of the Philistines.
- 2 And he smote Moab; and the Moabites became servants to David, and brought tribute.
- 3 And David smote Hadarezer king of Zobah {1} unto Hamath, as he went to establish his dominion by the river Euphrates. {1} Or by}
- 4 And David took from him a thousand chariots, and seven thousand horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen; and David hocked all the chariot horses, but reserved of them for a hundred chariots.
- 5 And when {1} the Syrians of {2} Damascus came to succor Hadarezer king of Zobah, David smote of {1} the Syrians two and twenty thousand men. {1} Heb Aram 2) Heb Darmesek}
- 6 Then David put garrisons in {1} Syria of {2} Damascus; and {1} the Syrians became servants to David, and brought tribute. And Jehovah {3} gave victory to David whithersoever he went. {1} Heb Aram 2) Heb Darmesek 3) Or saved David}
- 7 And David took the shields of gold that were on the servants of Hadarezer, and brought them to Jerusalem.
- 8 And from Tibhath and from Cun, cities of Hadarezer, David took very much brass, wherewith Solomon made the brazen sea, and the pillars, and the vessels of brass.
- 9 ¶ And when Tou king of Hamath heard that David had smitten all the host of Hadarezer king of Zobah, he sent Hadoram his son to king David, to salute him, and to bless him, because he had fought against Hadarezer and smitten him; (for Hadarezer had wars with Tou;) and *he had with him* all manner of vessels of gold and silver and brass.
- 11 These also did king David dedicate unto Jehovah, with the silver and the gold that he carried away from all the nations; from Edom, and from Moab, and from the children of Ammon, and from the Philistines, and from Amalek.
- 12 Moreover {1} Abishai the son of Zeruiah smote of the Edomites in the Valley of Salt eighteen thousand. {1} Heb Abshai}
- 13 And he put garrisons in Edom; and all the Edomites became servants to David. And Jehovah gave victory to David whithersoever he went.
- 14 And David reigned over all Israel; and he executed justice and righteousness unto all his people.
- 15 And Joab the son of Zeruiah was over the host; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud was {1} recorder; {1} Or chronicler}
- 16 and Zadok the son of Ahitub, and Abimelech the son of Abiathar, were priests; and Shavsha was {1} scribe; {1} Or secretary}
- 17 and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and the sons of David were chief about the king.

## 1 Chronicles 19

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that Nahash the king of the children of Ammon died, and his son reigned in his stead.
- 2 And David said, I will show kindness unto Hanun the son of Nahash, because his father showed kindness to me. So David sent messengers to comfort him concerning his father. And David's servants came into the land of the children of Ammon to Hanun, to comfort him.

- 3 But the princes of the children of Ammon said to Hanun, Thinkest thou that David doth honor thy father, in that he hath sent comforters unto thee? are not his servants come unto thee to search, and to overthrow, and to spy out the land?
- 4 So Hanun took David's servants, and shaved them, and cut off their garments in the middle, even to their buttocks, and sent them away.
- 5 Then there went certain persons, and told David how the men were served. And he sent to meet them; for the men were greatly ashamed. And the king said, Tarry at Jericho until your beards be grown, and then return.
- 6 ¶ And when the children of Ammon saw that they had made themselves odious to David, Hanun and the children of Ammon sent a thousand talents of silver to hire them chariots and horsemen out of Mesopotamia, and out of Arammaacah, and out of Zobah.
- 7 So they hired them thirty and two thousand chariots, and the king of Maacah and his people, who came and encamped before Medeba. And the children of Ammon gathered themselves together from their cities, and came to battle.
- 8 And when David heard of it, he sent Joab, and all the host of the mighty men.
- 9 And the children of Ammon came out, and put the battle in array at the gate of the city: and the kings that were come were by themselves in the field.
- 10 Now when Joab saw that *{1}* the battle was set against him before and behind, he chose of all the choice men of Israel, and put them in array against the Syrians. *{1} Heb the face of the battle was against}*
- 11 And the rest of the people he committed into the hand of *{1}* Abishai his brother; and they put themselves in array against the children of Ammon. *{1} Heb Abshai}*
- 12 And he said, If the Syrians be too strong for me, then thou shalt help me; but if the children of Ammon be too strong for thee, then I will help thee.
- 13 Be of good courage, and let us play the man for our people, and for the cities of our God: and Jehovah do that which seemeth him good.
- 14 So Joab and the people that were with him drew nigh before the Syrians unto the battle; and they fled before him.
- 15 And when the children of Ammon saw that the Syrians were fled, they likewise fled before Abishai his brother, and entered into the city. Then Joab came to Jerusalem.
- 16 And when the Syrians saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they sent messengers, and drew forth the Syrians that were beyond the River, with Shophach the captain of the host of Hadarezer at their head.
- 17 And it was told David; and he gathered all Israel together, and passed over the Jordan, and came upon them, and set the battle in array against them. So when David had put the battle in array against the Syrians, they fought with him.
- 18 And the Syrians fled before Israel; and David slew of the Syrians *the men of* seven thousand chariots, and forty thousand footmen, and killed Shophach the captain of the host.
- 19 And when the servants of Hadarezer saw that they were put to the worse before Israel, they made peace with David, and served him: neither would the Syrians help the children of Ammon any more.

### 1 Chronicles 20

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, at the time of the return of the year, at the time when kings go out *to battle*, that Joab led forth the army, and wasted the country of the children of Ammon, and came and besieged Rabbah. But David tarried at Jerusalem. And Joab smote Rabbah, and overthrew it.
- 2 And David took the crown of *{1}* their king from off his head, and found it to weigh a talent of gold, and there were precious stones in it; and it was set upon David's head: and he brought forth the spoil of the city, exceeding much. *{1} Or Malcam; See Zep 1:5}*
- 3 And he brought forth the people that were therein, and cut *them* with saws, and with harrows of iron, and with axes. And thus did David unto all the cities of the children of Ammon. And David and all the people returned to Jerusalem.
- 4 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that there arose war at *{1}* Gezer with the Philistines: then Sibbecai the Hushathite slew Sippai, of the sons of the giant; and they were subdued. *{1} In 2 Sa 21:18 Gob}*
- 5 And there was again war with the Philistines; and Elhanan the son of Jair slew Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite, the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam.
- 6 And there was again war at Gath, where was a man of great stature, whose fingers and toes were four and twenty, *six on each hand*, and *six on each foot*; and he also was born unto the giant.

7 And when he *{1}* defied Israel, Jonathan the son of Shimea David's brother slew him. *{1} Or reproached}*

8 These were born unto the giant in Gath; and they fell by the hand of David, and by the hand of his servants.

E- David's conquests. (18.-21.)

1- Conquest of Philistia, Moab, Syria, Edom and Ammon. (18.-20.)

Because of length of text, Ch. 21 & 22 are backed up.

## 1 Chronicles 21

1 ¶ And *{1}* Satan stood up against Israel, and moved David to number Israel. *{1} Or an adversary}*

2 And David said to Joab and to the princes of the people, Go, number Israel from Beer-sheba even to Dan; and bring me word, that I may know the sum of them.

3 And Joab said, Jehovah make his people a hundred times as many as they are: but, my lord the king, are they not all my lord's servants? why doth my lord require this thing? why will he be a cause of guilt unto Israel?

- 4 Nevertheless the king's word prevailed against Joab. Wherefore Joab departed, and went throughout all Israel, and came to Jerusalem.
- 5 And Joab gave up the sum of the numbering of the people unto David. And all they of Israel were a thousand thousand and a hundred thousand men that drew sword: and Judah was four hundred threescore and ten thousand men that drew sword.
- 6 But Levi and Benjamin counted he not among them; for the king's word was abominable to Joab.
- 7 ¶ And God was displeased with this thing; therefore he smote Israel.
- 8 And David said unto God, I have sinned greatly, in that I have done this thing: but now, put away, I beseech thee, the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly.
- 9 And Jehovah spake unto Gad, David's seer, saying,
- 10 Go and speak unto David, saying, Thus saith Jehovah, I {1} offer thee three things: choose thee one of them, that I may do it unto thee. {1} *Heb stretch out unto*}
- 11 So Gad came to David, and said unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Take which thou wilt:
- 12 either three years of famine; or three months to be consumed before thy foes, while the sword of thine enemies overtaketh thee; or else three days the sword of Jehovah, {1} even pestilence in the land, and the angel of Jehovah destroying throughout all the borders of Israel. Now therefore consider what answer I shall return to him that sent me. {1} *Or and*}
- 13 And David said unto Gad, I am in a great strait: let me fall, I pray, into the hand of Jehovah; for very {1} great are his mercies: and let me not fall into the hand of man. {1} *Or many*}
- 14 So Jehovah sent a pestilence upon Israel; and there fell of Israel seventy thousand men.
- 15 And God sent an angel unto Jerusalem to destroy it: and as he was about to destroy, Jehovah beheld, and he repented him of the evil, and said to the destroying angel, It is enough; now stay thy hand. And the angel of Jehovah was standing by the threshing-floor of {1} Ornan the Jebusite. {1} *In 2 Sa 24:16, etc Araunah*}
- 16 And David lifted up his eyes, and saw the angel of Jehovah standing between earth and heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders, clothed in sackcloth, fell upon their faces.
- 17 And David said unto God, Is it not I that commanded the people to be numbered? even I it is that have sinned and done very wickedly; but these sheep, what have they done? let thy hand, I pray thee, O Jehovah my God, be against me, and against my father's house; but not against thy people, that they should be plagued.
- 18 ¶ Then the angel of Jehovah commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up, and rear an altar unto Jehovah in the threshing-floor of Ornan the Jebusite.
- 19 And David went up at the saying of Gad, which he spake in the name of Jehovah.
- 20 And Ornan turned back, and saw the angel; and his four sons that were with him hid themselves. Now Ornan was threshing wheat.
- 21 And as David came to Ornan, Ornan looked and saw David, and went out of the threshing-floor, and bowed himself to David with his face to the ground.
- 22 Then David said to Ornan, Give me the place of this threshing-floor, that I may build thereon an altar unto Jehovah: for the full price shalt thou give it me, that the plague may be stayed from the people.
- 23 And Ornan said unto David, Take it to thee, and let my lord the king do that which is good in his eyes: lo, I give *thee* the oxen for burnt-offerings, and the threshing instruments for wood, and the wheat for the meal-offering; I give it all.
- 24 And king David said to Ornan, Nay; but I will verily buy it for the full price: for I will not take that which is thine for Jehovah, nor offer a burnt-offering without cost.
- 25 So David gave to Ornan for the place six hundred shekels of gold by weight.
- 26 And David built there an altar unto Jehovah, and offered burnt-offerings and peace-offerings, and called upon Jehovah; and he answered him from heaven by fire upon the altar of burnt-offering.
- 27 And Jehovah commanded the angel; and he put up his sword again into the sheath thereof.
- 28 At that time, when David saw that Jehovah had answered him in the threshing-floor of Ornan the Jebusite, then he sacrificed there.
- 29 For the tabernacle of Jehovah, which Moses made in the wilderness, and the altar of burnt-offering, were at that time in the high place at Gibeon.
- 30 But David could not go before it to inquire of God; for he was afraid because of the sword of the angel of Jehovah.

- 2- David's sin of numbering his army. 21.
- a- The Satanic cause. vs. 1  
Depending on numbers rather than God.  
Notice Joab's counsel. vs. 2-3
- b- The count (1,100,000). vs. 4
- c- The judgment through Gad. vs. 9-13
- d- David steps "up to the plate", and takes full  
responsibility and makes restitution. vs. 17-27
- e- The altar purchased on Mt. Moriah. 600 shekels of gold by weight. vs. 25

Because of length of text, Ch. 22 to 26 are backed up.

## 1 Chronicles 22

- 1 ¶ Then David said, This is the house of Jehovah God, and this is the altar of burnt-offering for Israel.
- 2 And David commanded to gather together the sojourners that were in the land of Israel; and he set masons to hew wrought stones to build the house of God.
- 3 And David prepared iron in abundance for the nails for the doors of the gates, and for the couplings; and brass in abundance without weight;
- 4 and cedar-trees without number: for the Sidonians and they of Tyre brought cedar-trees in abundance to David.
- 5 And David said, Solomon my son is young and tender, and the house that is to be builded for Jehovah must be exceeding magnificent, of fame and of glory throughout all countries: I will therefore make preparation for it. So David prepared abundantly before his death.
- 6 ¶ Then he called for Solomon his son, and charged him to build a house for Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 7 And David said to Solomon *{I}* his son, As for me, it was in my heart to build a house unto the name of Jehovah my God. *{1} According to another reading My son, as for me etc }*
- 8 But the word of Jehovah came to me, saying, Thou hast shed blood abundantly, and hast made great wars: thou shalt not build a house unto my name, because thou hast shed much blood upon the earth in my sight.
- 9 Behold, a son shall be born to thee, who shall be a man of rest; and I will give him rest from all his enemies round about; for his name shall be *{I}* Solomon, and I will give peace and quietness unto Israel in his days: *{1} That is Peaceful }*
- 10 he shall build a house for my name; and he shall be my son, and I will be his father; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel for ever.
- 11 Now, my son, Jehovah be with thee; and prosper thou, and build the house of Jehovah thy God, as he hath spoken concerning thee.
- 12 Only Jehovah give thee discretion and understanding, and give thee charge concerning Israel; that so thou mayest keep the law of Jehovah thy God.
- 13 Then shalt thou prosper, if thou observe to do the statutes and the ordinances which Jehovah charged Moses with concerning Israel: be strong, and of good courage; fear not, neither be dismayed.
- 14 Now, behold, in my *{I}* affliction I have prepared for the house of Jehovah a hundred thousand talents of gold, and a thousand thousand talents of silver, and of brass and iron without weight; for it is in abundance: timber also and stone have I prepared; and thou mayest add thereto. *{1} Or low estate }*
- 15 Moreover there are workmen with thee in abundance, hewers and workers of stone and timber, and all men that are skilful in every manner of work:
- 16 of the gold, the silver, and the brass, and the iron, there is no number. Arise and be doing, and Jehovah be with thee.
- 17 ¶ David also commanded all the princes of Israel to help Solomon his son, *saying*,
- 18 Is not Jehovah your God with you? and hath he not given you rest on every side? for he hath delivered the inhabitants of the land into my hand; and the land is subdued before Jehovah, and before his people.
- 19 Now set your heart and your soul to seek after Jehovah your God; arise therefore, and build ye the sanctuary of Jehovah God, to bring the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, and the holy vessels of God, into the house that is to be built to the name of Jehovah.

## 1 Chronicles 23

- 1 ¶ Now David was old and full of days; and he made Solomon his son king over Israel.
- 2 And he gathered together all the princes of Israel, with the priests and the Levites.
- 3 And the Levites were numbered from thirty years old and upward: and their number by their polls, man by man,

- was thirty and eight thousand.
- 4 Of these, twenty and four thousand were to oversee the work of the house of Jehovah; and six thousand were officers and judges;
- 5 and four thousand were doorkeepers; and four thousand praised Jehovah with the instruments which I made, *said David*, to praise therewith.
- 6 And David divided them into *{1}* courses according to the sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. *{1}* *Heb divisions}*
- 7 Of the Gershonites: *{1}* Ladan and Shimei. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 6:17 Libni}*
- 8 The sons of Ladan: Jehiel the chief, and Zetham, and Joel, three.
- 9 The sons of Shimei: Shelomoth, and Haziël, and Haran, three. These were the heads of the fathers' *houses* of Ladan.
- 10 And the sons of Shimei: Jahath, *{1}* Zina, and Jeush, and Beriah. These four were the sons of Shimei. *{1}* *In verse 11 Zizah}*
- 11 And Jahath was the chief, and Zizah the second: but Jeush and Beriah had not many sons; therefore they became a fathers' house in one reckoning.
- 12 The sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel, four.
- 13 The sons of Amram: Aaron and Moses; and Aaron was separated, *{1}* that he should sanctify the most holy things, he and his sons, for ever, to burn incense before Jehovah, to minister unto him, and to bless in his name, for ever. *{1}* *Or to sanctify as most holy him etc}*
- 14 But as for Moses the man of God, his sons were named among the tribe of Levi.
- 15 The sons of Moses: Gershom and Eliezer.
- 16 The sons of Gershom: *{1}* Shebuel the chief. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 24:20 Shubael}*
- 17 And the sons of Eliezer were: Rehabiah the chief; and Eliezer had no other sons; but the sons of Rehabiah were very many.
- 18 The sons of Izhar: *{1}* Shelomith the chief. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 24:22 Shelomoth}*
- 19 The sons of Hebron: Jeriah the chief, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.
- 20 The sons of Uzziel: Micah the chief, and Isshiah the second.
- 21 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. The sons of Mahli: Eleazar and Kish.
- 22 And Eleazar died, and had no sons, but daughters only: and their brethren the sons of Kish took them *to wife*.
- 23 The sons of Mushi: Mahli, and Eder, and Jeremoth, three.
- 24 ¶ These were the sons of Levi after their fathers' houses, even the heads of the fathers' *houses* of those of them that were counted, in the number of names by their polls, who did the work for the service of the house of Jehovah, from twenty years old and upward.
- 25 For David said, Jehovah, the God of Israel, hath given rest unto his people; and he dwelleth in Jerusalem for ever:
- 26 and also the Levites shall no more have need to carry the tabernacle and all the vessels of it for the service thereof.
- 27 For *{1}* by the last words of David the sons of Levi were numbered, from twenty years old and upward. *{1}* *Or in the last acts}*
- 28 For *{1}* their office was to wait on the sons of Aaron for the service of the house of Jehovah, in the courts, and in the chambers, and in the purifying of all holy things, even the work of the service of the house of God; *{1}* *Heb their station was at the hand of the sons of Aaron*; See Ne 11:24}
- 29 for the showbread also, and for the fine flour for a meal-offering, whether of unleavened wafers, or of that which is baked in the pan, or of that which is soaked, and for all manner of measure and size;
- 30 and to stand every morning to thank and praise Jehovah, and likewise at even;
- 31 and to offer all burnt-offerings unto Jehovah, on the sabbaths, on the new moons, and on the set feasts, in number according to the ordinance concerning them, continually before Jehovah;
- 32 and that they should keep the charge of the tent of meeting, and the charge of the holy place, and the charge of the sons of Aaron their brethren, for the service of the house of Jehovah.

## 1 Chronicles 24

- 1 ¶ And the courses of the sons of Aaron *were these*. The sons of Aaron: Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.
- 2 But Nadab and Abihu died before their father, and had no children: therefore Eleazar and Ithamar executed the priest's office.
- 3 *{1}* And David with Zadok of the sons of Eleazar, and Ahimelech of the sons of Ithamar, divided them according to their ordering in their service. *{1}* *Or And David divided them, even Zadok etc}*
- 4 And there were more chief men found of the sons of Eleazar than of the sons of Ithamar; and *thus* were they divided: of the sons of Eleazar there were sixteen, heads of fathers' houses; and of the sons of Ithamar, according to their fathers' houses, eight.
- 5 Thus were they divided by lot, one sort with another; for there were princes of the sanctuary, and princes of God, both of the sons of Eleazar, and of the sons of Ithamar.
- 6 And Shemaiah the son of Nethanel the scribe, who was of the Levites, wrote them in the presence of the king, and

the princes, and Zadok the priest, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, and the heads of the fathers' houses of the priests and of the Levites; one fathers' house being taken for Eleazar, and {1} one taken for Ithamar. {1} *The Hebrew text has taken, taken*

- 7 Now the first lot came forth to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah,
- 8 the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,
- 9 the fifth to Malchijah, the sixth to Mijamin,
- 10 the seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth to Abijah,
- 11 the ninth to Jeshua, the tenth to Shecaniah,
- 12 the eleventh to Eliashib, the twelfth to Jakim,
- 13 the thirteenth to Huppah, the fourteenth to Jeshebeab,
- 14 the fifteenth to Bilgah, the sixteenth to Immer,
- 15 the seventeenth to Hezir, the eighteenth to Happizzetz,
- 16 the nineteenth to Pethahiah, the twentieth to Jehezkel,
- 17 the one and twentieth to Jachin, the two and twentieth to Gamul,
- 18 the three and twentieth to Delaiah, the four and twentieth to Maaziah.
- 19 This was the ordering of them in their service, to come into the house of Jehovah according to the ordinance given unto them by Aaron their father, as Jehovah, the God of Israel, had commanded him.
- 20 ¶ And of the rest of the sons of Levi: of the sons of Amram, {1} Shubael; of the sons of Shubael, Jehdeiah. {1} *In 1 Ch 23:16 Shebuel*
- 21 Of Rehabiah: of the sons of Rehabiah, Isshiah the chief.
- 22 Of the Izharites, {1} Shelomoth; of the sons of Shelomoth, Jahath. {1} *In 1 Ch 23:18 Shelomith*
- 23 And the sons of Hebron: Jeriah the chief, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, Jekameam the fourth.
- 24 The sons of Uzziel, Micah; of the sons of Micah, Shamir.
- 25 The brother of Micah, Isshiah; of the sons of Isshiah, Zechariah.
- 26 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi; the sons of Jaaziah: Beno.
- 27 The sons of Merari: of Jaaziah, Beno, and Shoham, and Zaccur, and Ibri.
- 28 Of Mahli: Eleazar, who had no sons.
- 29 Of Kish; the sons of Kish: Jerahmeel.
- 30 And the sons of Mushi: Mahli, and Eder, and Jerimoth. These were the sons of the Levites after their fathers' houses.
- 31 These likewise cast lots even as their brethren the sons of Aaron in the presence of David the king, and Zadok, and Ahimelech, and the heads of the fathers' houses of the priests and of the Levites; the fathers' houses of the chief even as those of his younger brother.

## 1 Chronicles 25

- 1 ¶ Moreover David and the captains of the host set apart for the service certain of the sons of Asaph, and of Heman, and of Jeduthun, who should prophesy with harps, with psalteries, and with cymbals: and the number of them that did the work according to their service was:
- 2 of the sons of Asaph: Zaccur, and Joseph, and Nethaniah, and {1} Asharelah, the sons of Asaph, under the hand of Asaph, who prophesied {2} after the order of the king. {1} *In verse 14 Jesharelah* 2) *Heb by the hands of the king*
- 3 Of Jeduthun; the sons of Jeduthun: Gedaliah, and {1} Zeri, and Jeshaiyah, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah, {2} six, under the hands of their father Jeduthun with the harp, who prophesied in giving thanks and praising Jehovah. {1} *In verse 11 Izri* 2) *With Shimei, mentioned in verse 17*
- 4 Of Heman; the sons of Heman: Bukkiah, Mattaniah, {1} Uzziel, {2} Shebuel, and Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, and Romamti-ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, Mahazioth. {1} *In verse 18 Azarel* 2) *In verse 20 Shubael*
- 5 All these were the sons of Heman the king's seer in the words of God, to lift up the horn. And God gave to Heman fourteen sons and three daughters.
- 6 All these were under the hands of their father for song in the house of Jehovah, with cymbals, psalteries, and harps, for the service of the house of God; {1} Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman being under the order of the king. {1} *Or after the order of the king, even Asaph etc*
- 7 And the number of them, with their brethren that were instructed in singing unto Jehovah, even all that were skilful, was two hundred fourscore and eight.

- 8 ¶ And they cast lots {1} for their offices, all alike, as well the small as the great, the teacher as the scholar. {1} Or ward against ward, as well etc }
- 9 Now the first lot came forth for Asaph to Joseph: the second to Gedaliah; he and his brethren and sons were twelve:
- 10 the third to Zaccur, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 11 the fourth to Izri, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 12 the fifth to Nethaniah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 13 the sixth to Bukkiah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 14 the seventh to Jesharelah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 15 the eighth to Jeshaiiah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 16 the ninth to Mattaniah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 17 the tenth to Shimei, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 18 the eleventh to Azarel, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 19 the twelfth to Hashabiah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 20 for the thirteenth, Shubael, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 21 for the fourteenth, Mattithiah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 22 for the fifteenth to Jeremoth, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 23 for the sixteenth to Hananiah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 24 for the seventeenth to Joshbekashah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 25 for the eighteenth to Hanani, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 26 for the nineteenth to Mallothi, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 27 for the twentieth to Eliathah, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 28 for the one and twentieth to Hothir, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 29 for the two and twentieth to Giddalti, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 30 for the three and twentieth to Mahazioth, his sons and his brethren, twelve:
- 31 for the four and twentieth to Romamtiezer, his sons and his brethren, twelve.

## 1 Chronicles 26

- 1 ¶ For the courses of the doorkeepers: of the Korahites, {1} Meshelemiah the son of Kore, of the sons of {2} Asaph. {1} In verse 14 Shelemiah 2) In 1 Ch 9:19 Ebiasaph }
- 2 And Meshelemiah had sons: Zechariah the first-born, Jediael the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth,
- 3 Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Eliehoenai the seventh.
- 4 And Obed-edom had sons: Shemaiah the first-born, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, and Sacar the fourth, and Nethanel the fifth,
- 5 Ammiel the sixth, Issachar the seventh, Peullethai the eighth; for God blessed him.
- 6 Also unto Shemaiah his son were sons born, that ruled over the house of their father; for they were mighty men of valor.
- 7 The sons of Shemaiah: Othni, and Rephael, and Obed, Elzabad, whose brethren were valiant men, Elihu, and Semachiah.
- 8 All these were of the sons of Obed-edom: they and their sons and their brethren, able men in strength for the service; threescore and two of Obed-edom.
- 9 And Meshelemiah had sons and brethren, valiant men, eighteen.
- 10 Also Hosah, of the children of Merari, had sons: Shimri the chief, (for though he was not the first-born, yet his father made him chief),
- 11 Hilkiyah the second, Tebaliah the third, Zechariah the fourth: all the sons and brethren of Hosah were thirteen.
- 12 Of these were the courses of the doorkeepers, even of the chief men, having {1} offices like their brethren, to minister in the house of Jehovah. {1} Or wards over against their brethren }
- 13 And they cast lots, as well the small as the great, according to their fathers' houses, for every gate.
- 14 And the lot eastward fell to {1} Shelemiah. Then for Zechariah his son, a discreet counsellor, they cast lots; and his lot came out northward. {1} In verse 1 Meshelemiah }
- 15 To Obed-edom southward; and to his sons the store-house.
- 16 To Shuppim and Hosah westward, by the gate of {1} Shallecheth, at the causeway that goeth up, watch against watch. {1} That is Casting forth }
- 17 Eastward were six Levites, northward four a day, southward four a day, and for the store-house two and two.
- 18 For {1} Parbar westward, four at the causeway, and two at {1} Parbar. {1} Or the precinct }
- 19 These were the courses of the doorkeepers; of the sons of the Korahites, and of the sons of Merari.



- 20 ¶ And of the Levites, Ahijah was over the treasures of the house of God, and over the treasures of the *{1}* dedicated things. *{1}* *Heb holy things*
- 21 The sons of *{1}* Ladan, the sons of the Gershonites belonging to Ladan, the heads of the fathers' *houses* belonging to Ladan the Gershonite: *{2}* Jehieli. *{1}* *In 1 Ch 6:17 Libni 2) In 1 Ch 23:8 Jehiel*
- 22 The sons of Jehieli: Zetham, and Joel his brother, over the treasures of the house of Jehovah.
- 23 Of the Amramites, of the Izharites, of the Hebronites, of the Uzzielites:
- 24 and Shebuel the son of Gershom, the son of Moses, was ruler over the treasures.
- 25 And his brethren: of Eliezer *came* Rehabiah his son, and Jeshaiah his son, and Joram his son, and Zichri his son, and Shelomoth his son.
- 26 This Shelomoth and his brethren were over all the treasures of the dedicated things, which David the king, and the heads of the fathers' *houses*, the captains over thousands and hundreds, and the captains of the host, had dedicated.
- 27 *{1}* Out of the spoil won in battles did they dedicate to repair the house of Jehovah. *{1}* *Heb Out of the battles and the spoil*
- 28 And all that Samuel the seer, and Saul the son of Kish, and Abner the son of Ner, and Joab the son of Zeruah, had dedicated, whosoever had dedicated anything, it was under the hand of *{1}* Shelomoth, and of his brethren. *{1}* *Heb Shelomith*
- 29 ¶ Of the Izharites, Chenaniah and his sons were for the outward business over Israel, for officers and judges.
- 30 Of the Hebronites, Hashabiah and his brethren, men of valor, a thousand and seven hundred, had the oversight of Israel beyond the Jordan westward, for all the business of Jehovah, and for the service of the king.
- 31 Of the Hebronites was Jerijah the chief, even of the Hebronites, according to their generations by fathers' *houses*. In the fortieth year of the reign of David they were sought for, and there were found among them mighty men of valor at Jazer of Gilead.
- 32 And his brethren, men of valor, were two thousand and seven hundred, heads of fathers' *houses*, whom king David made overseers over the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half-tribe of the Manassites, for every matter pertaining to God, and for the affairs of the king.

#### F- David's temple preparations.

(22.-26.)

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| 1- The materials prepared.                     | vs. 22:1-5     |
| 2- Solomon is instructed.                      | vs. 6-19       |
| 3- Solomon is made king.                       | vs. 23:1       |
| 4- The Levite's assignments.                   | vs. 23:2-26:32 |
| a - Two high priests.                          |                |
| b - 24 orders of priests.                      |                |
| c - Note the temple gifts by Israel's leaders. |                |

**1 Chronicles 27**

- 1 ¶ Now the children of Israel after their number, *to wit*, the heads of fathers' *houses* and the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and their officers that served the king, in any matter of the courses which came in and went out month by month throughout all the months of the year—of every course were twenty and four thousand.
- 2 Over the first course for the first month was Jashobeam the son of Zabdiel: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 3 *He was* of the children of Perez, the chief of all the captains of the host for the first month.
- 4 And over the course of the second month was Dodai the Ahohite, and his course; and Mikloth the ruler: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 5 The third captain of the host for the third month was Benaiah, the son of Jehoiada the *{1}* priest, chief: and in his course were twenty and four thousand. *{1} Or chief minister; See 2 Sa 8:18}*
- 6 This is that Benaiah, who was the mighty man of the thirty, and over the thirty: and *of* his course was Ammizabad his son.
- 7 The fourth *captain* for the fourth month was Asahel the brother of Joab, and Zebadiah his son after him: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 8 The fifth captain for this fifth month was Shamhuth the Izrahite: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 9 The sixth *captain* for the sixth month was Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 10 The seventh *captain* for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, of the children of Ephraim: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 11 The eighth *captain* for the eighth month was Sibbecai the Hushathite, of the Zerahites: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 12 The ninth *captain* for the ninth month was Abiezer the Anathothite, of the Benjamites: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 13 The tenth *captain* for the tenth month was Maharai the Netophathite, of the Zerahites: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 14 The eleventh *captain* for the eleventh month was Benaiah the Pirathonite, of the children of Ephraim: and in his course were twenty and four thousand.
- 15 The twelfth *captain* for the twelfth month was *{1}* Heldai the Netophathite, of Othniel: and in his course were twenty and four thousand. *{1} In 1 Ch 11:30 Heled}*
- 16 ¶ Furthermore over the tribes of Israel: of the Reubenites was Eliezer the son of Zichri the ruler: of the Simeonites, Shephatiah the son of Maacah:
- 17 of Levi, Hashabiah the son of Kemuel: of Aaron, Zadok:
- 18 of Judah, *{1}* Elihu, one of the brethren of David: of Issachar, Omri the son of Michael: *{1} In 1 Sa 16:6 Eliab}*
- 19 of Zebulun, Ishmaiah the son of Obadiah: of Naphtali, Jeremoth the son of Azriel:
- 20 of the children of Ephraim, Hoshea the son of Azaziah: of the half-*tribe* of Manasseh, Joel the son of Pedaiah:
- 21 of the half-*tribe* of Manasseh in Gilead, Iddo the son of Zechariah: of Benjamin, Jaasiel the son of Abner:
- 22 of Dan, Azarel the son of Jeroham. These were the captains of the tribes of Israel.
- 23 But David took not the number of them from twenty years old and under, because Jehovah had said he would increase Israel like to the stars of heaven.
- 24 Joab the son of Zeruiah began to number, but finished not; and there came wrath for this upon Israel; neither was the number put into the account in the chronicles of king David.
- 25 And over the king's treasures was Azmaveth the son of Adiel: and over the treasures in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the castles, was Jonathan the son of Uziah:
- 26 And over them that did the work of the field for tillage of the ground was Ezri the son of Chelub:
- 27 and over the vineyards was Shimei the Ramathite: and over the increase of the vineyards for the wine-cellars was Zabdi the Shiphmite:
- 28 and over the olive-trees and the sycamore-trees that were in the lowland was Baal-hanan the Gederite: and over the cellars of oil was Joash:

- 29 and over the herds that fed in Sharon was Shitrai the Sharonite: and over the herds that were in the valleys was Shaphat the son of Adlai:
- 30 and over the camels was Obil the Ishmaelite: and over the asses was Jehdeiah the Meronothite:
- 31 and over the flocks was Jaziz the Hagrite. (27:31) All these were the rulers of the substance which was king David's.
- 32 Also Jonathan, David's *{1}* uncle, was a counsellor, a man of understanding, and a scribe: and Jehiel the son of Hachmoni was with the king's sons: *{1} Or brother's son }*
- 33 And Ahithophel was the king's counsellor: and Hushai the Archite was the king's friend:
- 34 and after Ahithophel was Jehoiada the son of Benaiah, and Abiathar: and the captain of the king's host was Joab.
- 

### G- David's administration.

(27.)

- 1- 24,000 federal employees each month.  
Wonder if these were unionized?
- 2- Twelve princes direct the tribes.
- 3- Special officers.

**1 Chronicles 28**

- 1 ¶ And David assembled all the princes of Israel, the princes of the tribes, and the captains of the companies that served the king by course, and the captains of thousands, and the captains of hundreds, and the rulers over all the substance and *{1}* possessions of the king and of his sons, with the *{2}* officers, and the mighty men, even all the mighty men of valor, unto Jerusalem. *{1}* Or *cattle* *2}* Or *eunuchs*
- 2 Then David the king stood up upon his feet, and said, Hear me, my brethren, and my people: as for me, it was in my heart to build a house of rest for the ark of the covenant of Jehovah, and for the footstool of our God; and I had made ready for the building.
- 3 But God said unto me, Thou shalt not build a house for my name, because thou art a man of war, and hast shed blood.
- 4 Howbeit Jehovah, the God of Israel, chose me out of all the house of my father to be king over Israel for ever: for he hath chosen Judah to be *{1}* prince; and in the house of Judah, the house of my father; and among the sons of my father he took pleasure in me to make me king over all Israel; *{1}* Or *leader*
- 5 And of all my sons (for Jehovah hath given me many sons), he hath chosen Solomon my son to sit upon the throne of the kingdom of Jehovah over Israel.
- 6 And he said unto me, Solomon thy son, he shall build my house and my courts; for I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father.
- 7 And I will establish his kingdom for ever, if he be constant to do my commandments and mine ordinances, as at this day.
- 8 Now therefore, in the sight of all Israel, the assembly of Jehovah, and in the audience of our God, observe and seek out all the commandments of Jehovah your God; that ye may possess this good land, and leave it for an inheritance to your children after you for ever.
- 9 And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind; for Jehovah searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if thou seek him, he will be found of thee; but if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever.
- 10 Take heed now; for Jehovah hath chosen thee to build a house for the sanctuary: be strong, and do it.
- 11 ¶ Then David gave to Solomon his son the pattern of the porch *of the temple*, and of the houses thereof, and of the treasuries thereof, and of the upper rooms thereof, and of the inner chambers thereof, and of the *{1}* place of the mercy-seat; *{1}* *Heb house*
- 12 and the pattern of all that he had *{1}* by the Spirit, for the courts of the house of Jehovah, and for all the chambers round about, for the treasuries of the house of God, and for the treasuries of the dedicated things; *{1}* Or *in his spirit*
- 13 also for the courses of the priests and the Levites, and for all the work of the service of the house of Jehovah, and for all the vessels of service in the house of Jehovah;
- 14 of gold by weight for the *vessels of gold*, for all vessels of every kind of service; *of silver* for all the vessels of silver by weight, for all vessels of every kind of service;
- 15 by weight also for the candlesticks of gold, and for the lamps thereof, of gold, by weight for every candlestick and for the lamps thereof; and for the candlesticks of silver, *silver* by weight for *every* candlestick and for the lamps thereof, according to the use of every candlestick;
- 16 and the gold by weight for the tables of showbread, for every table; and silver for the tables of silver;
- 17 and the flesh-hooks, and the basins, and the cups, of pure gold; and for the golden bowls by weight for every bowl; and for the silver bowls by weight for every bowl;
- 18 and for the altar of incense refined gold by weight; and gold for the pattern of the chariot, *even* the cherubim, that spread out *their wings*, and covered the ark of the covenant of Jehovah.
- 19 All this, *said David*, *{1}* have I been made to understand in writing from the hand of Jehovah, even all the works of this pattern. *{1}* Or *Jehovah made me understand in writing by his hand upon me, even etc*
- 20 And David said to Solomon his son, Be strong and of good courage, and do it: fear not, nor be dismayed; for Jehovah God, even my God, is with thee; he will not fail thee, nor forsake thee, until all the work for the service of the house of Jehovah be finished.
- 21 And, behold, there are the courses of the priests and the Levites, for all the service of the house of God: and there shall be with thee in all manner of work every willing man that hath skill, for any manner of service: also the captains and all the people will be wholly at thy commandment.

H-David's final acts.

(28.-29.)

1- His address to the leaders.

vs. 28:1-10

2- His temple blueprints given Solomon.

vs. 11-19

3- His charge to Solomon.

vs. 20-21

**1 Chronicles 29**

- 1 ¶ And David the king said unto all the assembly, Solomon my son, whom alone God hath chosen, is yet young and tender, and the work is great; for the palace is not for man, but for Jehovah God.
- 2 Now I have prepared with all my might for the house of my God the gold for the *things of* gold, and the silver for the *things of* silver, and the brass for the *things of* brass, the iron for the *things of* iron, and wood for the *things of* wood; {1} onyx stones, and *stones* to be set, stones for inlaid work, and of divers colors, and all manner of precious stones, and marble stones in abundance. {1} *Or beryl*}
- 3 Moreover also, because I have set my affection on the house of my God, seeing that I have a treasure of mine own of gold and silver, I give it unto the house of my God, over and above all that I have prepared for the holy house,
- 4 even three thousand talents of gold, of the gold of Ophir, and seven thousand talents of refined silver, wherewith to overlay the walls of the houses;
- 5 of gold for the *things of* gold, and of silver for the *things of* silver, and for all manner of work *to be made* by the hands of artificers. Who then offereth willingly {1} to consecrate himself this day unto Jehovah? {1} *Heb to fill his hand*}
- 6 Then the princes of the fathers' *houses*, and the princes of the tribes of Israel, and the captains of thousands and of hundreds, with the rulers over the king's work, offered willingly;
- 7 and they gave for the service of the house of God of gold five thousand talents and ten thousand darics, and of silver ten thousand talents, and of brass eighteen thousand talents, and of iron a hundred thousand talents.
- 8 And they with whom *precious* stones were found gave them to the treasure of the house of Jehovah, under the hand of Jehiel the Gershonite.
- 9 Then the people rejoiced, for that they offered willingly, because with a perfect heart they offered willingly to Jehovah: and David the king also rejoiced with great joy.
- 10 ¶ Wherefore David blessed Jehovah before all the assembly; and David said, Blessed be thou, O Jehovah, the God of Israel our father, for ever and ever.
- 11 Thine, O Jehovah, is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all that is in the heavens and in the earth *is thine*; thine is the kingdom, O Jehovah, and thou art exalted as head above all.
- 12 Both riches and honor come of thee, and thou rulest over all; and in thy hand is power and might; and in thy hand it is to make great, and to give strength unto all.
- 13 Now therefore, our God, we thank thee, and praise thy glorious name.
- 14 But who am I, and what is my people, that we should {1} be able to offer so willingly after this sort? for all things come of thee, and {2} of thine own have we given thee. {1} *Heb retain strength* 2) *Heb of thy hand*}
- 15 For we are strangers before thee, and sojourners, as all our fathers were: our days on the earth are as a shadow, and there is no {1} abiding. {1} *Heb hope*}
- 16 O Jehovah our God, all this store that we have prepared to build thee a house for thy holy name cometh of thy hand, and is all thine own.
- 17 I know also, my God, that thou triest the heart, and hast pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of my heart I have willingly offered all these things: and now have I seen with joy thy people, that are present here, offer willingly unto thee.
- 18 O Jehovah, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Israel, our fathers, keep this for ever in the imagination of the thoughts of the heart of thy people, and {1} prepare their heart unto thee; {1} *Or establish*}
- 19 and give unto Solomon my son a perfect heart, to keep thy commandments, thy testimonies, and thy statutes, and to do all these things, and to build the palace, for which I have made provision.
- 20 And David said to all the assembly, Now bless Jehovah your God. And all the assembly blessed Jehovah, the God of their fathers, and bowed down their heads, and worshipped Jehovah, and the king.
- 21 And they sacrificed sacrifices unto Jehovah, and offered burnt-offerings unto Jehovah, on the morrow after that day, even a thousand bullocks, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, with their drink-offerings, and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel,
- 22 and did eat and drink before Jehovah on that day with great gladness. And they made Solomon the son of David king the second time, and anointed him unto Jehovah to be {1} prince, and Zadok to be priest. {1} *Or leader*}

- 23 ¶ Then Solomon sat on the throne of Jehovah as king instead of David his father, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him.
- 24 And all the princes, and the mighty men, and all the sons likewise of king David, *{1}* submitted themselves unto Solomon the king. *{1} Heb gave the hand under Solomon }*
- 25 And Jehovah magnified Solomon exceedingly in the sight of all Israel, and bestowed upon him such royal majesty as had not been on any king before him in Israel.
- 26 Now David the son of Jesse reigned over all Israel.
- 27 And the time that he reigned over Israel was forty years; seven years reigned he in Hebron, and thirty and three *years* reigned he in Jerusalem.
- 28 And he died in a good old age, full of days, riches, and honor: and Solomon his son reigned in his stead.
- 29 Now the acts of David the king, first and last, behold, they are written in the *{1}* history of Samuel the seer, and in the *{1}* history of Nathan the prophet, and in the *{1}* history of Gad the seer, *{1} Heb words }*
- 30 with all his reign and his might, and the times that went over him, and over Israel, and over all the kingdoms of the countries.

4- His solicitation of the people's help. vs. 29:1-9

5- His prayer of thanksgiving. vs. 10-19

I- Solomon is made king. vs. 29:22-30.

## 2 Chronicles 1

- 1 ¶ And Solomon the son of David was strengthened in his kingdom, and Jehovah his God was with him, and magnified him exceedingly.
- 2 And Solomon spake unto all Israel, to the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every prince in all Israel, the heads of the fathers' houses.
- 3 So Solomon, and all the assembly with him, went to the high place that was at Gibeon; for there was the tent of meeting of God, which Moses the servant of Jehovah had made in the wilderness.
- 4 But the ark of God had David brought up from Kiriath-jearim to *the place* that David had prepared for it; for he had pitched a tent for it at Jerusalem.
- 5 Moreover the brazen altar, that Bezalel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, had made, {1} was there before the tabernacle of Jehovah: and Solomon and the assembly sought unto it. {1} Or as otherwise read he had put}
- 6 And Solomon {1} went up thither to the brazen altar before Jehovah, which was at the tent of meeting, and offered a thousand burnt-offerings upon it. {1} Or offered there, upon...yea, he offered}
- 7 In that night did God appear unto Solomon, and said unto him, Ask what I shall give thee.
- 8 And Solomon said unto God, Thou hast showed great lovingkindness unto David my father, and hast made me king in his stead.
- 9 Now, O Jehovah God, let thy promise unto David my father be established; for thou hast made me king over a people like the dust of the earth in multitude.
- 10 Give me now wisdom and knowledge, that I may go out and come in before this people; for who can judge this thy people, that is so great?
- 11 And God said to Solomon, Because this was in thy heart, and thou hast not asked riches, wealth, or honor, nor the life of them that hate thee, neither yet hast asked long life; but hast asked wisdom and knowledge for thyself, that thou mayest judge my people, over whom I have made thee king:
- 12 wisdom and knowledge is granted unto thee; and I will give thee riches, and wealth, and honor, such as none of the kings have had that have been before thee; neither shall there any after thee have the like.
- 13 ¶ So Solomon came {1} from the high place that was at Gibeon, from before the tent of meeting, unto Jerusalem; and he reigned over Israel. {1} So Sept, Vulg, and Syr; The Heb has to}
- 14 And Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen: and he had a thousand and four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, that he placed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem.
- 15 And the king made silver and gold to be in Jerusalem as stones, and cedars made he to be as the sycamore-trees that are in the lowland, for abundance.
- 16 And the horses which Solomon had were brought out of Egypt; the king's merchants received them in droves, each drove at a price.
- 17 And they fetched up and brought out of Egypt a chariot for six hundred *shekels* of silver, and a horse for a hundred and fifty: and so for all the kings of the Hittites, and the kings of Syria, did they bring them out by their means.

## 2 Chronicles 2

- 1 ¶ Now Solomon purposed to build a house for the name of Jehovah, and a house for his kingdom.
- 2 And Solomon counted out threescore and ten thousand men to bear burdens, and fourscore thousand men that were hewers in the mountains, and three thousand and six hundred to oversee them.
- 3 And Solomon sent to {1} Hiram the king of Tyre, saying, As thou didst deal with David my father, and didst send him cedars to build him a house to dwell therein, *even so deal with me* . {1} In 1 Ki 5:1 Hiram}
- 4 Behold, I am about to build a house for the name of Jehovah my God, to dedicate it to him, and to burn before him incense of sweet spices, and for the continual showbread, and for the burnt-offerings morning and evening, on the sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the set feasts of Jehovah our God. This is *an ordinance* for ever to Israel.
- 5 And the house which I build is great; for great is our God above all gods.
- 6 But who {1} is able to build him a house, seeing heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain him? who am I then, that I should build him a house, save only to burn incense before him? {1} Heb retaineth strength}
- 7 Now therefore send me a man skilful to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, and in iron, and in purple, and crimson, and blue, and that knoweth how to grave *all manner of gravings, to be* with the skilful men that are with me in Judah and in Jerusalem, whom David my father did provide.



- 8 Send me also cedar-trees, *{1}* fir-trees, and *{2}* algum-trees, out of Lebanon; for I know that thy servants know how to cut timber in Lebanon: and, behold, my servants shall be with thy servants, *{1}* *Or cypress-trees 2)* In 1 Ki 10:11 *almug-trees*
- 9 even to prepare me timber in abundance; for the house which I am about to build shall be great and wonderful.
- 10 And, behold, I will give to thy servants, the hewers that cut timber, twenty thousand *{1}* measures of beaten wheat, and twenty thousand *{1}* measures of barley, and twenty thousand baths of wine, and twenty thousand baths of oil. *{1}* *Heb cors*
- 11 ¶ Then Hiram the king of Tyre answered in writing, which he sent to Solomon, Because Jehovah loveth his people, he hath made thee king over them.
- 12 Hiram said moreover, Blessed be Jehovah, the God of Israel, that made heaven and earth, who hath given to David the king a wise son, endued with discretion and understanding, that should build a house for Jehovah, and a house for his kingdom.
- 13 And now I have sent a skilful man, endued with understanding, *{1}* of Hiram my father's, *{1}* *Or even Hiram my father*
- 14 the son of a woman of the daughters of Dan; and his father was a man of Tyre, skilful to work in gold, and in silver, in brass, in iron, in stone, and in timber, in purple, in blue, and in fine linen, and in crimson, also to grave any manner of graving, and to devise any device; that there may be *a place* appointed unto him with thy skilful men, and with the skilful men of my lord David thy father.
- 15 Now therefore the wheat and the barley, the oil and the wine, which my lord hath spoken of, let him send unto his servants:
- 16 and we will cut wood out of Lebanon, as much as thou shalt need; and we will bring it to thee in floats by sea to *{1}* Joppa; and thou shalt carry it up to Jerusalem. *{1}* *Heb Japho*
- 17 And Solomon numbered all the sojourners that were in the land of Israel, after the numbering wherewith David his father had numbered them; and they were found a hundred and fifty thousand and three thousand and six hundred.
- 18 And he set threescore and ten thousand of them to bear burdens, and fourscore thousand that were hewers in the mountains, and three thousand and six hundred overseers to set the people at work.

### III. THE HISTORY OF SOLOMON'S REIGN. (II Chronicles 1.-9.)

#### A- Solomon's wise and prosperous beginning. (1.)

- 1- His worship at Gibeon. vs. 1-6
- 2- His choice of wisdom to judge. vs. 7-11
- 3- His acquisition of wealth and horses. vs. 12-17

#### B- Solomon builds the temple. (2.-4.)

- 1- The treaty with Hiram of Tyre. (2.)
- a- To provide timber.
- b- To provide a cunning metal worker.
- c- And Solomon enlists 153,600 sojourners to work in the construction. vs.17-18

## 2 Chronicles 3

- 1 ¶ Then Solomon began to build the house of Jehovah at Jerusalem on mount Moriah, where *Jehovah* appeared unto David his father, which he made ready {1} in the place that David had appointed, in the threshing-floor of {2} Ornan the Jebusite. {1} *Heb in the place of David* 2) *In 2 Sa 24:16, etc Araunah*}
- 2 And he began to build in the second *day* of the second month, in the fourth year of his reign.
- 3 Now {1} these are the foundations which Solomon laid for the building of the house of God. The length by cubits after the first measure was threescore cubits, and the breadth twenty cubits. {1} *Or these are the things wherein Solomon was instructed for etc*}
- 4 And the porch that was before *the house*, the length of it, according to the breadth of the house, was twenty cubits, and the height a hundred and twenty; and he overlaid it within with pure gold.
- 5 And the greater house he ceiled with {1} fir-wood, which he overlaid with fine gold, and wrought thereon palm-trees and chains. {1} *Or cypress-wood*}
- 6 And he garnished the house with precious stones for beauty: and the gold was gold of Parvaim.
- 7 He overlaid also the house, the beams, the thresholds, and the walls thereof, and the doors thereof, with gold; and graved cherubim on the walls.
- 8 And he made the most holy house: the length thereof, according to the breadth of the house, was twenty cubits, and the breadth thereof twenty cubits; and he overlaid it with fine gold, amounting to six hundred talents.
- 9 And the weight of the nails was fifty shekels of gold. And he overlaid the upper chambers with gold.
- 10 ¶ And in the most holy house he made two cherubim of image work; and they overlaid them with gold.
- 11 And the wings of the cherubim were twenty cubits long: the wing of the one *cherub* was five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house; and the other wing was *likewise* five cubits, reaching to the wing of the other cherub.
- 12 And the wing of the other cherub was five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house; and the other wing was five cubits *also*, joining to the wing of the other cherub.
- 13 The wings of these cherubim spread themselves forth twenty cubits: and they stood on their feet, and their faces were {1} toward the house. {1} *Or inward*}
- 14 And he made the veil of blue, and purple, and crimson, and fine linen, and wrought cherubim thereon.
- 15 Also he made before the house two pillars of thirty and five cubits high, and the capital that was on the top of each of them was five cubits.
- 16 And he made chains in the oracle, and put *them* on the tops of the pillars; and he made a hundred pomegranates, and put them on the chains.
- 17 And he set up the pillars before the temple, one on the right hand, and the other on the left; and called the name of that on the right hand {1} Jachin, and the name of that on the left {2} Boaz. {1} *That is He shall establish* 2) *That is In it is strength*}

## 2 Chronicles 4

- 1 ¶ Moreover he made an altar of brass, twenty cubits the length thereof, and twenty cubits the breadth thereof, and ten cubits the height thereof.
- 2 Also he made the molten sea of ten cubits from brim to brim, round in compass; and the height thereof was five cubits; and a line of thirty cubits compassed it round about.
- 3 And under it was the likeness of {1} oxen, which did compass it round about, {2} for ten cubits, compassing the sea round about. The {1} oxen were in two rows, cast when it was cast. {1} *In 1 Ki 7:24 knops* 2) *Or ten in a cubit*}
- 4 It stood upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, and three looking toward the west, and three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east: and the sea was set upon them above, and all their hinder parts were inward.
- 5 And it was a handbreadth thick; and the brim thereof was wrought like the brim of a cup, like the flower of a lily: it received and held three thousand baths.
- 6 He made also ten lavers, and put five on the right hand, and five on the left, to wash in them; such things as belonged to the burnt-offering they washed in them; but the sea was for the priests to wash in.
- 7 And he made the ten candlesticks of gold according to the ordinance concerning them; and he set them in the temple, five on the right hand, and five on the left.
- 8 He made also ten tables, and placed them in the temple, five on the right side, and five on the left. And he made a hundred basins of gold.

- 9 Furthermore he made the court of the priests, and the great court, and doors for the court, and overlaid the doors of them with brass.
- 10 And he set the sea on the right side *of the house* eastward, toward the south.
- 11 ¶ And Hiram made the pots, and the shovels, and the basins. So Hiram made an end of doing the work that he wrought for king Solomon in the house of God:
- 12 the two pillars, and the bowls, and the two capitals which were on the top of the pillars, and the two networks to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the top of the pillars,
- 13 and the four hundred pomegranates for the two networks; two rows of pomegranates for each network, to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were *{1}* upon the pillars. *{1} Heb upon the face of the pillars}*
- 14 He made also the bases, and the lavers made he upon the bases;
- 15 one sea, and the twelve oxen under it.
- 16 The pots also, and the shovels, and the flesh-hooks, and all the vessels thereof, did Hiram his father make for king Solomon for the house of Jehovah of bright brass.
- 17 In the plain of the Jordan did the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zeredah.
- 18 Thus Solomon made all these vessels in great abundance: for the weight of the brass *{1}* could not be found out. *{1} Or was not searched out}*
- 19 And Solomon made all the vessels that were in the house of God, the golden altar also, and the tables whereon was the showbread;
- 20 and the candlesticks with their lamps, to burn according to the ordinance before the oracle, of pure gold;
- 21 and the flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs, of gold, and that perfect gold;
- 22 and the snuffers, and the basins, and the spoons, and the firepans, of pure gold: and as for the entry of the house, the inner doors thereof for the most holy place, and the doors of the house, *to wit*, of the temple, were of gold.

## 2- The temple constructed

(3.-4.)

a- Built on Mt. Moriah.

vs. 1

{Note; the temple not built on "The Temple Mount" NEC}

b- The value.

c- The dimensions.

d- The furnishings.

(4.)

Because of length of text, Ch. 5 & 6 are backed up.

## 2 Chronicles 5

- 1 ¶ Thus all the work that Solomon wrought for the house of Jehovah was finished. And Solomon brought in the things that David his father had dedicated, even the silver, and the gold, and all the vessels, and put them in the treasuries of the house of God.
- 2 Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, and all the heads of the tribes, the princes of the fathers' *houses* of the children of Israel, unto Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of Jehovah out of the city of David, which is Zion.
- 3 And all the men of Israel assembled themselves unto the king at the feast, which was *in* the seventh month.
- 4 And all the elders of Israel came: and the Levites took up the ark;
- 5 and they brought up the ark, and the tent of meeting, and all the holy vessels that were in the Tent; these did the priests the Levites bring up.
- 6 And king Solomon and all the congregation of Israel, that were assembled unto him, were before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen, that could not be counted nor numbered for multitude.
- 7 And the priests brought in the ark of the covenant of Jehovah unto its place, into the oracle of the house, to the most holy place, even under the wings of the cherubim.
- 8 For the cherubim spread forth their wings over the place of the ark, and the cherubim covered the ark and the staves thereof above.
- 9 And *{1}* the staves were so long that the ends of the staves were seen from the ark before the oracle; but they were

not seen without: and there it is unto this day. *{1} Or they drew out the staves, so that etc}*

- 10 There was nothing in the ark save the two tables which Moses put *there* at Horeb, *{1}* when Jehovah made a covenant with the children of Israel, when they came out of Egypt. *{1} Or where}*
- 11 ¶ And it came to pass, when the priests were come out of the holy place, (for all the priests that were present had sanctified themselves, and did not keep their courses;
- 12 also the Levites who were the singers, all of them, even Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, and their sons and their brethren, arrayed in fine linen, with cymbals and psalteries and harps, stood at the east end of the altar, and with them a hundred and twenty priests sounding with trumpets;)
- 13 it came to pass, when the trumpeters and singers were as one, to make one sound to be heard in praising and thanking Jehovah; and when they lifted up their voice with the trumpets and cymbals and instruments *{1}* of music, and praised Jehovah, *saying*, For he is good; for his lovingkindness *endureth* for ever; that then the house was filled with a cloud, even the house of Jehovah, *{1} Or for song }*
- 14 so that the priests could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud: for the glory of Jehovah filled the house of God.

## 2 Chronicles 6

- 1 ¶ Then spake Solomon, Jehovah hath said that he would dwell in the thick darkness.
- 2 But I have built thee a house of habitation, and a place for thee to dwell in for ever.
- 3 And the king turned his face, and blessed all the assembly of Israel: and all the assembly of Israel stood.
- 4 And he said, Blessed be Jehovah, the God of Israel, who spake with his mouth unto David my father, and hath with his hands fulfilled it, saying,
- 5 Since the day that I brought forth my people out of the land of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel to build a house in, that my name might be there; neither chose I any man to be *{1}* prince over my people Israel: *{1} Or leader}*
- 6 but I have chosen Jerusalem, that my name might be there; and have chosen David to be over my people Israel.
- 7 Now it was in the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 8 But Jehovah said unto David my father, Whereas it was in thy heart to build a house for my name, thou didst well that it was in thy heart:
- 9 nevertheless thou shalt not build the house; but thy son that shall come forth out of thy loins, he shall build the house for my name.
- 10 And Jehovah hath performed his word that he spake; for I am risen up in the room of David my father, and sit on the throne of Israel, as Jehovah promised, and have built the house for the name of Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 11 And there have I set the ark, wherein is the covenant of Jehovah, which he made with the children of Israel.
- 12 ¶ And he stood before the altar of Jehovah in the presence of all the assembly of Israel, and spread forth his hands;
- 13 (for Solomon had made a brazen scaffold, five cubits long, and five cubits broad, and three cubits high, and had set it in the midst of the court; and upon it he stood, and kneeled down upon his knees before all the assembly of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven;)
- 14 and he said, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, there is no God like thee, in heaven, or on earth; who keepest covenant and lovingkindness *{1}* with thy servants, that walk before thee with all their heart; *{1} Or for}*
- 15 who hast kept with thy servant David my father that which thou didst promise him: yea, thou spakest with thy mouth, and hast fulfilled it with thy hand, as it is this day.
- 16 Now therefore, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, keep with thy servant David my father that which thou hast promised him, saying, *{1}* There shall not fail thee a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel, if only thy children take heed to their way, to walk in my law as thou hast walked before me. *{1} Heb There shall not be cut off unto thee a man from my sight}*
- 17 Now therefore, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, let thy word be verified, which thou spakest unto thy servant David.
- 18 But will God in very deed dwell with men on the earth? behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house which I have builded!
- 19 Yet have thou respect unto the prayer of thy servant, and to his supplication, O Jehovah my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer which thy servant prayeth before thee;
- 20 that thine eyes may be open toward this house day and night, even toward the place whereof thou hast said that thou wouldest put thy name there; to hearken unto the prayer which thy servant shall pray toward this place.
- 21 And hearken thou to the supplications of thy servant, and of thy people Israel, when they shall pray toward this place: yea, hear thou from thy dwelling-place, even from heaven; and when thou hearest forgive.
- 22 *{1}* If a man sin against his neighbor, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and he come *and* swear before thine altar in this house; *{1} Or Whereinsoever a man shall sin}*
- 23 then hear thou from heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, requiting the wicked, to bring his way upon his own head; and justifying the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness.
- 24 And if thy people Israel be smitten down before the enemy, because they have sinned against thee, and shall turn again and confess thy name, and pray and make supplication before thee in this house;
- 25 then hear thou from heaven, and forgive the sin of thy people Israel, and bring them again unto the land which thou gavest to them and to their fathers.

- 26 When the heavens are shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against thee; if they pray toward this place, and confess thy name, and turn from their sin, {1} when thou {2} dost afflict them: {1} Or because 2) Or answerest}
- 27 then hear thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of thy people Israel, {1} when thou teachest them the good way wherein they should walk; and send rain upon thy land, which thou hast given to thy people for an inheritance. {1} Or because}
- 28 If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence, if there be blasting or mildew, locust or caterpillar; if their enemies besiege them in the land of their {1} cities; whatsoever plague or whatsoever sickness there be; {1} Heb gates}
- 29 what prayer and supplication soever be made by any man, or by all thy people Israel, who shall know every man his own plague and his own sorrow, and shall spread forth his hands toward this house:
- 30 then hear thou from heaven thy dwelling-place and forgive, and render unto every man according to all his ways, whose heart thou knowest; (for thou, even thou only, knowest the hearts of the children of men;)
- 31 that they may fear thee, to walk in thy ways, so long as they live in the land which thou gavest unto our fathers.
- 32 Moreover concerning the foreigner, that is not of thy people Israel, when he shall come from a far country for thy great name's sake, and thy mighty hand, and thine outstretched arm; when they shall come and pray toward this house:
- 33 then hear thou from heaven, even from thy dwelling-place, and do according to all that the foreigner calleth to thee for; that all the peoples of the earth may know thy name, and fear thee, as doth thy people Israel, and that they may know that {1} this house which I have built is called by thy name. {1} Or thy name is called upon this house etc}
- 34 If thy people go out to battle against their enemies, by whatsoever way thou shalt send them, and they pray unto thee toward this city which thou hast chosen, and the house which I have built for thy name;
- 35 then hear thou from heaven their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their {1} cause. {1} Or right}
- 36 If they sin against thee (for there is no man that sinneth not), and thou be angry with them, and deliver them to the enemy, so that {1} they carry them away captive unto a land far off or near; {1} Heb they that take them captive carry them away}
- 37 yet if they shall bethink themselves in the land whither they are carried captive, and turn again, and make supplication unto thee in the land of their captivity, saying, We have sinned, we have done perversely, and have dealt wickedly;
- 38 if they return unto thee with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their captivity, whither they have carried them captive, and pray toward their land, which thou gavest unto their fathers, and the city which thou hast chosen, and toward the house which I have built for thy name:
- 39 then hear thou from heaven, even from thy dwelling-place, their prayer and their supplications, and maintain their {1} cause, and forgive thy people who have sinned against thee. {1} Or right}
- 40 Now, O my God, let, I beseech thee, thine eyes be open, and let thine ears be attent, unto the prayer that is made in this place.
- 41 Now therefore arise, O Jehovah God, into thy resting-place, thou, and the ark of thy strength: let thy priests, O Jehovah God, be clothed with salvation, and let thy saints rejoice in {1} goodness. {1} Or good}
- 42 O Jehovah God, turn not away the face of thine anointed: remember thy {1} lovingkindnesses to David thy servant. {1} Or good deeds; See 2 Ch 32:32}

### C- Solomon dedicates the temple.

(5.-7.)

#### 1- The ark is placed in the holy of holies.

(5.)

- a- The Feast of Tabernacles observed.
- b- The Glory fills the temple.

#### 2- Solomon's sermon and prayer.

(6.)

- a- He emphasizes God's choice.
- b- He recalls the Davidic covenant.
- c- He stresses the greatness of God.
- d- He pleads for mercy in times of relapse.

**2 Chronicles 7**

- 1 ¶ Now when Solomon had made an end of praying, the fire came down from heaven, and consumed the burnt-offering and the sacrifices; and the glory of Jehovah filled the house.
- 2 And the priests could not enter into the house of Jehovah, because the glory of Jehovah filled Jehovah's house.
- 3 And all the children of Israel looked on, when the fire came down, and the glory of Jehovah was upon the house; and they bowed themselves with their faces to the ground upon the pavement, and worshipped, and gave thanks unto Jehovah, *saying*, For he is good; for his lovingkindness *endureth* for ever.
- 4 Then the king and all the people offered sacrifice before Jehovah.
- 5 And king Solomon offered a sacrifice of twenty and two thousand oxen, and a hundred and twenty thousand sheep. So the king and all the people dedicated the house of God.
- 6 And the priests stood, according to their offices; the Levites also with instruments *{1}* of music of Jehovah, which David the king had made to give thanks unto Jehovah, (for his lovingkindness *endureth* for ever,) when David praised by their ministry: and the priests sounded trumpets before them; and all Israel stood. *{1} Or for the song of Jehovah}*
- 7 Moreover Solomon hallowed the middle of the court that was before the house of Jehovah; for there he offered the burnt-offerings, and the fat of the peace-offerings, because the brazen altar which Solomon had made was not able to receive the burnt-offering, and the meal-offering, and the fat.
- 8 So Solomon held the feast at that time seven days, and all Israel with him, a very great assembly, from the entrance of Hamath unto the brook of Egypt.
- 9 And on the eighth day they held a *{1}* solemn assembly: for they kept the dedication of the altar seven days, and the feast seven days. *{1} Or closing festival}*
- 10 And on the three and twentieth day of the seventh month he sent the people away unto their tents, joyful and glad of heart for the goodness that Jehovah had showed unto David, and to Solomon, and to Israel his people.
- 11 Thus Solomon finished the house of Jehovah, and the king's house: and all that came into Solomon's heart to make in the house of Jehovah, and in his own house, he prosperously effected.
- 12 ¶ And Jehovah appeared to Solomon by night, and said unto him, I have heard thy prayer, and have chosen this place to myself for a house of sacrifice.
- 13 If I shut up the heavens so that there is no rain, or if I command the locust to devour the land, or if I send pestilence among my people;
- 14 if my people, *{1}* who are called by my name, shall humble themselves, and pray, and seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways; then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land. *{1} Heb upon whom my name is called}*
- 15 Now mine eyes shall be open, and mine ears attent, unto the prayer that is made in this place.
- 16 For now have I chosen and hallowed this house, that my name may be there for ever; and mine eyes and my heart shall be there perpetually.
- 17 And as for thee, if thou wilt walk before me as David thy father walked, and do according to all that I have commanded thee, and wilt keep my statutes and mine ordinances;
- 18 then I will establish the throne of thy kingdom, according as I covenanted with David thy father, *saying*, There shall not fail thee a man to be ruler in Israel.
- 19 But if ye turn away, and forsake my statutes and my commandments which I have set before you, and shall go and serve other gods, and worship them;
- 20 then will I pluck them up by the roots out of my land which I have given them; and this house, which I have hallowed for my name, will I cast out of my sight, and I will make it a proverb and a byword among all peoples.
- 21 And this house, which is so high, every one that passeth by it shall be astonished, and shall say, Why hath Jehovah done thus unto this land, and to this house?
- 22 And they shall answer, Because they forsook Jehovah, the God of their fathers, who brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, and laid hold on other gods, and worshipped them, and served them: therefore hath he brought all this evil upon them.

- 3- The Lord's response. 7.
- a- Fire from heaven falls and the glory descends. vs. 1-3
- b- Multitudinous sacrifices made. vs. 4-11
- c- The Lord's promise of mercy for repentance. vs. 12-18
- d- The promise of judgment for idolatry. vs. 19-22

---

Because of length of text, Ch. 8 & 9 are backed up.

## 2 Chronicles 8

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass at the end of twenty years, wherein Solomon had built the house of Jehovah, and his own house,
- 2 that the cities which Hiram had given to Solomon, Solomon built them, and caused the children of Israel to dwell there.
- 3 And Solomon went to Hamath-zobah, and prevailed against it.
- 4 And he built Tadmor in the wilderness, and all the store-cities, which he built in Hamath.
- 5 Also he built Beth-horon the upper, and Beth-horon the nether, fortified cities, with walls, gates, and bars;
- 6 and Baalath, and all the store-cities that Solomon had, and all the cities for his chariots, and the cities for his horsemen, and all that Solomon desired to build for his pleasure in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and in all the land of his dominion.
- 7 As for all the people that were left of the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, that were not of Israel;
- 8 of their children that were left after them in the land, whom the children of Israel consumed not, of them did Solomon raise a *{1}* levy of *bondservants* unto this day. *{1} Heb men subject to taskwork*
- 9 But of the children of Israel did Solomon make no servants for his work; but they were men of war, and chief of his captains, and rulers of his chariots and of his horsemen.
- 10 And these were the chief officers of king Solomon, even two hundred and fifty, that bare rule over the people.
- 11 And Solomon brought up the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David unto the house that he had built for her; for he said, My wife shall not dwell in the house of David king of Israel, because *{1}* the places are holy, whereunto the ark of Jehovah hath come. *{1} Heb they are*
- 12 ¶ Then Solomon offered burnt-offerings unto Jehovah on the altar of Jehovah, which he had built before the porch,
- 13 even as the duty of every day required, offering according to the commandment of Moses, on the sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the set feasts, three times in the year, *even* in the feast of unleavened bread, and in the feast of weeks, and in the feast of tabernacles.
- 14 And he appointed, according to the ordinance of David his father, the courses of the priests to their service, and the Levites to their offices, to praise, and to minister before the priests, as the duty of every day required; the doorkeepers also by their courses at every gate: for so had David the man of God commanded.
- 15 And they departed not from the commandment of the king unto the priests and Levites concerning any matter, or concerning the treasures.
- 16 Now all the work of Solomon was prepared unto the day of the foundation of the house of Jehovah, and until it was finished. *So* the house of Jehovah was completed.

- 17 Then went Solomon to Ezion-geber, and to Eloth, on the seashore in the land of Edom.  
 18 And Hiram sent him by the hands of his servants ships, and servants that had knowledge of the sea; and they came with the servants of Solomon to Ophir, and fetched from thence four hundred and fifty talents of gold, and brought them to king Solomon.

## 2 Chronicles 9

- 1 ¶ And when the queen of Sheba heard of the fame of Solomon, she came to prove Solomon with hard questions at Jerusalem, with a very great train, and camels that bare spices, and gold in abundance, and precious stones: and when she was come to Solomon, she communed with him of all that was in her heart.  
 2 And Solomon told her all her questions; and there was not anything hid from Solomon which he told her not.  
 3 And when the queen of Sheba had seen the wisdom of Solomon, and the house that he had built,  
 4 and the food of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the *{1}* attendance of his ministers, and their apparel, his cupbearers also, and their apparel, and his ascent by which he went up unto the house of Jehovah; there was no more spirit in her. *{1}* *Heb standing*  
 5 And she said to the king, It was a true report that I heard in mine own land of thine *{1}* acts, and of thy wisdom. *{1}* *Or sayings*  
 6 Howbeit I believed not their words, until I came, and mine eyes had seen it; and, behold, the half of the greatness of thy wisdom was not told me: thou exceedest the fame that I heard.  
 7 Happy are thy men, and happy are these thy servants, that stand continually before thee, and hear thy wisdom.  
 8 Blessed be Jehovah thy God, who delighted in thee, to set thee on his throne, to be king for Jehovah thy God: because thy God loved Israel, to establish them for ever, therefore made he thee king over them, to do justice and righteousness.  
 9 And she gave the king a hundred and twenty talents of gold, and spices in great abundance, and precious stones: neither was there any such spice as the queen of Sheba gave to king Solomon.  
 10 And the servants also of Hiram, and the servants of Solomon, that brought gold from Ophir, brought *{1}* *algum-trees and precious stones. {1} In 1 Ki 10:11 almug-trees }*  
 11 And the king made of the algum-trees terraces for the house of Jehovah, and for the king's house, and harps and psalteries for the singers: and there were none such seen before in the land of Judah.  
 12 And king Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire, whatsoever she asked, besides that which she had brought unto the king. So she turned, and went to her own land, she and her servants.  
 13 ¶ Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred and threescore and six talents of gold,  
 14 besides that which the traders and merchants brought: and all the kings of Arabia and the governors of the country brought gold and silver to Solomon.  
 15 And king Solomon made two hundred bucklers of beaten gold; six hundred *shekels* of beaten gold went to one buckler.  
 16 And *he made* three hundred shields of beaten gold; three hundred *shekels* of gold went to one shield: and the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon.  
 17 Moreover the king made a great throne of ivory, and overlaid it with pure gold.  
 18 And there were six steps to the throne, with a footstool of gold, which were fastened to the throne, and *{1}* *stays on either side by the place of the seat, and two lions standing beside the stays. {1} Or arms; Heb hands*  
 19 And twelve lions stood there on the one side and on the other upon the six steps: there was not the like made in any kingdom.  
 20 And all king Solomon's drinking vessels were of gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon were of pure gold: silver was nothing accounted of in the days of Solomon.  
 21 For the king had ships that went to Tarshish with the servants of Hiram; once every three years came the ships of Tarshish, bringing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.  
 22 So king Solomon exceeded all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom.  
 23 And all the kings of the earth sought the presence of Solomon, to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart.  
 24 And they brought every man his tribute, vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and raiment, armor, and spices, horses, and mules, a rate year by year.



- 25 And Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, that he bestowed in the chariot cities, and with the king at Jerusalem.
- 26 And he ruled over all the kings from the River even unto the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt.
- 27 And the king made silver to be in Jerusalem as stones, and cedars made he to be as the sycamore-trees that are in the lowland, for abundance.
- 28 And they brought horses for Solomon out of Egypt, and out of all lands.
- 29 Now the rest of the acts of Solomon, first and last, are they not written in the *{1}* history of Nathan the prophet, and in the prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in the visions of *{2}* Iddo the seer concerning Jeroboam the son of Nebat? *{1} Heb words 2) Heb Jedai, or Jedo}*
- 30 And Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel forty years.
- 31 And Solomon slept with his fathers, and he was buried in the city of David his father: and Rehoboam his son reigned in his stead.

## D- Solomon's glory. (8.-9.)

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1- First 20 years occupied building temple and palace. | vs. 1      |
| 2- Store cities built.                                 | vs. 2-16   |
| 3- A navy built at Elath (Ezion-geber).                | vs. 17-18  |
| 4- The amazement of the Queen of Sheba.                | vs. 9:1-12 |
| 5- His wealth enumerated.                              | vs. 13-28  |

Because of length of text, Ch. 10 to 12 are backed up.

## 2 Chronicles 10

- 1 ¶ And Rehoboam went to Shechem; for all Israel were come to Shechem to make him king.
- 2 And it came to pass, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat heard of it, (for he was in Egypt, whither he had fled from the presence of king Solomon,) that Jeroboam returned out of Egypt.
- 3 And they sent and called him; and Jeroboam and all Israel came, and they spake to Rehoboam, saying,
- 4 Thy father made our yoke grievous: now therefore make thou the grievous service of thy father, and his heavy yoke which he put upon us, lighter, and we will serve thee.
- 5 And he said unto them, Come again unto me after three days. And the people departed.
- 6 And king Rehoboam took counsel with the old men, that had stood before Solomon his father while he yet lived, saying, What counsel give ye me to return answer to this people?
- 7 And they spake unto him, saying, If thou be kind to this people, and please them, and speak good words to them, then they will be thy servants for ever.
- 8 But he forsook the counsel of the old men which they had given him, and took counsel with the young men that were grown up with him, that stood before him.
- 9 And he said unto them, What counsel give ye, that we may return answer to this people, who have spoken to me, saying, Make the yoke that thy father did put upon us lighter?
- 10 And the young men that were grown up with him spake unto him, saying, Thus shalt thou say unto the people that spake unto thee, saying, Thy father made our yoke heavy, but make thou it lighter unto us; thus shalt thou say unto them, My little finger is thicker than my father's loins.
- 11 And now whereas my father did lade you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke: my father chastised you with whips, but I *will chastise you* with scorpions.
- 12 ¶ So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam the third day, as the king bade, saying, Come to me again the third day.
- 13 And the king answered them roughly; and king Rehoboam forsook the counsel of the old men,

- 14 and spake to them after the counsel of the young men, saying, My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add thereto: my father chastised you with whips, but I *will chastise you* with scorpions.
- 15 So the king hearkened not unto the people; for it was brought about of God, that Jehovah might establish his word, which he spake by Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat.
- 16 And when all Israel saw that the king hearkened not unto them, the people answered the king, saying, What portion have we in David? neither have we inheritance in the son of Jesse: every man to your tents, O Israel: now see to thine own house, David. So all Israel departed unto their tents.
- 17 But as for the children of Israel that dwelt in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them.
- 18 Then king Rehoboam sent Hadoram, who was over the men subject to taskwork; and the children of Israel stoned him to death with stones. And king Rehoboam made speed to get him up to his chariot, to flee to Jerusalem.
- 19 So Israel rebelled against the house of David unto this day.

## 2 Chronicles 11

- 1 ¶ And when Rehoboam was come to Jerusalem, he assembled the house of Judah and Benjamin, a hundred and fourscore thousand chosen men, that were warriors, to fight against Israel, to bring the kingdom again to Rehoboam.
- 2 But the word of Jehovah came to Shemaiah the man of God, saying,
- 3 Speak unto Rehoboam the son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin, saying,
- 4 Thus saith Jehovah, Ye shall not go up, nor fight against your brethren: return every man to his house; for this thing is of me. So they hearkened unto the words of Jehovah, and returned from going against Jeroboam.
- 5 And Rehoboam dwelt in Jerusalem, and built cities for defence in Judah.
- 6 He built Beth-lehem, and Etam, and Tekoa,
- 7 And Beth-zur, and Soco, and Adullam,
- 8 and Gath, and Mareshah, and Ziph,
- 9 and Adoraim, and Lachish, and Azekah,
- 10 and Zorah, and Aijalon, and Hebron, which are in Judah and in Benjamin, fortified cities.
- 11 And he fortified the strongholds, and put captains in them, and stores of victuals, and oil and wine.
- 12 And in every city *he put* shields and spears, and made them exceeding strong. And Judah and Benjamin belonged to him.
- 13 ¶ And the priests and the Levites that were in all Israel resorted to him out of all their border.
- 14 For the Levites left their suburbs and their possession, and came to Judah and Jerusalem: for Jeroboam and his sons cast them off, that they should not execute the priest's office unto Jehovah;
- 15 and he appointed him priests for the high places, and for the he-goats, and for the calves which he had made.
- 16 And after them, out of all the tribes of Israel, such as set their hearts to seek Jehovah, the God of Israel, came to Jerusalem to sacrifice unto Jehovah, the God of their fathers.
- 17 So they strengthened the kingdom of Judah, and made Rehoboam the son of Solomon strong, three years; for they walked three years in the way of David and Solomon.
- 18 And Rehoboam took him a wife, Mahalath the daughter of Jerimoth the son of David, *{1} and of Abihail* the daughter of Eliab the son of Jesse; *{1} Or, and Abihail*
- 19 and she bare him sons: Jeush, and Shemariah, and Zaham.
- 20 And after her he took *{1}* Maacah the daughter of Absalom; and she bare him Abijah, and Attai, and Ziza, and Shelomith. *{1} In 2 Ch 13:2 Micaiah the daughter of Uriel }*
- 21 And Rehoboam loved Maacah the daughter of Absalom above all his wives and his concubines: (for he took eighteen wives, and threescore concubines, and begat twenty and eight sons and threescore daughters.)
- 22 And Rehoboam appointed Abijah the son of Maacah to be chief, *even* the prince among his brethren; for *he was minded* to make him king.
- 23 And he dealt wisely, and dispersed of all his sons throughout all the lands of Judah and Benjamin, unto every fortified city: and he gave them victuals in abundance. And he *{1}* sought *for them* many wives. *{1} Or sought a multitude of wives }*

## 2 Chronicles 12

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass, when the kingdom of Rehoboam was established, and he was strong, that he forsook the law of Jehovah, and all Israel with him.
- 2 And it came to pass in the fifth year of king Rehoboam, that Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem, because they had trespassed against Jehovah,
- 3 with twelve hundred chariots, and threescore thousand horsemen. And the people were without number that came with him out of Egypt: the Lubim, the Sukkiim, and the Ethiopians.
- 4 And he took the fortified cities which pertained to Judah, and came unto Jerusalem.
- 5 Now Shemaiah the prophet came to Rehoboam, and to the princes of Judah, that were gathered together to Jerusalem because of Shishak, and said unto them, Thus saith Jehovah, Ye have forsaken me, therefore have I also left you in the hand of Shishak.

- 6 Then the princes of Israel and the king humbled themselves; and they said, Jehovah is righteous.
- 7 And when Jehovah saw that they humbled themselves, the word of Jehovah came to Shemaiah, saying, They have humbled themselves: I will not destroy them; but I will grant them *{1}* some deliverance, and my wrath shall not be poured out upon Jerusalem by the hand of Shishak. *{1}* Or *deliverance within a little while; Or a few that shall escape*
- 8 Nevertheless they shall be his servants, that they may know my service, and the service of the kingdoms of the countries.
- 9 So Shishak king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem, and took away the treasures of the house of Jehovah, and the treasures of the king's house: he took all away: he took away also the shields of gold which Solomon had made.
- 10 And king Rehoboam made in their stead shields of brass, and committed them to the hands of the captains of the *{1}* guard, that kept the door of the king's house. *{1}* Heb *runners*
- 11 And it was so, that, as oft as the king entered into the house of Jehovah, the guard came and bare them, and brought them back into the guard-chamber.
- 12 And when he humbled himself, the wrath of Jehovah turned from him, so as not to destroy him altogether: and moreover in Judah there were good things *found*.
- 13 ¶ So king Rehoboam strengthened himself in Jerusalem, and reigned: for Rehoboam was forty and one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which Jehovah had chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, to put his name there: and his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess.
- 14 And he did that which was evil, because he set not his heart to seek Jehovah.
- 15 Now the acts of Rehoboam, first and last, are they not written in the *{1}* histories of Shemaiah the prophet and of Iddo the seer, *{2}* after the manner of genealogies? And there were wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam continually. *{1}* Heb *words* 2) Or *in reckoning the genealogies*
- 16 And Rehoboam slept with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David: and Abijah his son reigned in his stead.

---

#### **IV. THE HISTORY OF THE KINGS OF JUDAH. (10.-36.)**

##### **A- Two evil kings. (10.-13.)**

##### **1- Rehoboam. (10.-12.)**

a- His folly divides the kingdom. (10.)

b- His three years of righteous rule. (11.)

Note that the Levites (from the North) move to Jerusalem.

c- His idolatry and judgment. (12.)

1) Invasion by Egypt.

2) Repentance spares Jerusalem.

3) The temple is pillaged.

**2 Chronicles 13**

- 1 ¶ In the eighteenth year of king Jeroboam began Abijah to reign over Judah.
- 2 Three years reigned he in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Micaiah the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. And there was war between Abijah and Jeroboam.
- 3 And Abijah joined battle with an army of valiant men of war, even four hundred thousand chosen men: and Jeroboam set the battle in array against him with eight hundred thousand chosen men, who were mighty men of valor.
- 4 And Abijah stood up upon mount Zemaraim, which is in the hill-country of Ephraim, and said, Hear me, O Jeroboam and all Israel:
- 5 Ought ye not to know that Jehovah, the God of Israel, gave the kingdom over Israel to David for ever, even to him and to his sons by a covenant of salt?
- 6 Yet Jeroboam the son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon the son of David, rose up, and rebelled against his lord.
- 7 And there were gathered unto him worthless men, base fellows, that strengthened themselves against Rehoboam the son of Solomon, when Rehoboam was young and tender-hearted, and could not withstand them.
- 8 And now ye think to withstand the kingdom of Jehovah in the hand of the sons of David; and ye are a great multitude, and there are with you the golden calves which Jeroboam made you for gods.
- 9 Have ye not driven out the priests of Jehovah, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites, and made you priests after the manner of the peoples of *other* lands? so that whosoever cometh to consecrate himself with a young bullock and seven rams, the same may be a priest of *them that are* no gods.
- 10 But as for us, Jehovah is our God, and we have not forsaken him; and *we have* priests ministering unto Jehovah, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites in their work:
- 11 and they burn unto Jehovah every morning and every evening burnt-offerings and sweet incense: the showbread also *set they* in order upon the pure table; and the candlestick of gold with the lamps thereof, to burn every evening: for we keep the charge of Jehovah our God; but ye have forsaken him.
- 12 And, behold, God is with us at our head, and his priests with the trumpets of alarm to sound an alarm against you. O children of Israel, fight ye not against Jehovah, the God of your fathers; for ye shall not prosper.
- 13 ¶ But Jeroboam caused an ambushment to come about behind them: so they were before Judah, and the ambushment was behind them.
- 14 And when Judah looked back, behold, the battle was before and behind them; and they cried unto Jehovah, and the priests sounded with the trumpets.
- 15 Then the men of Judah gave a shout: and as the men of Judah shouted, it came to pass, that God smote Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah.
- 16 And the children of Israel fled before Judah; and God delivered them into their hand.
- 17 And Abijah and his people slew them with a great slaughter: so there fell down slain of Israel five hundred thousand chosen men.
- 18 Thus the children of Israel were brought under at that time, and the children of Judah prevailed, because they relied upon Jehovah, the God of their fathers.
- 19 And Abijah pursued after Jeroboam, and took cities from him, Beth-el with the towns thereof, and Jeshanah with the towns thereof, and <sup>{1}</sup> Ephron with the towns thereof. <sup>{1}</sup> *Another reading is Ephraim*
- 20 Neither did Jeroboam recover strength again in the days of Abijah: and Jehovah smote him, and he died.
- 21 But Abijah waxed mighty, and took unto himself fourteen wives, and begat twenty and two sons, and sixteen daughters.
- 22 And the rest of the acts of Abijah, and his ways, and his sayings, are written in the commentary of the prophet Iddo.

**2 Chronicles 14**

- 1 ¶ So Abijah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David; and Asa his son reigned in his stead. In his days the land was quiet ten years.
- 2 And Asa did that which was good and right in the eyes of Jehovah his God:
- 3 for he took away the foreign altars, and the high places, and brake down the <sup>{1}</sup> pillars, and hewed down the Asherim, <sup>{1}</sup> *Or obelisks*

- 4 and commanded Judah to seek Jehovah, the God of their fathers, and to do the law and the commandment.
- 5 Also he took away out of all the cities of Judah the high places and the sun-images: and the kingdom was quiet before him.
- 6 And he built fortified cities in Judah; for the land was quiet, and he had no war in those years, because Jehovah had given him rest.
- 7 For he said unto Judah, Let us build these cities, and make about them walls, and towers, gates, and bars; the land is yet before us, because we have sought Jehovah our God; we have sought him, and he hath given us rest on every side. So they built and prospered.
- 8 And Asa had an army that bare bucklers and spears, out of Judah three hundred thousand; and out of Benjamin, that bare shields and drew bows, two hundred and fourscore thousand: all these were mighty men of valor.
- 9 ¶ And there came out against them Zerah the Ethiopian with an army of a thousand thousand, and three hundred chariots; and he came unto Mareshah.
- 10 Then Asa went out to meet him, and they set the battle in array in the valley of Zephathah at Mareshah.
- 11 And Asa cried unto Jehovah his God, and said, Jehovah, *{1}* there is none *{2}* besides thee to help, between the mighty and him that hath no strength: help us, O Jehovah our God; for we rely on thee, and in thy name are we come against this multitude. O Jehovah, thou art our God; let not man prevail against thee. *{1}* Or there is no difference with thee to help, whether the mighty or him etc 2) Or like}
- 12 So Jehovah smote the Ethiopians before Asa, and before Judah; and the Ethiopians fled.
- 13 And Asa and the people that were with him pursued them unto Gerar: and there fell of the Ethiopians *{1}* so many that they could not recover themselves; for they were *{2}* destroyed before Jehovah, and before his host; and they carried away very much booty. *{1}* Or so that none remained alive 2) Heb broken}
- 14 And they smote all the cities round about Gerar; for *{1}* the fear of Jehovah came upon them: and they despoiled all the cities; for there was much spoil in them. *{1}* Or a terror from Jehovah}
- 15 They smote also the tents of cattle, and carried away sheep in abundance, and camels, and returned to Jerusalem.

## 2- Abiah. (13.)

- a- He rebukes Israel for its golden calves.
- b- He defeats Israel by calling on the Lord.

## B- Two good kings. (14.-20.)

- 1- Asa. (14.-16.)
  - a- He destroys idolatry.
  - b- He destroys the invading Ethiopians.

**2 Chronicles 15**

- 1 ¶ And the Spirit of God came upon Azariah the son of Oded:  
 2 and he went out to meet Asa, and said unto him, Hear ye me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin: Jehovah is with you, while ye are with him; and if ye seek him, he will be found of you; but if ye forsake him, he will forsake you.  
 3 Now for a long season Israel was without the true God, and without a teaching priest, and without law:  
 4 But when in their distress they turned unto Jehovah, the God of Israel, and sought him, he was found of them.  
 5 And in those times there was no peace to him that went out, nor to him that came in; but great vexations were upon all the inhabitants of the lands.  
 6 And they were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city; for God did vex them with all adversity.  
 7 But be ye strong, and let not your hands be slack; for your work shall be rewarded.  
 8 ¶ And when Asa heard these words, *{1}* and the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he took courage, and put away the abominations out of all the land of Judah and Benjamin, and out of the cities which he had taken from the hill-country of Ephraim; and he renewed the altar of Jehovah, that was before the porch of Jehovah. *{1} Or even}*  
 9 And he gathered all Judah and Benjamin, and them that sojourned with them out of Ephraim and Manasseh, and out of Simeon: for they fell to him out of Israel in abundance, when they saw that Jehovah his God was with him.  
 10 So they gathered themselves together at Jerusalem in the third month, in the fifteenth year of the reign of Asa.  
 11 And they sacrificed unto Jehovah in that day, of the spoil which they had brought, seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep.  
 12 And they entered into the covenant to seek Jehovah, the God of their fathers, with all their heart and with all their soul;  
 13 and that whosoever would not seek Jehovah, the God of Israel, should be put to death, whether small or great, whether man or woman.  
 14 And they swore unto Jehovah with a loud voice, and with shouting, and with trumpets, and with cornets.  
 15 And all Judah rejoiced at the oath; for they had sworn with all their heart, and sought him with their whole desire; and he was found of them: and Jehovah gave them rest round about.  
 16 And also Maacah, the mother of Asa the king, he removed from being *{1}* queen, because she had made an abominable image *{2}* for an Asherah; and Asa cut down her image, and made dust of it, and burnt it at the brook Kidron. *{1} Or queen mother 2) Or for Asherah}*  
 17 But the high places were not taken away out of Israel: nevertheless the heart of Asa was perfect all his days.  
 18 And he brought into the house of God the things that his father had dedicated, and that he himself had dedicated, silver, and gold, and vessels.  
 19 And there was no more war unto the five and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa.

**2 Chronicles 16**

- 1 ¶ In the six and thirtieth year of the reign of Asa, Baasha king of Israel went up against Judah, and built Ramah, that he might not suffer any one to go out or come in to Asa king of Judah.  
 2 Then Asa brought out silver and gold out of the treasures of the house of Jehovah and of the king's house, and sent to Ben-hadad king of Syria, that dwelt at *{1}* Damascus, saying, *{1} Heb Darmesek}*  
 3 *{1}* *There is* a league between me and thee, as *there was* between my father and thy father: behold, I have sent thee silver and gold; go, break thy league with Baasha king of Israel, that he may depart from me. *{1} Or, Let there be}*  
 4 And Ben-hadad hearkened unto king Asa, and sent the captains of his armies against the cities of Israel; and they smote Ijon, and Dan, and Abel-maim, and all the *{1}* store-cities of Naphtali. *{1} Heb storehouses of the cities}*  
 5 And it came to pass, when Baasha heard thereof, that he left off building Ramah, and let his work cease.  
 6 Then Asa the king took all Judah; and they carried away the stones of Ramah, and the timber thereof, wherewith Baasha had builded; and he built therewith Geba and Mizpah.

- 7 ¶ And at that time Hanani the seer came to Asa king of Judah, and said unto him, Because thou hast relied on the king of Syria, and hast not relied on Jehovah thy God, therefore is the host of the king of Syria escaped out of thy hand.
- 8 Were not the Ethiopians and the Lubim a huge host, with chariots and horsemen exceeding many? yet, because thou didst rely on Jehovah, he delivered them into thy hand.
- 9 **For the eyes of Jehovah run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect toward him. Herein thou hast done foolishly; for from henceforth thou shalt have wars.**
- 10 Then Asa was wroth with the seer, and put him in the {1} prison-house; for he was in a rage with him because of this thing. And Asa oppressed some of the people at the same time. {1} *Heb house of the stocks*
- 11 And, behold, the acts of Asa, first and last, lo, they are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.
- 12 And in the thirty and ninth year of his reign Asa was diseased in his feet; his disease was exceeding great: yet in his disease he sought not to Jehovah, but to the physicians.
- 13 And Asa slept with his fathers, and died in the one and fortieth year of his reign.
- 14 And they buried him in his own sepulchres, which he had hewn out for himself in the city of David, and laid him in the bed which was filled with sweet odors and divers kinds of spices prepared by the perfumers' art: and they made a very great burning for him.

c- His reform attracts the righteous of the north. (15.)

d- His later apostasy and judgment. (16.)

1) He fails to seek the Lord when in trouble.

2) He imprisons the reproving prophet (Hanani). vs. 7-10

Note the oft quoted anthropopathic phrase of verse 9. **For the eyes of the LORD run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to shew himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect toward him.**

Because of length of text, Ch. 17 & 18 are backed up.

## 2 Chronicles 17

- 1 ¶ And Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his stead, and strengthened himself against Israel.
- 2 And he placed forces in all the fortified cities of Judah, and set garrisons in the land of Judah, and in the cities of Ephraim, which Asa his father had taken.
- 3 And Jehovah was with Jehoshaphat, because he walked in the first ways of his father David, and sought not unto the Baalim,
- 4 but sought to the God of his father, and walked in his commandments, and not after the doings of Israel.
- 5 Therefore Jehovah established the kingdom in his hand; and all Judah brought to Jehoshaphat tribute; and he had riches and honor in abundance.
- 6 And his heart was lifted up in the ways of Jehovah: and furthermore he took away the high places and the Asherim out of Judah.
- 7 Also in the third year of his reign he sent his princes, even Ben-hail, and Obadiah, and Zechariah, and Nethanel, and Micaiah, to teach in the cities of Judah;
- 8 and with them the Levites, even Shemaiah, and Nethaniah, and Zebadiah, and Asahel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehonathan, and Adonijah, and Tobijah, and Tob-adonijah, the Levites; and with them Elishama and Jehoram, the priests.
- 9 And they taught in Judah, having the book of the law of Jehovah with them; and they went about throughout all the cities of Judah, and taught among the people.
- 10 ¶ And {1} the fear of Jehovah fell upon all the kingdoms of the lands that were round about Judah, so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat. {1} *Or a terror from Jehovah* }
- 11 And some of the Philistines brought Jehoshaphat presents, and silver for tribute; the Arabians also brought him flocks, seven thousand and seven hundred rams, and seven thousand and seven hundred he-goats.
- 12 And Jehoshaphat waxed great exceedingly; and he built in Judah castles and cities of store.
- 13 And he had many works in the cities of Judah; and men of war, mighty men of valor, in Jerusalem.

- 14 And this was the numbering of them according to their fathers' houses: Of Judah, the captains of thousands: Adnah the captain, and with him mighty men of valor three hundred thousand;  
 15 and next to him Jehohanan the captain, and with him two hundred and fourscore thousand;  
 16 and next to him Amasiah the son of Zichri, who willingly offered himself unto Jehovah; and with him two hundred thousand mighty men of valor.  
 17 And of Benjamin: Eliada a mighty man of valor, and with him two hundred thousand armed with bow and shield;  
 18 and next to him Jehozabad and with him a hundred and fourscore thousand ready prepared for war.  
 19 These were they that waited on the king, besides those whom the king put in the fortified cities throughout all Judah.

## 2 Chronicles 18

- 1 ¶ Now Jehoshaphat had riches and honor in abundance; and he joined affinity with Ahab.  
 2 And after certain years he went down to Ahab to Samaria. And Ahab killed sheep and oxen for him in abundance, and for the people that were with him, and moved him to go up *with him* to Ramoth-gilead.  
 3 And Ahab king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat king of Judah, Wilt thou go with me to Ramoth-gilead? And he answered him, I am as thou art, and my people as thy people; and *we will be* with thee in the war.  
 4 ¶ And Jehoshaphat said unto the king of Israel, Inquire *{1}* first, I pray thee, for the word of Jehovah. *{1} Heb to-day}*  
 5 Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, four hundred men, and said unto them, Shall we go to Ramoth-gilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And they said, Go up; for God will deliver it into the hand of the king.  
 6 But Jehoshaphat said, Is there not here a prophet of Jehovah besides, that we may inquire of him?  
 7 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, There is yet one man by whom we may inquire of Jehovah: but I hate him; for he never prophesieth good concerning me, but always evil: the same is Micaiah the son of Imla. And Jehoshaphat said, Let not the king say so.  
 8 Then the king of Israel called an *{1}* officer, and said, Fetch quickly Micaiah the son of Imla. *{1} Or eunuch}*  
 9 Now the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah sat each on his throne, arrayed in their robes, and they were sitting in *{1}* an open place at the entrance of the gate of Samaria; and all the prophets were prophesying before them. *{1} Heb a threshing-floor}*  
 10 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah made him horns of iron, and said, Thus saith Jehovah, With these shalt thou push the Syrians, until they be consumed.  
 11 And all the prophets prophesied so, saying, Go up to Ramoth-gilead, and prosper; for Jehovah will deliver it into the hand of the king.  
 12 And the messenger that went to call Micaiah spake to him, saying, Behold, the words of the prophets *declare* good to the king with one mouth: let thy word therefore, I pray thee, be like one of theirs, and speak thou good.  
 13 And Micaiah said, As Jehovah liveth, what my God saith, that will I speak.  
 14 And when he was come to the king, the king said unto him, *{1}* Micaiah, shall we go to Ramoth-gilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And he said, Go ye up, and prosper; and they shall be delivered into your hand. *{1} Heb Micah}*  
 15 And the king said to him, How many times shall I adjure thee that thou speak unto me nothing but the truth in the name of Jehovah?  
 16 And he said, I saw all Israel scattered upon the mountains, as sheep that have no shepherd: and Jehovah said, These have no master; let them return every man to his house in peace.  
 17 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, Did I not tell thee that he would not prophesy good concerning me, but evil?  
 18 And *Micaiah* said, Therefore hear ye the word of Jehovah: I saw Jehovah sitting upon his throne, and all the host of heaven standing on his right hand and on his left.  
 19 And Jehovah said, Who shall *{1}* entice Ahab king of Israel, that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead? And one spake saying after this manner, and another saying after that manner. *{1} Or deceive}*  
 20 And there came forth *{1}* a spirit, and stood before Jehovah, and said, I will entice him. And Jehovah said unto him, Wherewith? *{1} Heb the spirit}*  
 21 And he said, I will go forth, and will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt entice him, and shalt prevail also: go forth, and do so.  
 22 Now therefore, behold, Jehovah hath put a lying spirit in the mouth of these thy prophets; and Jehovah hath spoken evil concerning thee.  
 23 Then Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah came near, and smote Micaiah upon the cheek, and said, Which way went the Spirit of Jehovah from me to speak unto thee?  
 24 And Micaiah said, Behold, thou shalt see on that day, when thou shalt go *{1}* into an inner chamber to hide thyself. *{1} Or from chamber to chamber}*



- 25 And the king of Israel said, Take ye Micaiah, and carry him back unto Amon the governor of the city, and to Joash the king's son;
- 26 and say, Thus saith the king, Put this fellow in the prison, and feed him with bread of affliction and with water of affliction, until I return in peace.
- 27 And Micaiah said, If thou return at all in peace, Jehovah hath not spoken by me. And he said, Hear, ye peoples, all of you.
- 28 ¶ So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramoth-gilead.
- 29 And the king of Israel said unto Jehoshaphat, I will disguise myself, and go into the battle; but put thou on thy robes. So the king of Israel disguised himself; and they went into the battle.
- 30 Now the king of Syria had commanded the captains of his chariots, saying, Fight neither with small nor great, save only with the king of Israel.
- 31 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, that they said, It is the king of Israel. Therefore they turned about to fight against him: but Jehoshaphat cried out, and Jehovah helped him; and God moved them *to depart* from him.
- 32 And it came to pass, when the captains of the chariots saw that it was not the king of Israel, that they turned back from pursuing him.
- 33 And a certain man drew his bow *{1}* at a venture, and smote the king of Israel between *{2}* the joints of the armor: wherefore he said to the driver of the chariot, Turn thy hand, and carry me out of the host; for I am sore wounded. *{1} Heb in his simplicity 2) Or the lower armor and the breastplate}*
- 34 And the battle increased that day: howbeit the king of Israel stayed himself up in his chariot against the Syrians until the even; and about the time of the going down of the sun he died.

- 2- Jehoshaphat. (17.-20.)
- a- He inaugurates Bible conferences. (17.)
- b- He becomes very wealthy.
- c- He allies with Ahab against Syria. (18.)

Because of length of text, Ch. 19 & 20 are backed up.

## 2 Chronicles 19

- 1 ¶ And Jehoshaphat the king of Judah returned to his house in peace to Jerusalem.
- 2 And Jehu the son of Hanani the seer went out to meet him, and said to king Jehoshaphat, Shouldest thou help the wicked, and love them that hate Jehovah? for this thing wrath is upon thee from before Jehovah.
- 3 Nevertheless there are good things found in thee, in that thou hast put away the Asheroth out of the land, and hast set thy heart to seek God.
- 4 And Jehoshaphat dwelt at Jerusalem: and he went out again among the people from Beer-sheba to the hill-country of Ephraim, and brought them back unto Jehovah, the God of their fathers.
- 5 ¶ And he set judges in the land throughout all the fortified cities of Judah, city by city,
- 6 and said to the judges, Consider what ye do: for ye judge not for man, but for Jehovah; and *he is* with you *{1}* in the judgment. *{1} Or in giving judgment ; Heb in the matter of judgment}*
- 7 Now therefore let the fear of Jehovah be upon you; take heed and do it: for there is no iniquity with Jehovah our God, nor respect of persons, nor taking of bribes.
- 8 Moreover in Jerusalem did Jehoshaphat set of the Levites and the priests, and of the heads of the fathers' *houses* of Israel, for the judgment of Jehovah, and for controversies. And they returned to Jerusalem.
- 9 And he charged them, saying, Thus shall ye do in the fear of Jehovah, faithfully, and with a perfect heart.
- 10 And whensoever any controversy shall come to you from your brethren that dwell in their cities, between blood and blood, between law and commandment, statutes and ordinances, ye shall warn them, that they be not guilty towards Jehovah, and so wrath come upon you and upon your brethren: this do, and ye shall not be guilty.

11 And, behold, Amariah the chief priest is over you in all matters of Jehovah; and Zebadiah the son of Ishmael, the ruler of the house of Judah, in all the king's matters: also the Levites shall be officers before you. *{1}* Deal courageously, and Jehovah be with the good. *{1}* *Heb Be strong and do*

## 2 Chronicles 20

- 1 ¶ And it came to pass after this, that the children of Moab, and the children of Ammon, and with them some of the *{1}* Ammonites, came against Jehoshaphat to battle. *{1}* *Perhaps an error for Meunim; See 2 Ch 26:7*
- 2 Then there came some that told Jehoshaphat, saying, There cometh a great multitude against thee from beyond the sea from Syria; and, behold, they are in Hazazon-tamar (the same is En-gedi).
- 3 And Jehoshaphat feared, and set himself to seek unto Jehovah; and he proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah.
- 4 And Judah gathered themselves together, to seek *help* of Jehovah: even out of all the cities of Judah they came to seek Jehovah.
- 5 And Jehoshaphat stood in the assembly of Judah and Jerusalem, in the house of Jehovah, before the new court;
- 6 and he said, O Jehovah, the God of our fathers, art not thou God in heaven? and art not thou ruler over all the kingdoms of the nations? and in thy hand is power and might, so that none is able to withstand thee.
- 7 Didst not thou, O our God, drive out the inhabitants of this land before thy people Israel, and give it to the seed of Abraham thy friend for ever?
- 8 And they dwelt therein, and have built thee a sanctuary therein for thy name, saying,
- 9 If evil come upon us, *{1}* the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine, we will stand before this house, and before thee, (for thy name is in this house,) and cry unto thee in our affliction, and thou wilt hear and save. *{1}* *Or the sword of judgment*
- 10 And now, behold, the children of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir, whom thou wouldest not let Israel invade, when they came out of the land of Egypt, but they turned aside from them, and destroyed them not;
- 11 behold, how they reward us, to come to cast us out of thy possession, which thou hast given us to inherit.
- 12 O our God, wilt thou not judge them? for we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do: but our eyes are upon thee.
- 13 And all Judah stood before Jehovah, with their little ones, their wives, and their children.
- 14 ¶ Then upon Jahaziel the son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, the Levite, of the sons of Asaph, came the Spirit of Jehovah in the midst of the assembly;
- 15 and he said, Harken ye, all Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, and thou king Jehoshaphat: Thus saith Jehovah unto you, Fear not ye, neither be dismayed by reason of this great multitude; for the battle is not yours, but God's.
- 16 To-morrow go ye down against them: behold, they come up by the ascent of Ziz; and ye shall find them at the end of the valley, before the wilderness of Jeruel.
- 17 Ye shall not need to fight in this *battle*: set yourselves, stand ye still, and see the salvation of Jehovah with you, O Judah and Jerusalem; fear not, nor be dismayed: to-morrow go out against them: for Jehovah is with you.
- 18 And Jehoshaphat bowed his head with his face to the ground; and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell down before Jehovah, worshipping Jehovah.
- 19 And the Levites, of the children of the Kohathites and of the children of the Korahites, stood up to praise Jehovah, the God of Israel, with an exceeding loud voice.
- 20 ¶ And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem: believe in Jehovah your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper.
- 21 And when he had taken counsel with the people, he appointed them that should sing unto Jehovah, and give praise *{1}* in holy array, as they went out before the army, and say, Give thanks unto Jehovah; for his lovingkindness *endureth* for ever. *{1}* *Or in the beauty of holiness*
- 22 **And when they began to sing and to praise, Jehovah set liers-in-wait against the children of Ammon, Moab, and mount Seir, that were come against Judah; and they were smitten.**
- 23 For the children of Ammon and Moab stood up against the inhabitants of mount Seir, utterly to slay and destroy them: and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of Seir, **every one helped to**

- 24 And when Judah came to the watch-tower of the wilderness, they looked upon the multitude; and, behold, they were dead bodies fallen to the earth, and there were none that escaped.
- 25 And when Jehoshaphat and his people came to take the spoil of them, they found among them in abundance both riches and *{1}* dead bodies, and precious jewels, which they stripped off for themselves, more than they could carry away: and they were three days in taking the spoil, it was so much. *{1}* *According to Vulg garments}*
- 26 And on the fourth day they assembled themselves in the valley of *{1}* Beracah; for there they blessed Jehovah: therefore the name of that place was called The valley of Beracah unto this day. *{1}* *That is Blessing}*
- 27 Then they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat in the forefront of them, to go again to Jerusalem with joy; for Jehovah had made them to rejoice over their enemies.
- 28 And they came to Jerusalem with psalteries and harps and trumpets unto the house of Jehovah.
- 29 **And the fear of God was on all the kingdoms of the countries, when they heard that Jehovah fought against the enemies of Israel.**
- 30 **So the realm of Jehoshaphat was quiet; for his God gave him rest round about.**
- 31 ¶ And Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah: he was thirty and five years old when he began to reign; and **he reigned twenty and five years in Jerusalem**: and his mother's name was Azubah the daughter of Shilhi.
- 32 And he walked in the way of Asa his father, and turned not aside from it, doing that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah.
- 33 Howbeit the high places were not taken away; neither as yet had the people set their hearts unto the God of their fathers.
- 34 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, first and last, behold, they are written in the *{1}* history of Jehu the son of Hanani, *{2}* **which is inserted in the book of the kings of Israel.** *{1}* *Heb words 2}* Or who is mentioned}
- 35 And after this did Jehoshaphat king of Judah join himself with Ahaziah king of Israel; the same did very wickedly:
- 36 and he joined himself with him to make ships to go to Tarshish; and they made the ships in Ezion-geber.
- 37 Then Eliezer the son of Dodavahu of Mareshah prophesied against Jehoshaphat, saying, Because thou hast joined thyself with Ahaziah, Jehovah hath *{1}* destroyed thy works. And the ships were broken, so that they were not able to go to Tarshish. *{1}* *Or made a breach in}*

---

d- His second reform and revival. (19.)

e- Jehovah's victory over Moab and Ammon. (20.)

f- Jehoshaphat reigned 25 years - in peace. vs. 30-31

**2 Chronicles 21**

- 1 ¶ And Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David: and Jehoram his son reigned in his stead.
- 2 And he had brethren, the sons of Jehoshaphat: Azariah, and Jehiel, and Zechariah, and Azariah, and Michael, and Shephatiah; all these were the sons of Jehoshaphat king of Israel.
- 3 And their father gave them great gifts, of silver, and of gold, and of precious things, with fortified cities in Judah: but the kingdom gave he to Jehoram, because he was the first-born.
- 4 Now when Jehoram was risen up over the kingdom of his father, and had strengthened himself, he slew all his brethren with the sword, and divers also of the princes of Israel.
- 5 Jehoram was thirty and two years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem.
- 6 And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, as did the house of Ahab; for he had the daughter of Ahab to wife: and he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah.
- 7 Howbeit Jehovah would not destroy the house of David, because of the covenant that he had made with David, and as he promised to give a lamp to him and to his children alway.
- 8 In his days Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah, and made a king over themselves.
- 9 Then Jehoram passed over with his captains, and all his chariots with him: and he rose up by night, and smote the Edomites that compassed him about, and the captains of the chariots.
- 10 So Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah unto this day: then did Libnah revolt at the same time from under his hand, because he had forsaken Jehovah, the God of his fathers.
- 11 Moreover he made high places in the mountains of Judah, and made the inhabitants of Jerusalem to play the harlot, and *{1}* led Judah astray. *{1}* Or compelled Judah thereto }
- 12 ¶ And there came a writing to him from Elijah the prophet, saying, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of David thy father, Because thou hast not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat thy father, nor in the ways of Asa king of Judah,
- 13 but hast walked in the way of the kings of Israel, and hast made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to play the harlot, like as the house of Ahab *{1}* did, and also hast slain thy brethren of thy father's house, who were better than thyself: *{1}* Heb made to play the harlot}
- 14 behold, Jehovah will smite with a great *{1}* plague thy people, and thy children, and thy wives, and all thy substance; *{1}* Heb stroke}
- 15 and thou shalt have great sickness by disease of thy bowels, until thy bowels fall out by reason of the sickness, *{1}* day by day. *{1}* Or year after year}
- 16 And Jehovah stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines, and of the Arabians that are beside the Ethiopians:
- 17 and they came up against Judah, and brake into it, and carried away all the substance that was found *{1}* in the king's house, and his sons also, and his wives; so that there was never a son left him, save *{2}* Jehoahaz, the youngest of his sons. *{1}* Or belonging to 2) In 2 Ch 22:1 Ahaziah}
- 18 And after all this Jehovah smote him in his bowels with an incurable disease.
- 19 And it came to pass, in process of time, at the end of two years, that his bowels fell out by reason of his sickness, and he died of sore diseases. And his people made no burning for him, like the burning of his fathers.
- 20 Thirty and two years old was he when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years: and he departed without being desired; and they buried him in the city of David, but not in the sepulchres of the kings.

**2 Chronicles 22**

- 1 ¶ And the inhabitants of Jerusalem made *{1}* Ahaziah his youngest son king in his stead; for the band of men that came with the Arabians to the camp had slain all the eldest. So Ahaziah the son of Jehoram king of Judah reigned. *{1}* In 2 Ch 21:17 Jehoahaz}
- 2 *{1}* Forty and two years old was Ahaziah when he began to reign; and he reigned one year in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Athaliah the *{2}* daughter of Omri. *{1}* In 2 Ki 8:26 Two and twenty 2) Or granddaughter}
- 3 He also walked in the ways of the house of Ahab; for his mother was his counsellor to do wickedly.
- 4 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, as did the house of Ahab; for they were his counsellors after the death of his father, to his destruction.
- 5 He walked also after their counsel, and went with Jehoram the son of Ahab king of Israel to war against Hazael king of Syria at Ramoth-gilead: and the Syrians wounded Joram.

- 6 And he returned to be healed in Jezreel {1} of the wounds which they had given him at Ramah, when he fought against Hazael king of Syria. And {2} Azariah the son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to see Jehoram the son of Ahab in Jezreel, because he was sick. {1} So in 2 Ki 8:29; The text has because the wounds which etc 2) In verse 1 Ahaziah}
- 7 Now the {1} destruction of Ahaziah was of God, in that he went unto Joram: for when he was come, he went out with Jehoram against Jehu the son of Nimshi, whom Jehovah had anointed to cut off the house of Ahab. {1} Heb treading down}
- 8 And it came to pass, when Jehu was executing judgment upon the house of Ahab, that he found the princes of Judah, and the sons of the brethren of Ahaziah, ministering to Ahaziah, and slew them.
- 9 And he sought Ahaziah, and they caught him (now he was hiding in Samaria), and they brought him to Jehu, and slew him; and they buried him, for they said, He is the son of Jehoshaphat, who sought Jehovah with all his heart. {1} And the house of Ahaziah had no power to hold the kingdom. {1} Or And there was none of the house of Ahaziah that had power etc}
- 10 ¶ Now when Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah saw that her son was dead, she arose and destroyed all the seed royal of the house of Judah.
- 11 But {1} Jehoshabeath, the daughter of the king, took Joash the son of Ahaziah, and stole him away from among the king's sons that were slain, and put him and his nurse in the {2} bedchamber. So Jehoshabeath, the daughter of king Jehoram, the wife of Jehoiada the priest (for she was the sister of Ahaziah), hid him from Athaliah, so that she slew him not. {1} In 2 Ki 11:2 Jehosheba 2) Or chamber for the beds}
- 12 And he was with them hid in the house of God six years: and Athaliah reigned over the land.

### C- Three evil rulers.

(21.-22.)

(All related to Ahab)

#### 1- Jehoram.

(21.)

- a- Slew all his brethren.
- b- Married the daughter of Ahab (Athaliah).  
(Who worshiped Baal.)
- c- He is warned by a letter from Elijah.

#### 2- Ahaziah.

(22.)

- a- He is counseled by his wicked mother.
- b- He is slain by Jehu.

#### 3- Athaliah.

vs. 22:10-12

Reigned by destroying all the seed royal.

Because of length of text, Ch. 23 & 24 are backed up.

## 2 Chronicles 23

- 1 ¶ And in the seventh year Jehoiada strengthened himself, and took the captains of hundreds, Azariah the son of Jeroham, and Ishmael the son of Jehohanan, and Azariah the son of Obed, and Maaseiah the son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat the son of Zichri, into covenant with him.
- 2 And they went about in Judah, and gathered the Levites out of all the cities of Judah, and the heads of fathers' houses of Israel, and they came to Jerusalem.
- 3 And all the assembly made a covenant with the king in the house of God. And he said unto them, Behold, the king's son shall reign, as Jehovah hath spoken concerning the sons of David.
- 4 This is the thing that ye shall do: a third part of you, that come in on the sabbath, of the priests and of the Levites, shall be porters of the thresholds;
- 5 and a third part shall be at the king's house; and a third part at the gate of the foundation: and all the people shall be in the courts of the house of Jehovah.

- 6 But let none come into the house of Jehovah, save the priests, and they that minister of the Levites; they shall come in, for they are holy: but all the people shall keep the charge of Jehovah.
- 7 And the Levites shall compass the king round about, every man with his weapons in his hand; and whosoever cometh into the house, let him be slain: and be ye with the king when he cometh in, and when he goeth out.
- 8 So the Levites and all Judah did according to all that Jehoiada the priest commanded: and they took every man his men, those that were to come in on the sabbath; with those that were to go out on the sabbath; for Jehoiada the priest dismissed not the courses.
- 9 And Jehoiada the priest delivered to the captains of hundreds the spears, and bucklers, and shields, that had been king David's, which were in the house of God.
- 10 And he set all the people, every man with his weapon in his hand, from the right *{1}* side of the house to the left *{1}* side of the house, along by the altar and the house, by the king round about. *{1}* *Heb shoulder}*
- 11 Then they brought out the king's son, and *{1}* put the crown upon him, and *gave him* the testimony, and made him king: and Jehoiada and his sons anointed him; and they said, *Long live the king. {1} Or put upon him the crown and the testimony}*
- 12 ¶ And when Athaliah heard the noise *{1}* of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people into the house of Jehovah: *{1} Or of the people, of the guard, and of those who praised the king}*
- 13 and she looked, and, behold, the king stood by his pillar at the entrance, and the captains and the trumpets by the king; and all the people of the land rejoiced, and blew trumpets; the singers also *played* on instruments of music, and led the singing of praise. Then Athaliah rent her clothes, and said, Treason! treason!
- 14 And Jehoiada the priest brought out the captains of hundreds that were set over the host, and said unto them, Have her forth between the ranks; and whoso followeth her, let him be slain with the sword: for the priest said, Slay her not in the house of Jehovah.
- 15 So they made way for her; and she went to the entrance of the horse gate to the king's house: and they slew her there.
- 16 And Jehoiada made a covenant between himself, and all the people, and the king, that they should be Jehovah's people.
- 17 And all the people went to the house of Baal, and brake it down, and brake his altars and his images in pieces, and slew Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars.
- 18 And Jehoiada appointed the *{1}* officers of the house of Jehovah under the hand of the priests the Levites, whom David had distributed in the house of Jehovah, to offer the burnt-offerings of Jehovah, as it is written in the law of Moses, with rejoicing and with singing, *{2}* according to the order of David. *{1} Heb offices 2) Heb by the hands of David}*
- 19 And he set the porters at the gates of the house of Jehovah, that none that was unclean in anything should enter in.
- 20 And he took the captains of hundreds, and the nobles, and the governors of the people, and all the people of the land, and brought down the king from the house of Jehovah: and they came through the upper gate unto the king's house, and set the king upon the throne of the kingdom.
- 21 So all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet. And Athaliah they had slain with the sword.

## 2 Chronicles 24

- 1 ¶ Joash was seven years old when he began to reign; and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Zibiah, of Beer-sheba.
- 2 And Joash did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah all the days of Jehoiada the priest.
- 3 And Jehoiada took for him two wives; and he begat sons and daughters.
- 4 And it came to pass after this, that Joash was minded to restore the house of Jehovah.
- 5 And he gathered together the priests and the Levites, and said to them, Go out unto the cities of Judah, and gather of all Israel money to repair the house of your God from year to year; and see that ye hasten the matter. Howbeit the Levites hastened it not.
- 6 And the king called for Jehoiada the chief, and said unto him, Why hast thou not required of the Levites to bring in out of Judah and out of Jerusalem the tax of Moses the servant of Jehovah, and of the assembly *{1}* of Israel, for the tent of the testimony? *{1} Or for Israel}*
- 7 For the sons of Athaliah, that wicked woman, had broken up the house of God; and also all the dedicated things of the house of Jehovah did they bestow upon the Baalim.
- 8 So the king commanded, and they made a chest, and set it without at the gate of the house of Jehovah.
- 9 And they made a proclamation through Judah and Jerusalem, to bring in for Jehovah the tax that Moses the servant of God laid upon Israel in the wilderness.
- 10 And all the princes and all the people rejoiced, and brought in, and cast into the chest, until they had made an end.
- 11 And it was so, that, at what time the chest was brought unto the king's *{1}* officers *{2}* by the hand of the Levites, and when they saw that there was much money, the king's *{3}* scribe and the chief priest's officer came and emptied the chest, and took it, and carried it to its place again. Thus they did day by day, and gathered money in abundance. *{1} Heb office 2) Or, which was under the hand 3) Or secretary}*

- 12 And the king and Jehoiada gave it to such as did the work of the service of the house of Jehovah; and they hired masons and carpenters to restore the house of Jehovah, and also such as wrought iron and brass to repair the house of Jehovah.
- 13 So the workmen wrought, and {1} the work of repairing went forward in their hands, and they set up the house of God {2} in its state, and strengthened it. {1} *Heb healing went up upon the work* 2) Or according to the proportion thereof}
- 14 And when they had made an end, they brought the rest of the money before the king and Jehoiada, whereof were made vessels for the house of Jehovah, even vessels wherewith to minister and {1} to offer, and spoons, and vessels of gold and silver. And they offered burnt-offerings in the house of Jehovah continually all the days of Jehoiada. {1} *Or pestles*}
- 15 ¶ But Jehoiada waxed old and was full of days, and he died; a hundred and thirty years old was he when he died.
- 16 And they buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, and toward God and his house.
- 17 Now after the death of Jehoiada came the princes of Judah, and made obeisance to the king. Then the king hearkened unto them.
- 18 And they forsook the house of Jehovah, the God of their fathers, and served the Asherim and the idols: and wrath came upon Judah and Jerusalem for this their guiltiness.
- 19 Yet he sent prophets to them, to bring them again unto Jehovah; and they testified against them: but they would not give ear.
- 20 And the Spirit of God {1} came upon Zechariah the son of Jehoiada the priest; and he stood above the people, and said unto them, Thus saith God, Why transgress ye the commandments of Jehovah, so that ye cannot prosper? because ye have forsaken Jehovah, he hath also forsaken you. {1} *Heb clothed itself with*}
- 21 And they conspired against him, and stoned him with stones at the commandment of the king in the court of the house of Jehovah.
- 22 Thus Joash the king remembered not the kindness which Jehoiada his father had done to him, but slew his son. And when he died, he said, Jehovah look upon it, and require it.
- 23 And it came to pass at the {1} end of the year, that the army of the Syrians came up against him: and they came to Judah and Jerusalem, and destroyed all the princes of the people from among the people, and sent all the spoil of them unto the king of Damascus. {1} *Heb revolution*}
- 24 For the army of the Syrians came with a small company of men; and Jehovah delivered a very great host into their hand, because they had forsaken Jehovah, the God of their fathers. So they executed {1} judgment upon Joash. {1} *Heb judgments*}
- 25 And when they were departed for him (for they left him very sick), his own servants conspired against him for the blood of the {1} sons of Jehoiada the priest, and slew him on his bed, and he died; and they buried him in the city of David, but they buried him not in the sepulchres of the kings. {1} *The Vulg and some editions of Sept read son*}
- 26 And these are they that conspired against him: {1} Zabad the son of Shimeath the Ammonitess, and Jehozabad the son of {2} Shimrith the Moabitess. {1} *In 2 Ki 12:21 Jozacar* 2) *In 2 Ki 12:21 Shomer*}
- 27 Now concerning his sons, and the greatness of the burdens {1} laid upon him, and the {2} rebuilding of the house of God, behold, they are written in the commentary of the book of the kings. And Amaziah his son reigned in his stead. {1} *Or, uttered against* 2) *Heb founding*}

---

### D- Four good kings.

(23.-27.)

#### 1- Joash (with Jehoiada the high priest).

(23.-24. )

a- Athaliah is slain.

(23.)

b- Baal worship is destroyed.

c- Temple repairs and revival under Jehoiada.

(24.)

d- Idolatry resumed after passing of Jehoiada.

e- The judgment from Syria.

f- His assassination by his servants.

**2 Chronicles 25**

- 1 ¶ Amaziah was twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Jehoaddan, of Jerusalem.
- 2 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, but not with a perfect heart.
- 3 Now it came to pass, when the kingdom was established unto him, that he slew his servants that had killed the king his father.
- 4 But he put not their children to death, but did according to that which is written in the law in the book of Moses, as Jehovah commanded, saying, The fathers shall not die for the children, neither shall the children die for the fathers; but every man shall die for his own sin.
- 5 Moreover Amaziah gathered Judah together, and ordered them according to their fathers' houses, under captains of thousands and captains of hundreds, even all Judah and Benjamin: and he numbered them from twenty years old and upward, and found them three hundred thousand chosen men, able to go forth to war, that could handle spear and shield.
- 6 He hired also a hundred thousand mighty men of valor out of Israel for a hundred talents of silver.
- 7 But there came a man of God to him, saying, O king, let not the army of Israel go with thee; for Jehovah is not with Israel, *to wit*, with all the children of Ephraim.
- 8 But *{1}* if thou wilt go, do *valiantly*, be strong for the battle: God will cast thee down before the enemy; for God hath power to help, and to cast down. *{1}* Or *go thou*
- 9 And Amaziah said to the man of God, But what shall we do for the hundred talents which I have given to the *{1}* army of Israel? And the man of God answered, Jehovah is able to give thee much more than this. *{1}* Heb *troop*
- 10 Then Amaziah separated them, *to wit*, the army that was come to him out of Ephraim, to go home again: wherefore their anger was greatly kindled against Judah, and they returned home in fierce anger.
- 11 And Amaziah took courage, and led forth his people, and went to the Valley of Salt, and smote of the children of Seir ten thousand.
- 12 And *other* ten thousand did the children of Judah carry away alive, and brought them unto the top of *{1}* the rock, and cast them down from the top of *{1}* the rock, so that they all were broken in pieces. *{1}* Or *Sela*
- 13 But *{1}* the men of the army whom Amaziah sent back, that they should not go with him to battle, fell upon the cities of Judah, from Samaria even unto Beth-horon, and smote of them three thousand, and took much spoil. *{1}* Heb *the sons of the troop*
- 14 ¶ Now it came to pass, after that Amaziah was come from the slaughter of the Edomites, that he brought the gods of the children of Seir, and set them up to be his gods, and bowed down himself before them, and burned incense unto them.
- 15 Wherefore the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Amaziah, and he sent unto him a prophet, who said unto him, Why hast thou sought after the gods of the people, which have not delivered their own people out of thy hand?
- 16 And it came to pass, as he talked with him, that *the king* said unto him, Have we made thee of the king's counsel? forbear; why shouldst thou be smitten? Then the prophet forbore, and said, I know that God hath determined to destroy thee, because thou hast done this, and hast not hearkened unto my counsel.
- 17 ¶ Then Amaziah king of Judah took advice, and sent to Joash, the son of Jehoahaz the son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, Come, let us look one another in the face.
- 18 And Joash king of Israel sent to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, The *{1}* thistle that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar that was in Lebanon, saying, Give thy daughter to my son to wife: and there passed by a wild beast that was in Lebanon, and trod down the thistle. *{1}* Or *thorn*
- 19 Thou sayest, Lo, thou hast smitten Edom; and thy heart lifteth thee up to boast: abide now at home; why shouldst thou *{1}* meddle to *thy* hurt, that thou shouldst fall, even thou, and Judah with thee? *{1}* Or *provoke calamity*
- 20 But Amaziah would not hear; for it was of God, that he might deliver them into the hand of *their enemies*, because they had sought after the gods of Edom.
- 21 So Joash king of Israel went up; and he and Amaziah king of Judah looked one another in the face at Beth-shemesh, which belongeth to Judah.
- 22 And Judah was put to the worse before Israel; and they fled every man to his tent.



- 23 And Joash king of Israel took Amaziah king of Judah, the son of Joash the son of Jehoahaz, at Bethshemesh, and brought him to Jerusalem, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim unto *{1}* the corner gate, four hundred cubits. *{1}* So in 2 Ki 14:13; *The text has the gate that looketh*
- 24 And *he took* all the gold and silver, and all the vessels that were found in the house of God with Obededom, and the treasures of the king's house, the hostages also, and returned to Samaria.
- 25 And Amaziah the son of Joash king of Judah lived after the death of Joash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel fifteen years.
- 26 Now the rest of the acts of Amaziah, first and last, behold, are they not written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel?
- 27 Now from the time that Amaziah did turn away from following Jehovah they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem; and he fled to Lachish: but they sent after him to Lachish, and slew him there.
- 28 And they brought him upon horses, and buried him with his fathers in *{1}* the city of Judah. *{1}* In 2 Ki 14:20 *the city of David*
- 

## 2- Amaziah.

(25.)

- a- His defeat of Edom and Insult to Israel.
- b- He retained the Edomite gods.
- c- He is defeated by Israel; the wall and temple pillaged.
- d- He is assassinated.

**2 Chronicles 26**

- 1 ¶ And all the people of Judah took {1} Uzziah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in the room of his father Amaziah. {1} *In 2 Ki 14:21 Azariah*
- 2 He built Eloth, and restored it to Judah, after that the king slept with his fathers.
- 3 Sixteen years old was Uzziah when he began to reign; and he reigned fifty and two years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Jechiliah, of Jerusalem.
- 4 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, according to all that his father Amaziah had done.
- 5 And he set himself to seek God in the days of Zechariah, who {1} had understanding in {2} the vision of God: and as long as he sought Jehovah, God made him to prosper. {1} *Or gave instruction* 2) *Heb the seeing*
- 6 And he went forth and warred against the Philistines, and brake down the wall of Gath, and the wall of Jabneh, and the wall of Ashdod; and he built cities in *the country of Ashdod*, and among the Philistines.
- 7 And God helped him against the Philistines, and against the Arabians that dwelt in Gur-baal, and the Meunim.
- 8 And the Ammonites gave tribute to Uzziah: and his name spread abroad even to the entrance of Egypt; for he waxed exceeding strong.
- 9 Moreover Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the corner gate, and at the valley gate, and at the turning of the wall, and fortified them.
- 10 And he built towers in the wilderness, and hewed out many cisterns, for he had much cattle; in the lowland also, and in the {1} plain: *and he had* husbandmen and vinedressers in the mountains and in {2} the fruitful fields; for he loved husbandry. {1} *Or table-land* 2) *Or Carmel*; See 1 Sa 25:2}
- 11 Moreover Uzziah had an army of fighting men, that went out to war by bands, according to the number of their reckoning made by Jeiel the scribe and Maaseiah the officer, under the hand of Hananiah, one of the king's captains.
- 12 The whole number of the heads of fathers' *houses*, even the mighty men of valor, was two thousand and six hundred.
- 13 And under their hand was {1} an army, three hundred thousand and seven thousand and five hundred, that made war with mighty power, to help the king against the enemy. {1} *Heb the power of an army*
- 14 And Uzziah prepared for them, even for all the host, shields, and spears, and helmets, and coats of mail, and bows, and stones for slinging.
- 15 And he made in Jerusalem engines, invented by skilful men, to be on the towers and upon the {1} battlements, wherewith to shoot arrows and great stones. And his name spread far abroad; for he was marvellously helped, till he was strong. {1} *Or corner towers*
- 16 ¶ But when he was strong, his heart was lifted up, {1} so that he did corruptly, and he trespassed against Jehovah his God; for he went into the temple of Jehovah to burn incense upon the altar of incense. {1} *Or to his destruction*
- 17 And Azariah the priest went in after him, and with him fourscore priests of Jehovah, that were valiant men:
- 18 and they withstood Uzziah the king, and said unto him, It pertaineth not unto thee, Uzziah, to burn incense unto Jehovah, but to the priests the sons of Aaron, that are consecrated to burn incense: go out of the sanctuary; for thou hast trespassed; neither shall it be for thine honor from Jehovah God.
- 19 Then Uzziah was wroth; and he had a censer in his hand to burn incense; and while he was wroth with the priests, the leprosy {1} brake forth in his forehead before the priests in the house of Jehovah, beside the altar of incense. {1} *Heb rose (as the sun)*
- 20 And Azariah the chief priest, and all the priests, looked upon him, and, behold, he was leprous in his forehead, and they thrust him out quickly from thence; yea, himself hasted also to go out, because Jehovah had smitten him.
- 21 And Uzziah the king was a leper unto the day of his death, and dwelt in a {1} separate house, being a leper; for he was cut off from the house of Jehovah: and Jotham his son was over the king's house, judging the people of the land. {1} *Or infirmary*
- 22 Now the rest of the acts of Uzziah, first and last, did Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz, write.
- 23 So Uzziah slept with his fathers; and they buried him with his fathers in the field of burial which belonged to the kings; for they said, He is a leper: and Jotham his son reigned in his stead.

- 3- Uzziah. (or Azariah 2 Kings 14:21-15:4) (26.)
- a- He fortified Jerusalem and Judah.
  - b- His rash intrusion into the holy place brings leprosy.

**2 Chronicles 27**

- 1 ¶ Jotham was twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Jerushah the daughter of Zadok.
- 2 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, according to all that his father Uzziah had done: howbeit he entered not into the temple of Jehovah. And the people did yet corruptly.
- 3 He built the upper gate of the house of Jehovah, and on the wall of Ophel he built much.
- 4 Moreover he built cities in the hill-country of Judah, and in the forests he built castles and towers.
- 5 He fought also with the king of the children of Ammon, and prevailed against them. And the children of Ammon gave him the same year a hundred talents of silver, and ten thousand *{1}* measures of wheat, and ten thousand of barley. So much did the children of Ammon render unto him, in the second year also, and in the third. *{1} Heb cors*
- 6 So Jotham became mighty, because he ordered his ways before Jehovah his God.
- 7 Now the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all his wars, and his ways, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.
- 8 He was five and twenty years old when he began to reign, and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem.
- 9 And Jotham slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David: and Ahaz his son reigned in his stead.

**2 Chronicles 28**

- 1 ¶ Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign; and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem: and he did not that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, like David his father;
- 2 but he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and made also molten images for the Baalim.
- 3 Moreover he burnt incense in the valley of the son of Hinnom, and burnt his children in the fire, according to the abominations of the nations whom Jehovah cast out before the children of Israel.
- 4 And he sacrificed and burnt incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree.
- 5 Wherefore Jehovah his God delivered him into the hand of the king of Syria; and they smote him, and carried away of his a great multitude of captives, and brought them to Damascus. And he was also delivered into the hand of the king of Israel, who smote him with a great slaughter.
- 6 ¶ For Pekah the son of Remaliah slew in Judah a hundred and twenty thousand in one day, all of them valiant men; because they had forsaken Jehovah, the God of their fathers.
- 7 And Zichri, a mighty man of Ephraim, slew Maaseiah the king's son, and Azrikam the ruler of the house, and Elkanah that was *{1}* next to the king. *{1} Heb second*
- 8 And the children of Israel carried away captive of their brethren two hundred thousand, women, sons, and daughters, and took also away much spoil from them, and brought the spoil to Samaria.
- 9 But a prophet of Jehovah was there, whose name was Oded: and he went out to meet the host that came to Samaria, and said unto them, Behold, because Jehovah, the God of your fathers, was wroth with Judah, he hath delivered them into your hand, and ye have slain them in a rage which hath reached up to heaven.
- 10 And now ye purpose to keep under the children of Judah and Jerusalem for bondmen and bondwomen unto you: *but* are there not even with you *{1}* trespasses of your own against Jehovah your God? *{1} Heb guiltinesses*
- 11 Now hear me therefore, and send back the captives, that ye have taken captive of your brethren; for the fierce wrath of Jehovah is upon you.
- 12 Then certain of the heads of the children of Ephraim, Azariah the son of Johanan, Berechiah the son of Meshillemoth, and Jehizkiah the son of Shallum, and Amasa the son of Hadlai, stood up against them that came from the war,
- 13 and said unto them, Ye shall not bring in the captives hither: for ye purpose that which will bring upon us *{1}* a trespass against Jehovah, to add unto our sins and to our *{1}* trespass; for our *{1}* trespass is great, and there is fierce wrath against Israel. *{1} Or guilt*
- 14 So the armed men left the captives and the spoil before the princes and all the assembly.
- 15 And the men that have been mentioned by name rose up, and took the captives, and with the spoil clothed all that were naked among them, and arrayed them, and shod them, and gave them to eat and to drink, and anointed them, and carried all the feeble of them upon asses, and brought them to Jericho, the city of palm-trees, unto their brethren: then they returned to Samaria.

- 16 ¶ At that time did king Ahaz send unto the {1} kings of Assyria to help him. {1} According to Sept, Vulg, and Syr king}
- 17 For again the Edomites had come and smitten Judah, and carried away {1} captives. {1} Heb a captivity}
- 18 The Philistines also had invaded the cities of the lowland, and of the South of Judah, and had taken Beth-shemesh, and Aijalon, and Gederoth, and Soco with the {1} towns thereof, and Timnah with the {1} towns thereof, Gimzo also and the {1} towns thereof: and they dwelt there. {1} Heb daughters}
- 19 For Jehovah brought Judah low because of Ahaz king of Israel; for he had {1} dealt wantonly in Judah, and trespassed sore against Jehovah. {1} Or cast away restraint }
- 20 And Tilgath-pilneser king of Assyria came {1} unto him, and distressed him, but {2} strengthened him not. {1} Or against 2) Or prevailed not against him}
- 21 For Ahaz took away a portion out of the house of Jehovah, and out of the house of the king and of the princes, and gave it unto the king of Assyria: but it helped him not.
- 22 And in the time {1} of his distress did he trespass yet more against Jehovah, this same king Ahaz. {1} Or that he distressed him}
- 23 For he sacrificed unto the gods of {1} Damascus, which smote him; and he said, Because the gods of the kings of Syria helped them, therefore will I sacrifice to them, that they may help me. But they were the ruin of him, and of all Israel. {1} Heb Darnesek}
- 24 And Ahaz gathered together the vessels of the house of God, and cut in pieces the vessels of the house of God, and shut up the doors of the house of Jehovah; and he made him altars in every corner of Jerusalem.
- 25 And in every city of Judah he made high places to burn incense unto other gods, and provoked to anger Jehovah, the God of his fathers.
- 26 Now the rest of his acts, and all his ways, first and last, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.
- 27 And Ahaz slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city, even in Jerusalem; for they brought him not into the sepulchres of the kings of Israel: and Hezekiah his son reigned in his stead.

4- Jotham. (27.)

E- The evil reign of Ahaz. (28.)

- 1- He again introduces Baal worship.
- 2- He is invaded by Israel and Syria.
- 3- He sought help from Assyria against Edom and Philistia.
- 4- He became more idolatrous in distress.

Because of length of text, Ch. 29 & 30 are backed up.

## 2 Chronicles 29

- 1 ¶ Hezekiah began to reign when he was five and twenty years old; and he reigned nine and twenty years in Jerusalem: and his mother's name was Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah.
- 2 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, according to all that David his father had done.
- 3 He in the first year of his reign, in the first month, opened the doors of the house of Jehovah, and repaired them.
- 4 And he brought in the priests and the Levites, and gathered them together into the broad place on the east,
- 5 and said unto them, Hear me, ye Levites; now sanctify yourselves, and sanctify the house of Jehovah, the God of your fathers, and carry forth the filthiness out of the holy place.
- 6 For our fathers have trespassed, and done that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah our God, and have forsaken him, and have turned away their faces from the habitation of Jehovah, and turned their backs.
- 7 Also they have shut up the doors of the porch, and put out the lamps, and have not burned incense nor offered burnt-offerings in the holy place unto the God of Israel.
- 8 Wherefore the wrath of Jehovah was upon Judah and Jerusalem, and he hath delivered them to be {1} tossed to and fro, to be an astonishment, and a hissing, as ye see with your eyes. {1} Or a terror}
- 9 For, lo, our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons and our daughters and our wives are in captivity for this.
- 10 Now it is in my heart to make a covenant with Jehovah, the God of Israel, that his fierce anger may turn away from us.
- 11 My sons, be not now negligent; for Jehovah hath chosen you to stand before him, to minister unto him, and that ye should be his ministers, and burn incense.

- 12 ¶ Then the Levites arose, Mahath, the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah, of the sons of the Kohathites; and of the sons of Merari, Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehallelel; and of the Gershonites, Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah;
- 13 and of the sons of Elizaphan, Shimri and Jeuel; and of the sons of Asaph, Zechariah and Mattaniah;
- 14 and of the sons of Heman, Jehuel and Shimei; and of the sons of Jeduthun, Shemaiah and Uzziel.
- 15 And they gathered their brethren, and sanctified themselves, and went in, according to the commandment of the king by the words of Jehovah, to cleanse the house of Jehovah.
- 16 And the priests went in unto the inner part of the house of Jehovah, to cleanse it, and brought out all the uncleanness that they found in the temple of Jehovah into the court of the house of Jehovah. And the Levites took it, to carry it out abroad to the brook Kidron.
- 17 Now they began on the first *day* of the first month to sanctify, and on the eighth day of the month came they to the porch of Jehovah; and they sanctified the house of Jehovah in eight days: and on the sixteenth day of the first month they made an end.
- 18 Then they went in to Hezekiah the king within *the palace*, and said, We have cleansed all the house of Jehovah, and the altar of burnt-offering, with all the vessels thereof, and the table of showbread, with all the vessels thereof.
- 19 Moreover all the vessels, which king Ahaz in his reign did cast away when he trespassed, have we prepared and sanctified; and, behold, they are before the altar of Jehovah.
- 20 ¶ Then Hezekiah the king arose early, and gathered the princes of the city, and went up to the house of Jehovah.
- 21 And they brought seven bullocks, and seven rams, and seven lambs, and seven he-goats, for a sin-offering for the kingdom and for the sanctuary and for Judah. And he commanded the priests the sons of Aaron to offer them on the altar of Jehovah.
- 22 So they killed the bullocks, and the priests received the blood, and sprinkled it on the altar: and they killed the rams, and sprinkled the blood upon the altar: they killed also the lambs, and sprinkled the blood upon the altar.
- 23 And they brought near the he-goats for the sin-offering before the king and the assembly; and they laid their hands upon them:
- 24 and the priests killed them, and they made a sin-offering with their blood upon the altar, to make atonement for all Israel; for the king commanded *that* the burnt-offering and the sin-offering *should be made* for all Israel.
- 25 And he set the Levites in the house of Jehovah with cymbals, with psalteries, and with harps, according to the commandment of David, and of Gad the king's seer, and Nathan the prophet; for the commandment was of Jehovah by his prophets.
- 26 And the Levites stood with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets.
- 27 And Hezekiah commanded to offer the burnt-offering upon the altar. And when the burnt-offering began, the song of Jehovah began also, and the trumpets, together with the instruments of David king of Israel.
- 28 And all the assembly worshipped, and the singers sang, and the trumpeters sounded; all this *continued* until the burnt-offering was finished.
- 29 And when they had made an end of offering, the king and all that were present with him bowed themselves and worshipped.
- 30 Moreover Hezekiah the king and the princes commanded the Levites to sing praises unto Jehovah with the words of David, and of Asaph the seer. And they sang praises with gladness, and they bowed their heads and worshipped.
- 31 Then Hezekiah answered and said, Now ye have *{1}* consecrated yourselves unto Jehovah; come near and bring sacrifices and thank-offerings into the house of Jehovah. And the assembly brought in sacrifices and thank-offerings; and as many as were of a willing heart *brought* burnt-offerings. *{1} Heb filled your hand}*
- 32 And the number of the burnt-offerings which the assembly brought was threescore and ten bullocks, a hundred rams, and two hundred lambs: all these were for a burnt-offering to Jehovah.
- 33 And the consecrated things were six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep.
- 34 But the priests were too few, so that they could not flay all the burnt-offerings: wherefore their brethren the Levites did help them, till the work was ended, and until the priests had sanctified themselves; for the Levites were more upright in heart to sanctify themselves than the priests.
- 35 And also the burnt-offerings were in abundance, with the fat of the peace-offerings, and with the drink-offerings for every burnt-offering. So the service of the house of Jehovah was set in order.
- 36 And Hezekiah rejoiced, and all the people, because of that which God had prepared for the people: for the thing was done suddenly.

## 2 Chronicles 30

- 1 ¶ And Hezekiah sent to all Israel and Judah, and wrote letters also to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the house of Jehovah at Jerusalem, to keep the passover unto Jehovah, the God of Israel.
- 2 For the king had taken counsel, and his princes, and all the assembly in Jerusalem, to keep the passover in the second month.
- 3 For they could not keep it at that time, because the priests had not sanctified themselves in sufficient number, neither had the people gathered themselves together to Jerusalem.
- 4 And the thing was right in the eyes of the king and of all the assembly.
- 5 So they established a decree to make proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beer-sheba even to Dan, that they should come to keep the passover unto Jehovah, the God of Israel, at Jerusalem: for they had not kept it *{1}* in great numbers in such sort as it is written. *{1} Or of a long time}*

- 6 So the posts went with the letters from the king and his princes throughout all Israel and Judah, and according to the commandment of the king, saying, Ye children of Israel, turn again unto Jehovah, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, that he may return to the remnant that are escaped of you out of the hand of the kings of Assyria.
- 7 And be not ye like your fathers, and like your brethren, who trespassed against Jehovah, the God of their fathers, so that he gave them up *{1}* to desolation, as ye see. *{1}* Or to be an astonishment
- 8 Now be ye not stiffnecked, as your fathers were; but *{1}* yield yourselves unto Jehovah, and enter into his sanctuary, which he hath sanctified for ever, and serve Jehovah your God, that his fierce anger may turn away from you. *{1}* Heb give the hand
- 9 For if ye turn again unto Jehovah, your brethren and your children shall find compassion before them that led them captive, and shall come again into this land: for Jehovah your God is gracious and merciful, and will not turn away his face from you, if ye return unto him.
- 10 So the posts passed from city to city through the country of Ephraim and Manasseh, even unto Zebulun: but they laughed them to scorn, and mocked them.
- 11 Nevertheless certain men of Asher and Manasseh and of Zebulun humbled themselves, and came to Jerusalem.
- 12 Also upon Judah came the hand of God to give them one heart, to do the commandment of the king and of the princes by the word of Jehovah.
- 13 ¶ And there assembled at Jerusalem much people to keep the feast of unleavened bread in the second month, a very great assembly.
- 14 And they arose and took away the altars that were in Jerusalem, and all the *{1}* altars for incense took they away, and cast them into the brook Kidron. *{1}* Or vessels }
- 15 Then they killed the passover on the fourteenth *day* of the second month: and the priests and the Levites were ashamed, and sanctified themselves, and brought burnt-offerings into the house of Jehovah.
- 16 And they stood in their place after their order, according to the law of Moses the man of God: the priests sprinkled the blood *which they received* of the hand of the Levites.
- 17 For there were many in the assembly that had not sanctified themselves: therefore the Levites had the charge of killing the passovers for every one that was not clean, to sanctify them unto Jehovah.
- 18 For a multitude of the people, even many of Ephraim and Manasseh, Issachar and Zebulun, had not cleansed themselves, yet did they eat the passover otherwise than it is written. For Hezekiah had prayed for them, saying, The good Jehovah pardon *{1}* every one *{1}* Or him that setteth his whole heart
- 19 that setteth his heart to seek God, Jehovah, the God of his fathers, though *he be* not *cleansed* according to the purification of the sanctuary.
- 20 And Jehovah hearkened to Hezekiah, and healed the people.
- 21 ¶ And the children of Israel that were present at Jerusalem kept the feast of unleavened bread seven days with great gladness; and the Levites and the priests praised Jehovah day by day, *singing* with loud instruments unto Jehovah.
- 22 And Hezekiah spake comfortably unto all the Levites that had good understanding *in the service* of Jehovah. So they did eat throughout the feast for the seven days, offering sacrifices of peace-offerings, and *{1}* making confession to Jehovah, the God of their fathers. *{1}* Or giving thanks
- 23 And the whole assembly took counsel to keep other seven days; and they kept *other* seven days with gladness.
- 24 For Hezekiah king of Judah did give to the assembly for offerings a thousand bullocks and seven thousand sheep; and the princes gave to the assembly a thousand bullocks and ten thousand sheep: and a great number of priests sanctified themselves.
- 25 And all the assembly of Judah, with the priests and the Levites, and all the assembly that came out of Israel, and the sojourners that came out of the land of Israel, and that dwelt in Judah, rejoiced.
- 26 So there was great joy in Jerusalem; for since the time of Solomon the son of David king of Israel there was not the like in Jerusalem.
- 27 Then the priests the Levites arose and blessed the people: and their voice was heard, and their prayer came up to his holy habitation, even unto heaven.

---

## F- The good reign of Hezekiah, (29. - 32.)

- 1- HIS immediate revival (29.)
- 2- He kept a late Passover (30.)
  - a- All tribes of Israel are invited.
  - b- Passover is kept late in spite of discrepancies.
  - c- The first united Passover since Solomon for 14 days. vs. 21-27

## 2 Chronicles 31

- 1 ¶ Now when all this was finished, all Israel that were present went out to the cities of Judah, and brake in pieces the *{1}* pillars, and hewed down the Asherim, and brake down the high places and the altars out of all Judah and Benjamin, in Ephraim also and Manasseh, until they had destroyed them all. Then all the children of Israel returned, every man to his possession, into their own cities. *{1}* *Or obelisks* }
- 2 And Hezekiah appointed the courses of the priests and the Levites after their courses, every man according to his service, both the priests and the Levites, for burnt-offerings and for peace-offerings, to minister, and to give thanks, and to praise in the gates of the camp of Jehovah.
- 3 *He appointed* also the king's portion of his substance for the burnt-offerings, *to wit*, for the morning and evening burnt-offerings, and the burnt-offerings for the sabbaths, and for the new moons, and for the set feasts, as it is written in the law of Jehovah.
- 4 Moreover he commanded the people that dwelt in Jerusalem to give the portion of the priests and the Levites, that they might *{1}* give themselves to the law of Jehovah. *{1}* *Heb be strong in* }
- 5 And as soon as the commandment came abroad, the children of Israel gave in abundance the first-fruits of grain, new wine, and oil, and honey, and of all the increase of the field; and the tithe of all things brought they in abundantly.
- 6 And the children of Israel and Judah, that dwelt in the cities of Judah, they also brought in the tithe of oxen and sheep, and the tithe of dedicated things which were consecrated unto Jehovah their God, and laid them by heaps.
- 7 In the third month they began to lay the foundation of the heaps, and finished them in the seventh month.
- 8 And when Hezekiah and the princes came and saw the heaps, they blessed Jehovah, and his people Israel.
- 9 Then Hezekiah questioned the priests and the Levites concerning the heaps.
- 10 And Azariah the chief priest, of the house of Zadok, answered him and said, Since *the people* began to bring the oblations into the house of Jehovah, we have eaten and had enough, and have left plenty: for Jehovah hath blessed his people; and that which is left is this great store.
- 11 ¶ Then Hezekiah commanded to prepare chambers in the house of Jehovah; and they prepared them.
- 12 And they brought in the oblations and the tithes and the dedicated things faithfully: and over them Conaniah the Levite was ruler, and Shimei his brother was second.
- 13 And Jehiel, and Azaziah, and Nahath, and Asahel, and Jerimoth, and Jozabad, and Eliel, and Ismachiah, and Mahath, and Benaiah, were overseers under the hand of Conaniah and Shimei his brother, by the appointment of Hezekiah the king, and Azariah the ruler of the house of God.
- 14 And Kore the son of Imnah the Levite, the porter at the east *gate*, was over the freewill-offerings of God, to distribute the oblations of Jehovah, and the most holy things.
- 15 And under him were Eden, and Miniamin, and Jeshua, and Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of the priests, in their office of trust, to give to their brethren by courses, as well to the great as to the small:
- 16 besides them that were reckoned by genealogy of males, from three years old and upward, even every one that entered into the house of Jehovah, *{1}* as the duty of every day required, for their service in their offices according to their courses; *{1}* *Or for his daily portion* }
- 17 and them that were reckoned by genealogy of the priests by their fathers' houses, and the Levites from twenty years old and upward, in their offices by their courses;
- 18 *{1}* and them that were reckoned by genealogy of all their little ones, their wives, and their sons, and their daughters, through all the congregation: for in their office of trust they sanctified themselves in holiness. *{1}* *Or even to give to them etc* }
- 19 Also for the sons of Aaron the priests, that were in the fields of the suburbs of their cities, in every city, there were men that were mentioned by name, to give portions to all the males among the priests, and to all that were reckoned by genealogy among the Levites.
- 20 And thus did Hezekiah throughout all Judah; and he wrought that which was good and right and *{1}* faithful before Jehovah his God. *{1}* *Heb faithfulness* }
- 21 And in every work that he began in the service of the house of God, and in the law, and in the commandments, to seek his God, he did it with all his heart, and prospered.

## 2 Chronicles 32

- 1 ¶ After these things, and this faithfulness, Sennacherib king of Assyria came, and entered into Judah, and encamped against the fortified cities, and thought *{1}* to win them for himself. *{1}* *Heb to break them up* }
- 2 And when Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib was come, and that *{1}* he was purposed to fight against Jerusalem, *{1}* *Heb his face was to fight* }
- 3 he took counsel with his princes and his mighty men to stop the waters of the fountains which were without the city; and they helped him.
- 4 So there was gathered much people together, and they stopped all the fountains, and the brook that flowed through the midst of the land, saying, Why should the kings of Assyria come, and find much water?
- 5 And he took courage, and built up all the wall that was broken down, and *{1}* raised *it* up to the towers, and *{2}* the other wall without, and strengthened Millo *in* the city of David, and made weapons and shields in abundance. *{1}* *The Vulg has built towers thereon* 2) *Or another* }
- 6 And he set captains of war over the people, and gathered them together to him in the broad place at the gate of the city, and spake comfortably to them, saying,



- 7 Be strong and of good courage, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that is with him; for *{1}* there is a greater with us than with him: *{1}* Or there are more}
- 8 with him is an arm of flesh; but with us is Jehovah our God to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah.
- 9 ¶ After this did Sennacherib king of Assyria send his servants to Jerusalem, (now he was before Lachish, and all his power with him,) unto Hezekiah king of Judah, and unto all Judah that were at Jerusalem, saying,
- 10 Thus saith Sennacherib king of Assyria, Whereon do ye trust, that ye abide *{1}* the siege in Jerusalem? *{1}* Or in the stronghold}
- 11 Doth not Hezekiah persuade you, to give you over to die by famine and by thirst, saying, Jehovah our God will deliver us out of the hand of the king of Assyria?
- 12 Hath not the same Hezekiah taken away his high places and his altars, and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, saying, Ye shall worship before one altar, and upon it shall ye burn incense?
- 13 Know ye not what I and my fathers have done unto all the peoples of the lands? Were the gods of the nations of the lands in any wise able to deliver their land out of my hand?
- 14 Who was there among all the gods of those nations which my fathers *{1}* utterly destroyed, that could deliver his people out of my hand, that your God should be able to deliver you out of my hand? *{1}* Heb devoted}
- 15 Now therefore let not Hezekiah deceive you, nor persuade you after this manner, neither believe ye him; for no god of any nation or kingdom was able to deliver his people out of my hand, and out of the hand of my fathers: how much less shall your *{1}* God deliver you out of my hand? *{1}* Or gods}
- 16 And his servants spake yet more against Jehovah God, and against his servant Hezekiah.
- 17 He wrote also *{1}* letters, to rail on Jehovah, the God of Israel, and to speak against him, saying, As the gods of the nations of the lands, which have not delivered their people out of my hand, so shall not the God of Hezekiah deliver his people out of my hand. *{1}* Or a letter}
- 18 And they cried with a loud voice in the Jews' language unto the people of Jerusalem that were on the wall, to affright them, and to trouble them; that they might take the city.
- 19 And they spake of the God of Jerusalem, as of the gods of the peoples of the earth, which are the work of men's hands.
- 20 And Hezekiah the king, and Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz, prayed because of this, and cried to heaven.
- 21 And Jehovah sent an angel, who cut off all the mighty men of valor, and the leaders and captains, in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth from his own bowels *{1}* slew him there with the sword. *{1}* Heb caused him to fall}
- 22 Thus Jehovah saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all others, and guided them on every side.
- 23 And many brought gifts unto Jehovah to Jerusalem, and precious things to Hezekiah king of Judah; so that he was exalted in the sight of all nations from thenceforth.
- 24 ¶ In those days Hezekiah was sick even unto death: and he prayed unto Jehovah; and he spake unto him, and gave him a *{1}* sign. *{1}* Or wonder}
- 25 But Hezekiah rendered not again according to the benefit done unto him; for his heart was lifted up: therefore there was wrath upon him, and upon Judah and Jerusalem.
- 26 Notwithstanding Hezekiah humbled himself for *{1}* the pride of his heart, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the wrath of Jehovah came not upon them in the days of Hezekiah. *{1}* Heb the lifting up}
- 27 And Hezekiah had exceeding much riches and honor: and he provided him treasuries for silver, and for gold, and for precious stones, and for spices, and for shields, and for all manner of goodly vessels;
- 28 store-houses also for the increase of grain and new wine and oil; and stalls for all manner of beasts, and flocks in folds.
- 29 Moreover he provided him cities, and possessions of flocks and herds in abundance; for God had given him very much substance.
- 30 This same Hezekiah also stopped the upper spring of the waters of Gihon, and brought them straight down on the west side of the city of David. And Hezekiah prospered in all his works.
- 31 Howbeit in the business of the *{1}* ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent unto him to inquire of the wonder that was done in the land, God left him, to try him, that he might know all that was in his heart. *{1}* Heb interpreters}
- 32 Now the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and his good deeds, behold, they are written in the vision of Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz, in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.
- 33 And Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the ascent of the sepulchres of the sons of David: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem did him honor at his death. And Manasseh his son reigned in his stead.

---

3- He destroys images in both Judah and Israel. (31.)

4- Tithing is resumed and prosperity ensues.

5- He fortifies Jerusalem. (32.)

6 His prayer and faith turn back Sennacherib.

7- His illness, recovery, and great wealth recorded.

**2 Chronicles 33**

- 1 ¶ Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign; and he reigned fifty and five years in Jerusalem.
- 2 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, after the abominations of the nations whom Jehovah cast out before the children of Israel.
- 3 For he built again the high places which Hezekiah his father had broken down; and he reared up altars for the Baalim, and made Asheroth, and worshipped all the host of heaven, and served them.
- 4 And he built altars in the house of Jehovah, whereof Jehovah said, In Jerusalem shall my name be for ever.
- 5 And he built altars for all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of Jehovah.
- 6 He also made his children to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of Hinnom; and he practised augury, and used enchantments, and practised sorcery, and dealt with them that had familiar spirits, and with wizards: he wrought much evil in the sight of Jehovah, to provoke him to anger.
- 7 And he set the graven image of the idol, which he had made, in the house of God, of which God said to David and to Solomon his son, In this house, and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, will I put my name for ever:
- 8 neither will I any more remove the foot of Israel from off the land which I have appointed for your fathers, if only they will observe to do all that I have commanded them, even all the law and the statutes and the ordinances *given* by Moses.
- 9 And Manasseh seduced Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that they did evil more than did the nations whom Jehovah destroyed before the children of Israel.
- 10 And Jehovah spake to Manasseh, and to his people; but they gave no heed.
- 11 ¶ Wherefore Jehovah brought upon them the captains of the host of the king of Assyria, who took Manasseh *{1}* in chains, and bound him with fetters, and carried him to Babylon. *{1} Or with hooks}*
- 12 And when he was in distress, he besought Jehovah his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers.
- 13 And he prayed unto him; and he was entreated of him, and heard his supplication, and brought him again to Jerusalem into his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that Jehovah he was God.
- 14 Now after this he built an outer wall to the city of David, on the west side of Gihon, in the valley, even to the entrance at the fish gate; and he compassed Ophel about *with it*, and raised it up to a very great height: and he put *{1}* valiant captains in all the fortified cities of Judah. *{1} Or captains of the army}*
- 15 And he took away the foreign gods, and the idol out of the house of Jehovah, and all the altars that he had built in the mount of the house of Jehovah, and in Jerusalem, and cast them out of the city.
- 16 And he *{1}* built up the altar of Jehovah, and offered thereon sacrifices of peace-offerings and of thanksgiving, and commanded Judah to serve Jehovah, the God of Israel. *{1} According to another reading prepared}*
- 17 Nevertheless the people sacrificed still in the high places, but only unto Jehovah their God.
- 18 Now the rest of the acts of Manasseh, and his prayer unto his God, and the words of the seers that spake to him in the name of Jehovah, the God of Israel, behold, they are written among the acts of the kings of Israel.
- 19 His prayer also, and how *God* was entreated of him, and all his sin and his trespass, and the places wherein he built high places, and set up the Asherim and the graven images, before he humbled himself: behold, they are written in the history of *{1}* Hozai. *{1} Or the seers}*
- 20 So Manasseh slept with his fathers, and they buried him in his own house: and Amon his son reigned in his stead.
- 21 ¶ Amon was twenty and two years old when he began to reign; and he reigned two years in Jerusalem.
- 22 And he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, as did Manasseh his father; and Amon sacrificed unto all the graven images which Manasseh his father had made, and served them.
- 23 And he humbled not himself before Jehovah, as Manasseh his father had humbled himself; but this same Amon *{1}* trespassed more and more. *{1} Or became guilty}*
- 24 And his servants conspired against him, and put him to death in his own house.
- 25 But the people of the land slew all them that had conspired against king Amon; and the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his stead.

G- The evil reigns of Manasseh and Amon.

(33.)

- 1- Manasseh establishes Baal worship in the temple.
- 2- The Assyrians take him to Babylon.
- 3- Following his repentance, he is restored to Jerusalem.
- 4- He attempts to revive worship of Jehovah.
- 5- Amon reigns two years--an evil reign.

**2 Chronicles 34**

- 1 ¶ Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign; and he reigned thirty and one years in Jerusalem.
- 2 And he did that which was right in the eyes of Jehovah, and walked in the ways of David his father, and turned not aside to the right hand or to the left.
- 3 For in the eighth year of his reign, while he was yet young, he began to seek after the God of David his father; and in the twelfth year he began to purge Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, and the Asherim, and the graven images, and the molten images.
- 4 And they brake down the altars of the Baalim in his presence; and the sun-images that were on high above them he hewed down; and the Asherim, and the graven images, and the molten images, he brake in pieces, and made dust of them, and strewed it upon the graves *of them* that had sacrificed unto them.
- 5 And he burnt the bones of the priests upon their altars, and purged Judah and Jerusalem.
- 6 And *so did he* in the cities of Manasseh and Ephraim and Simeon, even unto Naphtali, *{1}* in their ruins round about. *{1} Or as otherwise read with their axes ; The Hebrew is obscure.*
- 7 And he brake down the altars, and beat the Asherim and the graven images into powder, and hewed down all the sun-images throughout all the land of Israel, and returned to Jerusalem.
- 8 ¶ Now in the eighteenth year of his reign, when he had purged the land and the house, he sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, and Maaseiah the governor of the city, and Joah the son of Joahaz the *{1}* recorder, to repair the house of Jehovah his God. *{1} Or chronicler*
- 9 And they came to Hilkiyah the high priest, and delivered the money that was brought into the house of God, which the Levites, the keepers of the threshold, had gathered of the hand of Manasseh and Ephraim, and of all the remnant of Israel, and of all Judah and Benjamin, *{1}* and of the inhabitants of Jerusalem. *{1} Another reading is and they returned to Jerusalem*
- 10 And they delivered it into the hand of the workmen that had the oversight of the house of Jehovah; and *{1}* the workmen that wrought in the house of Jehovah gave it to mend and repair the house: *{1} Or they gave it to the workmen etc; See 2 Ki 22:5*
- 11 even to the carpenters and to the builders gave they it, to buy hewn stone, and timber for couplings, and to make beams for the houses which the kings of Judah had destroyed.
- 12 And the men did the work faithfully: and the overseers of them were Jahath and Obadiah, the Levites, of the sons of Merari; and Zechariah and Meshullam, of the sons of the Kohathites, *{1}* to set it forward; and *others of* the Levites, all that were skilful with instruments of music. *{1} Or to preside over it*
- 13 Also they were over the bearers of burdens, and set forward all that did the work in every manner of service: and of the Levites there were scribes, and officers, and porters.
- 14 ¶ And when they brought out the money that was brought into the house of Jehovah, Hilkiyah the priest found the book of the law of Jehovah *{1}* given by Moses. *{1} Heb by the hand of*
- 15 And Hilkiyah answered and said to Shaphan the scribe, I have found the book of the law in the house of Jehovah. And Hilkiyah delivered the book to Shaphan.
- 16 And Shaphan carried the book to the king, and moreover brought back word to the king, saying, All that was committed to thy servants, they are doing.
- 17 And they have *{1}* emptied out the money that was found in the house of Jehovah, and have delivered it into the hand of the overseers, and into the hand of the workmen. *{1} Or poured out*
- 18 And Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying, Hilkiyah the priest hath delivered me a book. And Shaphan read therein before the king.
- 19 And it came to pass, when the king had heard the words of the law, that he rent his clothes.
- 20 And the king commanded Hilkiyah, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and *{1}* Abdon the son of Micah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah the king's servant, saying, *{1} In 2 Ki 22:12 Achbor the son of Micaiah*
- 21 Go ye, inquire of Jehovah for me, and for them that are left in Israel and in Judah, concerning the words of the book that is found; for great is the wrath of Jehovah that is poured out upon us, because our fathers have not kept the word of Jehovah, to do according unto all that is written in this book.
- 22 So Hilkiyah, and they whom the king *had commanded*, went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum the son of *{1}* Tokhath, the son of *{2}* Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe; (now she dwelt in Jerusalem in the *{3}* second quarter;) and they spake to her to that effect. *{1} In 2 Ki 22:14 Tikvah 2) In 2 Ki 22:14 Harhas 3) Heb Mishneh*
- 23 And she said unto them, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel: Tell ye the man that sent you unto me,
- 24 Thus saith Jehovah, Behold, I will bring evil upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof, even all the curses that are written in the book which they have read before the king of Judah.

- 25 Because they have forsaken me, and have burned incense unto other gods, that they might provoke me to anger with all the works of their hands; therefore is my wrath poured out upon this place, and it shall not be quenched.
- 26 But unto the king of Judah, who sent you to inquire of Jehovah, thus shall ye say to him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of Israel: As touching the words which thou hast heard,
- 27 because thy heart was tender, and thou didst humble thyself before God, when thou heardest his words against this place, and against the inhabitants thereof, and hast humbled thyself before me, and hast rent thy clothes, and wept before me; I also have heard thee, saith Jehovah.
- 28 Behold, I will gather thee to thy fathers, and thou shalt be gathered to thy grave in peace, neither shall thine eyes see all the evil that I will bring upon this place, and upon the inhabitants thereof. And they brought back word to the king.
- 29 ¶ Then the king sent and gathered together all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem.
- 30 And the king went up to the house of Jehovah, and all the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, and the Levites, and all the people, both great and small: and he read in their ears all the words of the book of the covenant that was found in the house of Jehovah.
- 31 And the king stood in his place, and made a covenant before Jehovah, to walk after Jehovah, and to keep his commandments, and his testimonies, and his statutes, with all his heart, and with all his soul, to perform the words of the covenant that were written in this book.
- 32 And he caused all that were found in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand *to it*. And the inhabitants of Jerusalem did according to the covenant of God, the God of their fathers.
- 33 And Josiah took away all the abominations out of all the countries that pertained to the children of Israel, and made all that were found in Israel to serve, even to serve Jehovah their God. All his days they departed not from following Jehovah, the God of their fathers.

#### H- The good reign of Josiah.

(34.-35.)

- |  |         |
|--|---------|
| 1- He seeks the Lord at age 16.            | vs. 3   |
| 2- He began purging idolatry at age 20.    | vs. 3-7 |
| He purges Judah and all tributaries.       | vs. 33  |
| 3- The book of the law is found at age 26. | vs.8-16 |

**2 Chronicles 35**

- 1 ¶ And Josiah kept a passover unto Jehovah in Jerusalem: and they killed the passover on the fourteenth *day* of the first month.
- 2 And he set the priests in their offices, and encouraged them to the service of the house of Jehovah.
- 3 And he said unto the Levites that taught all Israel, that were holy unto Jehovah, Put the holy ark in the house which Solomon the son of David king of Israel did build; there shall no more be a burden upon your shoulders: now serve Jehovah your God, and his people Israel.
- 4 And prepare yourselves after your fathers' houses by your courses, according to the writing of David king of Israel, and according to the writing of Solomon his son.
- 5 And stand in the holy place according to the divisions of the fathers' houses of your brethren the children of the people, {1} and *let there be for each* a portion of a fathers' house of the Levites. {1} Or and according to the distribution of each father's house}
- 6 And kill the passover, and sanctify yourselves, and prepare for your brethren, to do according to the word of Jehovah by Moses.
- 7 And Josiah {1} gave to the children of the people, of the flock, lambs and kids, all of them for the passover-offerings, unto all that were present, to the number of thirty thousand, and three thousand bullocks: these were of the king's substance. {1} Or gave for offerings (and so in verses 8, 9); See 2 Ch 30:24}
- 8 And his princes gave {1} for a freewill-offering unto the people, to the priests, and to the Levites. Hilkiah and Zechariah and Jehiel, the rulers of the house of God, gave unto the priests for the passover-offerings two thousand and six hundred *small cattle*, and three hundred oxen. {1} Or willingly}
- 9 Conaniah also, and Shemaiah and Nethanel, his brethren, and Hashabiah and Jeiel and Jozabad, the chiefs of the Levites, gave unto the Levites for the passover-offerings five thousand *small cattle*, and five hundred oxen.
- 10 So the service was prepared, and the priests stood in their place, and the Levites by their courses, according to the king's commandment.
- 11 And they killed the passover, and the priests sprinkled *the blood which they received* of their hand, and the Levites flayed them.
- 12 And they removed the burnt-offerings, that they might give them according to the divisions of the fathers' houses of the children of the people, to offer unto Jehovah, as it is written in the book of Moses. And so did they with the oxen.
- 13 And they roasted the passover with fire according to the ordinance: and the holy offerings boiled they in pots, and in caldrons, and in pans, and carried them quickly to all the children of the people.
- 14 And afterward they prepared for themselves, and for the priests, because the priests the sons of Aaron *were busied* in offering the burnt-offerings and the fat until night: therefore the Levites prepared for themselves, and for the priests the sons of Aaron.
- 15 And the singers the sons of Asaph were in their place, according to the commandment of David, and Asaph, and Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer; and the porters were at every gate: they needed not to depart from their service; for their brethren the Levites prepared for them.
- 16 So all the service of Jehovah was prepared the same day, to keep the passover, and to offer burnt-offerings upon the altar of Jehovah, according to the commandment of king Josiah.
- 17 And the children of Israel that were present kept the passover at that time, and the feast of unleavened bread seven days.
- 18 And there was no passover like to that kept in Israel from the days of Samuel the prophet; neither did any of the kings of Israel keep such a passover as Josiah kept, and the priests, and the Levites, and all Judah and Israel that were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem.
- 19 In the eighteenth year of the reign of Josiah was this passover kept.
- 20 ¶ After all this, when Josiah had prepared the temple, Neco king of Egypt went up to fight against Carchemish by the Euphrates: and Josiah went out against him.
- 21 But he sent ambassadors to him, saying, What have I to do with thee, thou king of Judah? *I come* not against thee this day, but against the house wherewith I have war; and God {1} hath commanded me to make haste: forbear thee from *meddling with* God, who is with me, that he destroy thee not. {1} Or hath given command to speed me}
- 22 Nevertheless Josiah would not turn his face from him, but disguised himself, that he might fight with him, and hearkened not unto the words of Neco from the mouth of God, and came to fight in the valley of Megiddo.

- 23 And the archers shot at king Josiah; and the king said to his servants, Have me away; for I am sore wounded.
- 24 So his servants took him out of the chariot, and put him in the second chariot that he had, and brought him to Jerusalem; and he died, and was buried in the sepulchres of his fathers. And all Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah.
- 25 And Jeremiah lamented for Josiah: and all the singing men and singing women spake of Josiah in their lamentations unto this day; and they made them an ordinance in Israel: and, behold, they are written in the lamentations.
- 26 Now the rest of the acts of Josiah, and his good deeds, according to that which is written in the law of Jehovah,
- 27 and his acts, first and last, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.
- 

- 4- He holds a Passover for both Judah and Israel. vs. 35:1-19  
     The greatest Passover ever (in the land;  
     the first one must have been the greatest ever).
- a- Sets the Priests in their offices and encouraged them. vs. 2
- b- He told the Levites that previously had carried the Ark to place it into the Temple.  
     vs. 3
- 5- He is slain in pursuit of Pharaoh-Necho at Megiddo. vs. 20-24

**2 Chronicles 36**

- 1 ¶ Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah, and made him king in his father's stead in Jerusalem.
- 2 Joahaz was twenty and three years old when he began to reign; and he reigned three months in Jerusalem.
- 3 And the king of Egypt deposed him at Jerusalem, and fined the land a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold.
- 4 And the king of Egypt made Eliakim his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem, and changed his name to Jehoiakim. And Neco took Joahaz his brother, and carried him to Egypt.
- 5 Jehoiakim was twenty and five years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem: and he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah his God.
- 6 Against him came up Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and bound him in fetters, to carry him to Babylon.
- 7 Nebuchadnezzar also carried of the vessels of the house of Jehovah to Babylon, and put them in his {1} temple at Babylon. {1} Or palace}
- 8 Now the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, and his abominations which he did, and that which was found {1} in him, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah: and {2} Jehoiachin his son reigned in his stead. {1} Or against 2) In 1 Ch 3:16 Jeconiah; In Jer 22:24 Coniah}
- 9 Jehoiachin was {1} eight years old when he began to reign; and he reigned three months and ten days in Jerusalem: and he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah. {1} In 2 Ki 24:8 eighteen}
- 10 And at the return of the year king Nebuchadnezzar sent, and brought him to Babylon, with the goodly vessels of the house of Jehovah, and made Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem.
- 11 ¶ Zedekiah was twenty and one years old when he began to reign; and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem:
- 12 and he did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah his God; he humbled not himself before Jeremiah the prophet *speaking* from the mouth of Jehovah.
- 13 And he also rebelled against king Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God: but he stiffened his neck, and {1} hardened his heart against turning unto Jehovah, the God of Israel. {1} Heb strengthened}
- 14 Moreover all the chiefs of the priests, and the people, trespassed very greatly after all the abominations of the nations; and they polluted the house of Jehovah which he had hallowed in Jerusalem.
- 15 And Jehovah, the God of their fathers, sent to them by his messengers, rising up early and sending, because he had compassion on his people, and on his dwelling-place:
- 16 but they mocked the messengers of God, and despised his words, and scoffed at his prophets, until the wrath of Jehovah arose against his people, till there was no {1} remedy. {1} Heb healing}
- 17 Therefore he brought upon them the king of the Chaldeans, who slew their young men with the sword in the house of their sanctuary, and had no compassion upon young man or virgin, old man or hoary-headed: he gave them all into his hand.
- 18 And all the vessels of the house of God, great and small, and the treasures of the house of Jehovah, and the treasures of the king, and of his princes, all these he brought to Babylon.
- 19 And they burnt the house of God, and brake down the wall of Jerusalem, and burnt all the palaces thereof with fire, and destroyed all the goodly vessels thereof.
- 20 And them that had escaped from the sword carried he away to Babylon; and they were servants to him and his sons until the reign of the kingdom of Persia:
- 21 to fulfil the word of Jehovah by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed its sabbaths: *for* as long as it lay desolate it kept sabbath, to fulfil threescore and ten years.
- 22 ¶ Now in the first year of {1} Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of Jehovah by the mouth of Jeremiah might be accomplished, Jehovah stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, so that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and *put it* also in writing, saying, {1} Heb Coresh}
- 23 Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath Jehovah, the God of heaven, given me; and he hath charged me to build him a house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Whosoever there is among you of all his people, Jehovah his God be with him, and let him go up.



**G- The evil reigns of the sons of Josiah.****vs. 36:1-14**

- 1- Jehoahaz--the people's choice.  
Taken to Egypt after 3 months.
- 2- Jehoiakim--set up by Pharaoh--11 years.  
Carried to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar.
- 3- Jehoiachin -reigned 3 months.  
Grandson of Josiah; Carried to Babylon.
- 4- Zedekiah--set up by Nebuchadnezzar.--11 years.
  - a- Refused the counsel of Jeremiah.
  - b- Polluted the temple.

**H- Captivity of Judah in Babylon.****vs. 36:15-23**

- 1- Nebuchadnezzar slays the young and carries captive the rest.
- 2- The Temple, wall and city are destroyed.
- 3- The reason for the captivity is disclosed. vs.36:21  
To keep the Sabbath Years and years of Jubilee.  
God's equation looks like:  
70 years = 8 for every 50 years =  $70/8 = (8 \frac{3}{4})$  times 50 = 437 years  
during which the Lord's rest years were not observed. 586 + 437 -  
1023 BC. About the time of Saul. - When the people wanted a King  
like all the other nations.
- 4- The later decree of Cyrus to rebuild the temple. vs. 22-23

*Finis*

## Questions On Chronicles

- 1- Give four outstanding distinctions between the presentation of Chronicles and that of Samuels and Kings.
  
- 2- What two features of the kingdom are prominent *in* the presentation of Chronicles?
  
- 3- What is the probable date of the writing of Chronicles and how does this date fit with its purpose?
  
- 4- What emphasis seems to be made in the gene logical table and why?
  
- 5- In contrast to the books of Samuel, what is David's great concern in Chronicles?
  
- 6- With what does Chronicles picture David as being concerned at the end of his life in contrast to Samuel?
  
- 7- What kings of Judah are given special prominence in Chronicles and why?
  
- 8- What two kings held outstanding Passovers?
  
- 9- What does the Chronicler emphasize in the kings of Judah and what does he not emphasize as t previous books (Samuels and Kings) do?

Name three kings that started good but ended in disobedience and evil. -Name one king that started in evil and ended in reformation.

11- Name one king that started in evil and ended in reformation.

12- What was significant about the reign of King:  
Joash?--

Amaziah?--

Uzziah?--

Ahaz?--

Hezekiah?--

Jehoshaphat?--

Manasseh?--

13- What specific reason does the Chronicler give for the 70 years' captivity?

14- Give (or develop) a principle demonstrated in the  
reign of King:

Jehoshaphat --

Asa --

Uzziah --

Hezekiah --

Manasseh --

Josiah --

## ENDNOTES

---

- <sup>1</sup> N. Carlson, THE SPIRITUALS \_ A Fact Book, ISBN-13: 978-1508838159, 2015, Create Space/AMAZON Publishers, 196 Pages. \$19.95.
- <sup>2</sup> N. Carlson, THE SPIRITUALS \_ A Fact Book, ISBN-13: 978-1508838159, 2015, Create Space/AMAZON Publishers, 196 Pages..
- <sup>3</sup> N. Carlson, *AS IT WAS IN THE DAYS OF NOAH - A MODERN COSMIC DRAMA IN 3 ACTS - A Look At The Present And Coming World Dilemma In The Light Of Genesis 6:1-8 and other related passages. - A Christian Apologetic*, 2014, ISBN-13:978-1500212377 IISBN-10:1500212377, 408 Pgs.
- <sup>4</sup> *AS IT WAS IN THE DAYS OF NOAH - A MODERN COSMIC DRAMA IN 3 ACTS - A Look At The Present And Coming World Dilemma In The Light Of Genesis 6:1-8 and other related passages. - A Christian Apologetic*, N. Carlson. 408 Pgs.